COLLINS

COBUILD

英语语法大全

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

助您掌握「地道的」英语

THE COMMERCIAL PRESS

商务印书馆

COLLINS COBUILD
英语语法大全
ENGLISH GRAMMAR

主编：约翰·辛克莱 (John Sinclair)
主译：任绍曾
译者：马博森、刘万存

商　务　印　书　馆
1999年·北京

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

英语语法大全／辛克莱著；任绍曾译．—北京：
商务印书馆，1999
ISBN 7-100-02793-4

Ⅰ．英…　Ⅱ．①辛…②任…　Ⅲ．英语－语法　Ⅳ．H314－61

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(98)第 38366 号

YĪNGYǓ YǓFǍ DÀQUÁN
《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》
Collins Cobuild English Grammar

主　　编：约翰·辛克莱(John Sinclair)
主　　译：任绍曾
译　　者：马博森　刘万存
责任编辑：周欣
出版发行：商务印书馆
北京王府井大街 36 号　邮政编码 100710
印　　刷：中国科学院印刷厂
版　　次：1999 年 1 月第 1 版
1999 年 10 月北京第 3 次印刷
印　　数：10 000 册
ISBN 7-100-02793-4／H·708
定　　价：48.00 元

Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全
（简体汉字本）

出版说明

本书英文版自1990年由英国哈珀·柯林斯出版社出版以来，颇受读者欢迎，已经多次再版。商务印书馆（香港）有限公司于1998年7月出版了由杭州大学任绍曾先生主译的繁体汉字本，现经他们同意，由我馆出版其简体汉字本，旨在为内地读者提供一部分类细致，检索方便，例句全部取自柯林斯语料库的鲜活语言，内容安排突出实用性的现代英语语法工具书。本书有别于从理论到形式的传统语法模式，侧重于灵活实用的功能语法讲解，强调语法和词汇的结合，并从语义功能的角度探索语法结构，对于中、高级水平的英语学习者及英语教学者尤为适用。值得一提的是，本书还配备了"Cobuild 语法要图"和各种归类词表，使用时不仅方便快捷，而且还有助于提高读者用词、造句和谋篇的能力。

我馆在出版这部简体汉字本之前，做了少量的技术性改动，如有不当之处，欢迎读者指正。

商务印书馆编辑部

1999年1月

前　言

本书供对英语及其功能感兴趣的读者阅读。很多人要查阅本书，因为他们在学习英语，并试图掌握英语的结构。**本书主要为中高水平的学生编写，但其他读者如自修英语的成年人，他们的英语一旦达到足以读懂本书的实际水平，就会发现此书确有帮助。**

不过，本书的内容也会引起各类研究人员的注意。他们研究英语，全然是因为他们对语言或某几种具体语言有兴趣，其中包括教师、主考人、教学大纲设计人员和资料编辑人员。本书有其独到之处，可以为读者提供非常有用的信息。

本书的信息取自长期细致研究当代英语的成果。研究人员用电脑储存累积了口语及书面语共数百万词，由一批编辑专家对它们进行电脑分析。本书与其他语法书相比，有诸多差别，别具一格，也堪称首创。

本书试图对庞大的 Cobuild 语料库 (Bank of English) 中所见到的英语作精确的说明。书中挑选出英语主要的结构类型并加以描写，同时还列举了每个类型中所出现的典型单词与短语。

语法书本该如此编写，但时至今日才得以实现。长久以来，语法与它本应描写清楚的语言之间，有着一条信誉鸿沟。许多规则似乎抽象得无法具体运用。语法书中没有说明极为常用的结构类型可如何变化和扩展，方便使用者准确表达自己。

功能的语法

学习和运用一种语言的人，主要关心如何运用这种语言做事，即如何表达意义、引起别人对自己的问题和兴趣的关注、影响朋友和同事，并为自己创造丰富多彩的社会生活。他们钻研语法结构，仅仅把它当作做事的手段而已。

归纳语言的结构类型，指出运用它们能做什么事情的语法，就叫做功能语法。

本书是一本功能语法书：每一章都围绕语言的一项主要功能，如“概念构成”、“信息构成”、“转述他人的话”。每一项功能总是用某一个特定结构表达。例如，概念构成通常由围绕名词所建立的结构，即名词词组表达；信息往往用分句表达，而转述照例需要两个分句，一句包含 ‘say’ 等转述动词，另一句则由 ‘that’ 引出，或用引号（“ ”）。

本书所根据的就是结构与功能的这种重要对应，详细情况见第 xliv 页的“Cobuild 语法要图”。图中所列的是英语语法的主体骨架。

不过，英语中尚有许多次要特征无法列进简单的要图。语法是灵活的，随着时间

的推移，会出现语法形式的意义变化，其运用也会发生变化。

例如，尽管可以说名词词组是用来指我们要谈及的事物的结构，但它不是唯一可用的结构。有时我们要谈论的，是不易用名词词组表达的事件或思想。为此我们可用一个分句充当另一个分句的主语：

All I want *is a holiday.*

我们还可以用分句充当另一个分句的宾语或补足语：

That's ***what we've always longed for****.*

不时扩展基本语法，讲英语时就可以得心应手，脱口而出了。

这种扩展还适用于另一个方面：名词词组不仅用作主语、宾语与补足语，而且还能起一些次要作用，譬如说，起时间附加状语作用。

He phoned back with the information ***the very next day****.*

此外，英语语法还依靠介词组成了一个重要结构（第六章），使名词词组在句子中具有多种辅助功能：

I went ***to a village school****.*
This has been my home ***for ten years*** *now.*
With a click*, the door opened.*

由此可见，同一种结构可具有多种功能，而不同结构也可具有相似的功能。这样说好像杂乱无章，但若语法不围绕主要结构和主要功能妥加安排，结果确会如此。

本书在每个重要说明（其他书中常作"规则"）**之后，就围绕那个说明对惯用法作详细的描述，包括"例外现象"**。对具有同种效用的其他表达法也加以陈述，外加有关主要结构类型的章节相互参照条目。然后列举结构的各种扩展用法，并附有详细讨论那些功能章节的相互参照条目。

对结构功能的这种扩展及增加并不是随机的，通常以拓宽原功能范围的办法加以表达。如转述动词（第七章）的基本功能是引出某人说的话：

He said *he would be back soon.*

这种功能很容易加以扩展，引出某人写的话：

His mother wrote *that he had finally arrived home.*

然后再扩展到包括思想与感觉，这些不必用词语表达，使用转述结构就很方便：

The boys thought *he was dead.*

这里我们还可以把转述分句看成是引导另一个分句的一般手段。转述分句成了一种导语，评论另一个包含着主要信息的分句。

It is true *that some children are late talkers.*

转述分句的主语是代词 'it'，预指 'that'-从句，动词为系动词（第三章），而不是专门的转述动词。

例句的语法

所有例句均取自语篇，通常不加编辑。现在大家公认，要杜撰听来真实、并具有自然例句所有特色的例句是极难办到的。**学英语必须学习实际例句，它们在现实交际中使用过，因而是可靠的。**

从 Cobuild 的角度看，这一点无需争论。Cobuild 语料库 (Bank of English) 储存的语料含大量的例句，它们与杜撰的例句不同。除非对语言的自然性了解更透彻，我们认为杜撰的例句是不可靠的。

这一点在紧接前言之后有专章说明。

词类的语法

每个结构中实际使用的常用单词与短语，在本书中印成一系列的词表。**本书不仅提供适量例句，而且还提供关于大量单词的语法信息。用者能充分了解一个语法词类含多少个词，某一个规则适用于多少个单词。教师拥有适合为特定学生群编写练习的原始材料，并能指出某些语法词类的一般特征。**

据我们所知，本书大多数词表从未有人提供过，值得读者及师生们细细琢磨。**因为词表提供了抽象的语法与现实的语篇之间的主要维系。**

语法中这种词表称为“词类”，它是具有相同作用的词和短语的聚合。据此这本语法书便近似于词类的语法书，因为它专门提供了数量如此多的单词短语表。

编排词表的工作是本书编写过程中最有趣、最棘手的问题之一。电脑做了初步工作，通过检索适合于所给结构类型的全部单词，才列出词表。例如，可以要求电脑挑选以 '-ing' 结尾、但去掉 '-ing' 后又无相应形式的全部单词。它所给的第一个词表包括 'overweening'、'pettifogging' 等不常见的单词。我们认为这类单词可留在语言学习的后一个阶段提供。电脑还检索到了 'blithering' 与 'whopping' 两个词，它们具有特殊的功能，会在 2.41 节论述。少数单词适合该形式，但所出现的组合或搭配极为有限，如 'piping' 与 'voice' 搭配，'ganging' 与 'youth' 或 'boy' 搭配。由于语法主要研究一般现象，我们觉得把它们列入旨在帮助组句成篇的词表里未免主次不分、令人费解。

目前电脑还难于发现意义的异同，但在 Cobuild 语料库 (Bank of English) 中，编者输入了若干语义注释，电脑也能对这种信息作出反应，如对 'fetching' 一词，它会知道有 'fetch' 这一动词，但意义不同于 'fetching'。多数情况下我们从词表中略去 'fetching' 之类的词，以免引起混乱。否则书中就会满篇注释。若收用这样的单词，我们都附加上适当的提示。

1989年夏天我在欧洲、东南亚、南美曾与大批英语教师合作，听取他们对我们所列词表的反应，征询他们修改和编辑这些词表的建议。他们明确表示，词表要用于教学，就必须条理清楚和易于理解。总的来说，有问题的词应予删除，不宜在这个层次的语法中加以解释。另一方面，经验丰富的教师指望列入词表的词应予收录；如未收进词表，则应予以说明。

所有这些细致编辑工作的结果在2.77、2.78及2.79节之类的词表中可以看出。

只要理由充分，我们就将词表里的单词和词组分项排列。这种方法是教师研讨会上有人建议的，据此，我们将带前缀的动词（2.29节）与功能相同的其他动词（2.79节）分别列成词表。

另一个恰当的例子详见1.21节。在该节的一个词表中我们分项排列了动物、鱼、以‘-craft’结尾的词、以‘-s’结尾的外来词以及一个杂项，它们都有相同的特点，即不改变形式就可充当单数或复数名词：‘moose’、‘salmon’、‘aircraft’、‘corps’、‘crossroads’。从纯语法角度来看，它们可以按字母排列在一个词表，但从教学角度看，最好进一步加以分类。

意义的语法

许多单词具有多种意义和用法，日常用语中常见的词尤其如此。为此，很难对一个词的语法行为作表述，它会随词义变化而变化。例如，用于一个意义的动词是及物的，作另一个意义解时就成了不及物的。

动词‘manage’就是一例，作“负责管理一个组织、企业、系统”解时，是及物的，而作“勉强度日”解时，是不及物的，后面一般跟副词短语。

*Drouet returned to Ecuador to **manage** a travel agency.*
*I don't know if I can **manage** much longer.*

一个词的每个意义都有各自的语法，关于某个词的说明也不可能包含其所有意义。然而，如果每个说明都要交代指哪个意义，语法书就要变得冗长而累赘。**因此本书的例句与词表都经过选择，以求词表中的词的意义是最为人们熟悉的。**

许多使用本书的读者要经过一段时间才能适应这一点。由于我们长期习惯于语法独立于词义的看法，因而看到语法与词汇密切结合，不禁会感到吃惊。当一个结构中选择一个词与选择另一个词密切相关时，本书就加以指出，例如，介词‘aboard’后，几乎总是跟着指运输工具的单数具数名词，如‘ship’、‘plane’、‘train’和‘bus’。

*...two weeks **aboard** the royal yacht Britannia.*

另一例是指感觉的动词，如‘see’、‘feel’、‘hear’和‘smell’，当这类动词用来指现在的感觉时，一般要在前面加情态动词‘can’或‘can't’，而不用简单现在时：

*I can **see** George's face as clearly as if he were here with me.*

*When we come down, I can **smell** the aroma from the frying trout.*

但有几个感觉动词可用于别的非感官意义，此时多用简单现在时：

*I **see** you had a good trip.*
*Many people **feel** that he should resign immediately.*

一般语法书忽视词义，而词典只提供一些语法信息，本书取折衷方案。不常见的**词义不提，只偶尔提及引起不同语法解释的意义区别。**

只要稍加思索，就可知一个有不同意义的词常在不同的结构中出现。词义包括一个词与其他词的关系，所以动词 'see' 的感官意义可与表示被看到事物的名词连用，或与 'well' 等评判视力的副词连用。当 'see' 表示"理解"时，自然要跟 'that'- 从句。偶尔也用名词词组作宾语，这时宾语是 'problem'、'point' 或 'position' 等描述信息的名词。

便于查阅的语法

使用语法书，常常感到难以查到自己需要的信息，这往往是语法书使用者遇到的最大问题，也是学生不喜欢语法的理由。**本书作出特别努力来帮助查阅者，编了几套连锁查阅系统。**

通用的语法术语在本书全部照用——主语、宾语、现在时、过去时等等，新语法术语尽量减少，实在别无他法时才用。**原书英文版有语法术语对照表，而中文版不但把这个对照表翻译成英汉对照，另外再加插了汉英语法术语对照表，方便读者使用中文检索英语语法术语。**而索引里当然也收录了所有语法术语。

本书正文前有总目录和"Cobuild 语法要图"，每章开头更有详细的分目录。读者可使用目录或索引找到将功能与结构联系在一起讨论的章节，只要将其前后阅读一下，便可找到几个表达方式，或者可以更深刻领会该结构的确切意义。

全书页边均留有外加栏目，说明几乎每一节的主题。每个部分常有附加标题。每页上端另有标题，方便使用。

每一节都自成一体，可以单独阅读，不用阅读一整部分就可找到并理解具体的信息。如果读者真想读完一整部分或一整章，那也是易读而有趣的。

产出性的语法

本书的主旨在于帮助读者选择适当的结构来确切表达自己所要表达的意思，因此本书主要围绕功能或意义安排。

我们专门列出许多"产出性特征"，对读者加以引导，使他们对自己的表达充满信心。**在某些地方，语法规则很灵活。我们认为最好不提供明确的词类，而给予指导，让读者自行选择，但不致犯大的错误。我们这样描写英语，就为读者的创新提供了足**

够的余地，一般语法书是没有这个特色的。现代英语中有许多产出性特征，有的众所周知，如几乎任何名词都可以修饰其他名词。所以，名词 'steam' 可用于下列组合：

steam bath	steam boiler	steam coal
steam engine	steam iron	steam power
steam radio	steam train	steam yacht
a flat-bed steam table		

只要随机地把两个名词放在一起，就可显示出操英语的人如何立即去寻找有意义的解释，如 'trick finger'。

词组 'trick finger' 没有公认的意义，可以是医学问题，或杂耍之类的技能，但语法上可以接受，这样我们就得为它想出一个意义。

产出性特征促使我们发挥想象力。适合一个结构的词语表往往无法彻底界定。除了常用的一些词，还有许多可能性，**可供读者试用而不致出错**。

除此之外本书可以容许变化的地方不多，读者必须遵守规则。许多语法书专注于这种限制性规则，使语法成为"危险区"，主要任务就是避免错误，"要这样做，不要那样做"。**本书主要着眼于积极的做法，把功能与结构联系起来。"要做这个，就那样说"**。

尽管存在着许多潜在的产出性特征，本书只介绍主要的和最明显的。如果这种方法得到广大读者的欢迎，就可能逐步实现整个视点的转移：从罗列任意问题的语法过渡到作为自由表达手段的语法。

我们致力于编写出真实英语的语法，即人们日常说的、写的英语的语法。书中关于英语的详细信息取自我们自建的语料库。本书内容新颖，说明有据，与其证据之间的关系的处理也与众不同，主要目的在于帮助学生、教师以及自修英语人士等提高英语水平。

例句说明

本书非比寻常的特点之一，在于所有例句都选自 Cobuild 语料库(Bank of English)，其主体搜集了约三亿多个词，还补充了许多其他当代英语来源，包括《泰晤士报》(*The Times*)。我认为这是编语法书的扎实基础。重要的是让读者只学习、研究真正的语言实例，特别是把例句作为使用楷模时，更是如此。

某些语法巨著，如叶斯柏森(O. Jespersen)的《现代英语语法》(*A Modern English Grammar*)，引用书籍的语句作为每个说明的依据，大词典也是如此。这为其说明提供了可靠证据，在特定的上下文中提示了重要信息。

用杜撰出来的例句作说明并没有合理理据支持，'Birds sing' **之类的例句用于说明简单的主谓句也不够好。有了 Cobuild 语料库（Bank of English），就不难找到与这种结构一样颇为罕见的例句。'Trains stopped' 是真实例句，'Frey agreed' 也是**，即使在双词结构中也可看到，**真实的例句具有杜撰句所缺乏的交际价值**。然而，寻找例句的过程表明，这种结构很少，语法书里该不该大谈特谈，值得深思。

可悲的是，许多教师似乎注定要用编造的材料。不过，我想区分一下对语言事实的正式陈述与教师每天要多次重复、不加说明而凭自己的才智编造出来的非正式例句。后者并不是为了充当可靠的范例供学生模仿，而老师为说明某一个语言点，自然地凭着自己个人的表达能力举例说明，就像教授其他科目的老师一样，只靠本身的记忆举例说明，并非每件事都复核求证。

这与把未见用过的一段英语写在书上作为用法例句是两回事。大脑会耍花招，特别是没有明确的上下文作依托，要想出很短的语句更不可靠。语言教学中最大的一个改进是应用电脑寻找并组织真实例句。

我们在课堂上运用真实例句的经验表明，学生遇到的困难比预想的要少得多，毕竟这些例句是学生终究要弄懂的材料，他们本能地发现并知道如何去处理自然例句中未交代清楚的地方，知道可以信赖它们并马上加以学习。

真实例句的独立性是其优点所在。它们经过精心挑选，是用法的范例。一组真实例句可以共同说明在单个句子里不明显的语言点。

The moment work stops, disorder is liable to ***break out****.*
If he gets promoted, all hell will ***break out****.*
This caused an epidemic to ***break out*** *among them.*
This final destructive fever had to ***break out*** *somewhere.*

注意，只有坏事才用 'break out'，好事不这样用。当然，从一组杜撰例句概括出的要点是不可靠的。

语言工作者应接受从这个新信息源获得的任何东西。**毫无疑问，新的语言教材越来越依靠来自庞大的语料库的证据**。几年后，教师们会回顾以往如何使用毫无生命力的例句并为此而感到诧异。**本书与 Cobuild 词典系列和英语语法系列一样，让读者对真实例句的利用有初步的体验。**

约翰·辛克莱 (John Sinclair)
Cobuild 主编
现代英语教授
英国伯明翰大学

使用指南

《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》既可供便捷查阅，又可供深入研究。例如 'before' 与特定时态的连用收入第五章，'may' 与 'might' 的意义区别在第六章讨论。本书还可以更加广泛地加以使用，比如查阅第二章可以了解形容词作用的详细资料，查阅第三章可了解分句关涉性的大量内容。

为了尽量卓有成效地用好此书，我们采用了各种不同的方法，以便读者查到需要的信息。

正文安排

本书正文分十章。前两章讨论名词词组，第三、四、五章讲动词词组，第六章写副词、介词，第七章介绍转述，第八章论述分句与句子的连接，第九、十章处理连续语篇。第 xliv 页上的"Cobuild 语法要图"说明正文的主要部分，以及每章讨论的不同词类。

每章包括一系列主题，每个主题再分成几部分，在右上方页眉处重复每个主题，以便查阅。每节都编了号，例如第一章从 1.1 节到 1.236 节，第二章从 2.1 节到 2.320 节等等。

这种编号系统便于读者查阅不同但又相关的语言要点。全书含有大量相互参照，指出讨论某一个主题的主要章节，或者指出提供详细信息的另一章节。

大多数节次在正文左侧还有标题栏，用三、四个词说明本节的要意，特别是本节所要解释的语法结构。无左侧标题的节次对在下一节要详细讨论的内容先作概述，或者对上节左栏标题概括的主题作进一步说明。例如第一章 1.119 节的左侧标题有"团性名词"，而在 1.120 与 1.121 节却没有左侧标题，理由是这两节仍讲解团性名词。

有些左栏标题并不具体说明节次的要意，而是提供另一种信息。这些标题包括"注意"、"用法提示"和"产出性特征"。

"注意"着重指出我们认为容易出问题的语法特征，因为这些特征与人们的预想不一，例如有些特征与其他语言不同。

"用法提示"为特殊的单词或数量少的一组词提供信息。这些信息十分重要，但尚不能概括为语法规则，故"用法提示"能帮助读者了解哪些特征与大量词语有关，哪些特征对理解特定的单词有关。

"产出性特征"表示刚解释过的规则在英语中可自由应用于大量单词。例如，动词的现在分词几乎都可以变成形容词，用在名词前面，因此，即在左侧注出"产出性特

征”的标题。只要注意这些特征，就可以创造性地、独到地运用所给的规则，从而更加自如地用英语表达。“产出性特征”在前言中详述。

多数语法条文后均附有例句，说明有关结构的用法，例句均取自 Cobuild 语料库 (Bank of English)，说明该结构在口语或书面语中是如何自然运用的。因此，例句提供了某些结构的典型用法，与其经常连用的词以及可能出现的上下文的重要信息。有关例句及其用法见第 x 页的例句说明。

凡在适当之处，本书的语法条文从后面都列有说明该语法要点的典型词表。例如，在第三章，我们指出许多意义相同的动词可能是及物的又可能是不及物的，接着又在该条文后列出常有此种用法的动词表。

词表当有助于提高运用英语的意识，因为它超越实例所含同类其他词的范围，并说明如果所述语言要点涉及词汇的数量少，就如数收录，如果涉及的数量多，就收录最常见的词。这些词表可用来扩大词汇量，确保正确使用新学到的单词 。

附加部分

除了正文之外，本书还附加了若干部分，使读者能充分利用本书。附录内容简介如下：

前言

前言阐明本书所据的原则，说明功能与结构之间的紧密联系是本书的基础，同时说明本书所采用的功能方法类型。

英汉语法术语对照表

表中解释语法术语的意义，主要是本书系统使用的术语，同时兼顾其他语法书用的术语，并在适当时候提及它们与本书用法的相互参照。例如，本书论及“名词词组”，而在其他书中称“名词短语”或“名词性词组”。表中三个术语全部列出，而把解释放在“名词词组”一条。

汉英语法术语对照表

此部分按中文笔画数编排语法术语，方便读者从中文入手认识语法术语。

Cobuild 语法要图

要图以表格形式说明本书的内容，表明从单词到词组，词组到分句，分句到句子的展开，专门讨论各词类的章节，以及各章中的主要话语或语篇主题。例如，第四章

着重讲分句层次上的“语气”、“否定”和“情态”，因为它们通过动词词组来表现。本章讨论的单词有情态动词和 ‘not’、‘never’ 等否定词。全章说明对分句陈述内容的不同表态方法，故为该章主题。

目录

本书附有总目录及各章的题目，使读者对本书的结构一目了然。各章开头有详细的分目录，列出全部标题。

参考部分

书后面提供便于使用的参考指南，将词汇信息汇于一处，说明下列各组词的构成：

名词的复数

形容词的比较级与最高级

由形容词构成的 ‘-ly’ 副词

副词的比较级与最高级

时态

被动语态

不规则动词

参考部分还有其他题目，如开头是发音指南、数词表及数字读法。

索引

索引是本书全部内容的综合词表，主要包括本书讨论的语法与功能主题，以及这些主题分成的各大部分，还有用于某词类用作举例的字句、本书及其他书中的语法术语等。

译 序

功能、功能语法和功能教学语法

语法 (grammar) 一词有三层含义：(1) 语法，指语言所固有的遣词造句以达意的规则；(2) 语法学，指研究这些规则的学问；(3) 语法书，指说明这些规则的著作，即语法书。英语语法也相应地有这三层含义。

语法可分为传统语法和现代语法。现代语法又根据其理论和方法分为形式语法和功能语法。形式语法把语言看作可以孤立地进行考察的符号系统，并着重于描写和解释这系统；**功能语法将语言和语言以外统称为“社会”的外部世界联系起来加以研究，说明语言在社会交际中发挥什么作用**，或者说明人们在社会环境中运用语言可以做些什么事。形式语法把语言看成是一套规则；**功能语法则把语言看成是表达意义的手段**。语法又根据目的分为理论语法和教学语法。前者阐明语法理论，后者则为不同层次的语言教学服务。《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》(*Collins Cobuild English Grammar*)就是一本用功能观点编著，帮助英语学习者学好英语，同时为英语教学服务的教学语法。

功能与结构

什么叫功能？不同的学派对功能有不同的理解。传统语法和形式语法所指的功能主要是句法功能，强调句子成份，如主语、宾语、定语在句子结构中的关系和作用。**功能语法强调语言运用，认为功能是对语言使用的概括**。根据功能语法，语言有表意 (ideational)、人际 (interpersonal) 和组篇 (textual) 三大功能 (metafunction)。表意功能指人们可以运用语言表达外部世界获得的经验和个人内心世界的体验；人际功能是指人们用语言与别人沟通交流，从而建立和维持人际关系；组篇功能指人们运用语言去组成口头的或书面的语篇。这三大功能是语言的三大语义成份，主要体现在分句(clause)中。例如把分句作为信息单位，其中主位 (theme) 是传达信息的出发点，述位(rheme) 是其余说明的部分。例如 ‘Peter is a linguist’ 可以看成是一则信息 (message)，其中 Peter 是信息的出发点，叫主位，‘is a linguist’ 说明 ‘Peter’，是述位。由此可以看出功能语法中的功能着眼于表达意义。**功能语法所指的功能是语义功能**。实际上，从功能语法的观点看，意义就是语言在不同层次上的描述功能。

语言有形式和意义两个方面，在语言使用中两者是不可分隔的。语法是意义和形式、功能和结构的中介，体现这两者之间极为复杂的关系。在描写语法时，可以从意

义、功能出发，也可以从形式、结构出发。形式语法把结构放在首位，从结构推导功能、意义。**功能语法则从意义、功能出发探讨语法结构**。李奇 (G. Leech)和斯法特维克 (J. Svartvik) 编写的《交际英语语法》*(A Communicative English Grammar)* 实际上是一本功能语法著作。它着眼于英语的运用，从意义出发归纳英语语法。该书把意义组合分为四个层次：A.概念 (Concept)；B.信息、现实和信念 (information, reality and belief)；C.情态、感情和态度 (mood, emotion and attitude)；D.连贯话语中的意义 (meanings in connected discourse)。《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》则从概念 (concept)、命题 (proposition)、环境 (circumstances)、展开 (development) 和语篇 (text) 等语义出发，探讨语法结构：从"概念"出发讨论了名词词组以及使概念更加精确的形容词、数词等；从"命题"出发描写了信息构成以及与之相对应的语法结构 —— 分句；"环境"则与语言结构中的时、体和状语相对应，从而把分句扩展到简单句；"展开"则把简单句扩展到复合句；与"语篇"这一个语义单位相对应的是篇章连贯 (coherence) 和取得篇章连贯的若干手段。**《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》所说的"本书的根据就是结构与功能的重要对应"**，其实际内容就在于此。

如果我们把《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》和《交际英语语法》作一个比较，就会发现在《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》里，语义功能逐步扩大：由概念而命题，由命题而语篇，而语法结构则由词到分句，由分句到简单句、复合句，又由复合句到语篇连贯。这样不仅把功能与结构的对应关系交代得很清楚，而且有系统地归纳了英语语法的基本内容。而在《交际英语语法》中，与 B 和 C 相对应的语言结构是句 (sentence) 和话 (utterance)。这两者从形式上难以区分。**《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》确实眉目清楚，可以看出语义功能通过什么语言形式体现，语法结构又能体现什么功能**。

必须说明《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》是一本帮助英语学习者学习及英语老师教学的功能语法书，所以尽管该书从语义功能出发，但在**描写结构时着眼于句法功能**。在功能语法中，结构是功能成份借以组合的手段。信息结构 (information structure) 是已知(given) 和新知 (new) 两个功能成份构成的。主位结构 (thematic structure) 是以主位和述位构成的。《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》虽然从命题出发谈信息构成 (message building) 但没有描述主位结构和信息结构，也没有沿用传统语法中主语和谓语的划分，而使用了主语、宾语、补语、状语等表示句法功能的术语。有的地方，本书虽着眼于语义功能，但仍沿用传统术语。如本书主语的定义是主语位于句首，是人们表述的对象。实际上主语不一定位于句首，如 'A lot you know about it! Talent, Mr. Micawber has; capital, Mr. Micawber has not. Intelligent he is, intellectual he is not. Frankly, you are wrong'。在这些句子里位于句首的都不是主语。这里作者用"主语"代替了"主位"，便于读者接受。

语法和词汇

语言学家斯威特 (H. Sweet) 对语法和词汇各自的领域作了这样的规定：语法研究一般事实 (general facts)，词汇处理具体事实 (special facts)。韩礼德 (M. A. K. Halliday)认为语言中的基本原则是：比较一般的意义由语法表达，比较具体的意义则通过词汇表达。不过他说明语法和词汇之间并无严格的界限，这两者之间的差别是程度的差别，词汇是最为精细的语法。叶斯柏森 (Otto Jespersen) 早就指出 'She made him a good husband' 和 'She made him a good wife' 两句结构不同，这是因为两句分别用了两个不同的词：'husband' 和 'wife'，可见词对语法结构的影响。此外，词、词组和分句有时可以互换。如 'that'、'this'、'which' 等代词可以表示分句和句，甚至一段的内容；就看名词化的结果：'He arrived' 在下面例子中可由 'his arrival' 替代：'He died on the day after his arrival' 由此就可以明白词与语法结构的密切关系了。

长期以来，由于语法与词汇分家，语法规则对学习者掌握英语的帮助有限。这是语法教学不能取得理想效果的主要原因之一。语法规则有两种：(1) 词形变化；(2) 句子的结构。(1) 词形变化：体现词形变化的语法规则，如 'He works' 第三人称单数动词得加 's'，'children' 则为 'child' 的复数形式。这类规则只能熟记，在反复运用中加以掌握。(2) 句子的结构：涉及句子结构的语法规则，这一类语法规则有其使用范围，而这范围被句子结构中某主要位置上可能出现的词所划定。例如(1) 'It is kind of you to say so.' (2) 'You are kind to say so.' (3) 'It is kind for you to say so.' 第(1)句体现的语法规则的使用范围，是由可能出现在 'kind' 这一个位置上的形容词所决定。我们可以说 'It is necessary for him to say so'。但不能说 *'He is necessary to say so' 或 *'It is necessary of him to say so' (* 表示含错误的句子)。这说明并非所有形容词都可用于这一种结构。可以出现在 'kind' 这一个位置上的常用形容词有：

bad	decent	nice	thoughtful
brave	foolish	polite	unkind
careful	friendly	rude	wise
careless	good	sensible	wrong
clever	grateful	silly	
considerate	honest	strange	
cruel	impolite	stupid	

这些词划定了由这一种结构体现的语法规则。又比如第(4)句 He said,' "John will be here with us." ' 究竟有哪些动词可以出现在 'said' 的位置上引导出直引分句呢？《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》列举了 53 个动词，其中包括 'assure'、'complain'、'plead'、

'respond' 和 'warn' 。此外还列举了 14 个表示说话方式的动词，如 'murmur'、'yell'、'shriek' 和 'wail' 。**这是《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》的特点之一，所以成了名副其实的"词类的语法"。所谓"词类"并非名词、代词等不同类别的词，而是具有某种具体语法特征，可以出现在某结构中的一组词**，如可以省略宾语的动词，如 'borrow'、'film'、'smoke' 等，可接 'that'- 从句的形容词，如 'pleased'、'worried' 等。这样《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》**就把语法和词汇联系了起来，兼顾了一般意义和具体意义的表达，为语法规则的应用划定了范围，使学习者不仅熟悉了语法规则而且了解语法规则的应用范围，举一反三，触类旁通、灵活运用，避免学习了规则却一用就错的情况。实际上《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》将横向组合 (Syntagmatic relations) 和纵向聚合 (Paradigmatic relations) 联系了起来，学习者可以根据交际的需要为特定的句法结构选择适当的词，或者选择适当的词放入适当的结构，以表达思想、相互交流，逐渐达到自由表达的学习目标。**

产出性特征

作为交际工具，语言为社会服务。人们运用语言表达思想、进行交流。在这过程中，人们必须根据不同的情景，不同的交际目的造出新的句子。这种交际需要就赋予语言一种产出性的特征，也就是能无限制地创造新句子的特征。所谓新句子，是指根据遣词造句的规则，适应情景而组成的句子，而不是凭记忆背出来的句子。《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》**所列的许多词表，使人们可以根据需要在利用不同的结构时选用词表中的词，造出许多新的英语句子，传达各种不同的信息。这实际上是语言产出性特征的表现。**但是《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》**中的产出性特征的含义比较具体，指适用于某一种开放词类的语法点**。所谓开放词类是指具有相同语法特征和结构特征的一类词，其词数可以不断增加。所谓语法点是指与结构有关的语法特征。例如 1.23 节在 'Zebra are a more difficult prey' 等例句之后指出：虽然某些 (some) 动物、鸟类、树木和植物的名称常以单数形式表示复数意义，事实上所有 (all) 这类名称皆可以这样用。又如 2.179 节在 'the car door'、'my trouser pocket'、'a family dinner' 等例证之后，作者指出用名词作修饰语在英语中非常普通。事实上只要上下文使其意义明确，几乎任何名词都可以用来修饰另一个名词。对于这样的语法点，《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》特别附加"产出性特征"的标题以提醒读者注意。

在有关语篇的部分，《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》指出：人们可以使用几乎任何名词指称上文、上文内容和事件，有时甚至可以指称人。一场球赛失利可以概括为 'tragedy' 或 'farce' 并加以返指。英语中有许多名词可以这样用，如 'point'、'remark' 和

'message' 等。究竟用什么名词返指取决于说话人对上文或上文内容的态度。这也是产出性特征，只不过是语篇层次上的产出性特征。

上面说过，**《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》提供了引出直引分句的动词词表**。一个是 'say' 一类动词；另一个是表示以不同方式说话的动词，如 'scream'。7.18 节则提出了与此有关的产出性特征。作者指出在这两个词表的基础上，人们为了取得特殊效果还可以用表示绘声绘色说话的动词，例如 'bark' 或者表示面部表情的动词，如 'grin'。这样，直引动词的词表就扩大了。理论上讲这是一个开放的词类，但实际可使用的词不可能太多，而且没有名词作修饰语那样灵活，意义也不会那么不确定。

英语产出性特征更明显地表现在构词方面。这是词汇层次上的产出性特征，《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》也作了交代。如 2.29 节所指出的，可以将 '-ful' 加在任何单位词之后，构成新词，如 'armful' 和 'mouthful'。值得一提的是《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》还注意到某一类语言品种所特有的产出性特征。10.72 节说明将 '-wise' 加在表示方面的名词之后，可以构成新的副词以避免 'with regard to' 之类的短语，如 'money-wise'。这是美国英语的产出性特征。**了解英语的产出性特征并加以利用，无疑有利于提高使用英语的能力。这也是《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》的许多特点之一**。

语法和语篇

功能语法把语言和语境联系起来。语境的领域 (field)、格调 (tenor) 和程式 (mode) 决定语篇，并为语法所体现，所以功能语法把语篇作为语法的内容。另一方面功能语法强调语言使用，而语言使用的单位不是词，也不是句，而是语篇。语篇作为语义单位可以体现为一个词、一句话、一篇短文、一次讲话以至一本书。所以一本供学习用的功能教学语法书理应包括语篇。语法的单位由小到大，包括词素、词、分句和句子。但是许多语法现象难以只凭一句句子解释清楚，必须考虑句与句之间的关系才能加以说明。《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》的"Cobuild 语法要图"中，作者纵向列举了语言单位，句子之上是话语 (discourse)，而横向列出了本书讲解语法的出发点，即语义范畴，指从"概念"到"语篇"(text)。事实上无论在语篇语言学 (text linguistics) 还是话语分析 (discourse analysis) 的研究中，语篇和话语两个术语已经可以互用。**本书在总体安排和语法事实的具体处理中仍持功能语法观点。这样处理有利于提高读者用词、造句和谋篇的能力**。与语篇相应的是语篇结构，组篇 (texture) 中取得粘合 (cohesion) 和连贯 (coherence) 的若干手段。《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》以两章的篇幅讨论语篇：第九章讨论语篇构成，第十章讨论信息的结构。人们使用英语，不论是说还是写，都必须连贯。要取得连贯，语篇内部就必须粘合。粘合的手段很多，《Collins Cobuild 英语语

法大全》集中介绍了指称(reference)和省略 (ellipsis)，把替代 (substitution) 看作指称的一种。请看下面的例句：

*Here's your room. I'm afraid **it's** a bit untidy.*
*The women were asked to leave. Some of **them** refused.*
*There's a lot of material there. You can use some of **that**.*
'Martin, what are you going to do?'
*— 'That's a good **question**, Larry.'*

以上粗体的词都以不同的方式指称上文中的某个词，词的部分含义或上文的内容，这样就使话语的不同部分粘合起来。

英语中有多种省略。并列和主从复合句中有些词可以略去。在对话中省略更为常见。例如：

*One soldier was killed and **another wounded**.*
*Some managed to vote but **most of them didn't**.*
'He's going to die, you see.'
*— '**Die**?'*
'I find that amazing.'
*— '**So do I**.'*

以上例句中，省略的词或成份可以在前面的分句或句子里找到，两者便粘合了，省略也就成了粘合的手段。《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》突破了分析单句的传统，也是值得称道的。其次，《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》根据指称方向把指称分为前指和返指，还根据指称的方式把指称分为特指和统指。这是一般语法书很少提及的。这对语篇的生成和理解都很有帮助。

在讨论信息的结构时，《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》着重说明信息焦点 (focus) 不同则使用的结构也不同，突出受影响的人或事物时用被动结构，在同一种结构中焦点的选择可通过分裂句体现，避免强调主语时可使用 'it'，引出新信息可用 'there' 等等。这些内容对一般读者并不陌生，但值得注意的是《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》是从传达信息的角度来描述这些结构的，这体现了本书的功能观点。

功能语法以实际使用的语句为描写材料，是很多语法书未能做到的。有的语法书往往用杜撰的句子说明语法现象，作语法分析。如说明句子的主语和谓语组成，所用的例句是 'Birds fly' 之类，在实际生活中会不会有人用这样的句子全然不加考虑，结果变成为语法而语法，学生虽然熟悉许多例句，但只能用以分析语法结构，却不能用以表达思想。**《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》所有例句以及例句中的词汇，都出自**

Cobuild 语料库（Bank of English），选自实际的语篇。这意味着所有例句都是操英语的人实际使用的英语，是真实的英语，在特定的情景中可加以运用，因此读者绝对可以信赖本书。《Collins Cobuild 英语语法大全》提供一般语法书从不提及的理论知识，有助读者在实际使用英语的过程中得心应手。

任绍曾

1998 年 2 月于杭州大学

后记

本书在翻译的过程中承王之光先生初译了本书语法正文前后的几个部分，吴耀南先生阅读了初稿，并提出过有益的建议，在此谨致谢忱。

英汉语法术语对照表

English-Chinese glossary of grammatical terms

使用说明：**黑体**词条表示 Cobuild 语法术语；*斜体*表示一般语法术语；具备语法功能的词汇在例句中划上底线。

abstract noun 抽象名词：
用于描述性质、思想和经历的名词。这类名词不能表示有形的或具体的事物，如 'joy'、'size'、'language'。比较 **concrete noun 具体名词**。

active voice 主动语态：
指的是 'gives'、'has made' 等动词词组形式，它们的主语是做这个动作的人或物，或对这个动作负责的人或物。比较 **passive voice 被动语态**。

adjectival clause 形容词分句：
又称 **relative clause 关系从句**。

adjective 形容词：
用于描述事物的词，涉及事物的外貌，颜色、大小等属性，如 '...a pretty blue dress'。

adjunct 附加状语：
附加于分句的词或词组，说明时间、地点或方式。另见 **sentence adjunct 句子附加状语**与 **linking adjunct 连结性附加状语**。

adverb 副词：
描述某事何时、何地、如何，或在什么情形下发生的词，如 'quickly'、'now'。副词分为程度、方式、地点、时间、持续、频度几类。**Focusing adverbs 焦点副词**也是一种。

adverbial group 副词词组：
起副词作用的词组，用于描述某事何时、何地、如何发生或在什么情形下发生，如 'in the street'、'again and again'。

adverb of degree 程度副词：
表示感觉或属性的程度或范围的副词，如 'extremely'。

adverb of duration 持续副词：
表示某事持续长短的副词，如 'briefly'。

adverb of frequency 频度副词：
表示某事发生的经常性程度的副词，如 'often'。

adverb of manner 方式副词：
表示某事发生的方式或做某事的方式的副词，如 'carefully'。

adverb of place 地点副词：
指描述位置或方向的副词，例如 'Move closer'。

adverb of time 时间副词：
描述某事何时发生的副词，例如 'I saw her yesterday'。

adverb particle 副词小品词：
用于短语动词 phrasal verb 中的副词，例如 'hide out'、'sit up' 和 'turn round'。

affirmative 肯定：
又作 **positive**。

affix 词缀：
是加在词前或词后来构成不同词的一个或一组字母，例如 'anti-racist'、'harmless'。又见 *suffix* 后缀、*prefix* 前缀。

agent 施行者：
施行动作的人。

agreement 一致：
又称 **concord**。

apostrophe s 撇号 s('s)：
名词加撇号 s('s)，表示领属，如 '...Harriet's daughter'、'...the professor's husband' 和 '...the Managing Director's secretary'。

apposition 同位：
指置于 headword 中心词后，指明或表述中心词的名词词组，例如 '...my daughter Emily'。

article 冠词：
见 definite article 定冠词、indefinite article 不定冠词。

***aspect* 体：**
表明动作在进行、重复还是已完成的动词形式。

attributive adjective 定语形容词：
指一般只用于名词前描述名词的形容词，如 'classical'、'outdoor'、'woollen'。

auxiliary verb 助动词：
动词 'be'、'have' 和 'do' 与主要动词连用，构成时态、否定句、疑问句等时叫助动词。助动词又作 auxiliary。Modals 情态动词也是助动词。

bare infinitive 不带 'to' 的不定式：
无 'to' 的动词不定式，如 'Let me think'。

base form 原形：
指词的末尾加其他字母，同时也不是过去式的动词形式，如 'walk'、'go'、'have'、'be'。原形即词典词条形式。

broad negative adverb 广义否定副词：
指包括 'barely' 与 'seldom' 在内的少数词。使用它们可使陈述几乎变成否定，例如 'I barely knew her'。

cardinal number 基数词：
用来计数的数词，例如 'one'、'seven'、'nineteen'。

***case* 格：**
名词或代词需要用不同的形式表示其在句子里作主语、宾语或是否具有领属关系，如 'I/me'、'Jim/Jim's'。

classifying adjective 类别形容词：
指明某物类别的形容词，如 'Indian'、'wooden'、'mental'。它们没有比较级和最高级。比较 qualitative adjective 属性形容词。

clause 分句：
包含动词的一组词。又见 main clause 主句与 subordinate clause 从句。

clause of manner 方式分句：
描述做某事方式的从句，通常由 'as' 或 'like' 引导，如 'She talks like her mother used to'。

cleft sentence 断裂句：
使用 'it'、'what' 或 'all' 引导的结构，用来强调主语或宾语的句子，如 'It's a hammer we need...' 和 'What we need is a hammer'。

***cohesion* 粘合：**
讲话或写文章时把前后讲的内容加以联系，如返指已经提及的事，或预指将要提及的事。

collective noun 集体名词：
指人和物集合体的名词，如 'committee' 和 'team'。

colour adjective 颜色形容词：
指称颜色的形容词，如 'red'、'blue' 和 'scarlet'。

common noun 普通名词：
指称人、物或事的名词，如 'sailor'、'computer' 和 'glass'。比较 proper noun 专有名词。

comparative 比较级：
词的末尾加 '-er' 或前面加 'more' 的形容词或副词，如 'friendlier'、'more important'、'more carefully'。

complement 补足语：
指置于 'be' 等系动词之后的名词词组或形容词。它们表述分句的主语或宾语，如 'She is a teacher...'、'She is tired...' 和 'They made her chairperson'。

complex sentence 复合句：
包含 main clause 主句和 subordinate clause 从句的句子，如 'She wasn't thinking because she was tired'。

compound 复合词：
两个或两个以上的词结合，起一个语法单位的作用，如 'self-centred' 与 'free-style' 是 compound adjectives 复合形容词；'bus stop' 与 'state of affairs' 是 compound nouns 复合名词；而 'roller-skate' 与 'dry-clean' 是 compound verbs 复合动词。

compound sentence 并列句：
由并列连词连接的两个或多个分句的句子，例如 'They picked her up and took her into the house'。

concessive clause 让步从句：
通常由 'although' 与 'while' 引起，与主句进行对比的从句，如 'Although I like her, I find her hard to talk to'。

concord 一致：
指主语与动词之间或数词、限定词与所限定的名词之间的一致关系，如 'I look/she looks...' 和 'one bell/three bells'。又作 agreement。

concrete noun 具体名词：
指称可触摸到、可看得见的物体的名词，如 'table'、'dress' 和 'flower'。比较 abstract noun 抽象名词。

conditional clause 条件从句：
通常是由 'if' 引导的从句，它是主句所述事件所依赖的条件，如 'If it rains, we'll go to the cinema...' 和 'They would be rich if they had taken my advice'。

conjunction 连词：
连接两个分句、词组或单词的词。连词分为 coordinating conjunction 并列连词和 subordinating conjunction 从属连词两种，前者连接句子中具有相同语法类型的成份，如 'and'、'but' 和 'or'。后者引导从句，如 'although' 和 'when'。

continuous tense 进行时：
指动词 'be' 的不同形式加现在分词构成的时态，如 'She was laughing...' 和 'They had been playing badminton'。又作 progressive tense。

contraction 缩约式：
助动词与 'not'、主语与助动词联结起来起一个词作用的缩写形式，例如 'aren't'、'she's'。

coordinating conjunction 并列连词：
连接具有相同语法类型的两个分句、词组或单词的词，如 'and'、'but' 和 'or'。

coordination 并列：
指具有相同语法类型的一组词的连接或具有同等重要性的分句的连接。

copula 系词：
有时用于指称动词 'be'。本书用术语 link verb 系动词。

count noun 具数名词：
可有单、复数形式的名词，例如 'dog/dogs'、'lemon/lemons' 和 'foot/feet'。又作 countable noun。

declarative mood 陈述语气：
陈述语气的句子中主语后面接动词。陈述句多使用这种语气。又可作 *indicative mood*。

***defective verb* 不完全变化动词：**
没有规则动词具有的各种屈折变化形式的动词，如所有情态动词均属此类。

defining non-finite clause 限制性非限定小句：
指位于名词词组之后的指明所谈及的人或物的分词分句，例如 'The girl wearing the red hat'。

defining relative clause 限制性关系从句：
指明所谈及的人或物的关系从句，如 'I wrote down everything that she said'。

definite article 定冠词：
限定词 'the'。

delexical verb 乏词义动词：
指本身词义空乏的动词，但在结构中与表示该结构主要意义的宾语连用，例如 'give'、'have'、'take' 常作乏词义动词用，如 'She gave a small cry...' 和 'I've had a bath'。

demonstrative 指示词：
用于名词前的 'this'、'that'、'these'、'those'，如 '...this woman' 和 '...that tree'。它们还用作代词，如 'That looks nice...' 和 'This is fun'。

dependent clause 从句：
又作 subordinate clause。

determiner 限定词：
指包括 'the'、'a'、'some' 和 'my' 在内的一组词，用于名词词组的开头。

direct object 直接宾语：
在主动句中表示受动词的动作影响的人或物的名词词组为直接宾语，如 'She wrote her name...' 和 'I shut the windows'。

direct speech 直接引语：
引用原说话人所说的话，不改变时态和人称等。

disjunct 评注状语：
即 sentence adjunct **句子附加状语**。

ditransitive verb 双及物动词：
可同时跟间接宾语与直接宾语的动词，如 'give'、'take' 和 'sell'；'She gave me a kiss'。

dynamic verb 动态动词：
描述动作的动词，例如 'run'、'give' 和 'slice'。比较 stative verb **静态动词**。

'-ed' form -ed 形式：
即 past participle **过去分词**。

ellipsis 省略：
指在上下文清楚的情况下省去某些词。

emphasizing adjective 强调形容词：
指强调对事物感觉程度的形容词，例如 'complete'、'utter' 和 'total'；又例如 'I feel a complete fool'。

ergative verb 双向动词：
用作及物动词和不及物动词使用时意义相同的动词。在不及物用法中，及物动词的宾语用作为不及物动词的主语，例如 'He had boiled a kettle...' 和 'The kettle had boiled'。

exclamation 感叹句：
突然高声说出以表示惊奇、愤怒等的词或句子，如 'Oh God!'。

finite 限定式：
限定动词按人称、时态、语气进行屈折变化，不是动词不定式或分词。

first person 第一人称：
见 person **人称**。

focusing adverb 焦点副词：
表示所涉及的至关重要的事物的句子附加状语，如 'only'、'mainly' 和 'especially'。

fronting 前置：
将不是分句主语的主题置于句首的结构，如 'Lovely hair she had'。

gender 性：
指区别 'he' 和 'she' 等阳性和阴性词的语法术语。

genitive 领属格：
名词的领属格形式，如 'man's' 和 'boys''。

gerund 动名词：
即 '-ing' noun（'-ing' **名词**）。

gradable 可分级的：
可分级形容词能与 'very' 等词连用，说明所指的人或物具有某种属性的程度，如 'very boring' 和 'less helpful'。

group noun 群体名词：
即 collective noun **集体名词**。

head 中心词：
即 headword。

headword 中心词：
名词词组中的主要词，例如 'a soft downy cushion with tassels'。

idiom 习语：
由两个或多个词构成的一组词。若按其中各个词的词义就无法理解，例如 'to kick the bucket' 和 'to run wild'。

if-clause 'if'-从句：
条件从句或转述 'yes/no' 疑问句的从句。

imperative mood 祈使语气：
祈使语气的句子使用动词原形但不用主语，如 'Come here...' 和 'Take two tablets every four hours...' 和 'Enjoy yourself'。

impersonal 'it' 非人称 'it'：
用来引出事实或用于断裂结构时，'it' 作非人称主语，如 'It's raining...' 和 'It was you who asked'。

indefinite article 不定冠词：
限定词 'a' 和 'an'。

indefinite place adverb 不定地点副词：
包括 'anywhere'、'somewhere' 等一组副词，它们笼统地或含糊地指位置和场所。

indefinite pronoun 不定代词：
包括 'someone' 和 'anything' 等一组代词，它们泛指人或物。

indicative mood 陈述语气：
又作 declarative mood。

indirect object 间接宾语：
与及物动词连用的另一个宾语，表示某人某物从某动作中受益，或由此而得到某物，如 'She gave me a rose'。

indirect question 间接问句：
又作 reported question **被转述问句**。

indirect speech 间接引语：
又作 reported speech **被转述引语**。

infinitive 不定式：
指动词的原形。前面常用 'to'，例如 '(to) take'、'(to) see' 和 '(to) bring'。

inflection 屈折变化：
表示时态、数、格，比较等级差别的词形变化。

'-ing' adjective '-ing' 形容词：
与动词现在分词同形的形容词，例如 'a smiling face...' 和 '...a winning streak'。

'-ing' form '-ing' 形式：
见 present participle **现在分词**。

'-ing' noun '-ing' 名词：
指与动词现在分词同形的名词，例如 'Swimming is good for you'。

intensifier 加强语：
用来加强形容词语气的次前置修饰语，如 'very' 和 'exceptionally'。

interjection 感叹句：
又作 exclamation。

interrogative adverb 疑问副词：
指用于询问的 'how'、'when'、'where' 和 'why' 等副词。

interrogative mood 疑问语气：
在疑问语气的句子里动词词组的一部分或全部位于主语之前。提问时多用此语气。

interrogative pronoun 疑问代词：
指用于疑问句的 'who'、'whose'、'whom'、'what' 和 'which' 等代词。

intransitive verb 不及物动词：
指谈论动作或事件时，只涉及主语，没有宾语的动词，如 'She arrived...' 和 'I was yawning'。

inversion 倒装：
改变句子词序，如改变主语和动词的词序。

irregular 不规则的：
不按屈折变化的常用规则变化。不规则动词的过去式和/或过去分词的构成不以 '-ed' 结尾。

lexical verb 实义动词：
又作 main verb **主要动词**。

linking adjunct 连结性附加状语：
引出对句子进行评述或强调的句子附加状语，如 'moreover' 和 'besides'。

link verb 系动词：
连接句子主语与补足语的动词，例如 'be'、'become'、'seem' 和 'appear'。又作 copula 系词。

main clause 主句：
不依附于另一个分句，也不是另一个分句的一部分。这类分句是主句。

main verb 主要动词：
除助动词以外的所有动词。又用作 lexical verb 实义动词。

mass noun 团性名词：
（在本书中）指通常不可数的名词，不过，当它指某物的数量或种类时，也可以作可数名词用，例如 'two sugars...' 和 '...cough medicines'。

modal 情态动词：
与主要动词连用的助动词，表示特定态度，如可能性、义务、预测、推理等。'Can'、'could'、'may'、'might' 等为情态动词。又作 modal auxiliary 情态助动词或 modal verb 情态动词。

modifier 前置修饰语：
用于名词前的词或词组，如 '...a beautiful sunny day...' 和 '...a psychology conference'。

mood 语气：
英语主要有三种语气：陈述、疑问及祈使语气。还有一种叫虚拟语气，但它不如其他语气常见。见 declarative mood 陈述语气、interrogative mood 疑问语气、imperative mood 祈使语气及subjunctive 虚拟式各条。

negative sentence 否定句：
使用 'not'、'never' 和 'no-one' 等词来表示某物空缺或它的反面，或说明某事并非如此的句子叫否定句，如 'I don't know you...' 和 'I'll never forget'。其反义语是 positive sentence。

negative word 否定词：
指表达否定意义的 'never' 和 'not' 等词。

***nominal group* 名词性词组：**
即 noun group 名词词组。

non-defining relative clause 非限制性关系从句：
描述某人或某物但对所述的人或物不起确指作用的关系从句，如 'That's Mary, who was at university with me'。比较 defining relative clause 限制性关系从句。

non-finite 非限定式：
动词的非限定式指不定式和分词，例如 'to take'、'taking' 和 'taken'。

noun 名词：
指称人、物和感觉、属性等抽象概念的词，如 'woman'、'Harry' 和 'guilt'。

noun group 名词词组：
充当主语、补足语、宾语或介词宾语的一组词。又作 *nominal group* 名词性词组或 *noun phrase* 名词性短语。

noun modifier 名词前置修饰语：
用于另一个名词之前，充当形容词角色的名词，如 '...a car door...' 和 '...a steel works'。

number 数：
区别单数与复数的手段，如 'flower/flowers' 和 'that/those'。又见 cardinal number 基数词与 ordinal number 序数词。

object 宾语：
主语之外指称人或物的名词词组。这些人或物与动词动作有关或受动词动作的影响。另见 direct object 直接宾语与 indirect object 间接宾语。介词后面也跟宾语。

object complement 宾语补足语：
与 'make' 和 'find' 等动词连用并描述其宾语的词，如 'It made me tired...' 和 'I found her asleep'。

ordinal number 序数词：
表示事物次序或序列的数词，如 'first'、'fifth'、'tenth' 和 'hundredth'。

participial adjective 分词形容词：
即 '-ing' 形容词。

participle 分词：
指构成各种时态的动词形式。详见 past participle 过去分词与present participle现在分词。

partitive 单位词：
描述特定事物的数量的词，例如 'pint'、'loaf' 和 'portion'。

partitive structure 量词结构：
用 'of' 将量词或单位词与名词词组连接起来的结构， 如 'many of them'、'a bottle of milk'。

passive voice 被动语态：
指 'was given'、'were taken'、'had been made' 等动词形式，其主语是受该动作影响的人或物。比较 active voice 主动语态。

past form 过去式：
常以 '-ed' 结尾的动词形式，用于简单过去时。

past participle 过去分词：
指 'seen'、'broken' 及 'given' 等动词形式。该形式用来构成完成时和被动语态，有时也作形容词用。特别是作形容词用时，又称 '-ed' form。

past tense 过去时：
描述过去发生的动作或事件的时态。详见 tense 时态。

perfect tense 完成时：
Have 加过去分词构成的时态，如 'I have met him...' 和 'We had won'。

performative verb 行为动词：
有一类动词，当说话人使用它们时，这些动词明确说明说话人的行为。这类动词叫行为动词，如 'apologize'、'resign' 和 'christen'。

person 人称：
用于指称话语参与者三方的术语。他们是第一人称（说话人或作者）；第二人称（受话人或读者）和第三人称（谈及的人或物）。

personal pronoun 人称代词：
像 'I'、'you'、'me' 等一组代词，用于泛指谈及的人或物。

phase 级阶：
在句子中使用两个动词来谈论两个密切联系的过程或事件的结构，如 'She helped to clean the house...' 和 'They remember buying the tickets'。

phrasal verb 短语动词：
动词与副词和/或介词连用构成具有单一意义的动词，如 'back down'、'hand over' 和 'look forward to'。

plural 复数：
指一个以上的人或物的形式，如 'women' 和 'dogs'。

plural noun 复数名词：
只用作复数形式的名词，如 'trousers'、'scissors' 和 'vermin'。

positive sentence 肯定句：
不含否定词的句子。

possessive 领属格：
指领属的结构，如 'your'、'Jerry's' 和 'mine'。

possessive determiner 物主限定词：
指 'my'、'your' 和 'their' 等限定词。又作 possessive adjective。

possessive pronoun 物主代词：
指 'yours'、'hers'、'his'、'ours' 和 'theirs' 等代词。

postdeterminer 后位限定词：
位于限定词之后、其他形容词之前的少数形容词，如 'certain' 和 'remaining'。

predeterminer 前位限定词：
位于限定词之前的词，如 '...all the boys...'、'...double the trouble...' 和 '...such a mess'。

predicate 谓语：
说明句子主语的成份。

predicative adjective 表语形容词：
指一般只用于 'be' 等系动词之后的形容词，如 'alive'、'asleep' 和 'sure'。比较 attributive adjective 定语形容词。

prefacing structure 引导结构：
用来预示将说的话，并对之加以归类或给予标记，如 'The rule is ...'、'The only solution is...' 和 'What we need is ...'

prefix 前缀：
加在词首构成新词的单个字母或一组字母，如 'semi-circular' 中的 'semi-'。比较 *suffix* 后缀与 *affix* 词缀。

premodifier 前置修饰语：
即 modifier。

preposition 介词：
后面总是跟有名词词组或 '-ing' 形式的词，如 'by'、'with' 和 'from' 等。

prepositional phrase 介词短语：
由介词及其宾语构成的结构，如 'on the table' 和 'by the sea'。

present participle 现在分词：
以 '-ing' 结尾的动词形式，用于构成动词时态或充当形容词。又作 '-ing'-form '-ing' 形式。

present tense 现在时：
描写现在发生的事或现存情况的时态。

productive feature 产出性特征：
用于开放类词的语法特点。详见前言。

progressive tense 进行时：
又作 continuous tense。

pronoun 代词：
代替名词词组的词，用于不愿直接指称人或物时，如 'it'、'you' 和 'none'。

proper noun 专有名词：
专有名词指某人、某地、某机构的名字，如 'Nigel'、'Edinburgh' 和 'Christmas'。比较 common noun 普通名词。

purpose clause 目的从句：
由 'in order to' 或 'so that' 引导的分句，如 'I came here in order to ask you out to dinner'。

qualifier 后置修饰语：
指名词词组中位于中心词之后的词或词组，如 '...a book with a blue cover... the shop on the corner'。

qualitative adjective 属性形容词：
表示属性并可分级的形容词，如 'funny'、'intelligent' 和 'small'。比较 classifying adjective 类别形容词。

quantifier 量词：
以 'of' 结尾不确指某物数量的短语，如 'some of'、'a lot of' 和 'a little bit'。

question 问句：
将动词置于主语之前的结构，用于询问某人某事，如 'Have you any money?'。又作 *interrogative* 疑问句。

question tag 附加疑问：
以助动词加代词组成的结构，用于 tag question 附加疑问句的句尾。

quote structure 直引结构：
不加改动引用说话人原话的结构，如 'She said ,"I'll be late"'。比较 report structure 间引结构。

reason clause 原因从句：
常由 'because'、'since' 或 'as' 引导的从句，如 'Since you're here, we'll start'。

reciprocal pronoun 相互代词：
代词 'each other' 与 'one another'，用来表示两个人做同一件事或两个人感觉相同，如 'They loved each other'。

reciprocal verb 相互动词：
描述两个人相互做同一个动作的动词，如 'They met in the street...' 和 'He met her yesterday'。

reflexive pronoun 反身代词：
指 'myself'、'themselves' 等以 '-self' 结尾的代词。当受动词动作影响的人与施行者为同一个人时，它们作动词的宾语。

reflexive verb 反身动词：
指一般与反身代词连用的动词，如 'shave yourself' 和 'pride yourself on'。

relative clause 关系从句：
详述主句提及的人或物的从句。又见 defining relative clause 限制性关系从句、non-defining relative clause 非限制性关系从句。

relative pronoun 关系代词：
'Who'、'which' 等 'wh'- 词，用于引导关系从句，如 'the girl who was carrying the bag'。

reported clause 被转述从句：
指间引结构中转述某人所说内容的那个部分，如 'She said that I couldn't see her'。

reported question 被转述问句：
用间引结构转述，而不是引用说话人原来的问句。又作 *indirect question* 间接问句。

reported speech 被转述引语：
用间引结构转述，而不是引用说话人原话的引语。又作 *indirect speech* 间接引语。

reporting clause 转述分句：
包含转述动词的分句，是用来引述某人所说的话，例如 'They asked if I could come'。

reporting verb 转述动词：
描述人们所说或人们所想的动词，如 'suggest'、'say' 及 'wonder'。

report structure 间引结构：
用被转述从句转述某人所说而非重复原话的结构，如 'She told me she'd be late'。比较 quote structure 直引结构。

result clause 结果从句：
由 'so that' 引导的从句，指出某事产生的结果，如 'The house was severely damaged, so that it is now uninhabitable'。

rhetorical question 修辞疑问句：
用来评述而非获取信息的问句，例如 'Oh, isn't it silly?'

second person 第二人称：
见 person 人称。

semi-modal 半情态动词：
指动词 'dare'、'need' 和 'used to'。其功能颇像 *modal verb* 情态动词。

sentence 句子：
表示陈述、疑问或命令的一组词。句子通常含动词和主语。它可以是简单句，由一个分句组成；也可以是复合句，由两个或多个分句组成。书写句子时，句首要大写，句末用句号、问号或感叹号。

sentence adjunct 句子附加状语：
修饰整个分句而非某个句子成份的附加状语，如 'We possibly have to wait and see'。另见 linking adjunct 连结性附加状语。

's' form 's' 形式：
动词原形的末尾加 's'，用于简单现在时。

simple tense 简单时态：
不用助动词构成的时态，如 'I waited...' 和 'She sang'。

singular 单数：
用来表示一个人或一件物件的形式，如 'a woman' 和 'a dog'。比较 plural 复数。

singular noun 单数名词：
一般用作单数形式的名词，例如 'sun'、'business' 及 'jumble'。

specific determiner 特指限定词：
特指是指用名词词组表示谈话双方都知道的人或物，'the' 是最常见的特指限定词。

***split infinitive* 分裂不定式**：
指在 'to' 与动词原形之间插入了一个词的不定式，如 'to boldly go where no man has gone before'。

***stative verb* 静态动词**：
描述状态的动词，例如 'be'、'live' 和 'know'。比较 *dynamic verb* 动态动词。

***strong verb* 强变化动词**：
即 *irregular verb* 不规则动词。

subject 主语：
在句子中说明动词所表示的动作是谁做的名词词组，如 'We were going shopping'。

subjunctive 虚拟式：
在某些语言中用来表示祝愿、希望、怀疑等态度的动词形式。英语中虚拟语气不太常用，主要见于条件从句，如 'if I were you...'。

submodifier 次前置修饰语：
用于形容词或副词前加强或削弱其意义的另一个副词，如 '...very interesting...' 和 '...quite quickly'。

subordinate clause 从句：
由 'because'、'while' 等从属连词引导的分句，它们必须与主句连用。

***substitution* 替代：**
指的是代词与其他一些词的特殊用法，这些词用来取代整个分句或分句的一部分，如 'Are you going to the party?' – 'I hope so'。

***suffix* 后缀：**
指加在词的末尾构成不同的词、时态、格等的一个或一组字母，如 'slowly'、'Heidi's'。比较 *affix* 词缀与 *prefix* 前缀。

superlative 最高级：
指以 '-est' 结尾或前面加 'most' 的形容词或者副词，最高级形容词如 'thinnest'、'quickest'；最高级副词如 'most wisely'。

tag question 附加疑问句：
陈述句后加助动词再加 question tag 附加疑问句，如 'She's quiet, isn't she?'

tense 时态：
表明所指是过去、现在或将来的动词形式。

future 将来时，使用 'will' 或 'shall' 加动词原形表示将来事件，如 'She will come tomorrow'。

future continuous 将来进行时，使用 'will be' 或 'shall be' 加现在分词表示将来事件，如 'She will be going soon'。

future perfect 将来完成时，使用 'will have' 或 'shall have' 加过去分词表示将来事件，如 'I shall have finished tomorrow'。

future perfect continuous 将来完成进行时，使用 'will' 或 'shall' 加 'have been' 加现在分词表示将来事件，例如 'I will have been walking for three hours by then'。

past 过去时，使用过去式表示过去事件，如 'They waited'。

past continuous 过去进行时，'was' 或 'were' 加现在分词，通常表示过去事件，如 'They were worrying about it yesterday'。

past perfect 过去完成时，'had' 加上过去分词来表示过去事件，例如 'She had finished'。

past perfect continuous 过去完成进行时，'had been' 加现在分词表示过去事件，如 'He had been waiting for hours'。

present 现在时，使用原形与 's' 形式，通常表示现在事件，如 'I like bananas...'、'My sister hates them'。

present continuous 现在进行时，'be' 的简单现在式加现在分词表示现在事件，如 'Things are improving'。

present perfect 现在完成时，'have' 的简单现在式加过去分词表示过去发生现在依然存在的事件，如 'She has loved him for ten years'。

present perfect continuous 现在完成进行时，'have been' 和 'has been' 加现在分词表示过去发生现在依然存在的事件，如 'We have been sitting here for hours'。

'that'-clause 'that'-从句：
由 'that' 引导的从句，主要用于转述某人说的话，如 'She said that she'd wash up for me'。用于转述动词之后时，从句中的 'that' 可省略。

third person 第三人称：
见 person 人称。

time clause 时间从句：
表示事件发生时间的从句，如 'I'll phone you when I get back'。

title 头衔：
用于人名之前表示职位或地位的词，如 'Mrs'、'Lord' 和 'Queen'。

'to'-infinitive 带 'to' 的不定式：
动词原形之前加 'to'，如 'to go'、'to have' 和 'to jump'。

transitive verb 及物动词：
及物动词后跟宾语用于谈论一个以上的人或物参与的动作或事件，如 'She's wasting her money'。

uncount noun 不具数名词：
指表示事物的总类，而不是指单个事物的名词。这类名词只有一个形式，例如 'money'、'furniture' 及 'intelligence'。又作 *uncountable noun* **不可数名词**。

verb 动词：
与主语连用说明某人或某物做什么或他们发生了什么事的词，如 'sing'、'spill' 和 'die'。

verbal noun 动名词：
即 '-ing' noun '-ing' 名词。

verb group 动词词组：
指主要动词，或前面有一个或一个以上助动词的主要动词。它与主语连用说明某人做什么，或他们发生了什么事，例如 'I'll show them...' 和 'She's been sick'。

vocative 呼语：
对某人说话时所用的词，这些词像名字一样使用，如 'darling' 和 'madam'。

'wh'-clause 'wh'-分句：
以 'wh'-词引导的分句。

'whether'-clause 'whether'-分句：
用来转述 'yes/no' 疑问句的分句，如 'I asked her whether she'd seen him'。

'wh'-question 'wh'-疑问句：
指望回答特定人、地点、事物、数量等，而不仅仅是以 'yes' 或 'no' 回答的问句。

'wh'-word 'wh'-词：
以 'wh'-开头用于 'wh'-疑问句的词，例如 'what'、'when' 和 'who'。此外，'How' 也是 'wh'-词，因其功能与其他 'wh'-词相似。

'yes/no'-question 'yes/no'-疑问句：
仅用 'yes' 或 'no' 即可回答的疑问句，如 'Would you like some more tea?'

汉英语法术语对照表

Chinese-English glossary of grammatical terms

本表与前文第 xxii 页之“英汉语法术语对照表”配合使用，前者按字母排序，本表则按中文笔画数排序，对照英语语法术语。本表也包括大陆和台湾的语法术语，斜线号之前是大陆常用之中译名称，斜线号之后是台湾常用之中译名称。

一画

一致 agreement (concord)

二画

人称 person

人称代词 / 人称代名词 personal pronoun

三画

广义否定词 broad negative

广义否定副词 broad negative adverb

大致 approximation

及物动词 transitive verb

习语 idiom

四画

方式分句 / 状态子句 clause of manner

方式副词 / 状态副词 adverb of manner

专有名词 proper noun

不及物动词 intransitive verb

不完全变化动词 defective verb

不定代词 / 不定代名词 indefinite pronoun

不定式 / 不定词 infinitive

不定地点副词 indefinite place adverb

不定冠词 indefinite article

不规则的 irregular

不具数名词 / 不可数名词 uncount noun

不带 ‘to’ 的不定式 / 不带 ‘to’ 的不定词 infinitive without ‘to’ (bare infinitive)

比较级 comparative

比较级形容词 comparative adjective

中心词 head (headword)

从句 / 从属子句 dependent clause (subordinate clause)

从属关系 subordination

从属连词 subordinating conjunction

反身代词 / 反身代名词 reflexive pronoun

反身动词 reflexive verb

介词 / 介系词；前置词 preposition

介词短语 / 介系词片语 prepositional phrase

分句 / 子句 clause

分词 participle

分词形容词 participial adjective

分裂不定式 / 分裂不定词 split infinitive

引语 quote

双及物动词 ditransitive verb

双向动词 ergative verb

双重否定词 double negative

五画

半情态动词 / 半语态动词 semi-modal
头衔 title
主句 / 主要子句 main clause
主动语态 active voice
主语 / 主词 subject
主语人称代词 subject pronoun
主要动词 main verb
让步从句 / 让步子句 concessive clause
可分级性 gradability
可分级的 gradable
目的从句 / 目的子句 purpose clause
乏词义动词 delexical verb
乏词义结构 delexical structure
代词 / 代名词 pronoun
句子 sentence
句子状语 / 句子修饰语；句子副词语 sentence adverbial
句子附加状语 sentence adjunct
加强语 intensifier

六画

并列 / 对等 coordination
并列句 / 集合句 compound sentence
并列连词 / 对等连接词 coordinating conjunction
关系从句 / 关系子句 relative clause
关系代词 / 关系代名词 relative pronoun
产出性特征 productive feature
次前置修饰语 submodifier
问句 question (interrogative)
动名词 gerund (verbal noun)
动词 verb
动词词组 verb group
动态动词 dynamic verb
地点副词 / 地方副词 adverb of place
过去分词 past participle
过去式 past form
过去完成进行时 / 过去完成进行式 past perfect continuous
过去完成时 / 过去完成式 past perfect
过去完成时被动态 / 过去完成式被动态 past perfect passive
过去进行时 / 过去进行式 past continuous
过去进行时不定式 / 过去进行式不定词 past continuous infinitive
过去进行时的 '-ing' 形式 / 过去进行式的 '-ing' 形式 past continuous '-ing' form
过去进行时被动态 / 过去进行式被动态 past continuous passive
过去时 / 过去时态 past tense
过去时不定式 / 过去式不定词 past infinitive
过去时的 '-ing' form / 过去式的 '-ing' form past '-ing' form
过去时被动态不定式 / 过去式被动态不定词 past passive infinitive
同位 apposition
团性名词 mass noun
后位限定词 postdeterminer
后缀 / 字尾；接尾语 suffix
后置修饰语 qualifier
行为动词 performative verb
名词 noun
名词词组 noun group
名词性词组 nominal group
名词前置修饰语 noun modifier
级阶 phase

七画

泛指限定词/一般指定词 general determiners
完成进行时不定式/完成进行式不定词 perfect continuous infinitive
完成进行时的 '-ing' 形式/完成进行式的 '-ing' 形式 perfect continuous '-ing'form
完成时/完成式 perfect tense
完成时不定式/完成式不定词 perfect infinitive
完成时的 '-ing' 形式/完成式的 '-ing' 形式 perfect '-ing' form
完成时被动态不定式/完成式被动态不定词 perfect passive infinitive
序数词/序数 ordinal number
间引结构 report structure
间接引语/间接语法 indirect speech (reported speech)
间接问句 indirect question; reported question
间接宾语/间接受词 indirect object
评注状语 disjunct
补足 complementation
补足语 complement
词缀 affix
进行时/进行时态 progressive tense; continuous tense
形容词 adjective
形容词分句/形容词子句 adjective clause
否定 negative
否定句 negative sentence
否定词 negative word
否定词缀 negative affixes
连词/连接词 conjunction
连结性附加状语 linking adjunct
时/时态 tense
时间从句/时间子句 time clause
时间副词 adverb of time
助动词 auxiliary (auxiliary verb)
体 aspect
条件从句/条件子句 conditional clause
系动词/连缀动词 link verb
系词 copula
陈述语气/直述语气 declarative mood(indicative mood)
附加状语 adjunct
附加疑问 question tag
附加疑问句 tag question

八画

单位词 partitive
单数 singular
单数名词 singular noun
实义动词 lexical verb
定冠词 definite article
定语形容词/限定形容词 attributive adjective
性 gender
祈使语气 imperative mood
现在不定式/现在不定词 present infinitive
现在分词 present participle
现在完成进行时/现在完成进行式 present perfect continuous
现在完成时/现在完成式 present perfect
现在完成时被动态/现在完成式被动态 present perfect passive
现在进行时/现在进行式 present continuous
现在进行时不定式/现在进行式不定词 present continuous infinitive
现在进行时被动态/现在进行式被动态 present continuous passive

现在时 / 现在式 present tense
表语形容词 / 述语形容词 predicative adjective
直引结构 quote structure
直接引语 / 直接语法 direct speech
直接宾语 / 直接受词 direct object
转述分句 / 转述子句 reporting clause
转述动词 reporting verb
抽象名词 abstract noun
非人称 'it' impersonal 'it'
非限定式 non-finite
非限定性小句 non-finite clause
非限定性动词 non-finite verb
非限制性关系从句 non-defining relative clause
肯定 affirmative (positive)
肯定句 positive sentence
具体名词 concrete noun
具数名词 / 可数名词 count noun
呼语 vocative
物主代词 / 所有代名词 possessive pronoun
物主限定词 / 所有指定词 possessive determiner
屈折变化 inflection
限定式 finite
限定词 / 指定词 determiner
限定性动词 finite verbs
限制性关系从句 defining relative clause
限制性非限定小句 defining non-finite clause

九画

类别形容词 classifying adjective
前位限定词 predeterminer
前缀 / 字首 prefix
前置 fronting
前置修饰语 modifier
将来完成进行时 / 未来完成进行式 future perfect continuous
将来完成时 / 未来完成式 future perfect
将来进行时 / 未来进行式 future continuous
将来时 / 未来式 future
施行者 agent
冠词 article
语气 mood
带 'to' 的不定式 / 带 'to' 的不定词 'to' -infinitive
相互代词 / 相互代名词 reciprocal pronoun
相互动词 reciprocal verb
持续副词 adverb of duration
指示词 demonstrative
指名 name
省略 / 省略法 ellipsis
复合句 complex sentence
复合动词 compound verb
复合词 compound
复合形容词 compound adjective
复数 plural
复数名词 plural noun
修辞疑问句 rhetorical question
结果从句 result clause

十画

宾语 / 受词 object
宾语人称代词 / 受词人称代词 object pronoun
宾语补足语 / 受词补足语 object complement
被动语态 passive voice
被转述从句 / 被转述子句 reported clause
被转述引语 reported speech
被转述问句 reported question
格 case

原因从句 / 原因子句 reason clause
原形 base form
特指限定词 / 特指指定词 specific determiner
倒装 inversion

十一画

粘合 cohesion
断裂句 cleft sentence
情态动词 / 语态动词 modal (modal verb; modal auxiliary)
谓语 / 述语 predicate
基数词 / 基数 cardinal number
副词 adverb
副词小品词 adverb particle
副词词组 adverbial group
虚拟式 / 假设 subjunctive
第一人称 first person
第二人称 second person
第三人称 third person
领属格 / 所有格 genitive (possessive)

十二画

普通名词 common noun
替代 substitution
量词 quantifier
量词结构 partitive structure
最高级 superlative
最高级形容词 superlative adjective
最高级副词 superlative adverb
程度副词 adverb of degree
短语动词 / 片语动词 phrasal verb
焦点副词 focusing adverb
集体名词 / 集合名词 collective noun
属性形容词 qualitative adjective
强变化动词 strong verb
强调形容词 emphasizing adjective
强调副词 emphasizing adverb

十三画

数 number
感叹句 exclamation (interjection)
频度副词 / 频率副词 adverb of frequency
简单过去时 / 简单过去式 simple past
简单过去时被动态 / 简单过去式被动态 simple past passive
简单时 / 简单时态 simple tense
简单现在时 / 简单现在式 simple present
简单现在时被动态 / 简单现在式被动态 simple present passive
群体名词 group noun (collective noun)

十四画

静态动词 stative verb
撇号 s ('s) apostrophe s
疑问代词 / 疑问代名词 interrogative pronoun
疑问语气 interrogative mood
疑问副词 interrogative adverb
缩约式 contraction

十五画

颜色形容词 colour adjective

Cobuild 语料库致谢名单

We wish to thank the following, who have kindly given permission for the use of copyright material in the Birmingham Collection of English Texts.

Associated Business Programmes Ltd for: *The Next 200 Years* by Herman Kahn with William Brown and Leon Martel first published in Great Britain by Associated Business Programmes Ltd 1977 © Hudson Institute 1976. David Attenborough and William Collins Sons & Co Ltd for: *Life on Earth* by David Attenborough first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1979 © David Attenborough Productions Ltd 1979. James Baldwin for: *The Fire Next Time* by James Baldwin published in Great Britain by Michael Joseph Ltd 1963 © James Baldwin 1963. B T Batsford Ltd for: *Witchcraft in England* by Christina Hole first published by B T Batsford Ltd 1945 © Christina Hole 1945. Michael Billington for: 'Lust at First Sight' by Michael Billington in the *Illustrated London News* July 1981 and 'Truffaut's Tolerance' by Michael Billington in the *Illustrated London News* August 1981. Birmingham International Council For Overseas Students' Aid for: BICOSA Information Leaflets 1981. Basil Blackwell Publishers Ltd for: *Breaking the Mould? The Birth and Prospects of the Social Democratic Party* by Ian Bradley first published by Martin Robertson & Co Ltd 1981 © Ian Bradley 1981. *Seeing Green (The Politics of Ecology Explained)* by Jonathon Porritt first published by Basil Blackwell Publisher Ltd 1984 © Jonathon Porritt 1984. Blond & Briggs Ltd for: *Small is Beautiful* by E F Schumacher first published in Great Britain by Blond & Briggs Ltd 1973 © E F Schumacher 1973. The Bodley Head Ltd for: *The Americans (Letters from America 1969-1979)* by Alistair Cooke first published by Bodley Head Ltd 1979 © Alistair Cooke 1979. *Baby and Child Care* by Dr Benjamin Spock published in Great Britain by The Bodley Head Ltd 1955 © Benjamin Spock MD 1945, 1946, 1957, 1968, 1976, 1979. *What's Wrong With The Modern World?* by Michael Shanks first published by The Bodley Head Ltd 1978 © Michael Shanks 1978. *Future Shock* by Alvin Toffler first published in Great Britain by The Bodley Head Ltd 1970 © Alvin Toffler 1970. *Zen and the Art of Motorcycle Maintenance* by Robert M Pirsig first published in Great Britain by The Bodley Head Ltd 1974 © Robert M Pirsig 1974. *Marnie* by Winston Graham first published by the Bodley Head Ltd 1961 © Winston Graham 1961. *You Can Get There From Here* by Shirley MacLaine first published in Great Britain by The Bodley Head Ltd 1975 © Shirley MacLaine 1975. *It's An Odd Thing, But ...* by Paul Jennings first published by Max Reinhardt Ltd 1971 © Paul Jennings 1971. *King of the Castle (Choice and Responsibility in the Modern World)* by Gai Eaton first published by the Bodley Head Ltd 1977 © Gai Eaton 1977. *Revolutionaries in Modern Britain* by Peter Shipley first published by The Bodley Head Ltd 1976 © Peter Shipley 1976. *The Prerogative of the Harlot (Press Barons and Power)* by Hugh Cudlipp first published by The Bodley Head Ltd 1980 © Hugh Cudlipp 1980. *But What About The Children (A Working Parents' Guide to Child Care)* by Judith Hann first published by The Bodley Head Ltd 1976 © Judith Hann 1976. *Learning to Read* by Margaret Meek first published by The Bodley Head Ltd 1982 © Margaret Meek 1982. Bolt & Watson for: *Two is Lonely* by Lynne Reid Banks first published by Chatto & Windus 1974 © Lynne Reid Banks 1974. The British and Foreign Bible Society with William Collins Sons & Co Ltd for: *Good News Bible (with Deuterocanonical Books/Apocrypha)* first published by The British and Foreign Bible Society with William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1979 © American Bible Society: Old Testament 1976, Deuterocanonical Books/Apocrypha 1979, New Testament 1966, 1971, 1976 © Maps, British and Foreign Bible Society 1976, 1979. The British Council for: *How to Live in Britain (The British Council's Guide for Overseas Students and Visitors)* first published by The British Council 1952 © The British Council 1984. Mrs R Bronowski for: *The Ascent of Man* by J Bronowski published by Book Club Associates by arrangement with The British Broadcasting Corporation 1977 © J Bronowski 1973. Alison Busby for: *The Death of Trees* by Nigel Dudley first published by Pluto Press Ltd 1985 © Nigel Dudley 1985. Tony Buzan for: *Make The Most of your Mind* by Tony Buzan first published by Colt Books Ltd 1977 © Tony Buzan 1977. Campbell Thomson & McLaughlin Ltd for: *Ring of Bright Water* by Gavin Maxwell first published by Longmans Green & Co 1960, published in Penguin Books Ltd 1976 © The Estate of Gavin Maxwell 1960. Jonathan Cape Ltd for: *Manwatching (A Field Guide to Human Behaviour)* by Desmond Morris first published in Great Britain by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1977 © Text, Desmond Morris 1977 © Compilation, Elsevier Publishing Projects SA, Lausanne, and Jonathan Cape Ltd, London 1977. *Tracks* by Robyn Davidson first published by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1980 © Robyn Davidson 1980. *In the Name of Love* by Jill Tweedie first published by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1979 © Jill Tweedie 1979. *The Use of Lateral Thinking* by Edward de Bono first published by Jonathan Cape 1967 © Edward de Bono 1967. *Trout Fishing in America* by Richard Brautigan first published in Great Britain by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1970 © Richard Brautigan 1967. *The Pendulum Years: Britain and the Sixties* by Bernard Levin first published by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1970 © Bernard Levin 1970. *The Summer Before The Dark* by Doris Lessing first published in Great Britain by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1973 © Doris Lessing 1973. *The Boston Strangler* by Gerold Frank first published in Great Britain by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1967 © Gerold Frank 1966. *I'm OK - You're OK* by Thomas A Harris MD first published in Great Britain as The Book of Choice by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1970 © Thomas A Harris MD, 1967, 1968, 1969. *The Vivisector* by Patrick White first published by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1970 © Patrick White 1970. *The Future of Socialism* by Anthony Crosland first published by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1956 © C A R Crosland 1963. *Funeral in Berlin* by Len Deighton first published by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1964 © Len Deighton 1964. Chatto & Windus Ltd for: *A Postillion Struck by Lightning* by Dirk Bogarde first published by Chatto & Windus Ltd 1977 © Dirk Bogarde 1977. *Nuns and Soldiers* by Iris Murdoch published by Chatto & Windus Ltd 1980 © Iris Murdoch 1980. *Wounded Knee (An Indian History of the American West)* by Dee Brown published by Chatto & Windus Ltd 1978 © Dee Brown 1970. *The Virgin in the Garden* by A S Byatt published by Chatto & Windus Ltd 1978 © A S Byatt 1978. *A Story Like The Wind* by Laurens van der Post published by Clarke Irwin & Co Ltd in association with The Hogarth Press Ltd 1972 © Laurens van der Post 1972. *Brave New World* by Aldous Huxley published by Chatto & Windus Ltd 1932 © Aldous Huxley and Mrs Laura Huxley 1932, 1960. *The Reivers* By William Faulkner first published by Chatto & Windus Ltd 1962 © William Faulkner 1962. *Cider With Rosie* by Laurie Lee published by The Hogarth Press 1959 © Laurie Lee 1959 *The Tenants* by Bernard Malamud first published in Great Britain by Chatto & Windus Ltd 1972 © Bernard Malamud 1971. *Kinflicks* by Lisa Alther first published in Great Britain by Chatto & Windus Ltd 1976 © Lisa Alther 1975. William Collins Sons & Co Ltd for: *The Companion Guide to London* by David Piper published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1964 © David Piper 1964. *The Bedside Guardian 29* edited by W L Webb published by William Collins & Sons Ltd 1980 © Guardian Newspapers Ltd 1980. *Bear Island* by Alistair MacLean first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1971 © Alistair MacLean 1971. *Inequality in Britain: Freedom, Welfare and the State* by Frank Field first published by Fontana Paperbacks 1981 © Frank Field 1981. *Social Mobility* by Anthony Heath first published by Fontana Paperbacks 1981©Anthony Heath 1981. *Yours Faithfully* by Gerald Priestland first published by Fount Paperbacks 1979 © British Broadcasting Corporation 1977, 1978. *Power Without Responsibility: The Press and Broadcasting in Britain* by James Curran and Jean Seaton first published by Fontana Paperbacks 1981 © James Curran and Jean Seaton 1981. *The Times Cookery Book* by Katie Stewart first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1972 © Times Newspapers Ltd. *Friends from the Forest* by Joy Adamson by Collins and Harvill Press 1981 © Elsa Limited 1981. *The Media Mob* by Barry Fantoni and George Melly first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1980 © Text, George Melly 1980 © Illustrations, Barry Fantoni 1980. *Shalom (a collection of Australian and Jewish Stories)* compiled by Nancy Keesing first published by William Collins Publishers Pty Ltd 1978 © William Collins Sons &Co Ltd 1978. *The Bedside Guardian 31* edited by W L Webb first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1982 © Guardian Newspapers Ltd 1982. *The Bedside Guardian 32* edited by W L Webb first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1983 © Guardian Newspapers Ltd 1983. *Design for the Real World* by Victor Papanek first published in Great Britain by Thames & Hudson Ltd 1972 © Victor Papanek 1971. *Food For Free* by Richard Mabey first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1972 © Richard Mabey 1972. *Unended Quest* by Karl Popper (first published as Autobiography of Karl Popper in The Philosophy of Karl Popper in The Library of Philosophers edited by Paul Arthur Schlipp by the Open Court Publishing Co 1974) published by Fontana Paperbacks 1976 © The Library of Living Philosophers Inc 1974 © Karl R Popper 1976. *My Mother My Self* by Nancy Friday first published in Great Britain by Fontana Paperbacks 1979 © Nancy Friday 1977. *The Captain's Diary* by Bob Willis first published by Willow Books/William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1984 © Bob Willis and Alan Lee 1984 © New Zealand Scorecards, Bill Frindall 1984. *The Bodywork Book* by Esme Newton-Dunn first published in Great Britain by Willow Books/William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1982 © TVS Ltd/Esme Newton-Dunn 1982. *Collins' Encyclopaedia of Fishing in The British Isles* edited by Michael Prichard first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1976 © William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1976. *The AAA Runner's Guide* edited by Heather Thomas first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1983 © Sackville Design Group Ltd 1983. *Heroes and Contemporaries* by David Gower with Derek Hodgson first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1983 © David Gower Promotions Ltd 1983. *The Berlin Memorandum* by Adam Hall first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1965 © Jonquil Trevor 1965. *Arlott on Cricket: His Writings on the Game* edited by David Rayvern Allen first published by William Collins (Willow Books) 1984 © John Arlott 1984. *A Woman in Custody* by Audrey Peckham first published by Fontana Paperbacks 1985 © Audrey Peckham 1985. *Play Golf with Peter Alliss* by Peter Alliss published by the British Broadcasting Corporation 1977 © Peter Alliss and Renton Laidlaw 1977. Curtis Brown Ltd for: *The Pearl* by John Steinbeck first published by William Heinemann Ltd 1948 © John Steinbeck 1948. *An Unfinished History of the World* by Hugh Thomas first published in Great Britain by Hamish Hamilton Ltd 1979 © Hugh Thomas 1979, 1981. *The Winter of our Discontent* by John Steinbeck first published in Great Britain by William Heinemann Ltd 1961 © John Steinbeck 1961. *Burr* by Gore Vidal first published in Great Britain by William Heinemann Ltd 1974 © Gore Vidal 1974. *Doctor on the Job* by Richard Gordon first published by William Heinemann Ltd 1976 © Richard Gordon Ltd 1976. Andre Deutsch Ltd for: *How to be an Alien* by George Mikes first published by Andre Deutsch Ltd 1946 © George Mikes and Nicholas Bentley 1946. *Jaws* by Peter Benchley first published in Great Britain by

Andre Deutsch Ltd 1974 ©·Peter Benchley 1974. *A Bend in the River* by V S Naipaul first published by Andre Deutsch Ltd 1979 © V S Naipaul 1979. *Couples* by John Updike first published by Andre Deutsch Ltd 1968 © John Updike 1968. *Games People Play* by Eric Berne published in Great Britain by Andre Deutsch Ltd 1966 © Eric Berne 1964. *The Age of Uncertainty* by John Kenneth Galbraith first published by The British Broadcasting Corporation and Andre Deutsch Ltd 1977 © John Kenneth Galbraith 1977. The Economist Newspaper Ltd for: *The Economist* (9-15 May 1981 and 22-28 August 1981) © published by The Economist Newspaper Ltd 1981. Faber & Faber Ltd for: *Lord of the Flies* by William Golding first published by Faber & Faber Ltd 1954 © William Golding 1954. *The Complete Book of Self-Sufficiency* by John Seymour first published in Great Britain by Faber & Faber Ltd 1976 © Text, John Seymour 1976, 1977 © Dorling Kindersley Ltd 1976, 1977. *Conversations with Igor Stravinsky* by Igor Stravinsky and Robert Craft first published by Faber & Faber Ltd 1959 © Igor Stravinsky 1958,1959. John Farquharson Ltd for: *The Moon's A Balloon* by David Niven published in Great Britain by Hamish Hamilton Ltd 1971 © David Niven 1971. John Gaselee for: 'Going it Alone' by John Gaselee in the *Illustrated London News* July 1981 and 'The Other Car's Fault' by John Gaselee in the *Illustrated London News* August 1981. Glidrose Publications Ltd for: *The Man with the Golden Gun* by Ian Fleming first published by Jonathan Cape Ltd © Glidrose Productions Ltd 1965. Victor Gollancz Ltd for: *The Next Horizon* by Chris Bonnington published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1976 © Chris Bonnington 1973. *Summerhill: A Radical Approach to Education* by A S Neill first published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1962 © A S Neill 1926, 1932, 1937, 1953, 1961 (US permission by Hart Publishing Inc). *Lucky Jim* by Kingsley Amis first published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1954 © Kingsley Amis 1953. *The Mighty Micro (The Impact of the Computer Revolution)* by Christopher Evans first published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1979 © Christopher Evans 1979. *The Longest Day* by Cornelius Ryan published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1960 © Cornelius Ryan 1959. *Asking for Trouble (Autobiography of a Banned Journalist)* by Donald Woods published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1980 © Donald Woods 1980. *The Turin Shroud* by Ian Wilson first published in Great Britain by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1978 © Ian Wilson 1978. *Murdo and Other Stories* by Iain Crichton Smith published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1981 © Iain Crichton Smith 1981. *The Class Struggle in Parliament* by Eric S Heffer published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1973 © Eric S Heffer 1973. *A Presumption of Innocence (The Amazing Case of Patrick Meehan)* by Ludovic Kennedy published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1976 © Ludovic Kennedy 1976. *The Treasure of Sainte Foy* by MacDonald Harris published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1980 © MacDonald Harris 1980. *A Long Way to Shiloh* by Lionel Davidson first published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1966 © Lionel Davidson 1966. *Education After School* by Tyrrell Burgess first published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1977 © Tyrrell Burgess 1977. *The View From Serendip* by Arthur C Clarke published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1978 © Arthur C Clarke 1967, 1968, 1970, 1972, 1974, 1976, 1977. *On Wings of Song* by Thomas M Disch published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1979 © Thomas M Disch 1979. *The World of Violence* by Colin Wilson published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1963 © Colin Wilson 1963. *The Lightning Tree* by Joan Aiken published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1980 © Joan Aiken Enterprises 1980. *Russia's Political Hospitals* by Sidney Bloch and Peter Reddaway published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1977 © Sidney Bloch and Peter Reddaway 1977. *Unholy Loves* by Joyce Carol Oates first published in Great Britain by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1980 © Joyce Carol Oates 1979. *Consenting Adults (or The Duchess will be Furious)* by Peter De Vries published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1981 © Peter De Vries 1980. *The Passion of New Eve* by Angela Carter published by Victor Gollancz Ltd 1977 © Angela Carter 1977. Gower Publishing Co Ltd for: *Solar Prospects (The Potential for Renewable Energy)* by Michael Flood first published in Great Britain by Wildwood House Ltd in association with Friends of the Earth Ltd 1983 © Michael Flood. *Voiceless Victims* by Rebecca Hall first published in Great Britain by Wildwood House Ltd 1984 © Rebecca Hall 1984. Graham Greene and Laurence Pollinger Ltd for: *The Human Factor* by Graham Greene first published by The Bodley Head Ltd 1978 © Graham Greene 1978. Syndication Manager, The Guardian, for: *The Guardian* (12 May 1981, 7 September 1981 and 15 September 1981) © published by Guardian Newspapers Ltd 1981. Hamlyn for: *How to Play Rugby* by David Norrie published by The Hamlyn Publishing Group Ltd 1981 © The Hamlyn Publishing Group Ltd 1981. *How to Play Badminton* by Pat Davies first published by The Hamlyn Publishing Group Ltd 1979 © The Hamlyn Publishing Group Ltd 1979. Margaret Hanbury for: *CRISIS AND Conservation: Conflict in the British Countryside* by Charlie Pye-Smith and Chris Rose first published by Pelican/Penguin Books Ltd 1984 © Charlie Pye-Smith and Chris Rose 1984. Paul Harrison for: *Inside the Third World* by Paul Harrison first published in Great Britain by The Harvester Press Ltd 1980 © Paul Harrison 1979. A M Heath & Co Ltd for: *Rembrandt's Hat* by Bernard Malamud published by Chatto & Windus Ltd 1982 © Bernard Malamud 1968, 1972, 1973. William Heinemann Ltd for: *It's an Old Country* by J B Priestley first published in Great Britain by William Heinemann Ltd 1967 © J B Priestley 1967. Heinemann Educational Books Ltd and Gower Publishing Co Ltd for: *The Environmental Crisis (A Handbook for all Friends of the Earth)* edited by Des Wilson first published by Heinemann Educational Books Ltd 1984 © Foreword, David Bellamy 1984 © Individual Chapters, the Author of the Chapter 1984 © In the selection and all other matters Des Wilson 1984. The Controller, Her Majesty's Stationery Office, for: Department of Health and Social Security leaflets published by Her Majesty's Stationery Office 1981 © The Crown. David Higham Associates Ltd for: 'Two Peruvian Projects' by E R Chamberlain in the *Illustrated London News* September 1981. *Akenfield: Portrait of an English Village* by Ronald Blythe first published by Allen Lane, Penguin Books Ltd 1969 © Ronald Blythe 1969. *The Far Pavilions* by M M Kaye first published by Allen Lane/Penguin Books Ltd 1978 © M M Kaye 1978. *Staying On* by Paul Scott first published by William Heinemann Ltd 1977 © Paul Scott 1977. *Let Sleeping Vets Lie* by James Herriot first published by Michael Joseph Ltd 1973 © James Herriot 1973. *The Midwich Cuckoos* by John Wyndham first published in Great Britain by Michael Joseph Ltd 1957 © The Estate of John Wyndham 1957. *The Girl in a Swing* by Richard Adams first published in Great Britain by Allen Lane in Penguin Books Ltd 1980 © Richard Adams 1980. Dr K B Hindley for: 'Hot Spots of the Deep' by Dr K B Hindley in the *Illustrated London News July* 1981. Hodder and Stoughton Ltd for: *Supernature* by Lyall Watson first published by Hodder & Stoughton Ltd 1973 © Lyall Watson 1973. *Tinker Tailor Soldier Spy* by John Le Carre first published by Hodder & Stoughton Ltd 1974 © Le Carre Productions 1974. The Editor, Homes and Gardens, for: *Homes and Gardens* (October 1981) (Number 4 Volume 63) © published by IPC Magazines Ltd 1981. Hughes Massie Ltd for: *Elephants Can Remember* by Agatha Christie first published by William Collins Sons & Co Ltd 1972 © Agatha Christie Mallowan. Hutchinson Publishing Group Ltd for: *An Autobiography* by Angela Davis published in Great Britain by Hutchinson & Co Publishers Ltd by arrangement with Bantam Books Inc 1975 © Angela Davis 1974. *The Day of the Jackal* by Frederick Forsyth published in Great Britian by Hutchinson & Co Publishers Ltd 1971 © Frederick Forsyth 1971. *Roots* by Alex Haley first published in Great Britain by Hutchinson & Co Publishers Ltd 1977 © Alex Haley 1976. *The Climate of Treason* by Andrew Boyle first published by Hutchinson & Co Publishers Ltd 1979 © Andrew Boyle 1979. *The Collapsing Universe: The Story of Black Holes* by Isaac Asimov first published by Hutchinson & Co Publishers Ltd 1977 © Isaac Asimov. *XPD* by Len Deighton published by Book Club Associates by arrangement with Hutchinson & Co Publishers Ltd 1981 © Len Deighton 1981. *Show Jumping with Harvey Smith* by Harvey Smith first published by Stanley Paul & Co Ltd 1979 © Tyne-Tees Television Ltd, A Member of the Trident Group 1979. *2001: A Space Odyssey* by Arthur C Clarke first published by Hutchinson & Co Publishers Ltd 1968 © Arthur C Clarke and Polaris Productions Inc 1968 © Epilogue material, Serendip BV 1982, 1983. The Illustrated London News and Sketch Ltd for: *The Illustrated London News* (July 1981, August 1981 and September 1981) © published by the Illustrated London News and Sketch Ltd 1981. The Editor, International Herald Tribune, for: *International Herald Tribune* (25-26 July 1981) © published by International Herald Tribune with The New York Times and The Washington Post 1981. Michael Joseph Ltd for: *Chronicles of Fairacre: Village School* by Miss Read first published in Great Britain by Michael Joseph Ltd 1964 © Miss Read 1955, 1964. *Fire Fox* by Craig Thomas first published in Great Britain by Michael Joseph Ltd 1977 © Craig Thomas 1977. William Kimber & Co Ltd for: *Exodus* by Leon Uris originally published in Great Britain by Alan Wingate Ltd 1959 © Leon Uris 1958. Kogan Page Ltd for: *How to Save the World (Strategy for World Conservation)* by Robert Allen first published by Kogan Page Ltd 1980 © IUCN-UNEP-WWF 1980. Marketing Department, Lloyds Bank PLC, for: *Lloyds Bank Leaflets* (1981) © published by Lloyds Bank PLC 1981. Macmillan Publishers Ltd for: *Appropriate Technology: Technology with a Human Face* by P D Dunn first published by the Macmillan Press Ltd 1978 © P D Dunn 1978. John Murray Publishers Ltd for: *A Backward Place* by Ruth Prawer Jhabvala first published by John Murray Publishers Ltd 1965 © R Prawer Jhabvala 1965. *Food For All The Family* by Magnus Pyke first published by John Murray Publishers Ltd 1980 © Magnus Pyke 1980. *Simple Movement* by Laura Mitchell and Barbara Dale first published by John Murray Publishers Ltd 1980 © Laura Mitchell and Barbara Dale 1980. *Civilisation: A Personal View* by Kenneth Clark first published by the British Broadcasting Corporation and John Murray Publishers Ltd 1969 © Kenneth Clark 1969. The Editor, National Geographic, for: *National Geographic* January, February and March (1980) © published by The National Geographic Society 1979, 1980. The National Magazine Co Ltd for: *Cosmopolitan* (May 1981 and July 1981) © published by the National Magazine Co Ltd 1981. Neilson Leisure Group Ltd for: *NAT Holidays' 'Caravans and Tents in the Sun'* (Summer 1983) holiday brochure. Newsweek Inc for: *Newsweek* (11 May 1981, 27 July 1981 and August 1981) © published by Newsweek Inc 1981. The Associate Editor, Now!, for: *Now!* (14-20 November 1980) © published by Cavenham Communications Ltd 1980. Harold Ober Associates Inc for: *The Boys from Brazil* by Ira Levin first published by Michael Joseph Ltd 1976 © Ira Levin 1976. Edna O'Brien and A M Heath & Co Ltd for: *August is a Wicked Month* by Edna O'Brien first published by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1965 © Edna O'Brien 1965. Pan Books Ltd for: *Dispatches* by Michael Herr first published in Great Britain by Pan Books Ltd 1978 © Michael Herr 1968, 1969, 1970, 1977. *Health and Safety at Work* by Dave Eva and Ron Oswald first published by Pan Books Ltd 1981 © Dave Eva, Ron Oswald and the Workers' Educational Association 1981. *Democracy at Work* by Patrick Burns and Mel Doyle first published by Pan Books Ltd 1981 © Patrick Burns,Mel Doyle and the Workers' Educational Association 1981. *Diet for Life (A Cookbook for Arthritics)* by Mary Laver and Margaret Smith first published by Pan Books Ltd 1981 © Mary Laver and Margaret Smith 1981. Penguin Books Ltd for: *Inside the Company: CIA Diary* by Philip Agee first published in Allen Lane/Penguin Books Ltd 1975 © Philip Agee 1975. Penguin Books Ltd and Spare Ribs Ltd for: *Spare Rib Reader* edited by Marsha Rowe first published in Penguin Books Ltd 1982 © Spare Ribs Ltd 1982. A D Peters & Co Ltd for: 'The Dark Side of Israel' by Norman Moss in Illustrated London News July 1981, 'Aftermath of Osirak' by Norman

Moss in the *Illustrated London News* August 1981 and 'Turning Point for Poland' by Norman Moss in the *Illustrated London News* September 1981. 'Recent Fiction' by Sally Emerson in the *Illustrated London News* July 1981, August 1981 and September 1981. *The Complete Upmanship* by Stephen Potter first published in Great Britain by Rupert Hart-Davis Ltd 1970 © Stephen Potter. Elaine Pollard for: Personal Letters 1981 donated by Elaine Pollard. Laurence Pollinger Ltd for: *A Glastonbury Romance* by John Cowper Powys first published by MacDonald & Co Ltd 1933. Murray Pollinger for: *Kiss Kiss* by Roald Dahl published in Great Britain by Michael Joseph Ltd 1960 © Roald Dahl 1962. *Can You Avoid Cancer?* by Peter Goodwin first published by the British Broadcasting Corporation 1984 © Peter Goodwin 1984. Preston Travel Ltd for: Preston Sunroutes 'Camping and Self-Catering' (April to October 1983) holiday brochure. Punch Publications Ltd for: *Punch* (6 May 1981, 29 July 1981, 12 August 1981, 26 August 1981 and 9 September 1981) © published by Punch Publications Ltd 1981. Radala and associates for: *The Naked Civil Servant* by Quentin Crisp first published by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1968 © Quentin Crisp 1968. The Rainbird Publishing Group Ltd for: *The Making of Mankind* by Richard E Leakey first published in Great Britain by Michael Joseph Ltd 1981 © Sherma BV 1981. Robson Books Ltd for: *The Punch Book of Short Stories 3* selected by Alan Coren first published in Great Britain by Robson Books Ltd in association with Punch Publications Ltd 1981 © Robson Books Ltd 1981.*The Best of Robert Morley* by Robert Morley first published in Great Britain by Robson Books Ltd 1981 © Robert Morley 1981. Deborah Rogers Ltd for: 'Picasso's Late Works' by Edward Lucie-Smith in the *Illustrated London News* July 1981, 'David Jones at the Tate' by Edward Lucie-Smith in the *Illustrated London News* August 1981 and 'Further Light on Spanish Painting' by Edward Lucie-Smith in the *Illustrated London News* September 1981. *The Godfather* by Mario Puzo first published in Great Britain by William Heinemann Ltd 1969 © Mario Puzo 1969. Routledge & Kegan Paul Ltd for: *How To Pass Examinations* by John Erasmus first published by Oriel Press Ltd 1967 © Oriel Press Ltd 1980. *Daisy, Daisy* by Christian Miller first published by Routledge & Kegan Paul Ltd 1980 © Christian Miller 1980. *The National Front* by Nigel Fielding first published by Routledge & Kegan Paul Ltd 1981 © Nigel Fielding 1981. *The Myth of Home Ownership* by Jim Kemeny first published by Routledge & Kegan Paul Ltd 1980 © J Kemeny 1981. *Absent With Cause (Lessons of Truancy)* by Roger White first published by Routledge & Kegan Paul Ltd 1980 © Roger White 1980. *The Powers of Evil (in Western Religion, Magic and Folk Belief)* by Richard Cavendish first published by Routledge & Kegan Paul Ltd 1975 © Richard Cavendish 1975. *Crime and Personality* by H J Eysenck first published by Routledge & Kegan Paul Ltd 1964 © H J Eysenck 1964, 1977. Martin Secker & Warburg Ltd for: *Changing Places* by David Lodge first published in England by Martin Secker & Warburg Ltd 1975 © David Lodge 1975. *The History Man* by Malcolm Bradbury first published by Martin Secker & Warburg 1975 © Malcolm Bradbury 1975. *Humboldt's Gift* by Saul Bellow first published in England by The Alison Press/Martin Secker & Warburg Ltd 1975 © Saul Bellow 1973, 1974, 1975. *Wilt* by Tom Sharpe first published in England by Martin Secker & Warburg Ltd 1976 © Tom Sharpe 1976. *The Last Days of America* by Paul E Erdman first published in England by Martin Secker & Warburg Ltd 1981 © Paul E Erdman 1981. *Autumn Manoeuvres* by Melvyn Bragg first published in England by Martin Secker & Warburg Ltd 1978 © Melvyn Bragg 1978. *The Act of Being* by Charles Marowitz first published in England by Martin Secker & Warburg Ltd 1978 © Charles Marowitz 1978. *As If By Magic* by Angus Wilson first published in England by Martin Secker & Warburg Ltd 1973 © Angus Wilson 1973. *All the President's Men* by Carl Bernstein and Bob Woodward first published in England by Martin Secker & Warburg Ltd 1974 © Carl Bernstein and Bob Woodward 1974. *The Myth of the Nation and the Vision of Revolution* by J L Talmon first published by Martin Secker & Warburg Ltd 1981 © J L Talmon 1980. *Animal Farm* by George Orwell first published by Martin Secker & Warburg 1945 © Eric Blair 1945. Anthony Sheil Associates Ltd for: *Daniel Martin* by John Fowles first published in Great Britain by Jonathan Cape Ltd 1977 © J R Fowles Ltd 1977. *Love Story* by Erich Segal published by Hodder & Stoughton Ltd 1970 © Erich Segal 1970. Sidgwick & Jackson Ltd for: *The Third World War* by General Sir John Hackett and others first published in Great Britain by Sidgwick & Jackson Ltd 1978 © General Sir John Hackett 1978. *Superwoman* by Shirley Conran first published by Sidgwick & Jackson Ltd 1975 © Shirley Conran 1975, 1977. *An Actor and His Time* by John Gielgud first published in Great Britain by Sidgwick & Jackson Ltd 1979 © John Gielgud, John Miller and John Powell 1979 © Biographical Notes, John Miller 1979. Simon & Schuster for: *Our Bodies Ourselves (A Health Book by and for Women)* by the Boston Women's Health Book Collective (British Edition by Angela Phillips and Jill Rakusen) published in Allen Lane and Penguin Books Ltd 1978 © The Boston Women's Health Collective Inc 1971, 1973, 1976 © Material for British Edition, Angela Phillips and Jill Rakusen 1978. Souvenir Press Ltd for: *The Bermuda Triangle* by Charles Berlitz (An Incredible Saga of Unexplained Disappearances) first published in Great Britain by Souvenir Press Ltd 1975 © Charles Berlitz 1974. Souvenir Press Ltd and Michael Joseph Ltd for: *Airport* by Arthur Hailey first published in Great Britain by Michael Joseph Ltd in association with Souvenir Press Ltd 1968 © Arthur Hailey Ltd 1968. Sunmed Holidays Ltd for: 'Go Greek' (Summer 1983) holiday brochure. Maurice Temple Smith Ltd for: *Friends of the Earth Pollution Guide* by Brian Price published by Maurice Temple Smith Ltd 1983 © Brian Price 1983. Maurice Temple Smith and Gower Publishing Co Ltd for: *Working the Land (A New Plan for a Healthy Agriculture)* by Charlie Pye-Smith and Richard North first published by Maurice Temple Smith Ltd 1984 © Charlie Pye-Smith and Richard North 1984. Times Newspapers Ltd For: *The Sunday Times Magazine* (13 January 1980, 20 January 1980 and 11 May 1980) © published by Times Newspapers Ltd 1981. *The Times* (7 September 1981) © published by Times Newspapers Ltd 1981. Twenty's Holidays for: 'The Best 18-33 Holidays' (Winter 1982/83) holiday brochure. University of Birmingham for: Living in Birmingham (1984) © published by The University of Birmingham 1984. Birmingham University Overseas Student Guide © The University of Birmingham. Working with Industry and Commerce © published by The University of Birmingham 1984. University of Birmingham Prospectus (June 1985) © published by The University of Birmingham 1985. University of Birmingham Library Guide © published by The University of Birmingham. University of Birmingham Institute of Research and Development (1984) © published by the University of Birmingham 1984. Biological Sciences at The University of Birmingham (1985) © published by The University of Birmingham 1985. History at the University of Birmingham (1985) © published by the University of Birmingham 1985. Faculty of Arts Handbook (1984-85) © published by The University of Birmingham 1984. Virago Press Ltd for: *Benefits* by Zoe Fairbairns published by Virago Press Ltd 1979 © Zoe Fairbairns 1979. *Simple Steps to Public Life* by Pamela Anderson, Mary Stott and Fay Weldon published in Great Britain by Virago Press Ltd 1980 © Action Opportunities 1980. *Tell Me A Riddle* by Tillie Olsen published by Virago Press Ltd 1980 © this edition Tillie Olsen 1980. A P Watt (& Sons) Ltd for: *The Glittering Prizes* by Frederic Raphael first published in Great Britain by Penguin Books Ltd 1976 © Volatic Ltd 1976. *Then and Now* by W Somerset Maugham first published by William Heinemann Ltd 1946 © W Somerset Maugham 1946. *The Language of Clothes* by Alison Lurie published by William Heinemann Ltd 1981 © Alison Lurie 1981. 'Herschel Commemorative' by Patrick Moore in the *Illustrated London News* July 1981. 'The Outermost Giant' by Patrick Moore in the *Illustrated London News* August 1981. 'Cosmic Bombardment' by Patrick Moore in the *Illustrated London News* September 1981. Weidenfeld & Nicolson Ltd for: 'The Miraculous Toy' by Susan Briggs in the *Illustrated London News* August 1981. *The Needle's Eye* by Margaret Drabble first published by Weidenfeld & Nicolson Ltd 1972 © Margaret Drabble 1972. *Success Without Tears: A Woman's Guide to the Top* by Rachel Nelson first published in Great Britain by Weidenfeld & Nicolson Ltd 1979 © Rachel Nelson 1979. *Education in the Modern World* by John Vaizey published by Weidenfeld & Nicolson Ltd 1967 © John Vaizey 1967. *Rich Man, Poor Man* by Irwin Shaw first published in Great Britain by Weidenfield & Nicolson Ltd 1970 © Irwin Shaw 1969, 1970. *Lolita* by Vladimir Nabokov first published in Great Britain by Weidenfeld & Nicolson Ltd 1959 © Vladimir Nabokov 1955, 1959, 1968, © G P Putnam's Sons 1963 © McGraw-Hill International Inc 1971. *The Third World* by Peter Worsley first published by Weidenfeld & Nicolson Ltd 1964 © Peter Worsley 1964, 1967. *Portrait of a Marriage* by Nigel Nicolson published by Weidenfeld & Nicolson Ltd 1973 © Nigel Nicolson 1973. *The Dogs Bark: Public People and Private Places* by Truman Capote first published in Great Britain by Weidenfeld & Nicolson Ltd 1974 © Truman Capote 1974. *Great Planning Disasters* by Peter Hall first published in Great Britain by George Weidenfeld & Nicolson Ltd 1980 © Peter Hall 1980. The Writers and Readers Publishing Co-operative Ltd for: *Working with Words, Literacy Beyond School* by Jane Mace published by The Writers and Readers Publishing Co-operative Ltd 1979 © Jane Mace 1979. *The Alienated: Growing Old Today* by Gladys Elder OAP published by The Writers and Readers Publishing Co-operative Ltd 1977 © Text, The Estate of Gladys Elder 1977 © Photographs, Mike Abrahams 1977. *Beyond the Crisis in Art* by Peter Fuller published by The Writers and Readers Publishing Co-operative Ltd 1980 © Peter Fuller 1980. *The War and Peace Book* by Dave Noble published by The Writers and Readers Publishing Co-operative Ltd 1977 © Dave Noble 1977. *Tony Benn: A Political Biography* by Robert Jenkins first published by The Writers and Readers Publishing Co-operative Ltd 1980 © Robert Jenkins 1980. *Nuclear Power for Beginners* by Stephen Croall and Kaianders Sempler first published by The Writers and Readers Publishing Co-operative Ltd 1978 © Text, Stephen Croall 1978, 1980 © Illustrations Kaianders Sempler 1978, 1980. Yale University Press for: *Life in the English Country House: A Social and Architectural History* by Mark Girouard published by Yale University Press Ltd, London 1978 © Yale University 1978. The British Broadcasting Corporation for transcripts of radio transmissions of 'Kaleidoscope', 'Any Questions', 'Money Box' and 'Arts and Africa' 1981 and 1982. The British Broadcasting Corporation and Mrs Shirley Williams for transcripts of television interviews with Mrs Shirley Williams 1979. Dr B L Smith, School of Mathematics and Physical Sciences, University of Sussex for programmes on Current Affairs, Science and The Arts originally broadcast on Radio Sussex 1979 and 1980 © B L Smith. The following people in the University of Birmingham: Professor J McH Sinclair, Department of English, for his tapes of informal conversation (personal collection). Mr R Wallace, formerly Department of Accounting and Finance, and Ms D Houghton, Department of English, for transcripts of his accountancy lectures. Dr B K Gazey, Department of Electrical Engineering and Dr M Montgomery, University of Strathclyde, Department of English, for a transcript of Dr Gazey's lecture. Dr L W Poel, Department of Plant Biology, and Dr M Montgomery, University of Strathclyde, Department of English, for a transcript of Dr Poel's lecture. Professor J G Hawkes, formerly Department of Plant Biology, for recordings of his lectures. Dr M S Snaith, Department of Transportation

for recordings of his lectures. Dr M P Hoey, Department of English, and Dr M Cooper, The British Council, for a recording of their discussion on discourse analysis. Ms A Renouf, Department of English, for recordings of job and academic interviews 1977. Mr R H Hubbard, formerly a B Phil (Ed) student, Faculty of Education, for his research recordings of expressions of uncertainty 1978-79. Mr A E Hare, formerly a B Phil (Ed) student, Faculty of Education, for his transcripts of telephone conversations 1978. Dr A Tsui, formerly Department of English, for her recordings of informal conversation. Mr J Couperthwaite, formerly Department of English, for a recording of informal conversation 1981. Ms C Emmott, M Litt student, Department of English, for a recording of informal conversation 1981. Mrs B T Atkins for the transcript of an account of a dream 1981. The British Council for 'Authentic Materials Numbers 1-28' 1981. Professor M Hammerton and Mr K Coghill, Department of Psychology, University of Newcastle-upon-Tyne, for tape recordings of their lectures 1981. Mr G P Graveson, formerly research student, University of Newcastle, for his recordings of teacher discussion 1977. Mr W R Jones, formerly research student, University of Southampton, for his recordings of classroom talk. Mr Ian Fisher, formerly BA student, Newcastle Polytechnic, for his transcripts of interviews on local history 1981. Dr N Coupland, formerly PhD student, Department of English, UWIST, for his transcripts of travel agency talk 1981. Professor D B Bromley, Department of Psychology, University of Liverpool, for his transcript of a research recording. Mr Brian Lawrence, formerly of Saffron Walden County High School, for a tape of his talk on 'The British Education System' 1979.

Thanks are also due to Times Newspapers Ltd for providing machine-readable copies of The Times and The Sunday Times for linguistic analysis.

Editorial Team

Editor-in-Chief:	John Sinclair
Managing Editor:	Gwyneth Fox
Editors:	Stephen Bullon, Ramesh Krishnamurthy, Elizabeth Manning, John Todd
Assistant Editors:	Mona Baker, Jane Bradbury, Richard Fay Deborah Yuill
Senior Researcher:	Rosamund Moon
Computer Officer:	Tim Lane
Clerical Staff:	Sue Smith, Jane Winn
Consultants:	Gottfried Graustein, M.A.K. Halliday

总目录

环境		展开		语篇	
5 定时	**6** 方式与地点	**7** 转述	**8** 扩展	**9** 粘合	**10** 结构术
叙述		表示复杂的意义		对语言的评价语	
简单句	简单句	并列句: 转述结构	并列句: 分句并列	复合句	附加型 断裂型 约定式 主位与焦点
时态 体 时间	方位分句	直接引语 转述分句 其他 'that'-从句	分句类型	省略	被动化 'it/there'分句
时态附加状语	其他附加状语				
时间、频度和持续副词	地点和方式副词 介词 地名	转述动词 'that'、'wh'-词	连词	连接式句子副词	焦点副词 呼格
	副词屈折形式				

第一章 指明人和物

1 指明人和物
Referring to people and things

名词词组概述
Introduction to the noun group

1.1 简要地说，我们使用语言是为了叙述人和事。为此，我们以不同的方式使用词语。例如，进行陈述，提出问题和发号施令。我们所选用的单词都以词组形式出现，或围绕名词，或围绕动词。它们分别叫**名词词组**(noun groups)和**动词词组**(verb groups)。

名词词组说明我们叙述的是哪些人或物。**动词词组**说明对述及的人或物说了些什么。例如，我们在做什么。

此书第一章和第二章讨论名词词组。动词词组见第三章。

在句子中的位置
position in clause

1.2 名词词组可在句子中作**主语**(subject)、**宾语**(object)或**补足语**(complement)，也可作**介词**(prepositions)的宾语。

Women *tend not to have as much money as men.*
I couldn't feel ***anger*** *against him. They were* ***teachers****.*
Let us work together in ***peace****.*

普通名词和专有名词
common nouns and proper nouns

1.3 我们可以通过指出名称使用名词词组谈人或物。可用一般名称，叫**名词**(nouns)或**普通名词**(common nouns)，或者用特定名称，叫**专有名词**(proper nouns)，来指某人或某物。

专有名词主要用于指人、地方和事件。

Mary *likes strawberries.*
I went to ***Glasgow University*** *and then I went down to* ***London*** *to work for a psychiatrist.*
I worked in ***Woolworths*** *at* ***Christmas*** *one year.*

☞ 关于**专有名词**，详见 1.53 至 1.59 节。

与普通名词连用的限定词
determiners with common nouns

1.4 如果使用普通名词，那就说明所谈及的人或物可与同他们在某些方面相似的其他人或物放在同一类。

若只想说明某人或某物属于某一类，在普通名词前加**泛指限定词**(general determiners)即可。

*I met **a girl** who was **a student** there.*
*Have you got **any comment** to make about that?*
*There are **some diseases** that are clearly inherited.*

若要表示所谈及的是该类中的某个成员，则在普通名词前加**特指限定词**(specific determiners) 。

*I put **my arm** round **her shoulders**.*
*... **the destruction** of **their city**.*
*She came in to see me **this morning**.*

☞ 关于**限定词**(determiners)，详见 1.161 至 1.236 节。
☞ 关于**名词**，详见 1.14 至 1.93 节。

人称代词和指示代词
personal and demonstrative pronouns

1.5 有时人们不用人或物的名称，而用**代词**(pronouns)来替代专有名词或普通名词。

通常这样做的理由是因为所谈及的人或物的名称上文已经提到过，因而用**人称代词**(personal pronouns)或**指示代词**(demonstrative pronouns)指代就可以了。

*Reagan's American, isn't **he**?*
*'Could **I** speak to Sue, please?'— '**I**'m sorry, **she** doesn't work here now.'*
*I've got two boys, and looking at **them** I can see a little bit of myself.*
***This** led to widespread criticism.*

☞ 有关**人称代词**，详见 1.96 至 1.109 节。
☞ 有关**指示代词**，详见 1.123 至 1.126 节。

不定代词
indefinite pronouns

1.6 有时，人们可能根本不提人或物的名称。例如，不愿意提及，认为提不提无关紧要或不了解情况，或者讲故事时故意含混不清，神秘莫测。在这种情况下，可用**不定代词**(indefinite pronouns)泛指人或物。

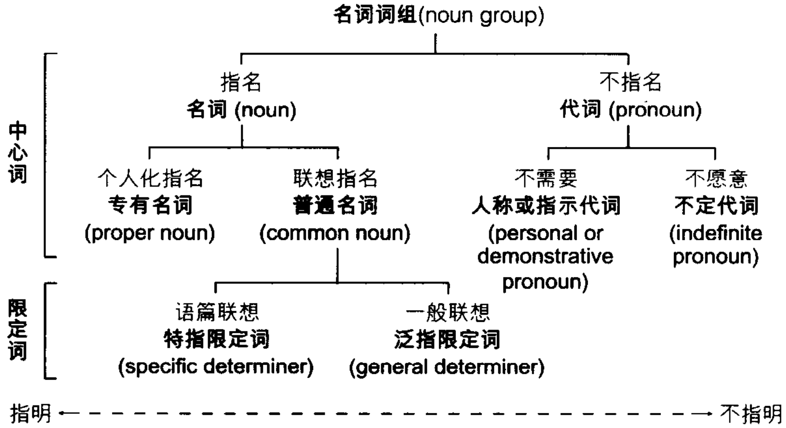
*I had to say **something**.*
*In this country **nobody** trusts **anyone**.*
*A moment later, his heart seemed to stop as he sensed the sudden movement of **someone** rushing into the hut.*

☞ 关于**不定代词**，详见 1.127 至 1.140 节。

名词词组的选择
noun group choice

1.7 在语言与客观世界的关系中，不同种类的名词词组构成了一系列的选择项。这些选择项既有指明人和物的名称的，也有不提人和物的名称的。

由上述不同选择构成的系列可图示如下：



前置修饰语和后置修饰语
modifiers and qualifiers

1.8 如果要详细说明所谈及的人或物，而不只是交代他们的一般名称和特定名称，可用**前置修饰语**(modifiers)和**后置修饰语**(qualifiers)。

放在名词前的成份叫前置修饰语。放在名词后的成份叫后置修饰语。

前置修饰语
modifiers

1.9 大多数**形容词**(adjectives)用作前置修饰语。名词也常作前置修饰语。

*...a **big** city.*
*...**blue** ink.*
*He opened the **car** door.*
*...the **oil** industry.*

☞ 关于**形容词**，详见2.2至2.173节。关于**名词前置修饰语**(noun modifiers)，详见2.174至2.179节。

后置修饰语
qualifiers

1.10 使用**后置修饰语**(qualifiers)可扩展名词词组。后置修饰语可以是介词短语、关系从句、地点副词、时间副词或带 'to' 的动词不定式。

*...a girl **in a dark grey dress**.*
*...the man **who employed me**.*
*...the room **upstairs**.*
*...the desire **to kill**.*

形容词和分词有时也可作后置修饰语，但通常与其他词连用。

*...the Minister **responsible for national security**.*
*...the three cards **lying on the table**.*

☞ 有关**后置修饰语**，详见2.289至2.320节。

1.11 在后置修饰语中，以 'of' 引出的介词短语尤为常用，因为它们能表达两个名词词组之间的许多不同关系。

*...strong feelings **of jealousy**.*
*...a picture **of a house**.*
*...the destruction **of their city**.*
*...the daughter **of the village cobbler**.*
*...problems **of varying complexity**.*
*...the arrival **of the police**.*

☞ 关于 'of' 在名词词组中的用法，详见 2.294 至 2.300 节。

并列
coordination

1.12 若要分别指一个以上的人或物，或者用一种以上的方式来描述他们，可用**连词**(conjunctions) 例如 'and'、'or' 或者 'but' 将名词词组、前置修饰语或后置修饰语连接起来。

有时，可用逗号代替 'and' 或者把单词依次加以排列。

*...**a table and chair**.*
*...his obligations with regard to **Amanda, Robert and Matthew**.*
*...some **fruit or cheese** afterwards.*
*...**her long black skirt**.*

☞ 关于连词用来连接名词词组和名词词组内的词的用法，详见 8.159 至 8.189 节。

数词和量词
numbers and quantifiers

1.13 如果要表达所谈及的事物的数目或数量，可用**数词** (numbers) 或**量词**(quantifiers)。

*Last year I worked **seven** days a week **fourteen** hours a day.*
*She drinks **lots of** coffee.*

☞ **数词**在 2.225 至 2.256 节讨论。
☞ **量词**在 2.193 至 2.210 节讨论。

指明人和物：名词
Identifying people and things: nouns

1.14 名词可用来指明人或物。本章将探讨六类主要名词。这些名词按是否有复数形式，前面是否需限定词，作动词的主语时要求单数动词还是复数动词来加以分类。

下表是六类名词：

类别	例词	评注	节次
具数名词	a bird birds	有复数形式；需限定词	1.16 至 1.23 节
不具数名词	happiness equipment	无复数形式；通常无限定词	1.24 至 1.34 节
单数名词	the moon a day	无复数形式；需限定词	1.35 至 1.41 节
复数名词	clothes scissors	无单数形式	1.42 至 1.47 节
集合名词	the public the staff	单数或复数动词均可	1.48 至 1.52 节
专有名词	Mary, London The United Nations	词首用大写字母	1.53 至 1.59 节

许多名词具有各种不同的含义，因此，作为一个具数名词可能有一个含义，作为一个不具数名词，可能有另一个含义，作为一个单数名词则可能又有一个含义。另有少数几类名词具有不同一般的特征。这些名词在1.60至1.93节讨论。

大写字母
capital letters

1.18 除用于句首外，大多数名词的第一个字母不大写。但下列几类名词则以大写字母开头。

• **专有名词或名称**

*...my sister **Elizabeth**.*
*...my brother **Tom**.*
*Play some more **Chopin**.*
*I'll be in the office on **Monday**.*
*Tomorrow is **Tuesday**.*
*I thought he'd gone to **London**.*

☞ 关于**专有名词**，详见1.53至1.59节，表示时间和地点的专有名词分别在第五章和第六章讨论。

• **指某一种特定国籍的人或指语言的名词**

*Can you think of some typical problems that confront **Germans** learning **English**?*

• **指特定产品名称的名词**

*If the figures are all correct, then you win a **Volkswagen**.*
*Put a bit of **Sellotape** across it.*
*I had to make **Xerox** copies of the letters.*

可数的事物：具数名词
Things which can be counted: count nouns

1.16 很多名词具有**单数**(singular)和**复数**(plural)两种形式。单数指一个人或物；复数指一个以上的人或物。

这些名词表示可数的人或物，前面可加数词。

*...**book**...**books**.*
*...**day**...**days**.*
*...**three brothers**.*
*...**ten minutes**.*

在英语名词中，这类名词数量最多。它们叫**具数名词**(count nouns)或**可数名词**(countable nouns)。

名词与动词的一致
noun-verb agreement

1.17 单数具数名词作动词的主语时，动词用单数；复数具数名词作主语时，动词用复数。

*A **dog likes** to eat far more meat than a human being.*
*Bigger **dogs cost** more.*

限定词的用法
use of determiners

1.18 具数名词用于单数时，前面需用限定词。

*He got into **the car** and started **the motor.***
*They left **the house** to go for **a walk** after tea.*

具数名词用于复数泛指事物时，前面不用限定词。

*It has very large **rooms**.*
*Most classrooms have **computers**.*

但是如果指明特定事物，复数名词前则需用限定词。

***The rooms** at Watermouth are all like this.*
***Our computers** can give you all the relevant details.*

具数名词表
list of count nouns

1.19 下列是部分常见的具数名词。

accident	cat	father	lake	river
account	chair	field	library	road
actor	chapter	film	line	room
address	chest	finger	list	scheme
adult	child	foot	machine	school
animal	cigarette	friend	magazine	ship

answer	city	game	man	shirt
apartment	class	garden	meal	shock
article	club	gate	meeting	shop
artist	coat	girl	member	sister
baby	college	group	message	smile
bag	computer	gun	method	son
ball	corner	hall	minute	spot
bank	country	hand	mistake	star
battle	crowd	handle	model	station
beach	cup	hat	month	stream
bed	daughter	head	motor	street
bell	day	heart	mouth	student
bill	desk	hill	nation	table
bird	doctor	horse	neck	task
boat	dog	hospital	newspaper	teacher
book	door	hotel	office	tent
bottle	dream	hour	page	thought
box	dress	house	park	tour
boy	driver	husband	party	town
bridge	ear	idea	path	valley
brother	edge	island	picture	village
bus	effect	issue	plan	walk
bush	egg	job	plane	wall
camp	election	journey	plant	week
captain	engine	judge	problem	window
car	eye	key	product	woman
card	face	king	programme	year
case	factory	kitchen	project	
castle	farm	lady	ring	

注意：尽管上表中许多名词有一些不具数名词的含义，但它们最常用的意义仍作为具数名词。

单数和复数形式
singular and plural forms

1.20 大多数具数名词的复数形式以 '-s' 结尾。这可与其单数形式相区别。

*...bed...**beds**.*
*...car...**cars**.*

有些具数名词的单数形式和复数形式有其他区别。

*...bus...**buses**.*
*...lady...**ladies**.*
*...calf...**calves**.*
*...man...**men**.*
*...mouse...**mice**.*

☞ 有关具数名词的复数形式，详见附录参考部分 R2 至 R19 。

单数和复数同形
same form for singular and plural

1.21 有些具数名词的单数和复数形式相同。

...*a* ***sheep***.
...*nine* ***sheep***.

这类名词中有许多指动物或鱼类，其余的意义差别较大：

bison	cod	whitebait	fruit	~
deer	fish	~	gallows	bourgeois
greenfly	goldfish	aircraft	grapefruit	chassis
grouse	halibut	hovercraft	insignia	corps
moose	mullet	spacecraft	mews	patois
reindeer	salmon	~	offspring	précis
sheep	shellfish	crossroads	series	rendezvous
~	trout	dice	species	

单数形式复数含义
singular form with plural meaning

1.22 许多表示动物和鸟的名词都具有单数和复数两种形式。但是，如果在捕猎的环境中指这些动物或表示它们的数量很多，也常用不带‘-s’词尾的形式，即使指几个动物或鸟也是如此。

They hunted ***gazelle***.

注意，当句子主语是几个动物或鸟时，动词用复数形式，即使所用的主语形式上无‘-s’。

Zebra *are a more difficult prey.*

同样，表示许多生长在一起的树木或植物时，可用其名称的单数形式；表示少数或个别树木或植物时，通常则用以‘-s’结尾的复数形式。

...the rows of ***willow*** *and* ***cypress*** *which lined the creek.*
...the ***poplars*** *and* ***willows*** *along the Peshawar Road.*

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

1.23 虽然通常只是某些动物、鸟类、树木和植物的名称用单数形式表示复数意义，事实上所有这类名称都可这么用。这是英语的**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**里讨论。

通常不可数的事物：不具数名词
Things not usually counted: uncount nouns

1.24 有些名词只表示诸如品质、实物、过程和话题等一般事物，不表示单个事物或事件。这些名词只有一种形式，既不能与数词连用，通常也不与限定词‘the’、‘a’或‘an’连用。

*...a boy or girl with **intelligence**.*
*The donkey needed **food** and **water**.*
*...new techniques in **industry** and **agriculture**.*
*I talked with people about **religion**, **death**, **marriage**, **money** and **happiness**.*

这些名词叫**不具数名词** (uncount nouns)或叫**不可数名词** (uncountable nouns)。

名词和动词的一致
noun-verb agreement

1.25 不具数名词作动词的主语时，动词用单数形式。

***Fear begins** to creep slowly into their hearts.*
*They believed that local **democracy was** essential to good government.*
***Electricity is** potentially dangerous.*

不具数名词表
list of uncount nouns

1.26 下列是一些常见的不具数名词：

absence	evil	loneliness	security
access	existence	love	silence
age	experience	luck	sleep
agriculture	failure	magic	strength
anger	faith	marriage	snow
atmosphere	fashion	mercy	spite
beauty	fear	music	status
behaviour	finance	nature	stuff
cancer	fire	paper	teaching
capacity	flesh	patience	technology
childhood	food	peace	time
china	freedom	philosophy	trade
comfort	fun	pleasure	training
concern	ground	policy	transport
confidence	growth	poverty	travel
courage	happiness	power	trust
death	health	pride	truth
democracy	help	protection	violence
depression	history	purity	waste
design	ice	rain	water
duty	independence	reality	wealth
earth	industry	relief	weather
education	insurance	religion	welfare
electricity	intelligence	respect	wind
energy	joy	safety	work
environment	justice	salt	worth
equipment	labour	sand	youth

注意 Warning

1.27 有些词在英语中是不具数名词，但在其他语言中则指可数的事物。

下列是一些最常见的这类不具数名词：

advice	hair	knowledge	money	research
baggage	homework	luggage	news	spaghetti
furniture	information	machinery	progress	traffic

定量
quantifying

1.28 虽然不具数名词表示不可数的事物，不能和数词连用，但人们常需要表示由不具数名词所表达的事物的数量。

为此，有时可在不具数名词前加 'all'、'enough'、'little' 或 'some' 一类泛指限定词。

*It gave him **little** time.*
*There's **some** chocolate cake over there.*

☞ 关于和不具数名词连用的泛指限定词，详见 1.210 节。

也可在不具数名词前加**量词**(quantifiers)。例如，指水时，可用 'drops of water'、'a cup of water'、'four gallons of water' 等等。

☞ 量词与不具数名词连用的用法在 2.193 至 2.210 节详细讲解。

1.29 如果确信读者或受话人会了解所表示的数量，就不必使用量词。

例如，在饭店里，人们既可以叫 'three cups of coffee' 也可以叫 'three coffees'，因为受话人知道所指的是 'three cups of coffee'。在这种情况下，不具数名词 'coffee' 就变成了可数名词。

具有这种用法的名词叫**团性名词**(mass nouns)。

团性名词
mass nouns

1.30 团性名词常用来指特定种类的食品或饮料的量。

*We spent two hours talking over **coffee** and biscuits in her study.*
*We stopped for **a coffee** at a small cafe.*

1.31 同样，当部分不具数名词表示事物的种类时，它们成为团性名词。例如，'cheese' 一词通常为不具数名词，但仍可说 'a large range of cheeses'。

*...plentiful cheap **beer**.*
*...profits from low-alcohol **beers**.*
*We were not allowed to buy **wine** or spirits at lunch time.*
*I like **wines** and liqueurs.*

团性名词表示物质种类的用法多见于技术性文章。例如，'steel' 在绝大多数情况下是不具数名词，但若上下文要求区分钢的不同种类，它就可用作团性名词。

*...imports of European **steel**.*
*...the use of small amounts of nitrogen in making certain **steels**.*

团性名词表
list of mass nouns

1.32 下列是常用团性名词：

adhesive	deodorant	jam	paint	steel
beer	detergent	jelly	perfume	sugar
brandy	disinfectant	juice	pesticide	tea
cake	dye	lager	plastic	vodka
cheese	fabric	liqueur	poison	whisky
claret	fertilizer	lotion	preservative	wine
cloth	fuel	meat	ribbon	wood
coal	fur	medicine	salad	wool
coffee	gin	metal	sauce	yarn
cognac	glue	milk	sherry	yoghurt
coke	ink	oil	soap	
cotton	insecticide	ointment	soil	
curry	iron	ore	soup	

兼作具数名词和不具数名词的名词
nouns that are uncount and count

1.33 还有一些名词，当它们泛指某事物时，为不具数名词；当它们指此事物的特定实例时，为具数名词。

有的名词通常兼作具数名词和不具数名词。例如，'victory' 泛指获胜这个概念，'a victory' 指某人一次特定的胜利。

*Just as we gained fame in **victory**, we lost nothing in defeat.*
*She is still waiting and yearning for **her** first **victory**.*
*Many parents were alarmed to find themselves in open **conflict** with the church.*
*Russia had been successful in previous **conflicts**.*

还有一些不具数名词极少或从不作具数名词。换句话说，它们没有复数形式，不能与数词连用。

*...a collection of fine **furniture**.*
*We found Alan weeping with **relief** and **joy**.*
*He saved **money** by refusing to have a telephone.*

以 '-s' 结尾的不具数名词
uncount nouns ending in '-s'

1.34 有些以 '-s' 结尾的名词，看上去好像是复数，其实是不具数名词，也就是说，它们作动词的主语时，动词用单数形式。

这些名词主要指学科、活动、游戏和疾病。

***Physics is** fun.*
***Politics plays** a large part in village life.*
***Economics is** the oldest of the social sciences.*
***Billiards was** gradually replaced by bridge.*
***Measles is** in most cases a relatively harmless disease.*

下面是三个以‘-s’结尾的不具数名词表。

下列名词表示学科和活动：

acoustics	classics	logistics	politics
aerobics	economics	mathematics	statistics
aerodynamics	electronics	mechanics	thermodynamics
aeronautics	genetics	obstetrics	
athletics	linguistics	physics	

注意，这些名词中，有些偶尔也用作复数名词，特别是谈到某一个人的工作或活动时。

*His **politics are** clearly right-wing.*

下列名词指游戏：

billiards	cards	draughts	tiddlywinks
bowls	darts	skittles	

下列名词指疾病：

diabetes	mumps	rickets
measles	rabies	shingles

仅指一个事物：单数名词
When there is only one of something: singular nouns

1.38 有些事物在世界上独一无二。有些事物人们几乎每次只想谈及其中的一个。这就是说，有些名词（更常见的是名词的某些意义）只用单数形式。

用于这种意义的名词叫**单数名词**(singular nouns)。单数名词前必须用限定词，因为它们的作用与具数名词的单数形式相同。

名词与动词一致 noun-verb agreement

1.36 单数名词作动词的主语时，动词用单数形式。

*The **sun was shining**.*
*The **atmosphere is** very relaxed.*

独一无二的事物 things that are unique

1.37 有些单数名词用来表示一个特定事物，所以与定冠词 'the' 连用。事实上，这些名词中的一部分词表示世界上独一无二的事物。

*There were huge cracks in **the ground**.*
***The moon** had not yet reached my window.*
*Burning tanks threw great spirals of smoke into **the air**.*
*He's always thinking about **the past** and worrying about **the future**.*

根据上下文判断 using the context

1.38 如果上下文能明白地说明所指，其他单数名词也可用来表示一个事物。例如，在利兹(Leeds)，若有人说 'I work at the university' 几乎可以肯定他是说在利兹大学(Leeds University)工作。

但在下列例句中，就很难准确判断单数名词所指的是谁或是什么，因为缺乏上下文。

*In many countries **the market** is small numerically.*
*Their company looks good only because **the competition** looks bad.*
*You've all missed **the point**.*

只有知道谈及的是哪些商品或产品，才能确定 'the market' 指的是哪一类潜在顾客。同样，很难判断 'the competition' 具体指哪家公司或哪些公司。说话人或作者很可能在下文中才交代 'the point' 指的是什么。

与乏词义动词连用 used with delexical verbs

1.39 有些活动人们一般每回只进行一次，表示这类活动的名词通常作动词的宾语并与限定词 'a' 连用。

在这一种结构中，动词的词汇意义几乎消失，整个结构的意义主要通过名词表达。这种结构中的动词叫**乏词义动词**(delexical verbs)。关于这类动词，详见 3.33 至 3.46 节。

*I went and had **a wash**.*
*Bruno gave it **a try**.*

有些单数名词经常与某一个动词连用，因而便成为固定短语、习惯用法。

*I'd like very much for you to **have a voice** in the decision.*
*Isn't it time we **made a move**?*

单数名词结构
singular noun structures

1.40 有两种使用单数名词的特殊结构。

单数名词有时与限定词 'a' 连用，作为句子的补足语(complements)。关于补足语，详见 3.127 至 3.182 节。

*Decision-making is **an art**.*
*The quickest way was by using the car. It was **a risk** but he decided it had to be taken.*
*They were beginning to find Griffiths' visits rather **a strain**.*

单数名词有时与限定词 'the' 连用，后接 'of' 引出的介词短语。

*Cultivate **the art of** reading upside down.*
*Old diesel locomotives will be replaced by newer ones to reduce **the risk of** breakdown.*
*He collapsed **under the strain** of a heavy workload.*

☞ 这类名词中有的用于隐喻意义，详见 1.65 节。

有些单数名词总是表示一种特定性质或事物，但很少单独使用。也就是说，它们需要支撑成份作某种说明。这些单数名词可与许多不同的限定词连用。

*There was **a note of satisfaction** in his voice.*
*Bessie covered the last fifty yards at **a tremendous pace**.*
*Simon allowed **his pace** to slacken.*
*She was simply incapable of behaving in **a rational and considered manner**.*
*...**their manner** of rearing their young.*

☞ 无支撑成份就很少单独使用的名词在 1.60 至 1.65 节详细讨论。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

1.41 有些名词只有在习惯用语中才能以单数形式出现，并具有特殊含义。它们表面上似乎像单数名词，但并不像单数名词那样可以随便使用。

*What happens down there is **none of my business**.*
***It's a pity** I can't get to him.*

指一个以上的事物：复数名词
Referring to more than one thing: plural nouns

1.42 有些事物被认为只具有复数含义，没有单数含义，因此，有些名词只有复数形式。例如，可以说买 'goods'，但不能说买 'a good'。这些名词叫复数名词(plural nouns)。

另一些名词用于特殊意义时，只能有复数形式。例如，表示美俄首脑的一次正式会晤，一般都用 'talks'，不用 'a talk'。用于这些特殊意义时，这些名词也叫复数名词。

*Union leaders met the company for wage **talks** on October 9.*
*It is inadvisable to sell **goods** on a sale or return basis.*
*Take care of your **clothes**.*
*The weather **conditions** were the same.*
*All **proceeds** are going to charity.*
*Employees can have meals on the **premises**.*

注意，有些复数名词并不以'-s'结尾。例如，'clergy'、'police'、'poultry' 和 'vermin'。

名词与动词一致
noun-verb agreement

1.43 复数名词作动词的主语时，动词用复数形式。

***Expenses** for attending meetings **are** sometimes **claimed**.*
*The **foundations were shaking**.*
***Refreshments** were on sale in the café.*
*Attempts were made where **resources were** available.*

与前置和后置修饰语连用
use with modifiers and qualifiers

1.44 这些名词前通常不能用数词，但可以加 'some' 或 'many' 一类**泛指限定词**(general determiners)。关于同复数名词连用的**泛指限定词**，详见 1.208 节开始的一部分。

有些复数名词因有特定含义，前面通常用特指限定词；有些则因为意义笼统，从不与任何限定词连用；还有一些因需要其他支撑成份加以限定，因而若无前置或后置修饰语修饰，便很少单独使用。

以下两节的几个词表列举了一些具有上述某种用法的常见复数名词，其中许多还具有具数名词的其他含义。

与限定词连用或不与限定词连用
with or without determiners

1.45 有些复数名词通常与 'the' 连用。

*Things are much worse when **the rains** come.*
***The authorities** are concerned that the cocaine may be part of an international drug racket.*
*He considered taking Mrs Burns to **the pictures** to see 'Gone With The Wind'.*

下列是通常与 'the' 连用的复数名词：

authorities	heavens	pictures	sights
foundations	mains	races	waters
fruits	odds	rains	wilds

有些复数名词通常与物主限定词如 'my' 或 'his' 连用。

*It offended **her feelings**.*
***My travels** up the Dalmatian coast began in Dubrovnik.*
*The last thing she will do is add to **her troubles**.*

下列是通常与物主限定词连用的复数名词：

activities	likes	terms	wants
attentions	movements	travels	
feelings	reactions	troubles	

有些复数名词通常不与限定词连用。

*There were one or two cases where people returned **goods**.*
*There is only one applicant, which simplifies **matters**.*
*Several of the men were covered in **vermin**.*

下列是通常不与限定词连用的复数名词：

airs	expenses	matters	solids
appearances	figures	refreshments	talks
events	goods	riches	vermin

有些复数名词既可与限定词连用，也可不与限定词连用。

*The city was dominated by **clergy**.*
*He had summoned **the clergy**.*

*A luxury hotel was to be used as **headquarters**.*
*General Boris Gronov arrived at **his headquarters** yesterday.*

*We didn't want it to dampen **spirits** which were required to remain positive.*
*Jessica has been keeping up **the spirits** of her family and friends.*

下列是既可与限定词连用，也可不与限定词连用的复数名词：

arms	greens	morals	proceeds	thanks
basics	grounds	papers	rates	tracks
brains	handcuffs	particulars	resources	troops
clergy	headquarters	people	specifics	values
costs	interests	police	spirits	
directions	looks	poultry	supplies	
essentials	means	premises	talks	

其他前置或后置修饰语
other modifiers and qualifiers

1.46 若没有前置或后置修饰语，有些复数名词极少单独使用，因为它们需要支撑成份。

*It did wonders for one's own **good manners**.*
*...the hidden **pressures of direct government funding**.*
***Naval forces** are excluded from the talks.*

下列是若无前置或后置修饰语就很少单独使用的复数名词：

affairs	effects	matters	sands	works
clothes	forces	pressures	services	writings
conditions	hopes	proportions	thoughts	
defences	lines	quarters	wastes	
demands	manners	relations	ways	
details	materials	remains	words	

类型意义：服装和工具
typical meanings: clothes and tools

1.47 有两类特殊名词，通常为复数：一类指服装或人们的其他穿戴；另一类指工具或人们使用的其他器物。

这是因为有些衣服和工具，如 'trousers' 和 'scissors' 是由相似的两个部分组成的。

*She wore brown **trousers** and a green sweater.*
*He took off his **glasses**.*
*...using the **pliers** from the toolbox.*

若泛指这些东西，或指其不定量，可用不带限定词的复数名词。

*Never poke **scissors** into a light bulb socket.*
*The man was watching the train through **binoculars**.*

下列是表示服装和人们其他穿戴的复数名词：

bermudas	dungarees	jodhpurs	pants	sunglasses
braces	flannels	knickerbockers	pyjamas	tights
briefs	flares	knickers	shorts	trousers
cords	galoshes	leggings	slacks	trunks
corduroys	glasses	overalls	specs	underpants
culottes	jeans	panties	spectacles	

下列是指工具和人们使用的其他器物的复数名词：

binoculars	dividers	pincers	scissors	tongs
clippers	field-glasses	pliers	secateurs	tweezers
compasses	nutcrackers	scales	shears	

如果表示一件衣服或一件工具，可在名词前加 'some' 或 'a pair of'；若要表示一件以上的衣服或工具，则用数词或量词加 'pair of'。

*I got **some scissors** out of the kitchen drawer.*
*I was sent out to buy **a pair of scissors**.*
*He was wearing **a pair of** old grey **trousers**.*
*Liza has **three pairs of jeans**.*

'A pair of' 也可用于 'gloves'、'shoes' 和 'socks' 一类以成双出现为特征的物品。

*...**a pair of** new **gloves**.*

物主限定词如 'my' 可以代替 'a'。

*...**his** favourite **pair of shoes**.*

当 'a pair of' 与复数名词连用时，若动词出现在同一个句子里，就用单数；若动词出现在随后的关系从句里，通常则用复数。

*It is likely that **a** new **pair of shoes brings** more happiness to a child than a new car brings to a grown-up.*
*I always wear a pair of long pants underneath, or **a pair of pyjamas is** just as good.*
*He put on **a pair of** brown **shoes**, which **were** waiting there for him.*
*He wore **a pair of earphones**, which **were** plugged into a tape-recorder.*

'A pair of' 后的复数名词用复数代词指代。

*She went to the wardrobe, chose **a pair of shoes**, put **them** on and leaned back in the chair.*
*He brought out **a pair of dark glasses** and handed **them** to Walker.*

表示群体：集体名词
Referring to groups: collective nouns

1.48 在英语中，有些名词表示人或物的集合体。这些名词叫**集体名词** (collective nouns)。它们只有一种形式。而许多集体名词用作具数名词时就有其他含义，并有两种形式。

单数或复数动词
singular or plural verb

1.49 使用集体名词作主语时，动词既可用单数，也可用复数。

如果将某个群体作为整体看待，动词用单数形式；若看作该群体的若干个体，动词则用复数形式。

*Our little **group is** complete again.*
*A second **group are** those parents who feel that they were too harsh.*

*Our **family isn't** poor any more.*
*My **family are** perfectly normal.*
*I like to know what **the enemy is thinking**.*
***The enemy were** visibly **cracking**.*
*His arguments were confined to books which **the public was** unlikely to read.*
***The public were deceived** by the newspapers.*

许多组织机构的名称是集体名词，它们可与单数或复数动词连用。

***The BBC is sending** him to Tuscany for the summer.*
***The BBC are planning** to use the new satellite next month.*
***England was leading** 18-0 at half-time.*
***England are seeking** alternatives for their B team.*

在返指集体名词时，若前面的动词用单数，代词或限定词也相应地用单数；若前面的动词用复数，代词或限定词也相应地用复数。

*The government **has said it** would wish to do this only if there was no alternative.*
*The government **have made up their** minds that **they**'re going to win.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

1.50 注意，名词 'bacteria'、'data' 和 'media' 现在常作集体名词用，就是说，它们既可与单数动词连用，也可与复数动词连用，自身形式不变。一些谈吐谨慎的人则认为，这些名词只能与复数动词连用，因为它们有非常罕见的单数形式 'bacterium'、'datum' 和 'medium'，因而是具数名词。

***Medieval Arabic data show** that the length of the day has been increasing more slowly than expected.*
***Our latest data shows** more firms are hoping to expand in the near future.*

⚠

1.51 集体名词虽然可与复数动词连用，但并没有具数名词复数的作用。如不能与数词连用，只能说 'Three of the enemy were killed' 不能说 'Three enemy were killed'。

集体名词表 list of collective nouns

1.52 下列是常见的集体名词：

aristocracy	committee	enemy	herd	press
army	community	family	jury	proletariat
audience	company	flock	media	public
bacteria	council	gang	navy	staff
brood	crew	government	nobility	team
cast	data	group	opposition	

☞ 有些集体名词同时又是**单位词**(partitives)。例如，可说 'a flock of sheep' 和 'a herd of cattle'，详见 2.215 节。

通过指出名称谈人和物：专有名词
Referring to people and things by name: proper nouns

1.53 要谈及某一个人，可以用他的名字。人名通常叫**专有名词**(proper nouns)。

人名需用大写字母开始，前面不加限定词。

...Michael Hall.
...Jenny.
...Smith.

☞ 直接与人交谈时，称呼其姓名的方法在 10.132 节讨论。

1.54 人名有时可以用来指代他们的作品，可以像具数名词那样指代某人创作的油画、雕塑或著作。拼写时仍需以大写字母开始。

*In those days you could buy a **Picasso** for £300.*
*I was looking at **their Picassos and Matisses**.*
*I'm reading **an Agatha Christie** at the moment.*

人名还可像不具数名词那样，指代某人谱写或演奏的音乐作品。

*I remembered it while we were listening to **the Mozart**.*
*...instead of playing **Chopin** and **Stavinsky** all the time.*

家庭关系名词
relationship nouns

1.55 表示家庭成员之间关系的名词，如 'mother'、'dad'、'aunt'、'grandpa' 和 'son'，也可以像人名那样使用，用来称呼他们或表示他们。这样用时要大写。

*I'm sure **Mum** will be pleased.*

头衔
titles

1.56 表示人们社会地位或职业的词叫**头衔**(titles)。头衔要大写。

比较正式地谈及某人或为了表示尊敬，通常在他或她的姓前或全名前使用头衔。

*...**Doctor** Barker.*
*...**Lord** Curzon.*
*...**Captain** Jack Langtry.*
*...**Mrs** Ford.*

下列是通常用在人名前的头衔：

Admiral	Dame	Lord	Princess
Archbishop	Doctor	Major	Private
Baron	Emperor	Miss	Professor
Baroness	Father	Mr	Queen
Bishop	General	Mrs	Saint
Brother	Governor	Ms	Sergeant
Captain	Inspector	Nurse	Sir
Cardinal	Justice	Police Constable	Sister
Colonel	King	Pope	
Constable	Lady	President	
Corporal	Lieutenant	Prince	

少数头衔如 'King'、'Queen'、'Prince'、'Sir' 和 'Lady' 还可直接置于不包括姓的名字之前。

*...**Queen Elizabeth**.*
*...**Lady Diana**'s wedding dress.*
***Sir Michael** had made it very clear indeed.*

☞ 直接交谈时，使用头衔的方法见 10.131 至 10.134 节。

用头衔而不用姓名
titles used without names

1.57 头衔有时可与限定词、其他前置和后置修饰语连用，省去人名。

...Her Majesty the Queen and the Duke of Edinburgh.
...the Archbishop of Canterbury.
...the President of the United States.
...the Bishop of Birmingham.

作为具数名词使用的头衔
titles used as count nouns

1.58 大多数表示头衔的词也可作具数名词，一般情况下不大写。

*...lawyers, scholars, poets, **presidents** and so on.*
*...a foreign **prince**.*
*Maybe he'll be a **Prime Minister** one day.*

其他专有名词
other proper nouns

1.59 组织、机构、船只、杂志、书籍、戏剧和油画的名称及其他一些独一无二的事物也是专有名词，它们要大写。

...British Rail.
...Birmingham University.

有时，它们与 'the' 或另一个限定词连用。

...the United Nations ...the Labour Party ...the University of Birmingham.
...the Queen Mary ...the Guardian ...the Wall Street Journal.

除了在书名、剧名和油画名中外，限定词不需要大写。

...The Grapes of Wrath
...A Midsummer Night's Dream.

有些时间表达式属专有名词，这些在第五章探讨。

极少单独使用的名词
Nouns which are rarely used alone

1.60 有些名词极少单独使用，因为它们需要支撑成份。它们必须与前置或后置修饰语连用，否则意义不明确。这类名词中，有些含义颇多、有些单独使用则无多少意义。

例如，不说明是哪个组织的领导，一般不用 'the head' 指某人。同样，不说某人讲话带有 'a note'，而要描述带什么样的口气，如说 'a triumphant note' 或 'a note of triumph'。只有从上下文能够确定其意义时，这些名词才能单独使用。例如，若刚提到一座山，紧接着说 'the top'，显然，这里的 'the top' 是指刚刚提及的那座山的山顶。

与前置修饰语连用 used with modifiers

1.61 如果名词有**前置修饰语**(modifiers)，那么修饰语通常为形容词或另一个名词。

...her wide experience of ***political affairs****.*
I had detected an ***apologetic note*** *in the agent's voice.*
He was stripped of his ***Soviet citizenship****.*
Check the ***water level****.*

☞ 有关前置修饰语，详见第二章。

与后置修饰语连用 used with qualifiers

1.62 如果这些名词有**后置修饰语**(qualifiers)，那么，修饰语一般为 'of' 引出的介词短语。

...at the ***top of the hill****.*
There he saw for himself the ***extent of the danger****.*
Ever since the ***rise of industrialism****, education has been geared towards producing workers.*
...this high ***level of interest****.*

☞ 关于后置修饰语，详见 2.289 至 2.320 节。

总与前置修饰语连用
always used with modifiers

1.63 有的名词总是与前置修饰语连用。例如，说某人是 'an eater' 就毫无意义，因为人都要吃东西。不过可以说他或她是 'a meat eater' 或 'a messy eater'。

同样，若要用 'range' 确切表示某一类价值概念，就必须用 'price range' 或 'age range' 等词组具体地加以说明。用 'wear' 表示服装时，则必须具体说明是指哪一类服装，如 'sports wear' 或 'evening wear'。

Tim was ***a slow eater****.*
...the other end of ***the age range****.*
The company has plans to expand its ***casual wear****.*

总与领属格连用
always used with possessives

1.64 有些名词几乎总是与领属格连用，即与**物主限定词**(possessive determiners)、撇号('s) 或 'of' 引出的介词短语连用，因为说话人必须表示他所谈论的人或物与谁或与什么有关，或是属于谁的或属于什么的。

He has been associated with Everyman Opera since ***its inception****.*
Advance warning of ***the approach of enemies*** *must have been of the greatest importance.*
...the portrait of a man in ***his prime****.*

隐喻用法
metaphorical uses

1.65 可用于隐喻意义的名词常与前置或后置修饰语连用，以确切地说明所谈及的事物。

*...****the maze of politics****.*
He has been prepared to sacrifice this company on ***the altar of his own political ambitions****.*
He has worked out a scheme for ***an economic lifeline*** *by purchasing land.*
Lloyd's of London is ***the heart of the world's insurance industry****.*
...those on the lower rungs of ***the professional ladder****.*

极少单独使用的名词词表
list of nouns rarely used alone

1.66 许多名词既含有需支撑成份的意义，又具有可单独使用的意义。例如，大多数名词可用于隐喻意义。但有些名词的使用在大多数情况下或所有情况下则需要支撑成份。

下列是需要支撑成份的名词：

affair	boundary	condition	edge
approach	branch	crisis	edition
area	case	culture	element
back	centre	depth	end
band	circumstances	development	enterprise
base	citizenship	discovery	epidemic
bottom	class	eater	experience

extent	limit	relic	theory
feeling	line	repertoire	thought
field	matter	rise	time
formation	movement	role	tone
fringe	nature	scale	top
ground	note	side	transfer
growth	period	sort	type
head	point	stage	version
height	position	status	view
impression	power	structure	wave
inception	prime	stuff	way
kind	range	style	wear
length	rate	system	wing
level	regime	texture	world

具有相同性质：形容词作中心词
Sharing the same quality: adjectives as headwords

1.67 人们常用形容词代替名词作中心词，表达具有相同特征或性质的群体。为此，在适当的形容词前加 'the' 即可。例如，用 'the poor' 代替 'poor people'。

*...the help that's given to **the blind**.*
*No effort is made to cater for the needs of **the elderly**.*
*...the task of rescuing **the injured**.*
*...men and women who would join the sad ranks of **the unemployed**.*
*Working with **the young** is stimulating and full of surprises.*
*...providing care for **the sick**, **the aged**, **the workless** and **the poor**.*

注意，这类中心词虽然总是指一个以上的人，但决不可加词尾 '-s'。

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

1.68 尽管通常仅有部分形容词可以这样用，事实上，几乎所有形容词都可以这样用。这是英语的**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**中阐述。

名词与动词一致
noun-verb agreement

1.69 形容词中心词作动词主语时，动词用复数。

***The rich have benefited** much more than the poor.*

进一步明确
being more specific

1.70 为了更明确地指出是哪一类人，可在中心词前加**次前置修饰语** (submodifiers) 或另一个形容词。关于次前置修饰语，详见 2.145 至 2.173 节。

*In this anecdote, Ray shows his affection for **the very old** and **the very young**.*
*...**the highly educated**.*
*...**the urban poor**.*

若同时谈两类人，'the' 有时可以省略不用。

*...a study that compared the diets of **rich and poor** in several nations.*
*...to help break down the barriers between **young and old**.*

'Unemployed' 和 'dead' 等少数词前面可以加数词，说明所指数目。

*There are **3 million unemployed** in this country.*

性质 qualities

1.71 在适当的形容词前加 'the' 可表达事物的性质，而不指该事物本身。

*Don't you think that you're wanting **the impossible**?*
*He is still exploring the limits of **the possible**.*
*This policy is a mixture of **the old** and **the new**.*

颜色词 colours

1.72 所有颜色形容词可用作中心词。

*...patches of **blue**.*
*...brilliant paintings in **reds** and **greens** and **blues**.*

表示特定颜色的衣服，只用颜色形容词就可以了。

*The men wore **grey**.*
*...the fat lady in **black**.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

1.73 以 '-ch'、'-sh'、'-se' 或 '-ss' 结尾，表示国籍的形容词，若无其他词表示某国人，也可这样用。例如，'the French' 可表示法国人，但波兰人则须用 'the Poles' 表示。

*For many years **the Japanese** have dominated the market for Chinese porcelain.*
*Britons are the biggest consumers of chocolate after **the Swiss** and **the Irish**.*

表示男性或女性的名词
Nouns referring to males or females

1.74 英语名词不像某些其他语言那样区分阳性、阴性或中性。例如，大多数表示职业的词，如 'teacher'、'doctor' 和 'writer' 就既可用于男性也可用于女性。

但有些名词只能指男性；另一些专指女性。

例如，表示家庭关系的名词如 'father'、'brother'、'son' 和表示职业的名词如 'waiter'、'policeman' 只能指男性。

同样，'mother'、'sister'、'daughter'、'waitress'、'actress' 和 'sportswoman' 只能指女性。

'-ess' 和 '-woman'
'-ess' and '-woman'

1.75 表示女性的词，常以 '-ess' 结尾，如 'actress'、'waitress' 和 'hostess'；另一些以 '-woman' 结尾，如 'policewoman' 和 'needlewoman'。

*...his wife Susannah, a former **air stewardess**.*
***A policewoman** dragged me out of the crowd.*
*...Margaret Downes, who is this year's **chairwoman** of the examination committee.*

'-man' 和 '-person'
'-man' and '-person'

1.76 以 'man' 结尾的词，可仅指男性，也可兼指男性和女性。例如，'postman' 仅指男性，但 'spokesman' 则既可是男的也可以是女的。

有些人现用 'chairperson' 和 'spokesperson' 这样一些以 '-person' 结尾的词来代替以 '-man' 结尾的词，目的在于避免好像专指男性。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

1.77 大多数动物名字可兼指雄性和雌性动物，如 'cat'、'elephant'、'horse'、'monkey' 和 'sheep'。

有的时候，则用不同的词分别表示雄性和雌性动物，如 'stallion' 指公马；'mare' 指母马。

另有一种情况，即动物的通用名称可专指雄性或雌性动物：'dog' 多指公狗；'duck' 则多指母鸭。

除农民、兽医等对动物特别感兴趣的人们之外，这些专指雌、雄动物的词人们很少使用。

下列是一些常见的专指雌、雄动物的词：

stallion	~	vixen	ram	tiger
mare	dog	~	ewe	tigress
~	bitch	gander	~	~
bull	~	goose	buck	boar
cow	drake	~	hind	sow
~	duck	lion	stag	
cock	~	lioness	doe	
hen	fox	~	~	

表示活动和过程：'-ing' 名词
Referring to activities and processes: '-ing' nouns

1.78 泛指动作、活动或过程，可用与动词**现在分词**(present participles)形式相同的名词。

这些名词在不同的语法书里有不同的名称：**动名词**(gerunds)、**动词化名词**(verbal nouns)或 '-ing' **形式** ('-ing' form)，我们在本书中称为 '-ing' **名词** ('-ing' nouns)。

'-ing' **名词**与**现在分词**有时很难区分，通常也无此必要。但若这种形式作动词的主语、宾语或作介词的宾语，则显然是名词。

__Singing__'s one of my interests — I belong to a choir.
They were at school when the emphasis was on __teaching__ rather than __learning__.
He told how hard the days of __walking__ had been, how his muscles had ached.
The __coming__ of the transistor could not have been foreseen.
Some people have never actually done any __computing__.

☞ 有关 '-ing' 形式的拼写方法在附录**参考部分** R59 至 R70 讨论； '-ing' **形容词** ('-ing' adjectives) 的用法在 2.67 至 2.80 节讨论。

不具数名词
uncount nouns

1.79 由于 '-ing' 名词泛指活动，因而通常为**不具数名词**，即它们只有一种形式，不能与数词连用，前面一般不用限定词。

☞ 关于**不具数名词** (uncount nouns)，详见 1.24 至 1.34 节。

1.80 人们常常使用 '-ing' 名词，因为它们是某些动词，如 'eat'、'hear'、'go'、'come' 和 'bless' 的唯一可用的名词形式。但有些动词的相应名词不是 '-ing' 名词， 如 'see' 和 'sight'；'arrive' 和 'arrival'；'depart' 和 'departure'。

__Eating__, unlike __fighting__, is a pursuit in which both sexes freely indulge.
...loss of __hearing__ in one ear.
Only 6 per cent of children receive any further __training__ when they leave school.

与形容词连用
used with adjectives

1.81 若要描述这类名词所表达的动作，可在它们前面加一个或多个形容词或名词。

The fight against __reckless driving__ is directed extremely skilfully.
__Better training__ is one of the big challenges of the 1990s.
He called for a national campaign against __under-age drinking__.

1.82 少数主要指体育运动或休闲活动的 '-ing' 名词，较之相应的动词形式更为普通。有些活动虽然可以创造动词加以描述，但目前还没有这样的动词。例如，人们多半会说 'We went caravanning round France.' 而不会说 'We caravanned round France.'。

下列是这类名词中最常用的词：

angling	caravanning	paragliding	surfing
blackberrying	electioneering	shoplifting	weightlifting
boating	hang-gliding	sightseeing	window-shopping
bowling	heliskiing	skateboarding	windsurfing
canoeing	mountaineering	snorkelling	yachting

虽然这些词并非都有相应动词，但大多数可用作现在分词。

*He fell fully-clothed into the lake while **boating** with a girl-friend.*
*I spent the afternoon **window-shopping** with Grandma.*

具数名词
count nouns

1.83 有些具有相应动词形式的 '-ing' 名词是**具数名词**(count nouns)。通常，这些名词表示动作或过程的结果，也指具体的动作或过程。有时，它们的意义与相应动词的意义的联系并不密切。

下列为这类名词中最常见的词：

beginning	feeling	meeting	setting	turning
being	finding	offering	showing	warning
building	hearing	painting	sitting	
drawing	meaning	saying	suffering	

☞ 关于**具数名词**(count nouns)，详见 1.16 至 1.23 节。

更确切地说明：复合名词
Specifying more exactly: compound nouns

1.84 单个名词指称人或物时，容易产生歧义，意思也会不够清楚，所以可以使用**复合名词**(compound nouns)。复合名词是由一个以上的词组成的固定表达式，在句子中起名词的作用。

*Some people write out a new **address book** every January.*
*How would one actually choose a small **personal computer**?*
*Where did you hide the **can opener**?*
*...a private **swimming pool**.*

如果所指已够清楚，有时可只用双词复合名词中的第二个词。例如，在提到 'a swimming pool' 之后，可只说 'the pool'。

大多数复合名词由两个词组成。部分由三个或更多的词构成。

...a vase of ***lily of the valley****.*

连字号的使用
use of hyphens

1.85 一些复合名词用**连字号**(hyphens)连接，不分开书写。

The only experience I've got of foreign languages is ***pen-friends****.*
Can't you find a ***baby-sitter*** *and come over for dinner?*
Judy's ***brother-in-law*** *lived with his family.*

有些则既可用连字号连接，也可分开书写。例如，'air-conditioner' 与 'air conditioner' 均广泛使用。少数由两个以上词构成的复合名词，部分由连字号连接，部分分开书写。例如，'back-seat driver' 和 'bring-and-buy sale'。

...children from ***one-parent families****.*
Another route is by active participation in a ***Parent-Teacher Association****.*

复合名词词表
lists of compound nouns

1.86 复合名词可以是可数、不可数、单数或复数。

下列是常见的可数复合名词：

address book	dining room	parking meter
air conditioner	drawing pin	passer-by
air raid	driving licence	pen-friend
alarm clock	estate agent	personal computer
assembly line	fairy tale	polar bear
baby-sitter	film star	police station
back-seat driver	fire engine	post office
bank account	fork-lift truck	runner-up
bird of prey	frying pan	sleeping bag
book token	guided missile	summing-up
blood donor	health centre	swimming pool
bride-to-be	heart attack	T-shirt
bring-and-buy sale	high school	tea bag
brother-in-law	human being	telephone number
burglar alarm	letter-box	traveller's cheque
bus stop	lily of the valley	tea-table
can opener	looker-on	turn-over
car park	musical instrument	washing machine
come-on	nervous breakdown	X-ray
comrade in arms	news bulletin	youth hostel
compact disc	old hand	zebra crossing
contact lens	one-parent family	
cover-up	package holiday	
credit card	Parent-Teacher Association	

1.87 下列是一些常见的不可数复合名词：

air conditioning	further education	show business
air-traffic control	general knowledge	show jumping
barbed wire	hay fever	sign language
birth control	heart failure	social security
blood pressure	higher education	social work
bubble bath	hire purchase	soda water
capital punishment	income tax	stainless steel
central heating	junk food	table tennis
chewing gum	law and order	talcum powder
common sense	lost property	toilet paper
cotton wool	mail order	tracing paper
data processing	make-up	unemployment benefit
do-it-yourself	mineral water	value added tax
dry-cleaning	nail varnish	washing powder
family planning	natural history	washing-up liquid
fancy dress	old age	water-skiing
fast-food	pocket money	writing paper
first aid	remote control	
food poisoning	science fiction	

1.88 下列是一些常见的单数复合名词：

age of consent	fire brigade	open air
arms race	general public	private sector
brain drain	generation gap	public sector
colour bar	greenhouse effect	rank and file
cost of living	human race	solar system
death penalty	labour force	sound barrier
diplomatic corps	labour market	space age
dress circle	long jump	welfare state
drying-up	mother-tongue	women's movement

1.89 下列是一些常见的复数复合名词：

armed forces	industrial relations	road works
baked beans	inverted commas	social services
civil rights	licensing laws	social studies
current affairs	luxury goods	swimming trunks
grass roots	modern languages	vocal cords
high heels	natural resources	winter sports
human rights	race relations	yellow pages

复合名词的构成
composition of compound nouns

1.90 大部分**复合名词**(compound nouns)由两个名词或由一个形容词与一个名词构成。

*I listened with anticipation to the radio **news bulletin**.*
*... a big **dining room**.*
*She came in and sat down at the **tea-table**.*
*He was still a freshman in the **high school**, although he was nearly sixteen.*
***Old age** is sickness only if one makes it so.*

但少数复合名词有相应的**短语动词**(phrasal verbs)。这些名词常用连字号连接。

*The President was directly involved in the Watergate **cover-up**.*
*The registry office is famous for its **turn-over** of fashionable weddings.*

☞ 有关**短语动词**，详见 3.84 至 3.117 节。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

1.91 有时，复合名词的意义不易从构成它们的词中看出。

例如，某人的 'mother-tongue' 并不指他母亲的舌头，而表示他孩提时所学的语言。同样，一个 'old hand' 不表示一只老的手，而指做某项工作经验丰富的人。

有时，构成复合名词的词不独立使用。例如，'hanky-panky'、'hodge-podge' 和 'argy-bargy'。这些名词一般仅用于非正式会话中，不用于正式的书面语中。

*The rest of your question I find rhetorical **hocus-pocus**.*
*She is invariably up to some sort of **jiggery-pokery**.*

复数形式 plural forms

1.92 由于构成复合名词的名词类别不同，复合名词的复数形式也不同。若复合名词的最后一个词是具数名词，那么，该具数名词的复数形式就是复合名词的复数形式。

***Air raids** were taking place every night.*
*...**health centres**, banks, **post offices**, and **police stations**.*
*Shrill voices would be heard through **letter-boxes**.*
*...the refusal of dockers to use **fork-lift trucks**.*

关于**具数名词的复数形式**，详见附录**参考部分** R2 至 R9。

由相应短语动词直接转变成的复合名词的复数常以 '-s' 结尾。

*Nobody seems disturbed about **cover-ups** when they are essential to the conduct of a war.*
*Naturally, I think people who drive smarter, faster cars than mine are a bunch of low-grade **show-offs**.*

少数由具数名词加副词构成的复合名词，并非直接由相应的动词短语转变而成。它们的复数形式以副词前具数名词的复数形式表示。

例如，‘looker-on’ 和 ‘summing-up’ 的复数形式分别为 ‘lookers-on’ 和 ‘summings-up’。

*He stopped **passers-by** and offered it for sale.*

由介词 ‘of’ 或 ‘in’ 连接两个名词，或由名词带 ‘to-be’ 构成的复合名词的复数形式以这类复合词中第一个名词的复数形式表示。

*I like **birds of prey** and hawks particularly.*
*...brothers whom I had considered my **comrades in arms**.*
*The veil places **brides-to-be** at a distinct advantage.*

有些复合名词借用其他语言，主要是法语和拉丁语，因而无一般英语名词那样的复数形式。

*...aided by **agents provocateurs** sent into our midst.*
*...while the **nouveaux riches** of younger states built themselves palatial mansions.*

1.93 复合名词是固定表达式。不过，名词总可以置于其他名词前，以便更确切地指称事物。关于名词作**前置修饰语**(modifiers)的用法，参见2.174至2.179节。

不指出名称表示人和物：代词
Referring to people and things without naming them: pronouns

1.94 当人们使用语言，无论是讲话还是书写，常常会指称那些已经提到或将要提到的事物。

人们大多用**代词**(pronouns)来指代这些事物。除非出于某种特殊考虑，一般不重复名词词组。

使用代词可以减少重复，同时又能说明句子中或一系列句子中主语和宾语如何连接。

*John took the book and opened **it**.*
*Deborah recognized the knife as **hers**.*
*Shilton was pleased with **himself**.*
***This** is a very busy place.*

但若上文提及了两个或更多的不同事物，一般则须重复某一个名词词组，以便确切说明现在所谈的是指什么。

Leaflets and scraps of papers were scattered all over the floor. I started to pick up ***the leaflets****.*
I could see a lorry and a car. ***The lorry*** *stopped.*

☞ 有关谈论上文已提及事物的其他方法，见 9.2 至 9.40 节**粘合**(cohesion)。

代词的种类
types of pronoun

1.95 代词分为下列七类：

- **人称代词**(personal pronouns)。 见 1.96 至 1.109 节。
- **物主代词**(possessive pronouns)。见 1.110 至 1.114 节。
- **反身代词**(reflexive pronouns)。见 1.115 至 1.122 节。
- **指示代词**(demonstrative pronouns)。见 1.123 至 1.126 节。
- **不定代词**(indefinite pronouns)。见 1.127 至 1.140 节。
- **相互代词**(reciprocal pronouns)。见 1.141 至 1.144 节。
- **关系代词**(relative pronouns)。见 1.145 至 1.149 节。
- **疑问代词**(interrogative pronouns)。见 1.150 至 1.152 节。

☞ 有少数其他词可作**代词**(pronouns)用，详见 1.153 至 1.160 节。

表示人和物：人称代词
Referring to people and things: personal pronouns

1.96 人称代词可指称自己，指称谈话的对象或人们正在谈及的人或事物。人称代词分为两类：主语人称代词和宾语人称代词。

1.97 主语人称代词作句子的主语。

下列为主语人称代词一览表：

人称	单数	复数
第一人称	I	we
第二人称	you	you
第三人称	he, she,it	they

'I' **1.98** 代词 'I' 用来指称自己，总是大写。

__I__ don't know what to do.
__I__ think I made the wrong decision.
May __I__ ask why Stephen's here?

'you' **1.99** 'You' 指称谈话的对象（一个人或多个人）。注意，'you' 的单复数同形。

__You__ may have to wait a bit.
Would __you__ come and have a drink?
How did __you__ get on?

'You' 也可泛指人们，而不是谈话或书写的对象。这在口语中尤为常见。

__You__ can't predict what these things are going to do.
__You__ get some old people who are very difficult.

注意，'you' 还是**宾语人称代词**(**object pronouns**)。

☞ 关于这一点，详见 1.104 至 1.106 节。

'he' 和 'she'
'he' and 'she' **1.100** 'He' 指代男人或男孩；'She' 指代女人或女孩。

My father is fat— __he__ weighs over fifteen stone.
Billy Knight was a boxer, wasn't __he__?
Mary came in. __She__ was a good-looking woman.
'Is Sue there?'— I'm sorry, __she__ doesn't work here now.'

'it' **1.101** 'It' 指代男性或女性以外的任何事物。例如，物体、地方、组织或抽象概念。

I've just bought Murdoch's new book. __It__'s a very long novel.
'Have you been to London?' 'Yes, __it__ was very crowded.'
How many people saw the BBC when __it__ started broadcasting in 1937?
__It__ is not an idea that has much public support.

'It' 还常指代性别不详或性别无关紧要的动物。有人也用 'it' 指代婴儿。

The bear came at Patrick; __it__ had thick fur.
If the shark is still around __it__ will not escape.
How Winifred loved the baby! And how Stephanie hated __it__!

'It' 还可用于一般陈述，如指情景、时间、日期或天气。

***It** is very quiet here.*
***It** is half past three.*
***It** is January 19th.*
***It** is rainy and cold.*

☞ 关于 'it' 的泛指用法，详见 10.31 至 10.45 节。

☞ 注意，'it' 也是**宾语人称代词**(object pronouns)。关于这种用法，详见 1.104 至 1.107 节。

'we' **1.102** 'We' 指代包括说话人自己在内的群体。这个群体可能是：

• 自己和所交谈的一个或多个对象。

*Where shall **we** meet, Sally?*

• 自己，所交谈的一个或多个对象和其他一个或多个当时不在场的人。

***We** aren't exactly gossips, you and I and Watson.*

• 自己和一个或多个其他人，但不包括交谈的一个或多个对象。

*I do the washing; he does the cooking; **we** share the washing-up.*

• 自己认为所属的任何集体，例如，学校、社区乃至整个人类。

***We** are in fact a multicultural society.*
***We** all need money.*

'they' **1.103** 'They' 指代不包括说话人自己或交谈的一个或多个对象的若干人或物。

*All the girls think he's great, don't **they**?*
*Newspapers reach me on the day after **they** are published.*
*Winters here vary as **they** do elsewhere.*

'They' 也常常泛指人们。

*Isn't that what **they** call love?*

'They' 还可指代不必说明其身份的人们。例如，在句子 'They've given John another pay rise' 中，显而易见，'they' 指约翰的雇主们。

*'Don't worry', I said to Mother, '**they** are moving you from this ward soon.'*

宾语人称代词
object pronouns

1.104 **宾语人称代词**(object pronouns)与相应的主语人称代词指代相同的人或物。

下列是宾语人称代词一览表：

人称	单数	复数
第一人称	me	us
第二人称	you	you
第三人称	him, her, it	them

在句子中的位置
position in clause

1.105 宾语人称代词作句子的宾语。

*The nurse washed **me** with cold water.*
*He likes **you** — he said so.*
*The man went up to the cat and started stroking **it**.*

宾语人称代词可作句子的间接宾语。

*Send **us** a card so we'll know where you are.*
*A man gave **him** a car.*
*The children asked Simon if he would give **them** some money.*

宾语人称代词还可作介词的宾语。

*There was a humorous article by **me** on the first page.*
*Madeleine, I want to talk to **you** immediately.*
*We were all sitting in a café with **him**.*

1.106 宾语人称代词还可与**系动词**(link verbs)连用。例如，'It was me'、'It's her'。不过，在正式或书面英语中，人们有时在系动词后用主语人称代词。例如，'It was I'、'It's she'。关于**系动词**(link verbs)，详见 3.127 至 3.182 节。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

1.107 'It' 虽用作主语和宾语人称代词指代无性别差异的事物，'she' 和 'her' 也常常指轮船、汽车和国家。

*When the repairs had been done **she** was a fine and beautiful ship.*
*Mr Gerasimov has a high regard for Britain and **her** role in Europe.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

1.108 有时，人们并不想指明所谈论的人的性别。

一种办法是使用 'they' 或 'them'。 这种用法多见于 'someone' 或 'anyone' 等不定代词(indefinite pronouns)之后，参见 1.127 至 1.140 节。 注意，'they' 之后总是用复数动词，即使仅指一个人也是如此。

*If anyone wants to be a child minder, **they** must attend a course.*
*If I think someone may take an overdose, I will spend hours talking to **them**.*

另一种办法是：用 'he or she' 代替 'they'；'him or her' 替代 'them'。这种用法常见于正式或书面英语中。

*'Would a young person be able to get a job in Europe?' 'That would depend on which country **he or she** wanted to go to'.*
*The student should feel that the essay belongs to **him or her**.*

有人认为使用 'they' 和 'them' 指代一个人是错误的。但若重复 'he or she' 和 'him or her' 又嫌累赘。如果作一般性的陈述，用复数名词代替单数名词即可避免这个问题。

例如，可用 'As soon as children go to school they are taught to read' 代替 'As soon as a child goes to school he or she is taught to read'。

有人用 'he' 和 'him' 进行泛指或用其指代不定代词。但很多人不赞成这种用法，因为用 'he' 和 'him' 意味着所指代的是男性。

人称代词 'one'
'one' as a personal pronoun

1.109 'One' 有时作单数**人称代词** (personal pronouns) 使用，但这是一种正式用法。它作主语和宾语时形式相同。

'One' 可泛指人们，可包括说话人在内。

***One** has to think of the practical side of things.*
*Going round Italy, **one** is struck by the number of opera houses there are.*
*This scene makes **one** realize how deeply this community has been afflicted.*

☞ 有关代词 'one' 的其他用法，参见 1.157 至 1.160 节。

表示领属关系：物主代词
Mentioning possession: possessive pronouns

1.110 叙述人或物，人们常常需要说明他们之间有何种联系。对此，有几种不同的办法，但最常见的是用**物主代词**(possessive pronouns)表明某物属于某人或与某人有关。

1.111 下列是物主代词一览表：

人称	单数	复数
第一人称	mine	ours
第二人称	yours	yours
第三人称	his, hers	theirs

注意，'its' 不能用作物主代词。

典型用法
typical use

1.112 物主代词可以表明某事物与刚提及的事物类别相同，但属于其他人。

例如，在句子'John showed them his passport, then Richard showed them his' 中，'his' 指护照，而该护照是理查德的。

物主代词还常用于对比那些属于不同的人或与不同的人有关的两件同类事物。例如，'Sarah's house is much bigger than ours'。

Her parents were in Malaya, and so were ***mine****.*
He grinned at her and laid his hand on ***hers****.*
Is that coffee ***yours*** *or* ***mine****?*
My marks were higher than ***his****.*
Fred gambled his profits away while Julia spent ***hers*** *all on dresses.*
...the difference between his ideas and ***ours****.*
It was his fault, not ***theirs****.*

与 'of' 连用
used with 'of'

1.113 物主代词可用于 'of' 引出的介词短语，作为名词词组的后置修饰语。这一种结构表示所谈及的是群体中的一员。

例如，'a friend of mine' 表示许多朋友中的一个；而 'my friend' 则指某个特定朋友。

He was an old friend ***of mine****.*
A student ***of yours*** *has just been to see me.*
David Lodge? I've just read a novel ***of his****.*
It was hinted to him by some friends ***of hers****.*
The room was not a favourite ***of theirs****.*

1.114 关于其他表示某物属于某人或与某人有关的方法，见 2.180 至 2.192 节。

返指主语：反身代词
Referring back to the subject: reflexive pronouns

1.115 反身代词(reflexive pronouns)说明动词的宾语或间接宾语与其主语所指人或物相同。某些动词经常与反身代词连用。详见 3.27 至 3.32 节。

下列是反身代词一览表：

人称	单数	复数
第一人称	myself	ourselves
第二人称	yourself	yourselves
第三人称	himself, herself, itself	themselves

⚠ 注意 Warning

1.116 与人称代词和物主代词不同，第二人称反身代词有两种形式：'yourself' 指一个人；'yourselves' 指一个以上的人或包括谈话对象在内的一群人。

作宾语
used as object

1.117 反身代词可说明动词宾语和主语所指的人或物相同，或对此加以强调。

例如，句子 'John killed himself' 表示杀人这件事是约翰干的，被杀的人是约翰自己。

*He forced **himself** to lie absolutely still.*
*She stretched **herself** out flat on the sofa.*
*I'm sure history repeats **itself**.*
*All of us shook hands and introduced **ourselves**.*
*The men formed **themselves** into a line facing the boys.*
*...the questions you had to ask **yourselves**.*

反身代词也可说明或强调动词的间接宾语和主语所指的人或物相同。例如，在 'Ann poured herself a drink' 一句中，倒饮料的动作是安妮实施的，饮料又是倒给安妮自己的。

*Here's the money, you can go and buy **yourself** a watch.*

⚠ 注意 Warning

1.118 一般情况下，人们不用反身代词表示通常自己对自己所进行的动作，如洗脸、穿衣或刮脸。因此，人们通常不讲 'He shaves himself every morning'。

但有时为了强调，或为了表示出乎意料的事件，这些动作可用反身代词表示。例如，表示小孩或伤残人能做他们以前所力不能及的事情。

作介词宾语
used as objects of prepositions

1.119 如果句子主语与介词宾语指同一个人而且句子又没有直接宾语，可用反身代词作介词宾语。

*I was thoroughly ashamed of **myself**.*
*Barbara stared at **herself** in the mirror.*
*We think of **ourselves** as members of the local community.*
*They can't cook for **themselves**.*

但是如果句子含直接宾语，通常用人称代词作介词的宾语。

*I will take it home with **me**.*
*They put the book between **them** on the kitchen table.*
*I shivered and drew the rug around **me**.*
*Mrs Bixby went out, slamming the door behind **her**.*

注意，若句子含有直接宾语而且句子的主语和介词宾语是否指同一个人又不明显，这时需用反身代词。例如，'The Managing Director gave the biggest pay rise to himself'。

用于强调或对比
used for emphasis or contrast

1.120 为了强调，人们有时用反身代词替代人称代词作介词宾语，在口语中尤其如此。

*My first pupil today is a Pole like **myself**.*
*...the following conversation between **myself** and a fifteen-year-old girl.*
*The circle spread to include **himself** and Ferdinand.*
*People like **yourself** still find new things to say about Shakespeare.*
*There is always someone worse off than **yourself**.*
*With the exception of a few Algerians and **ourselves** everyone spoke Spanish.*

1.121 反身代词可附加在名词或人称代词之后，通常用于强调或明确所指对象。

*We **ourselves** have got to build our own strength.*
*Sally **herself** came back.*

反身代词也可用来比较或对比两个人或物。

*His friend looked as miserable as he felt **himself**.*
*It is not Liverpool I miss, but England **itself**.*

反身代词可置于相关的名词或代词之后。

*Sally **herself** came back.*
*It is hot in London; but I **myself** can work better when it's hot.*
*The town **itself** was so small that it didn't have a priest.*
*The lane ran right up to the wood **itself**.*

反身代词还可置于句末。

*I am not a particularly punctual person **myself**.*
*You'll probably understand better when you are a grandparent **yourself**.*
*It is rare for Governments to take the initiative **themselves**.*

1.122 反身代词可强调表示某人无别人帮助或不受干扰做某事。这种用法中的反身代词通常置于句末。

*She had printed the card **herself**.*
*I'll take it down to the police station **myself**.*
*Did you make these **yourself**?*

指代特定的人或物：指示代词
Referring to a particular person or thing: demonstrative pronouns

1.123 'This'、'that'、'these' 和 'those' 作代词用时，叫**指示代词** (demonstrative pronouns)。指示代词可作句子的主语、宾语或介词宾语。但指示代词极少用作间接宾语，因为间接宾语通常是人，而指示代词一般指物。

'this' 和 'that'
'this' and 'that'

1.124 'This' 和 'that' 通常只有指物时，才是代词。它们可替代单数具数名词和不具数名词。

***This** is a list of the rules.*
***This** is the first truly British fast food.*
*The biggest problem was the accent. **That** was difficult for me.*
***That** looks interesting.*

1.125 说明某人是谁或询问某人是谁时，'this' 和 'that' 可作代词指人。

*Who's **this**?*
*He paused at a photograph which stood on the dressing table. 'Is **this** your wife?'*
*Was **that** Patrick on the phone?*

介绍别人时，可说 'This is Mary.' 或 'This is Mr. and Mrs. Baker.'。注意，即使介绍不止一个人，也仍用 'this'。

'these' 和 'those'
'these' and 'those'

1.126 'These' 和 'those' 可用作代词替代复数具数名词。它们虽可用于指人，但经常用于指物。

*'I brought you **these**.'Adam held out a bag of grapes.*
*Vitamin tablets usually contain vitamins A, C, and D. **These** are available from any child health clinic.*
***These** are no ordinary students.*
*It may be impossible for them to pay essential bills, such as **those** for heating.*
***Those** are easy questions to answer.*
*There are a great number of people who are seeking employment, and a great number of **those** are married women.*

'This'、'that'、'these'和'those'又是**特指限定词**(specific determiners)。详见1.182至1.191节及第九章的**粘合**(cohesion)部分。

泛指人和物：不定代词
Referring to people and things in a general way: indefinite pronouns

1.187 如果说话人对想谈及的人或物的情况不详或究竟是什么人或物无关紧要，可用**不定代词**(indefinite pronouns)。不定代词只说明谈及的是人还是物，并不指明特定的人或物。

*I was there for over an hour before **anybody** came.*
*Jack was waiting for **something**.*

下列是不定代词一览表：

anybody	everybody	nobody	somebody
anyone	everyone	no one	someone
anything	everything	nothing	something

注意，'no one'可分写，也可用连字号连接写成'no-one'。其余不定代词均为单个词。

仅与单数动词连用
used only with singular verbs

1.188 不定代词始终与单数动词连用。

***Is** anyone here?*
*Everybody **recognizes** the importance of education.*
*Everything **was** ready.*
*Nothing **is** certain in this world.*

指物
referring to things

1.189 以'-thing'结尾的不定代词表示物体、意念、情景或活动。

*Can I do **anything**?*
*Jane said **nothing** for a moment.*

指人
referring to people

1.130 以 '-one' 和 '-body' 结尾的不定代词指人。

*It had to be **someone** like Dan.*
*Why does **everybody** believe in the law of gravity?*

与人称代词连用
used with personal pronouns

1.131 不定代词虽与单数动词连用，但若用代词返指不定代词，可用复数代词 'they'、'them'、'their' 和 'themselves'。

*Ask **anyone**. **They**'ll tell you.*
*There's no way of telling **somebody** why **they**'ve failed.*
***Everyone** put **their** pens down.*
***No one** liked being young then as **they** do now.*
***Everybody**'s enjoying **themselves**.*

☞ 关于 'they' 指一个人的用法，详见 1.108 节。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

1.132 在较正式的英语中，有人宁愿用 'he'、'him' 或 'himself' 返指不定代词。许多人反对这种用法，因为这意味着所指的是男性。

***Somebody** shouted and other voices joined him.*
***Everybody** has his dream.*
***Everybody** determines his own rates.*

☞ 如果不想指明所谈及的人的性别，可参见 1.108 节使用代词不指明性别的其他方法。

撇号 s
's

1.133 不定代词加撇号和 's' 可表示某物属于某人或与某人有关。

*She was given a room in **someone's** studio.*
*That was **nobody's** business.*
*I would defend **anyone's** rights.*
*Everything has been arranged to **everybody's** satisfaction.*

⚠

1.134 通常不在表示事物的不定代词后加 ''s'，如 'the value of something' 比 'something's value' 更常用。

后置修饰语
qualifiers

1.135 倘若要详细交代不定代词所指代的人或物，可用**后置修饰语** (qualifiers)，如介词短语或关系从句。

*I changed the plan and made the talks open to **everyone over twelve**.*
*He would much rather have **somebody who had a background in the humanities**.*

☞ 有关后置修饰语，详见 2.289 至 2.320 节。

形容词的使用
use of adjectives

1.136 也可用形容词增加信息。注意形容词只能置于不定代词之后，而且不能使用限定词。例如，不能说 'an important someone' 而可以说 'someone important'。

*What was needed was **someone** practical.*
*They are doing **everything** possible to take care of you.*
*There is **nothing** wrong with being popular.*

与 'else' 连用
used with 'else'

1.137 若已提及一个人或物，又想谈及另一个人或物，或者附加一个人或物，可在不定代词后用 'else'。

***Somebody else** will have to go out there.*
*She couldn't think of **anything else**.*
*Everyone knows what **everyone else** is doing.*
*He held his job because **nobody else** wanted it.*

注意，如果表示某物与不定代词加 'else' 的所属关系或联系，在 'else' 上加 ''s'。

*Did you take this photograph or was it **someone else's** photograph?*
*No one has control over **anyone else's** career.*

与 'some-' 和 'every-' 连用的结构
structures used with 'some-'and 'every-'

1.138 与其他名词词组一样，不定代词可作句子的主语、宾语、间接宾语和介词宾语。由 'some-' 和 'every-' 构成的不定代词多用于肯定句。

***Everything** went according to plan.*
*I remember **somebody** putting a pillow under my head.*
*'Now you'll see **something**,' he said.*
*I gave **everyone** a generous helping.*
*I want to introduce you to **someone** who is helping me.*
*Have you seen Frank? Is **everything** all right?*

有时，它们可作否定句的主语。

*He could tell that **something** wasn't right.*
***Everyone** hadn't arrived yet.*

注意，由 'some-' 构成的不定代词不能作否定句的宾语，除非随后有介词短语或关系从句一类后置修饰语。

*He wasn't **someone** I admired as a writer.*
*I wouldn't forget **something** that I finished reading only half an hour ago.*

与 'any-' 连用的结构
structures used with 'any-'

1.139 由 'any-' 构成的不定代词可作疑问句或否定句的宾语或间接宾语。

*I couldn't kill **anybody**, Dr Marlowe.*
*You still haven't told me **anything**.*
*Take a good look and tell me if you see **anything** different.*
*I haven't given **anyone** their presents yet.*

这类不定代词常作否定疑问句和肯定疑问句的主语。注意，它们不能作否定陈述句的主语，也就是不能说 'Anybody can't come in'。

*Does **anybody** agree with me?*
*Won't **anyone** help me?*
*If **anything** unusual happens, could you call me on this number?*

注意，当 'anyone' 和 'anybody' 用于肯定陈述句时，它们泛指人们，而不是指一个人。

***Anybody** who wants to can come in and buy a car from me.*

与 'no-' 连用的结构
structures used with 'no-'

1.140 由 'no-' 构成的不定代词总是与动词的肯定形式连用，整个句子具有否定含义。关于**否定陈述句**(negative statements)，详见 4.43 至 4.94 节。

***Nobody** left, **nobody** went away.*
*There was **nothing** you could do, **nothing** at all.*
*She was to see **no one**, to speak to **nobody**, not even her own children.*

注意，这些否定代词有时可用于疑问句。这时，发问者多半指望得到否定回答。

*'Is there **nothing** I can do?' 'Not a thing'.*
*'Is there **nobody** else?' 'Not that I know of'.*

表示两人做同一件事：相互代词
Showing that two people do the same thing: reciprocal pronouns

1.141 **相互代词**(reciprocal pronouns)'each other' 和 'one another' 表示两者做同一件事，具有同样的感觉或相同的关系。

假如，你的哥哥恨你的妹妹，你的妹妹也恨你的哥哥，你可以说 'My brother and sister hate each other' 或 'They hate one another'。

相互代词可作动词的宾语或间接宾语，但不能作句子的主语。

*We help **each other** a lot.*
*You and I understand **each other**.*
*I listened to the stags answering **one another** from hill to hill.*
*They sent **each other** gifts from time to time.*

它们也可作介词的宾语。

*Terry and Mark were jealous of **each other**.*
*...two lights moving towards **one another**.*
*They didn't dare to look at **one another**.*

☞有些动词常常与**相互代词** (reciprocal pronouns) 连用，详见3.69至3.73节。

1.142 注意 'each other' 和 'one another' 差别甚微，都可用于表示两个或更多的人或物。尽管有人倾向于用 'each other' 指两个人或物，用 'one another' 表示两个以上的人或物。

'each' 作主语
'each' as subject

1.143 在正式的书面语中，'each' 可作句子的主语，'the other' 作句子的宾语或介词宾语。 因而，'Each looked at the other' 比 'They looked at each other' 更正式一些。注意，'each' 总是与单数动词连用。

***Each** is inextricably in the debt of **the other**.*
***Each** appears to be unwilling to learn from the experience of **the others**.*

☞ 'Each' 也是**限定词** (determiners)，关于这一点，详见 1.228 节。

撇号 s
's

1.144 'Each other'、'one another' 和 'the other' 可加 ''s' 构成所属格。

*I hope that you all enjoy **each other's** company.*
*Apes spend a great deal of time grooming **one another's** fur.*
*The male shelducks fight fiercely, each trying to seize **the other's** long neck in its beak.*

连接两个分句：关系代词
Joining clauses together: relative pronouns

1.145 如果句子由主句和 'who'、'whom'、'which' 或 'that' 引出的关系从句(relative clauses)组成，那么，这些词叫**关系代词**(relative pronouns)。关系代词同时具有双重功能：既可像其他代词一样表示已提及的人或物，同时又是连词，因为它们将主句和从句连接起来。

☞ 关于**连词**(conjunctions)，详见第八章。
☞ 关于**关系从句**(relative clause)，详见 8.83 至 8.116 节。

'who' 和 'whom'
'who' and 'whom'

1.146 'Who' 和 'whom' 只能指人。

'Who' 可作关系从句的主语。

*...mathematicians **who** are concerned with very difficult problems.*
*...a man **who** I met recently.*

过去，一般用 'whom' 作关系从句的宾语；现在，则更多地用 'who'，尽管一些谈吐谨慎的人认为用 'whom' 更正确一些。

*There's a woman over there **who** I can't help noticing.*
*He's the man **who** I saw last night.*
*...two girls **whom** I met in Edinburgh.*

作介词宾语时，如果宾语与介词分开，有时可用 'who'。某些谈吐谨慎的人则认为 'whom' 更正确一些。

*That's the man **who** I gave it to.*
*...those **whom** we cannot talk to.*

如果宾语随介词之后，则几乎总是用 'whom'。

*...Lord Scarman, a man **for whom** I have immense respect.*

'which'

1.147 'Which' 只能指物。它可作关系从句的主语和宾语，也可作介词的宾语。

*... a region **which** was threatened by growing poverty.*
*...two horses **which** he owned.*
*...the house in **which** I was born.*

注意，'which' 不能作从句的间接宾语。

'that'

1.148 'That' 可指人或物，可作关系从句的主语或宾语，也可作介词的宾语。

*...the games **that** politicians play.*
*He's the boy **that** sang the solo last night.*
*It was the first bed **that** she had ever slept in.*

'That' 不能作从句的间接宾语。

'whose' **1.149** 'Whose' 说明某物属于什么人或什么东西，或者与什么人或什么东西相关。注意，'whose' 必须置于名词之前，不能单独使用。

'Whose' 虽然事实上属物主限定词，但常被看作关系代词。关于限定词，详见 1.161 至 1.235 节。

*...the thousands **whose** lives have been damaged.*
*There was a chap there **whose** name I've forgotten.*
*...predictions **whose** accuracy will have to be confirmed.*
*...sharks, **whose** brains are minute.*

提出问题：疑问代词
Asking questions: interrogative pronouns

1.150 提问的一种方法是使用疑问代词。

疑问代词 (interrogative pronouns) 包括 'who'、'whose'、'whom'、'what' 和 'which'。它们既可作句子的主语或宾语，也可作介词的宾语。'Whose' 和 'which' 也是限定词。其他词如 'where'、'when'、'why' 和 'how'，也可用来提问。

疑问代词不能作句子的间接宾语。

***Who** was at the door?*
*'There's a car outside.' '**Whose** is it?'*
*A duel, Pa? **Whom** did he fight?*
***What** are you doing?*
***Which** came first, the chicken or the egg?*

☞ 关于含有**疑问代词**的结构，详见 4.10 至 4.30 节。

1.151 疑问代词指代人们所询问的信息。

如果说话人认为问题的答案是人，可用疑问代词 'who'、'whose' 和 'whom'。

*'He lost his wife.' '**Who**? Terry?'*
*He looked at the cat. '**Whose** is it? Have you ever seen it before?'*
*'To **whom**, if I may ask, are you engaged to be married?' 'To Daniel Orton.'*

如果说话人认为问题的答案是物而不是人，则可用疑问代词 'which' 和 'what'。

*'Is there really a difference? **Which** do you prefer?'*
*'**What** did he want?' 'Maurice's address.'*

被转述问句 reported questions

1.152 疑问代词还可用于引出**被转述问句**(reported questions)。

*I asked her **who** she had been talking to.*
*He wondered **what** Daintry would do now.*

☞ 关于**被转述问句**，详见 7.29 至 7.35 节。

其他代词
Other pronouns

1.153 如果从上下文能准确判定所指，便毋须重复中心词；因此许多其他词就成了代词。

例如，大多数**泛指限定词** (general determiners) 也可作代词。有关泛指限定词，详见 1.208 至 1.235 节。

下列泛指限定词也可作代词：

all	each	fewer	more	several
another	either	less	most	some
any	enough	little	much	
both	few	many	neither	

与名词词组一样，这些词可作句子的主语，直接宾语或间接宾语，也可作介词的宾语。

***Both** were offered jobs immediately.*
*Discuss it with your female colleagues, if you have **any**.*
*I saw one girl whispering to **another**.*

1.154 虽然 'a'、'an'、'every' 和 'no' 都属于泛指限定词，但不能单独作代词用。

如果返指含有 'a' 或 'an' 的名词词组，可用代词 'one'。同样，'each' 和 'none' 可分别返指含有 'every' 和 'no' 的名词词组。

注意，'another' 和 'others' 属于代词，'other' 却不是。

'all'、'both' 和 'each' 用于强调 'all', 'both', and 'each' for emphasis

1.155 'All'、'both' 和 'each' 可附加于名词或人称代词，表示强调。这种用法与 1.120 至 1.122 节所阐述的**反身代词**(reflexive pronouns)的用法相似。

*The brothers **all** agreed that something more was needed.*
*He loved them **both**.*
*Ford and Duncan **each** had their chances.*

这些词也可以不直接置于名词或代词之后，而置于主要动词、助动词、情态动词或 'be' 之后。

*They **were both** still working at their universities.*
*The letters **have all** been signed.*
*The older children **can all** do the same things together.*

'Each' 还可置于句末。

*Three others were fined £200 **each**.*

数词 numbers

1.156 **基数词**(cardinal numbers)也可作代词。例如，回答问句 'How many children do you have?' 一般说 'Three'，而不是 'Three children'。

*'How many people are there?' – '**Forty-five**.'*
*Of the other women, **two** are dancers.*
*They bought eight companies and sold off **five**.*

☞ 关于基数词，详见 2.230 至 2.248 节。

其他代词 other pronouns

1.157 数词 'one' 用法特殊。它可像其他基数词一样，指代集体中的一员。

'One' 还可返指含限定词 'a' 的名词词组。

*Could I have a bigger **one**, please?*

'One' 也可置于另一个限定词之后，表示强调。

*There are systems of communication right through the animal world; **each one** is distinctive.*

'One' 用作**人称代词** (personal pronouns) 的用法在 1.109 节讲解。

1.158 注意，'the one' 和 'the ones' 可用于只指名词，而不是整个名词词组。在这种用法中，它们几乎总是与形容词等前置修饰语或介词短语等后置修饰语连用。

*'Which poem?' '**The one** they were talking about yesterday.'*
*...the road comes up from the south and meets **the one** from Lairg.*
*He gave the best seats to **the ones** who arrived first.*

1.159 'The other'、'the others'、'others' 或 'another' 可指代人或物的群体中的不同成员。

*Some writers are greater than **others**.*
*He is deceived. **The others** cannot bear his burden for him.*

1.160 若用 'one' 指代群体中的一员，那么 'the others' 可表示群体中的其他成员。

*The bells are carefully installed so that disconnecting **one** will have no effect on **the others**.*
*They had three little daughters, **one** a baby, **the others** twins of twelve.*

'The one' 和 'the other' 可分别指代两件事中的一件。

*The same factors push wages and prices up together, **the one** reinforcing **the other**.*

若无意确指群体中的某一个，可说他们中的 'one or other'。

*It may be that **one or other** of them had fears for their health.*

明确所谈的事物：限定词
Identifying what you are talking about: determiners

1.161 在英语中，使用名词词组的方法主要有两种：特指和泛指。特指是指用名词词组表示谈话双方都知道的人或物。

***The man** began to run towards **the boy**.*
*Young people don't like **these operas**.*
*Thank you very much for **your comments**.*
*Gertrude was sitting on a seat near **the Rosetta Stone**.*

另一种用法是泛指。泛指指用名词词组表示某一类人或物，而不指具体的个人或物。

*There was **a man** in the lift.*
*It stood as tall as **an elephant**.*
***Any doctor** would say she didn't know what she was doing.*

为了区分名词词组的上述两种用法，人们使用一类叫限定词的特殊词类。限定词分**特指限定词**(specific determiners)和**泛指限定词**(general determiners)两类，它们应置于名词词组之前。

特指用法：使用 'the'
The specific way: using 'the'

1.162 'The' 为最常见的特指限定词，常叫**定冠词**(definite articles)。

'This'、'that'、'these' 和 'those' 常叫**指示词** (demonstratives) 或指示形容词 (demonstrative adjectives)。详见 1.182 至 1.191 节。

'My'、'your'、'his'、'her'、'its'、'our' 和 'their' 属**物主限定词** (possessive determiners)，它们又叫**物主形容词** (possessive adjectives) **或物主词** (possessives)。详见 1.192 至 1.207 节。

下列是特指限定词一览表：

the	that	~	his	our
~	these	my	her	their
this	those	your	its	

注意，英语名词前只能用一个特指限定词。

1.163 因为 'the' 是最常见的特指限定词，可置于任何普通名词前。

*She dropped **the can** into **the grass**.*
***The girls** were not in **the house**.*

在上述例句中，'the can' 表示已提及的罐头；'the grass' 也是明确的，可能是因前文已说明她在户外；草坪的存在也有可能已提及或者可以假设；'the girls' 与 'the can' 一样，肯定已经提及，而 'the house' 则指姑娘们当时住的房子。

'the' 的读音
pronouncing 'the'

1.164 'The' 仅有一种拼法，但读音有三种。

- /ðə/ 其后的词以辅音开头。

*...**the** dictionary...**the** first act...**the** big box.*

- /ðɪ/ 其后的词以元音开头。

*...**the** exhibition...**the** effect...**the** impression.*

- /ðiː/ 用于强调。

*You don't mean **the** Ernest Hemingway?*

☞ 关于 'the' 的强调用法，详见 1.179 节。

'the' 与名词连用
'the' with a noun

1.165 若特指某个人或物，或特指某个群体，而说话人知道对方了解所指的是哪个人、物或群体，可只用 'the' 和名词构成的名词词组。

The expedition sailed out into ***the Pacific****.*
We are going to miss you in ***the university****.*
He stopped ***the car*** *in front of* ***the bakery****.*

仅指单个事物的名词
nouns referring to one thing only

1.166 有些名词常与 'the' 连用，因为它们仅指一个人、物或群体。这类名词中部分为特定名称或**专有名词**(proper nouns)。例如，头衔 'the Pope'，独一无二的事物 'the Bastille' 和地名 'the Atlantic'。

The Shah *has been deposed.*
We went on camel rides to ***the Pyramids****.*

☞ 有关专有名词，详见1.53至1.59节。有些为单数名词，即它们表示世界上独一无二的事物。例如，'the ground' 或 'the moon'。

The sun *began to turn crimson.*
In April and May ***the wind*** *blows steadily.*

☞ 关于**单数名词**，详见 1.35 至 1.41 节。

特定的地方和组织
specific places and organizations

1.167 其他名词可特指某地或某组织的个人、事物或集体。因而，谈论该地，该组织时或与该组织的某个人交谈时，可直接用 'the' 加名词。

例如，某城镇仅有一个车站，当地居民就可用 'the station' 指该车站。同样，若居住在英国的人交谈时说 'the economy'，他们指的是 'the British economy'。同事之间可说 'the boss'、'the union' 或 'the canteen'，不必指出他们共事的组织机构的名称。

Mrs Robertson heard that ***the church*** *had been bombed.*
There's a wind coming off ***the river****.*
We've had to get rid of ***the director****.*
The mayor *is a forty-eight-year-old former labourer.*
What is ***the President*** *doing about all this?*

概指
generalizing

1.168 另一类仅与 'the' 连用的名词，通常虽为具数名词，但用单数形式概指事物。

例如，'the theatre' 或 'the stage' 可概指剧院所有演出。同样地，'the screen' 概指电影，'the law' 概指一个国家的法律制度。

For him, ***the stage*** *was just a way of earning a living.*
He was as dashing in real life as he was on ***the screen****.*
They do not hesitate to break ***the law****.*

某些常指单个人或物的单数名词可与 'the' 连用，概指某地的系统或服务。例如，'the bus' 和 'the phone' 可分别概指公共交通服务和电话系统。

*How long does it take on **the train**?*
*We rang for **the ambulance**.*

表示乐器的单数名词与 'the' 连用，可说明某人弹奏某种乐器的能力。

*'You play **the oboe**, I see,' said Simon.*
*Geoff plays **the piano** for hours.*

正式语体中的概指
formal generalizations

1.169 生物类单数名词与 'the' 连用，可对某类中的每个成员进行陈述。如 'The swift has long, narrow wings'，可表示所有雨燕的翅膀都是狭长的。

***The primrose** can grow abundantly on chalk banks.*
*Australia is the home of **the kangaroo**.*

同样，指人体某部分的名词与 'the' 连用，可表示任何人的这一部分。

*These arteries supply **the heart** with blood.*
*It is irritating when breathed into **the lungs**.*

有时，'the' 还可与其他单数名词连用，对某一个群体中的全体成员进行陈述。

*Too often these writings dwell on how to protect **the therapist** rather than on how to cure **the patient**.*

上述用法比较正式，在日常谈话中不多见。通常，人们用不带限定词的复数名词表示某类中的全体成员。

☞ 关于这种用法，详见 1.212 节。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

1.170 许多常见的时间表达式仅由 'the' 和名词构成。

*We wasted a lot of money in **the past**.*
*The train leaves Cardiff at four in **the afternoon**.*
*...the changes which are taking place at **the moment**.*

☞ 关于**时间表达式** (time expressions)，详见第五章。

返指
referring back

1.171 在上述各节交代的 'the' 加名词的用法中，由于名词词组一般均具体指某人、某物或群体，因而容易了解出所指的是什么人或什么东西。

然而，如果从已谈到或已写到的内容中能够清楚判断出所谈的是什么人或什么东西，'the' 可与任何名词连用。例如，若已提及我们看见过一只老鼠，随后便可说 'We tried to catch the mouse'。

1.172 'The' 加名词亦可表示该词组所表示的人或物与已提及的人或物有密切关系。

例如，一般不说 'We tried to get into the room, but the door of the room was locked' 而代之以 'We tried to get into the room, but the door was locked'，因为指哪扇门已显而易见。

She stopped and lit a match. The wind almost blew out ***the flame****.*

'the' 与较长的名词词组连用
'the' with longer noun groups

1.173 虽然很多情况下仅用 'the' 加名词，但有时也需加其他成份以明确所指的是哪个人、物或群体。

加前置修饰语
adding modifiers

1.174 有时可在 'the' 和名词之间加**前置修饰语** (modifiers) 表示所指的是什么人或物。形容词是最常见的前置修饰语。

This is ***the main bedroom****.*
'Somebody ought to have done it long ago,' remarked ***the fat man****.*

有时还需用一个以上的形容词。

After the crossroads look out for ***the large white building****.*

关于前置修饰语，详见第二章。有关形容词，详见 2.2 至 2.173 节。

前置修饰语：限定或扩展
modifiers: specifying or expanding

1.175 在 'the' 与名词之间加前置修饰语并非总是为了明确所谈论的对象。下面是加前置修饰语的另外两个理由：

第一，即使提及某人或某物时曾使用过某个前置修饰语，再次提到时仍然使用这个前置修饰语。例如，首次提及一辆小轿车时，说 'a yellow car'，随后谈到这辆车时，尽管谈话或书写中并未涉及其他小轿车，仍会说 'the yellow car'。

第二，人们也可能会补充说明所谈论的对象。例如在 'A woman came into the room' 一句中，人们用 'a woman' 指代某人，后面说到她时可能用 'the unfortunate woman' 或 'the smiling woman'。

这种用法在书面英语中，尤其是叙事中极为常见，但会话中并不如此多见。

The astonished waiter *was now watching from the other end of the room.*
You don't want to give ***the poor man*** *ulcers.*
The loss of pressure caused ***the speeding car*** *to go into a skid.*

加后置修饰语
adding qualifiers

1.176 另一种明确所指对象的方法是：在 'the' 和名词后面加**后置修饰语**(qualifiers)。如介词短语、关系从句、不定式短语、地点状语、时间状语或分词引导的短语。例如名词词组 'the girl in the yellow dress'、'the woman who spilled her drink' 或 'the man smoking a cigar' 可具体指聚会上的人们。

*There is disorder among **the papers on his desk**.*
***The book that I recommend** now costs over three pounds.*
***The thing to aim for** is an office of your own.*
*Who made the bed in **the room upstairs**?*
*It depends on **the person being interviewed**.*

☞ 关于后置修饰语，详见 2.289 至 2.320 节。

'the' 与不具数名词连用
'the' with uncount nouns

1.177 'The' 通常不能与**不具数名词** (uncount nouns) 连用，因为这些名词泛指事物。不过，若不具数名词后接后置修饰语，具体说明所指对象的话就必须与 'the' 连用。

例如，不能说 'I am interested in education of young children'，必须说 'I am interested in the education of young children'。

*Babies need **the comfort of their mother's arms**.*
*Even **the honesty of Inspector Butler** was in doubt.*
*I've no idea about **the geography of Scotland**.*

☞ 关于**不具数名词**，详见 1.24 至 1.34 节。

最高级
superlatives

1.178 'The' 还与**最高级形容词** (superlative adjectives) 连用。

*Edith Evans was **the finest actress of our time**.*
*They went to **the most expensive restaurant in town**.*

☞ 有关**最高级形容词**，详见 2.117 至 2.127 节。

用以强调的 'the'
emphasizing 'the'

1.179 'The' 常常置于名词之前，表示某人或某物是同类中最好的。

*But you must come with us. It's **the club** to go to.*

'The' 也用于人名之前，表示某人是同名的人之中最著名的。

*You actually met **the George Harrison**?*

以这两种方式使用 'the' 时，对 'the' 加以强调，它的发音为 /ðiː/。

'the' 与泛指限定词连用
'the' with general determiners

1.180 'The' 可置于某些**泛指限定词**(general determiners) 之前，一般表示数额或数量。在这类名词词组中，泛指限定词起中心词的作用，可有前置或后置修饰语。

下面是可作中心词的泛指限定词：

few	little	many	other

*...pleasures known only to **the few**.*
*...a coup under the leadership of **the select few**.*
*Even **the few who are forced to sell out** get compensation.*
*We have done **the little that is in our power**.*

若刚提到过二者之一，可用 'the' 和 'other' 一起表示另一个。

*The men sat at one end of the table and the women at **the other**.*

'the' 与数词连用
'the' with numbers

1.181 'One' 和 'ones' 也可与 'the' 连用，起中心词的作用，一般可有前置或后置修饰语。

*I'm going to have **the green one**.*
*The shop was different from **the ones I remembered**.*
*...a pair of those old glasses, **the ones with those funny** square lenses.*

'The' 还可与其他**数词**(numbers)连用。

*It is a mistake to confuse **the two**.*
*Why is she so different from **the other two**?*

☞ 关于数词，详见 2.225 至 2.256 节。

特指：用 'this'、'that'、'these' 和 'those'
The specific way: using 'this', 'that', 'these', and 'those'

1.182 特指限定词 'this'、'that'、'these'、'those' 可以确定地指人或物。

'This' 和 'these' 指在时空上与说话人较近的人或物；'that' 和 'those' 指时空上与说话人较远的人或物。

'This' 和 'that' 用于单数名词、不具数名词和单数代词 'one' 之前。'These' 和 'those' 用于复数名词和复数代词 'ones' 之前。

'This'、'that'、'these'、'those' 常叫**指示词**(demonstratives)，或**指示形容词**(demonstrative adjectives)。

'this' 和 'these'
'this' and 'these'

1.183 'This' 和 'these' 既可指说话人所处情景中的人或物，又能区分同类中这部分人或物与那部分人或物。例如，称自己住的房子为 'this house'；自己手中拿的几把钥匙为 'these keys'；自己正在参加的聚会为 'this party'。

*He had a private practice in **this flat**.*
*I am going to walk up **these steps** towards you.*
*I'll come as soon as **these men** have finished their work.*
*I like **this university**.*
*Good evening. In **this programme** we are going to look at the way in which British music has developed in recent years.*

☞ 若所指的人或物显而易见，'this' 和 'these' 可作**代词** (pronouns)。这种用法在第 1.123 至 1.126 节讨论。

1.184 'This' 和 'these' 还可用于许多表示现在这段时间的短语中。例如 'this month'、'this week' 和 'these days'。这种用法在第五章讨论。

'that' 和 'those'
'that' and 'those'

1.185 'That' 和 'those' 指看得见但离说话人较远的人或物。

*How much is it for **that big box**?*
*Can I have one of **those brochures**?*
*Can you move **those books** off there?*

1.186 若所指的人或物很清楚，'that' 和 'those' 也可用作**代词** (pronouns)。关于这种用法，参见 1.123 至 1.126 节。

*Could you just hold **that**?*
*Please don't take **those**.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

1.187 'This'、'that'、'these'、'those' 与名词连用可表示刚提到过的人或物。如刚提到过一个女孩，第二次谈到她时，则可说 'this girl' 或 'that girl'。通常用代词指代刚提到过的人或物。但若所指的人或物不明确，就不能用代词。

*Students and staff suggest books for the library, and normally we're quite happy to get **those books**.*
*Their house is in a valley. The people in **that valley** speak about the people in the next valley as 'foreigners'.*

*They had a lot of diamonds, and they asked her if she could possibly get **these diamonds** to Britain.*

☞ 指示词返指已提及的事物的用法在 9.7 至 9.10 节详细讨论。

1.188 在非正式英语中，'that' 和 'those' 可置于名词前，指谈话对方已知道的人或物。

***That idiot Antonio** has gone and locked our cabin door.*
*They learned how to eat with **those horrible chopsticks**.*
*Do you remember **that funny little attic apartment**?*

1.189 'That' 可置于名词前指刚发生的事情或说话人刚参与的事情。

*I knew **that meeting** would be difficult.*

'That' 常用作代词表示刚发生过的事情。这一种用法在 1.123 至 1.126 节讨论。

'those' 替代 'the'
using 'those' instead of 'the'

1.190 在比较正式的英语中，若复数名词后随**关系从句**(relative clauses)，则 'those' 可替代 'the' 置于复数名词前。在该用法中，关系从句确切说明所指的是哪些人或物。

*...**those workers who are employed in large enterprises**.*
*The parents are not afraid to be firm about **those matters that seem important to them**.*

'this' 和 'these' 的非正式用法
informal use of 'this' and 'these'

1.191 在非正式的英语口语中，即使首次提及的人或物，也有人用 'this' 和 'that' 加以限定。

*And then **this woman** came up to me and she said, 'I believe you have a goddaughter called Celia Ravenscroft.'*
*At school we had to wear **these awful white cotton hats**.*

特指：用物主限定词
The specific way: using possessive determiners

1.192 人们常常想说明事物属于某人或与某人有关。

一种方法是用 'my'、'your' 和 'their' 一类表示事物归属的词。这类限定词叫**物主限定词**(possessive determiners)。

*Are **your children** bilingual?*
*I remember **his name** now.*
*They would be welcome to use **our library**.*
*I'd been waiting a long time to park **my car**.*

物主限定词一览表
table of possessive determiners

1.193 英语共有七个物主限定词，它们分别与**人称代词** (personal pronouns) 对应。

人称	单数	复数
第一人称	my	our
第二人称	your	your
第三人称	his, her, its	their

☞ 人称代词在 1.96 至 1.109 节讨论。

⚠注意 Warning

1.194 物主限定词 'its' 无撇号。'It's' 是 'it is' 的缩写式。

位置
position

1.195 与其他限定词一样，物主限定词置于**前位限定词** (predeterminers) 之后，数词或形容词之前。

*...all **his** letters.*
*...**their** next message.*
*...**my** little finger.*
*...**our** two lifeboats.*

☞ 关于**前位限定词**，详见 1.236 节。

⚠注意 Warning

1.196 由于英语名词前不能同时使用一个以上的特指限定词，因此物主限定词必须单独使用。如不能说 'I took off the my shoes'，而只能说 'I took off my shoes' 或 'I took off the shoes'。

与名词一致
agreement with noun

1.197 物主限定词的选择应依据事物所有者的身份或特征而定。例如，指某物属于某个女人或与她有关时，总是选用 'her'，随后的名词并不影响这种选择。

***I** took off **my** shoes.*
*Her **husband** remained standing. He had **his** hands in his pockets.*
***She** had to give up **her** job.*
*The **group** held **its** first meeting last week.*
*The **creature** lifted **its** head.*
*...the two dark **men**, glasses in **their** hands, waiting silently.*
*...the **car companies** and **their** workers.*

'own' 的用法
use of 'own'

1.198 若要特别说明某物属于某人或与其相关，可在物主限定词后加 'own'。

*I helped him to some more whisky but left **my own glass** untouched.*
*Residents are allowed to bring **their own furniture** with them if they wish to do so.*
*Make **your own decisions**.*
*I heard it with **my own ears**.*
*She felt in charge of **her own affairs**.*

若在这种结构用数词，则置于 'own' 之后。

*...their **own three children**.*
*...the Doctor's **own two rooms**.*

物主词的用法
uses of possessives

1.199 物主限定词可置于表示可以被拥有的物体或事物名词之前。如 'our house' 表示房子属于我们。物主限定词还可置于许多其他类别的名词前，因为虽然名称如此，它们并非总是表示事物为某人所有。它们可以单纯表示事物与某人有某种联系。

*They then turned **their attention** to other things.*
*...the vitality of **our music** and our culture.*
*In summer, hay fever interfered with all **her activities**.*
*It's **his brother** who has the workshop.*

1.200 物主限定词可置于表示动作的名词之前，说明谁或什么是动作的施行者。

*...not long after **our arrival**.*
*...**his criticism** of the Government.*
*...**their fight** for survival.*
*I'm waiting for **your explanation**.*
*Most of **their claims** were worthy.*

在最后一个例句中，'their claims' 指他们所提出的要求。

1.201 物主限定词也可表明谁或什么是动作的承受者。

*He congratulated me on **my appointment** as editor of the Dispatch.*
*...the redistribution of wealth, rather than **its creation**.*
*They expressed their horror at **her dismissal**.*

在最后一个例句中，'her dismissal' 很可能指她已被某人或某公司解雇这一项事实。

在下面例句中，'his supporters' 指支持他的人们。

*...Birch and **his supporters**.*
*She returned the ring to **its owner**.*
*...a campaign against **his critics**.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

1.202 在英语中，如归属意义明显，有时可用限定词 'the'。在这种情况下，归属意义是由前面的名词或代词交代的。下面几节讨论用 'the' 代替物主限定词的情况。

1.203 通常用物主限定词指人体的某个部位。

*She has something on **her feet** and a bag in **her hand**.*
*Nancy suddenly took **my arm**.*
*They can't turn **their heads**.*
*She thanked him shyly and patted **his arm**.*
*I opened the cupboard and they fell on **my head**.*
*He shook **his head**.*

但是，如果描述某人对他人身上某部位进行动作，则常用定冠词。人体部位作介词宾语、动词宾语为代词时，尤其如此。例如，在句子 'She hit me on the head' 中，'head' 是介词 'on' 的宾语，'me' 是动词 'hit' 的宾语。

*...so I encouraged him and I **patted him on the head**.*
*She **hit him** smartly and swiftly **on the head**.*
*He **took her by the arm** and began drawing her firmly but gently away.*

在这种情况下之所以用定冠词，是因为指谁的身体部位已经明确，不必重复说明。

同样，如动词的宾语为 'myself'、'yourself' 一类反身代词时，也可用定冠词，因为反身代词已表明谁是动作的施行者，不必用物主限定词重复说明。

*Andrew laughed, **hitting himself on the knee**.*
*We can **pat ourselves on the back** for bringing up our children.*

☞ 反身代词的用法在第 1.115 至 1.122 节讨论。

1.204 如果描述说话人对自己所做的事情或别人对自己所做的事情，一般用物主限定词。

*She was brushing **her hair**.*
*'I'm going to **brush my teeth,' he said**.*

*She **gritted her teeth** and carried on.*
*He walked into the kitchen and **shook his head**.*

⚠ 注意 Warning

1.205 物主限定词通常表示有生命的事物，如一个人、一群人或一只动物。他们一般不表示无生命的事物。例如 'the door' 或 'the door of the room' 比 'its door' 更常见。

其他物主词
other possessives

1.206 其他方法也可表示某物属于某人或某物，或者与某人某物有关。如 ''s' 或 'of' 引出的介词短语。

***Mary's daughter** is called Elizabeth.*
*Very often the person appointed has **no knowledge of that company's end product***
*....**the house of a rich banker** in Paris.*
*In **the opinion of the team**, what would they consider to be absolutely necessary?*

☞ 关于 ''s' 和 'of' 的用法，详见第 2.180 至 2.192 节。

用于头衔
used in titles

1.207 物主限定词有时也用于头衔，如 'Your Majesty' 和 'His Excellency'。这种用法在 1.57 节讨论。

泛指
The general way

1.208 泛指限定词用于名词词组中，泛指人或物。

下列为泛指限定词：

a	both	few	much	some
all	each	little	neither	
an	either	many	no	
another	enough	more	other	
any	every	most	several	

'A' 和 'an' 是最常见的泛指限定词，又称**不定冠词**(indefinite articles)。有关 'a' 和 'an'，详见 1.213 至 1.220 节。

☞ 有关其他泛指限定词，详见 1.221 至 1.235 节。

与具数名词连用
with count nouns

1.209 ‘A’ 和 ‘an’ 与单数具数名词连用，表示可数事物中的一个。

如果同类中的一个或多个人或物已经提及，‘another’ 可与单数具数名词连用；‘other’ 与复数具数名词连用。

‘Any’ 可与单数和复数具数名词连用，叙述一个或若干人或物。‘Enough’、‘few’、‘many’、‘more’、‘most’、‘several’ 和 ‘some’ 与复数具数名词连用，表示所指为若干人或物。每个限定词表示总数中的一个不同的类。关于这些限定词的意义，详见 1.221 节开始的部分。

‘All’、‘both’、‘each’、‘either’ 和 ‘every’ 表示所有涉及到的人或物。‘Both’ 和 ‘either’ 表示只涉及两个人或物，‘both’ 与复数名词连用，‘either’ 与单数名词连用。‘All’、‘each’ 和 ‘every’ 通常表示两个以上的人或物。‘All’ 与复数名词连用，‘each’ 和 ‘every’ 与单数名词连用。

‘No’ 和 ‘neither’ 用于否定句中，表示所有涉及到的人或物。‘No’ 与单数或复数名词连用，‘neither’ 只能与单数名词连用。‘No’ 和 ‘neither’ 由于在以否定为主题的第四章里详细讨论，这里不再详述。关于具数名词，详见 1.16 至 1.23 节。

与不具数名词连用
with uncount nouns

1.210 ‘Any’、‘enough’、‘little’、‘more’、‘most’、‘much’、‘other’ 和 ‘some’ 与不具数名词连用，表示事物的一个定量。‘No’ 和 ‘all’ 表示事物的总量。有关不具数名词，详见 1.24 至 1.34 节。

1.211 ‘A’、‘an’、‘another’、‘both’、‘each’、‘either’、‘every’、‘few’、‘many’、‘neither’、‘other’ 和 ‘several’ 通常不与不具数名词连用。

使用不加限定词的名词
using nouns without determiners

1.212 若不确定地指人或物，有时可用不带限定词的名词。

*...raising **money** from **industry**, **government**, and **trusts**.*
***Permission** should be asked before **visitors** are invited.*

不具数名词通常不带限定词。

***Health** and **education** are matters that most voters feel strongly about.*
***Wealth**, like **power**, tends to corrupt.*

若表示某个类别的所有成员，可用不带限定词的复数名词。

***Dogs** need a regular balanced diet, not just meat.*
*Are there any jobs that **men** can do that **women** can't ?*

不带限定词的复数名词还可用来表示数目未明确的事物。

*Teachers should read **stories** to children.*
*Cats and dogs get **fleas**.*

☞ 关于复数名词，详见 1.42 至 1.47 节。

泛指：用 'a' 和 'an'
The general way: using 'a' and 'an'

1.813 'A' 和 'an' 是最常见的**泛指限定词**(general determiners)，它们可用于单数具数名词前，泛指人或物。

*We've killed **a pig**.*
*He was eating **an apple**.*
***An old lady** was calling to him.*

选择 'a' 或 'an'
choosing 'a' or 'an'

1.814 若随后的单词以辅音开始，用 'a'。

...a piece...a good teacher...a language class.

某些以元音字母开头的单词也用 'a'，因为其第一个音是 /j/。

...a university...a European language.

若后面的单词以元音开头，用 'an'。

...an example...an art exhibition...an early train.

某些以字母 'h' 开头的单词也用 'an'，因为这些单词中的 'h' 不发音。

...an honest politician...quarter of an hour.

'A' 常读作 /ə/，'An' 一般读作 /ən/。

首次提及事物
mentioning things for the first time

1.815 首次提及某人或某物时，一般用 'a' 或 'an'。

*She picked up **a book**.*
*After weeks of looking, we eventually bought **a house**.*
***A colleague** and I got some money to do research on rats.*

加前置和后置修饰语
adding modifiers and qualifiers

1.816 人们可使用由 'a' 或 'an' 与名词构成的名词词组。

*I got **a postcard** from Susan.*
*The FBI is conducting **an investigation**.*

但为了进一步说明所指的人或物，可在名词词组中加**前置修饰语**(modifiers)和**后置修饰语**(qualifiers)。

I met ***a Swedish girl*** *on the train from Copenhagen.*
I've been reading ***an interesting article*** *in The Economist.*
The information was contained in ***an article on biology****.*
I chose ***a picture that reminded me of my own country****.*

☞ 关于前置和后置修饰语，详见第二章。

系动词的补足语
complements of link verbs

1.217 含有 'a' 或 'an' 的名词词组可置于**系动词**(link verbs)之后，作句子的**补足语**(complements)，详述人或物。

She is ***a model*** *and* ***an artist****.*
His father was ***an alcoholic****.*
Noise was considered ***a nuisance****.*

有时，前置或后置修饰语可取代名词提供新信息。

His brother was ***a sensitive child****.*
I met the vicar. He was ***a worried man****.*

☞ 有关系动词和补足语，详见第三章。

'a' 和 'an' 与不具数名词
'a' and 'an' with uncount nouns

1.218 限定词虽然通常不能与不具数名词连用，但 'a' 或 'an' 可与被前置和后置修饰的不具数名词连用。

A general education *is perhaps more important than* ***an exact knowledge of some particular theory****.*
She had ***an eagerness for life****.*
Everything went on with ***a friendliness that was uncommon in such circles****.*

用单个人或物泛指
using individuals to generalize

1.219 若用一个人或物泛指该类中所有成员，可用 'a' 或 'an' 与名词。如在 'A gun must be kept in a safe place' 中，用一支枪泛指所有的枪。

A computer *can only do what you program it to do.*
A dog *likes to eat far more meat than* ***a human being****.*
An unemployed married farm-worker *got parish relief.*

表示群体，一般不用这种方法，而用不带限定词的复数名词泛指一类事物中的所有成员。关于这一点，详见 1.212 节。

表示独一无二事物的名词
nouns referring to one thing only

1.220 'A' 和 'an' 有时可与表示独一无二事物的单数名词如 'sun'、'moon' 和 'sky' 连用。这些词通常与 'the' 连用，但若给名词加前置或后置修饰语，强调事物的某些特征，可用 'a' 或 'an'。这种用法在文学作品中尤为常见。

*We drove under **a gloomy sky**.*
***A weak sun** shines on the promenade.*

☞ 关于单数名词，详见 1.35 至 1.41 节。

泛指：其他限定词
The general way: other determiners

'some' **1.221** 'Some' 通常不确切地表示某事物的量或表示若干人或物。因而与不具数名词和复数名词连用。

'Some' 一般用于肯定陈述句。

*There is **some** evidence that the system works.*
*There's **some** chocolate cake over there.*
*I had **some** good ideas.*
***Some** people expect rapid economic development.*

若指望得到肯定回答，'some' 可用于疑问句。

*Could you give me **some** examples?*
*Would you like **some** coffee?*

'Some' 还可表示较大的量或数，例如，在 'I did not meet her again for some years' 中，'some' 几乎相当于 'several' 或 'many'。

*You will be unable to restart the car for **some** time.*
*It took **some** years for Dan to realize the truth.*

1.222 在略带文学色彩的语言中，'some' 可用于数词前表示并不完全准确。

*I was **some** fifteen miles by sea from the nearest village.*
*...an animal weighing **some** five tons.*

1.223 若强调所谈对象的身份或特征不详或无关紧要，'some' 可替代 'a' 或 'an' 与单数具数名词连用。

*Most staff members will spend a few weeks in **some** developing country.*
*Supposing you had **some** eccentric who came and offered you a thousand pounds.*

'any' **1.224** 'Any' 置于复数名词和不具数名词前，可表示存在或不存在的事物的数量。

*The patients know their rights like **any** other consumers.*
*Check if you're in **any** doubt.*
*You can stop at **any** time you like.*

'Any' 用于疑问句，询问事物是否存在，用于否定句表示事物不存在。

*Do you have **any** advice on that?*
*Are there **any** jobs that men can do but women can't?*
*It hasn't made **any** difference.*
*Nobody in her house knows **any** English.*
*By the time I got to Sainsbury's, there weren't **any** tomatoes left.*

疑问句和否定句在第四章进一步讨论。

注意，若不确指人或物，'any' 可与单数具数名词连用，指一个特定类别中的某人或某物。

***Any** big tin container will do.*
*Cars can be rented at almost **any** US airport.*

'Any'也可作代词(pronouns)。关于代词，详见1.94至1.160节。'Any'还用于'if'-从句(if-clauses)，参见第八章。

'another' 和 'other'
'another' and 'other'

1.225 'Another' 与单数具数名词连用，可表示已经提到的人或物一类中的再一个。

*Could I have **another** cup of coffee?*
*He opened **another** shop last month.*

'Another' 还与数词连用，表示附加一个以上的事物。

*The woman lived for **another** ten days.*
*Five officials were sacked and **another** four arrested.*

'Other' 与复数名词连用，偶尔也与不具数名词连用。

***Other** people must have thought like this.*
*They are either asleep or entirely absorbed in play or **other** activity.*

在群体中选取
selecting from a group

1.226 'Enough' 表示事物的数量或数目足以满足需要，可用于不具数名词或复数名词之前。

*It had **enough** room to store all the information.*
*They weren't getting **enough** guests.*

若强调某类事物为数很少，可用 'few' 加复数具数名词表示。

*There are **few** drugs that act sufficiently swiftly to be of effect.*
*There were **few** doctors available.*

'Many' 表示事物的数目很大，但数目不确切。

*He spoke **many** different languages.*

'Many' 还可用于表示数量的否定句中。

*There aren't **many** gardeners like him left.*

'Most' 表示群体中的绝大多数或绝大部分。

***Most** people recover but the disease can be fatal.*
***Most** farmers are still using the old methods.*

通常，'several' 不确定地表示事物的数目不大，但多于两个。

***Several** projects had to be postponed.*
*I had seen her **several** times before.*
*There were **several** reasons for this.*

'all'、'both' 和 'either'
'all', 'both' and 'either'

1.227 'All' 表示特定种类中的各个人或物。

*You cannot say that **all** prisoners should be treated the same.*

'Both' 表示同类中的两个人或物。这两个人或物通常已经提到或从上下文能明显看出。'Both' 有时用来强调涉及的是两个人或物，而不只是一个。

*There were excellent performances from **both** actresses.*
*Denis held his cocoa in **both** hands.*

'Either' 虽然也表示两个人或物，但一般表示二者中只涉及一个人或物。它是句子主语的一部分时，动词用单数。

*No argument could move **either** old gentleman from this decision.*

注意，'either' 也可表示兼指两者，与 'end' 和 'side' 连用时尤其如此。

*They stood on **either** side of the bed.*

'each' 和 'every'
'each' and 'every'

1.228 'Each' 和 'every' 表示人或物的群体中的所有成员。'Each' 指单个成员；'every' 泛指所有成员。'Each' 和 'every' 均与单数具数名词连用。

***Each seat** was covered with a white lace cover.*
*They would rush out to meet **each visitor**.*
*This new wealth can be seen in **every village**.*

Every child *would have milk* ***every day****.*
Each *applicant has five choices.*
I agree with ***every*** *word Peter says.*

'Every' 可被前置修饰，但 'each' 不能。例如可说 'Almost every chair is broken' 或 'Not every chair is broken'。但不说 'Almost each chair is broken' 或 'Not each chair is broken'。因为 'each' 比 'every' 稍微精确一些。

注意，'each' 可表示两个人或物，但 'every' 只能表示两个以上的人或物。

'little' 和 'much'
'little' and 'much'

1.229 若强调事物的量很少，可用 'little'，用 'much' 强调事物的量很多。'Little' 和 'much' 均与不具数名词连用。

There was ***little*** *applause.*
We've made ***little*** *progress.*
We have very ***little*** *information.*
Do you watch ***much*** *television?*

'Much' 可用于否定句和肯定句， 而 'very much' 只能用于否定句 。例如'I don't have very much sugar' 等于'I have only a small quantity of sugar'。

He did not speak ***much*** *English.*
I haven't given ***very much*** *attention to this problem.*

'certain'、'numerous' 和 'various'
'certain', 'numerous' and 'various'

1.230 其他泛指限定词还有 'certain'、'numerous' 和 'various'。

'Certain' 表示群体中的某些成员，但不明确是哪些成员。

We have ***certain*** *ideas about what topics are suitable.*

'Numerous' 与 'many' 一样，不确切地表示许多人或物。

Numerous *attempts have been made to obscure this fact.*
...a privilege from which ***numerous*** *auxiliary benefits flowed.*

'Various' 用于强调所指是几个不同的人或物。

We looked at schools in ***various*** *European countries.*

'more'、'fewer' 和 'less'
'more', 'fewer' and 'less'

1.231 有三个比较级词可作限定词。'More' 置于复数和不具数名词前，通常与 'than' 连用，表示一个事物的数目大于或数量多于另一个事物。

He does ***more*** *hours than I do.*
His visit might do ***more*** *harm than good.*

除用于比较级之外，'more' 也常表示事物的附加数或量。

__More__ officers will be brought in as and when circumstances dictate.
We need __more__ information.

'Less' 表示一个事物的量少于另一个事物；'fewer' 表示一个群体所含数目少于另一群体。通常 'less' 置于不具数名词前，'fewer' 置于复数名词前，但在非正式语中，'less' 可用于复数名词前。

The poor have __less__ access to education.
...machinery which uses __less__ energy.
As a result, he found __less__ time than he would have hoped for his hobbies.
There are __fewer__ trees here.

☞ 关于**比较级**(comparison)，详见 2.108 至 2.144 节。

其他表达式
other expressions

1.232 其他一些表达式也起泛指限定词的作用，如 'a few'、'a little'、'a good many' 和 'a great many'，但它们的含义与限定词 'few'、'little' 和 'many' 略有差异。

若表示少数事物但并不加以强调，可用 'a few' 加复数具数名词。

They went to London for __a few__ days.
__A few__ years ago we set up a factory.
I usually do __a few__ jobs for him in the house.

同样，若表示少量事物但并不加以强调，可用 'a little' 加不具数名词。

He spread __a little__ honey on a slice of bread.
I have to spend __a little__ time in Oxford.
Charles is having __a little__ trouble.

但 'a good many' 和 'a great many' 却是 'many' 的强调形式。

I haven't seen her for __a good many__ years.
He wrote __a great many__ novels.

前置修饰限定词
modifying determiners

1.233 有些泛指限定词可用 'very'、'too' 和 'far' 修饰，有时也可用另一个泛指限定词修饰。

'More' 可被数词或其他泛指限定词修饰。

A little further out to sea were the vast dorsal fins of __two more sharks__.
There had been __no more accidents__.
You will never have to do __any more work__.

'Too many' 或 'too much' 表示事物的数目或数量超过所需，而 'too few' 或 'too little' 则表示不够。

*There were **too many** competitors.*
*They gave **too much** power to the Treasury.*
*There's **too little** literature involved.*

'Very'可用于'few'、'little'、'many'和'much'之前。也可说'a very little'或'a very great many'。

***Very many** women have made their mark on industry.*
***Very few** cars had reversing lights.*
*I had **very little** money left.*

使用'one'
using 'one'

1.834 谈到或写到群体时，若要说明该群体中的某个成员，可用'one'作限定词，替代'a'或'an'。'One'比'a'或'an'语气稍强一些。

*We had **one** case which dragged on for a couple of years.*
*'They criticise me all the time,' wrote **one** divorced woman.*
*I know **one** household where that happened, actually.*

数词'one'的用法在2.230至2.232节讨论。

1.835 许多限定词同时又是**代词**(pronouns)，即它们可不带名词单独使用。详见1.153至1.160节。

前位限定词
predeterminers

1.836 一般情况下，限定词是名词词组中的第一个词，但有一类词可用于限定词之前，它们叫**前位限定词**(predeterminers)。

下列是前位限定词一览表：

all	half	twice	rather
both	many	~	such
double	quarter	quite	what

第一类表示数目或数量。'All'还可指事物的各个部分。用于这一类意义时后跟不具数名词。

***All** the boys started to giggle.*
*He will give you **all** the information.*
***All** these people knew each other.*
*I shall miss **all** my friends.*
*I invited **both** the boys.*
***Both** these parties shared one basic belief.*
*She paid **double** the sum they asked for.*
*I see advertisements for jobs with **twice** the pay I'm getting now.*

在第二类中，'quite'和'rather'可强调或减弱所述事物。它们的确切含义，在口语中由声调表示；在书面语中，有时则必须借助上下文，否则难以弄清它们用于哪个意义。

It takes ***quite*** *a long time to get a divorce.*
It was ***quite*** *a shock.*
Seaford is ***rather*** *a pleasant town.*
It was ***rather*** *a disaster.*

'Such'和'what'用作强调。

He has ***such*** *a beautiful voice.*
What *a mess!*

第二章 讲述人和物

2 讲述人和物
Giving information about people and things

概述
Introduction

2.1 前一章已经讨论了如何使用名词、代词和限定词称呼人和物以及确指人和物。本章探讨怎样讲述已经指称或确指的人和物。

一种办法是在表示人和物的名词词组中用**形容词**(adjectives)，例如 'small'、'political' 或 'blue'。形容词可作名词的前置修饰语，也可作系动词的补足语，这种用法在 2.2 至 2.173 节讨论。

有时也可用名词修饰中心词。参见 2.174 至 2.179 节。

领属格 (possessives) 如 'grandmother's' 用来表示人和物与中心词的关系。它们还可用作名词的前置修饰语或作系动词的补足语。参见 2.180 至 2.192 节。

名词词组前加其他词也可详述人和物。在**量词结构** (partitive structures) 中，这些词带 'of' 与名词词组连用。它们包括**量词**(quantifiers)如 'many of' 和 'some of' 及其他**单位词** (partitives) 如 'a piece of' 和 'a bottle of'。量词用来表示多少人或物。参见 2.193 至 2.210 节。其他单位词用来表示人或物的特定数量。参见 2.211 至 2.224 节。

数词 (numbers) 和**分数词** (fractions) 也用来表示人或物的数量。

☞ 数词在 2.225 至 2.256 节讲解，分数词在 2.257 至 2.266 节讨论。

☞ 另一种详述人或物的办法是名词词组的中心词加**后置修饰语** (qualifiers)，扩展名词词组的意义。参见 2.289 至 2.320 节。

描述事物：形容词
Describing things: adjectives

2.2 如果要对名词为其单独所提供信息的事物提供更多的信息，可用**形容词** (adjectives)。

*...a **new** idea.*
*...**new** ideas.*

*...**new** creative ideas.*
*Ideas are **important**.*
*...to suggest that **new** ideas are **useful**.*

有关形容词的要点
main points about adjectives

2.3 使用英语**形容词**应特别注意：

- **形容词**用于哪种结构（如置于名词之前还是系动词之后）
- **形容词**属于哪一类（如是属性形容词还是类别形容词）

⚠ **注意 Warning**

2.4 无论在单数还是复数名词前；无论在作主语还是作宾语的名词前，形容词的形式都不变。

*We were looking for a **good** place to camp.*
*The next **good** place was forty-five miles further on.*
***Good** places to fish were hard to find.*
*We found hardly any **good** places.*

结构
structure

2.5 形容词几乎总是和名词或代词连用，详述人、物或集体。如果形容词所提供的信息不是陈述的主要目的，该形容词可置于名词前，如 'hot coffee'。形容词在名词词组中作定语。关于名词词组中形容词的用法，参见 2.19 至 2.20 节。

2.6 有时，陈述的主要目的是为了提供形容词所表达的信息。如果出现这种情况，形容词可置于 'be' 或 'become' 等系动词后，如 'I am cold' 和 'He became ill'，系动词后的形容词用作表语，称为系动词的补足语；其主语可以是包括代词在内的任何名词词组。

☞ 关于形容词作系动词补足语的用法，在 3.127 至 3.138 节讨论。

形容词的种类
types of adjective

2.7 有一大类形容词，如 'happy' 和 'intelligent'，可指明某人或某物所具有的属性，它们叫**属性形容词** (qualitative adjectives)。

☞ 属性形容词在 2.24 至 2.28 节中讨论。

2.8 另有一大类形容词，如 'financial' 和 'intellectual'，可指明某人或某物的类属，它们叫**类别形容词** (classifying adjectives)。

☞ 类别形容词在2.29至2.32节中讨论。有些形容词既是属性形容词、又是类别形容词，这些形容词在 2.33 节讨论。

2.9 有一小类形容词，如 'blue' 和 'green'，可表示事物的颜色，它们叫**颜色形容词** (colour adjectives)。

☞ 颜色形容词在 2.34 至 2.39 节讨论。

2.10 另一小类形容词，如 'complete'、'absolute' 和 'utter'，可用来强调说话人对谈及的人或物的感情，它们叫**强调形容词** (emphasizing adjectives)。

☞ 强调形容词在 2.40 至 2.43 节讨论。

2.11 还有一小类形容词可用来更准确地表示所指的人或物，它们的用法与限定词（参见 1.161 至 1.236 节）十分相似。这些置于其他形容词之前，限定词之后的形容词叫**后位限定词**(postdeterminers)。

☞ 后位限定词在 2.44 节讨论。

结构上的限制 structural restrictions

2.12 大多数形容词既可用于定语结构，也可用于表语结构。但有些形容词只能用于其中一种结构。参见 2.45 至 2.57 节。

2.13 少数形容词可置于名词之后，它们既不是定语也不是表语。参见 2.62 至 2.66 节。

形容词的词序 order of adjectives

2.14 两个或更多的形容词用于同一种结构时，通常按特定顺序排列。参见 2.58 至 2.61 节。

'-ing' 和 '-ed' 形容词 '-ing' and '-ed' adjectives

2.15 很多英语形容词以 '-ing' 结尾，其中不少由动词的**现在分词** (present participles) 转化而来。本书称其为 **'-ing' 形容词** ('-ing' adjectives)。

另有很多英语形容词以 '-ed' 结尾，其中不少由动词的**过去分词**(past participles) 转化而来。本书称其为 '-ed' 形容词 ('-ed' adjectives)。

☞ '-ing'形容词在2.67至2.80节讨论；'-ed'形容词在2.81至2.97节讲解。

复合形容词 compound adjectives

2.16 **复合形容词** (compound adjectives)由两个或两个以上的词组成，通常用连字号连接。

☞ 复合形容词在 2.98 至 2.107 节讨论。

比较事物
comparing things

2.17 如果要表示某人或某物所具属性的程度，可用**比较级形容词** (comparative adjectives) 和**最高级形容词** (superlative adjectives) 。除此之外，也可用其他办法对事物进行比较。

☞ 比较级在 2.108 至 2.116 节讨论；最高级在 2.117 至 2.127 节讨论；其他比较办法在 2.128 至 2.144 节讨论。

次前置修饰语
submodifiers

2.18 **次前置修饰语** (submodifiers) 与形容词连用，也表示某人或某物所具属性的程度。有些次前置修饰语还可与比较级词和最高级词连用。

☞ 次前置修饰语在 2.145 至 2.173 节讨论。

信息焦点：形容词的结构
Information focusing: adjective structures

2.19 形容词主要用于两种结构：一种是用作名词词组的前置修饰语。如果人们说 'Julia was carrying a battered old suitcase' ，那么，他主要想表示朱丽叶正携带一只小提箱，而形容词 'battered' 和 'old' 则为小提箱提供更多的信息。

*He had a **beautiful** smile.*
*...a **technical** term.*
*...a **pretty little star-shaped** flower bed.*

定语位置
attributive position

2.20 大多数形容词可作名词的前置修饰语，这是形容词的**定语位置** (attributive position)。

2.21 另一种是置于**系动词** (link verbs) 之后，**作补足语** (complements) 用。形容词置于系动词之后可将信息焦点集中在形容词上。如果有人说 'The suitcase she was carrying was old and battered' ，他的主要目的是描述小提箱，因此信息焦点在形容词 'old' 和 'battered' 上。

*Davis is **dead**.*
*The house was **quiet**.*
*He became **angry**.*
*I feel **cold**.*
*Nobody seemed **amused**.*

☞ 形容词作系动词补足语的用法在 3.133 至 3.138 节讨论。

表语位置
predicative position

2.22 大多数形容词可置于系动词后作补足语，这是形容词的**表语位置** (predicative position)。

定语和表语位置
attributive and predicative positions

2.23 在下列每对例句中，第一句说明形容词的定语用法，第二句说明形容词的表语用法。

定语用法：*There was no **clear** evidence.*
表语用法：*'That's very **clear**,' I said.*

定语用法：*It had been a **pleasant** evening.*
表语用法：*It's not a big stream, but it's very **pleasant**.*

定语用法：*She bought a loaf of **white** bread.*
表语用法：*The walls were **white**.*

定语用法：*She want a **quiet** life.*
表语用法：*The street was unnaturally **quiet**.*

指明属性：属性形容词
Identifying qualities: qualitative adjectives

2.24 形容词主要有两类：**属性形容词** (qualitative adjectives) 和**类别形容词** (classifying adjectives)。表示某人或某物具有某种属性的形容词，如 'sad'、'pretty'、'small'、'happy'、'healthy'、'wealthy' 和 'wise' 叫**属性形容词** (qualitative adjectives)。

*...a **sad** story.*
*...a **pretty** girl.*
*...a **small** child.*
*...a **happy** mother with a **healthy** baby.*
*...**wealthy** bankers.*
*I think it would be **wise** to give up.*

可分级性
gradability

2.25 属性形容词可以**分级** (gradable)，也就是说人或物具有某种属性的程度可以不同。

2.26 表示某人或某物所具属性的多少，一般可在属性形容词前加 'very' 和 'rather' 一类**次前置修饰语** (submodifiers)。参见 2.145 至 2.161 节。

2.27 表示某人或某物所具属性的程度还可使用**比较级** (comparatives) 如 'bigger' 和 'more interesting' 或**最高级** (superlatives)，如 'the biggest' 和 'the most interesting'。参见 2.108 至 2.127 节。

2.28 下列是属性形容词：

active	appropriate	beautiful	bright
angry	attractive	big	broad
anxious	bad	brief	

busy	fine	new	slow
calm	firm	nice	small
careful	flat	obvious	soft
cheap	frank	odd	special
clean	free	old	steady
clear	fresh	pale	strange
close	friendly	patient	strong
cold	frightened	plain	stupid
comfortable	funny	pleasant	successful
common	good	poor	suitable
complex	great	popular	sure
cool	happy	powerful	surprised
curious	hard	pretty	sweet
dangerous	heavy	proud	tall
dark	high	quick	terrible
dear	hot	quiet	thick
deep	important	rare	thin
determined	interesting	reasonable	tight
different	kind	rich	tiny
difficult	large	rough	tired
dirty	late	sad	typical
dry	light	safe	understanding
easy	likely	sensible	useful
effective	long	serious	violent
efficient	loose	sharp	warm
expensive	loud	shocked	weak
fair	lovely	short	wet
familiar	low	sick	wide
famous	lucky	significant	wild
fast	narrow	silly	worried
fat	nervous	simple	young

指明某物所属的类别：类别形容词
Identifying the class that something belongs to: classifying adjectives

2.29 第二大类形容词可指明事物的类别，如在 'financial help' 中，形容词 'financial' 用于指明名词 'help' 的类别。而帮助有各种各样，'financial help' 只是其中之一。这类形容词叫**类别形容词** (classifying adjectives)。

*...**financial** help.*
*...**abdominal** pains.*
*...a **medieval** manuscript.*
*...my **daily** shower.*
*...an **equal** partnership.*
*... a **sufficient** amount of milk.*

注意，**名词前置修饰语** (noun modifiers) 的用法与类别形容词的用法相似。例如 ‘financial matters’ 和 ‘money matters’ 无论在结构上还是在意义上都很相似。

☞ 关于名词前置修饰语，参见 2.174 至 2.179 节。

2.30 下列是类别形容词：

absolute	double	inevitable	open	scientific
active	due	intellectual	original	separate
actual	east	internal	personal	sexual
agricultural	eastern	international	physical	single
alternative	economic	legal	political	social
annual	educational	local	positive	solid
apparent	electric	magic	possible	south
available	empty	male	potential	southern
basic	female	medical	private	standard
central	financial	mental	professional	straight
chemical	foreign	military	proper	sufficient
civil	free	modern	public	theoretical
commercial	full	moral	raw	traditional
communist	general	national	ready	unaware
conservative	golden	natural	real	urban
cultural	historical	negative	religious	west
daily	human	north	revolutionary	western
democratic	ideal	northern	right	wooden
direct	independent	nuclear	royal	wrong
domestic	industrial	official	rural	

2.31 表示国籍或起源的形容词，例如 ‘British’、‘American’ 和 ‘Australian’，也是类别形容词。因它们与国名有关，所以首字母大写。

*...**American** citizens.*

有些类别形容词来自人名，例如 ‘Victorian’ 和 ‘Shakespearian’，它们的首字母也要大写。

*...**Victorian** houses.*

2.32 类别形容词由于只说明事物的类别，即要么属于某类要么就不属于，因而不像属性形容词那样可以分级，也没有比较级和最高级，通常也不与次前置修饰语 ‘very’ 和 ‘rather’ 等连用。

不过，若说话人对所述非常肯定，类别形容词便可与 ‘absolutely’ 一类次前置修饰语连用。参见 2.152 至 2.153 节。

兼类形容词
adjectives which are of both types

2.33 依据说话人想传达的意义，有些形容词既可表示属性也可表示类别，例如在 'an emotional person' 中，'emotional' 是属性形容词，意思是 'feeling or expressing strong emotions'。它有比较级和最高级，可与次前置修饰语连用。因此，可以说一个人 'very emotional'、'rather emotional' 或比另一个人 'more emotional'。但在 'the emotional needs of children' 中，'emotional' 是类别形容词，意思是 'relating to a person's emotions'，它不能被次前置修饰语修饰。

下列是常作属性形容词和类别形容词的兼类形容词：

academic	effective	modern	regular	scientific
conscious	emotional	moral	religious	secret
dry	extreme	objective	revolutionary	similar
educational	late	ordinary	rural	

指明颜色：颜色形容词
Identifying colours: colour adjectives

2.34 若要表示事物的颜色，可用颜色形容词 (colour adjectives)。

*...her **blue** eyes.*
*...a **red** ribbon.*

下列是主要的颜色形容词：

black	cream	orange	red	white
blue	green	pink	scarlet	yellow
brown	grey	purple	violet	

次前置修饰颜色形容词
submodifying colour adjectives

2.35 如果要更准确地表示颜色，可在颜色形容词前面加 'light'、'pale'、'dark'、'deep' 或 'bright'。

*...**light brown** hair.*
*...a **pale green** suit.*
*...a **dark blue** dress.*
*...**deep red** dye.*
*...her **bright blue** eyes.*

这些次前置修饰语和颜色形容词有时用连字号连接。

*...a **light-blue** suit.*
*...her tight, **pale-green** felt cape.*

注意，次前置修饰语 'light' 和 'dark' 等不能修饰颜色 'black' 和 'white'，因为黑色和白色没有深浅之分。

大致的颜色 approximate colours

2.36 如果要表示没有固定名称的颜色，

• 可在颜色形容词上加词尾 '-ish'。

...*__greenish__ glass.*
...*permed __yellowish__ hair.*

• 可将两个颜色形容词合并使用。通常第一个形容词加词尾 '-ish' 或 '-y'。

...*__greenish-white__ flowers.*
...*a __greeny blue__ line.*
...*the __blue-green__ waves.*

产出性特征 PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.37 颜色形容词这样合并使用可以生成描述任何颜色的新词。这是英语的**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**中讨论。

颜色形容词的比较级 comparison of colour adjectives

2.38 偶尔 'blue' 和 'green' 一类颜色形容词可加词尾 '-er' 和 '-est' 构成比较级和最高级。

His face was __redder__ than usual.
...*some of the __greenest__ scenery in America.*

☞ **比较级**和**最高级**在 2.108 至 2.127 节讨论。

颜色名词 colour nouns

2.39 颜色词也可作中心词，而主要颜色词且还有复数形式。

The snow shadows had turned to a deep __blue__.
They blended in so well with the khaki and __reds__ of the landscape.
...*brilliantly coloured in __reds, yellows, blacks,__ and __purples__.*

表示强烈的感情：强调形容词
Showing strong feelings: emphasizing adjectives

2.40 名词前加 'complete'、'absolute' 和 'utter' 一类形容词可强调人们对事物的感情。

He made me feel like a __complete__ idiot.
Some of it was __absolute__ rubbish.
...*__utter__ despair.*
...*__pure__ bliss.*

通常只有当名词表示人们的看法时，才使用这类形容词。

由于这类形容词表示强烈的感情，因而被称为**强调形容词** (emphasizing adjectives)。

下列是强调形容词：

absolute	outright	pure	true
complete	perfect	real	utter
entire	positive	total	

强调异议
emphasizing disapproval

2.41 在非正式英语口语中，少数以 '-ing' 结尾的形容词，可用来强调，常常表示异议或蔑视。

*Everybody in the whole **stinking** town was loaded with money.*
*The **flaming** car is locked.*

下列是非正式语体中用于强调的形容词：

blinking	blundering	freezing	scalding	thundering
blithering	crashing	piddling	stinking	whopping
blooming	flaming	raving	thumping	

⚠ 注意 Warning

2.42 这类形容词中有许多通常与固定的名词或形容词连用，如 'blithering idiot'、'blundering idiot'、'crashing bore'、'raving lunatic'、'thundering nuisance'、'freezing cold'、'scalding hot'、'piddling little'、'thumping great'、'whopping great'。

*He'll either die or become a **raving** lunatic.*
*Nobody must get in here and make a **thundering** nuisance of themselves.*
*...**piddling little** cars like yours.*

强调形容词 'very'
'very' as an emphasizing adjective

2.43 'Very' 通常是**次前置修饰语** (submodifiers)，但有时又可用于强调名词，如在 'the very top' 和 'the very end' 等表达式中。

*...at the **very** end of the shop.*
*...the **very** bottom of the hill.*
*These molecules could have formed in the seas of the earth at the **very** beginning of its history.*

更准确地表述指称对象：后位限定词
Making the reference more precise: postdeterminers

2.44 少数形容词的用法与限定词（见 1.161 至 1.236 节）非常相似，用以更准确地表述指称对象，这些词在名词词组中紧跟限定词之后，但在其他形容词之前，所以叫**后位限定词** (postdeterminers)。

*...the **following** brief description.*
*...**certain** basic human qualities.*
*...improvements in the **last** few years.*
*...**further** technological advance.*
*He wore his **usual** old white coat.*
*...the **only** genuine Russian prince he ever met.*

表述指称对象常常需要准确。假如你说 'Turn left at the tall building'，有人可能会问你指的是哪座高楼。但如果你说 'Turn left at the next tall building'，那么具体指哪座高楼就很清楚了。后位限定词 'next' 在这里明确指出了哪座高楼。

下列形容词是后位限定词：

additional	first	next	past	same
certain	following	only	present	specific
chief	further	opposite	previous	usual
entire	last	other	principal	
existing	main	particular	remaining	

这类后位限定词中有些又可作普通的类别形容词。

*He had children from a **previous** marriage.*
*There are two **main** reasons for this.*

下列是也可用作类别形容词的后位限定词：

additional	further	particular	principal
chief	main	past	remaining
existing	other	previous	specific

表示方位的形容词也用以准确表示指称对象。

*...the **middle** button of her black leather coat.*
*...the **top** 100 British companies.*

下列形容词有时既表示方位也可准确地表示指称对象：

left	lower	middle	back
right	top	end	
upper	bottom	front	

☞ 后位限定词还可与数词连用，参见 2.236 节。

特殊种类的形容词
Special classes of adjectives

2.45 大多数形容词既可作定语也可作表语，但有些形容词只有一种功能，要么作定语，要么作表语。少数形容词总是或几乎总是置于名词前，从不或极少用作系动词的补足语，它们叫**定语形容词** (attributive adjectives)、'atomic' 和 'outdoor' 是定语形容词，因而可以说 'an atomic explosion'，不能说 'The explosion was atomic'；同样可以说 'outdoor pursuits'，不能说 'Their pursuits are outdoor'。

定语形容词
attributive adjectives

2.46 少数**属性形容词** (qualitative adjectives)只能作定语，见 2.24 至 2.28 节。

下列属性形容词总是作定语：

adoring	commanding	knotty	scant
belated	fateful	paltry	searing
chequered	flagrant	punishing	thankless
choked	fleeting	ramshackle	unenviable

☞ 只作定语的形容词多半是**类别形容词** (classifying adjectives)，见 2.29 至 2.32 节。

下列是作定语的类别形容词：

atomic	federal	neighbouring	smokeless
bridal	forensic	north	south
cardiac	indoor	northern	southern
countless	institutional	occasional	subterranean
cubic	introductory	orchestral	supplementary
digital	investigative	outdoor	underlying
east	judicial	phonetic	west
eastern	lone	preconceived	western
eventual	maximum	remedial	woollen
existing	nationwide	reproductive	

2.47 所有的**颜色形容词**（见 2.34 至 2.39 节）可作定语和表语。

强调形容词（见 2.40 至 2.43 节）通常作定语。

表语形容词
predicative adjectives

2.48 有些形容词通常只能作系动词的补足语，不能置于名词之前，它们叫**表语形容词**(predicative adjectives)。例如，可说 'She felt glad'，但一般不说 'a glad woman'。

下列形容词通常作表语：

afraid	asleep	glad	safe	unlikely
alive	aware	ill	sorry	well
alone	content	likely	sure	
apart	due	ready	unable	

注意，这些形容词后并非一定要接介词短语。

2.49 有些形容词后通常跟介词短语，否则意义不明确或不完整。例如，不能只说某人 'accustomed'，必须说他 'accustomed to' 某事。

下列用法提示讨论某个形容词之后跟哪些介词。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.50 少数形容词作表语用时，后跟介词 'to'。

*I was **allergic to** the serum they used.*
*He was **impervious to** fact or logic.*

下列形容词通常或总是作表语用，后跟介词 'to'：

accustomed	close	prone	resistant
adjacent	conducive	proportional	similar
allergic	devoted	proportionate	subject
attributable	impervious	reconciled	subservient
attuned	injurious	related	susceptible
averse	integral	resigned	unaccustomed

2.51 少数形容词作表语用时，后跟介词 'of'。

*He was **aware of** the danger that faced him.*
*They seemed **capable of** winning their first game of the season.*
*He was **devoid of** any talent whatsoever.*
*His mind seemed to have become **incapable of** any thought.*

下列形容词通常或总是作表语用，后跟介词 'of'：

aware	desirous	heedless	mindful
bereft	devoid	illustrative	reminiscent
capable	fond	incapable	representative
characteristic	full	indicative	

2.52 少数形容词作表语用时，后跟介词 'with'。

*His surprise became **tinged with** just the smallest suspicion of disbelief.*
*The plastic has to be **compatible with** the body tissues that make contact with it.*
*This way of life is **fraught with** danger.*

下列形容词通常或总是作表语用，后跟介词 'with'：

compatible	conversant	fraught	tinged
consonant	filled	riddled	

2.53 有些形容词作表语时，后跟其他介词。

*These ideas are **rooted in** self-deception.*
*Didn't you say the raid was **contingent on** the weather?*
*Darwin concluded that people were **descended from** apes.*

下列形容词通常或总是作表语用，后跟下表所示的介词：

contingent on	inherent in	rooted in	swathed in
descended from	lacking in	steeped in	unhampered by

有时，作表语的形容词之后可选择两个介词中的一个。

*Many of their courses are **connected with** industry.*
*Such names were arbitrarily given and were not **connected to** any particular event.*

下列形容词通常或总是作表语用，后跟下表所示的介词：

answerable for	dependent on	incumbent on	parallel to
answerable to	dependent upon	incumbent upon	parallel with
burdened by	immune from	insensible of	reliant on
burdened with	immune to	insensible to	reliant upon
connected to	inclined to	intent on	stricken by
connected with	inclined towards	intent upon	stricken with

2.54 'Different' 通常与介词 'from' 连用，有时也可与 'to' 或 'than' 连用，但有人认为这种用法不对。

*Students today are **different from** the students ten years ago.*

后接 'to' - 不定式小句的形容词
adjectives followed by 'to'-infinitive clauses

2.55 有些作表语用的形容词后接 'to'- 不定式引出的小句后，意义才能完整。例如，不能只说 'He is unable' 而必须加上 'to'- 不定式引出的小句如 'to do'：'He is unable to do it'。 **'To' - 不定式小句** ('to'-infinitive clauses) 在附录**参考部分** R124 至 R130 讨论。

They were ***unable to help her****.*
I am ***willing to try****.*
We are ***liable to find ourselves in a mild state of conflict****.*
I am ***loath to dwell so long on the poor fellow****.*

下列形容词总是或几乎总是后接 'to'-不定式小句：

able	due	inclined	loath	unwilling
bound	fated	liable	prepared	willing
doomed	fit	likely	unable	

2.56 'To'-不定式引出的小句还可置于许多其他形容词之后，用以详述某一种事物。

I was ***afraid to go home****.*
I was ***happy to see them again****.*
He was ***powerless to prevent it****.*
I was almost ***ashamed to tell her****.*
The path was ***easy to follow****.*

注意，主句的主语与 'to'-不定式小句的主语相同。

后接 'that'-从句的形容词
adjectives followed by 'that'-clauses

2.57 表示信念或感情的形容词作表语用时，常常后接 'that'-从句 ('that'-clauses)（见 7.85 至 7.87 节）。由于 'that'-从句的主语与主句的主语并非总是相同，因而需要加以明确。

She was ***sure that*** *he meant it.*
He was ***frightened that*** *something terrible might be said.*
I'm ***aware that*** *I reached a rather large audience through the book.*

注意， 'that' 有时可以省略。

They were ***sure*** *she had been born in the city.*

下列是常接 'that'-从句的形容词：

afraid	careful	happy	sorry	upset
angry	certain	pleased	sure	worried
anxious	frightened	proud	surprised	
aware	glad	sad	unaware	

注意，除 'angry'、'aware'、'unaware'、'upset' 和 'worried' 之外，这些形容词还可后接 'to'-不定式小句。

I was ***afraid that she might not be able to bear the strain****.*
Don't be ***afraid to ask questions****.*

*She was **surprised that I knew about it**.*
*The twins were very **surprised to see Ralph**.*

名词词组中形容词的位置
Position of adjectives in noun groups

2.58 如果名词词组中含一个以上的形容词，这些形容词的一般顺序是：属性形容词之后为颜色形容词，随后再接类别形容词。

*...a **little white wooden** house.*
*...**pretty black lacy** dresses.*
*...a **large circular** pool of water.*
*...a **beautiful pink** suit.*
*...**rapid technological** advance.*
*... a **nice red** apple.*
*...the **black triangular** fin.*

在英语中，形容词几乎总是按照这样的顺序排列。不过若要强调所描述的人或物的特定特征，这种词序间或也可变化，特别是这些形容词中有一个指颜色或大小时。

*...a **square black** hole.*

注意，形容词有时用逗号或 'and' 隔开。参见 8.168 至 8.174 和 8.189 节。

*...the **long, low** caravan.*
*It was a **long and tedious** business.*

2.59 一般情况下，**比较级** (comparatives)，（见 2.108 至 2.116 节）和**最高级** (superlatives)，（见 2.117 至 2.127 节）置于其他形容词之前。

*...**better** parental control.*
*...the **highest** monthly figures on record.*

名词前置修饰语和形容词的位置
position of noun modifiers and adjectives

2.60 如果名词词组中既有形容词又有名词前置修饰语（见 2.174 至 2.179 节），那么，形容词置于名词前置修饰语之前。

*...the booming European **car** industry.*
*...the world's biggest and most prestigious **book** fair.*

两个或两个以上的形容词作补足语 two or more adjectives as complement

2.61 如果两个形容词作系动词的补足语，通常用连词 'and' 连接；如果两个以上的形容词作补足语，通常最后两个形容词用连词连接；其他形容词用逗号隔开。详见 8.168 至 8.174 和 8.189 节。

*The room was **large and square**.*
*We felt **hot, tired, and thirsty**.*

注意，形容词按说话人认为最重要的顺序排列。

名词后的形容词 adjectives after nouns

2.62 少数形容词通常或总是置于名词之后。下列是置于名词之后的几组不同的形容词：

designate	~	~	responsible	suggested
elect	long	concerned	~	
galore	old	involved	affected	
incarnate	tall	present	available	
manqué	wide	proper	required	

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.63 形容词 'designate'、'elect'、'galore'、'incarnate' 和 'manqué' 只能紧接名词。

*She was now president **elect**.*
*There are empty houses **galore**.*

2.64 形容词 'broad'、'deep'、'high'、'long'、'old'、'tall'、'thick' 和 'wide' 紧接表示人或物的大小、期限或年龄的度量衡名词。详见 2.27 节。

*...six feet **tall**.*
*...three metres **wide**.*
*...twenty five years **old**.*

2.65 形容词 'concerned'、'involved'、'present'、'responsible' 和 'proper' 可置于名词之前或紧跟名词之后，但意义不同。例如 'the concerned mother' 描述的是一位焦急的母亲；而 'the mother concerned' 只表示有关的母亲。

*...the approval of interested and **concerned** parents.*
*The idea needs to come from the individuals **concerned**.*
*...one of those incredibly **involved** spy switches.*
*The songs **involved** are 'That'll Be the Day' and 'In Spite of All the Danger'.*
*...the **present** international situation.*
*Of the 18 people **present**, I know only one.*
*...parents trying to act in a **responsible** manner.*

*...the person **responsible** for his death.*
*...a **proper** training in how to teach.*
*...the first round **proper** of the FA Cup.*

2.66 形容词 'affected'、'available'、'required' 和 'suggested' 可置于名词前也可置于名词后，意义不变。

*Newspapers were the only **available** source of information.*
*...the number of teachers **available**.*
*...the **required** changes.*
*You're way below the standard **required**.*
*...the cost of the **suggested** improvements.*
*The proposals **suggested** are derived from successful experiments.*
*Aside from the **affected** child, the doctor checks every other member of the household.*
*...the proportion of the population **affected**.*

特殊形式：'-ing' 形容词
Special forms: '-ing' adjectives

2.67 许多形容词以 '-ing' 结尾，其中大多数在形式上与动词的**现在分词** (present participles) 相同。

本书称其为 '-ing' 形容词。

*He was an amiable, **amusing** fellow.*
*He had been up all night attending a **dying** man.*

以 '-ing' 结尾的形容词有时也叫**分词形容词** (participle adjectives)。现在分词在附录**参考部分** R131 至 R135 讨论。

描述影响
describing an effect

2.68 有一类 '-ing' 形容词可描述事物对某个人或对一般人在感觉和思想上产生的影响。

*...an **alarming** increase in racial hostility.*
*A **surprising** number of men stay bachelors.*
*...a **charming** house on the outskirts of the town.*
*...a warm **welcoming** smile.*

2.69 这些形容词通常是**属性形容词** (qualitative adjectives)，可与次前置修饰语连用，有比较级和最高级。

*...a **very convincing** example.*

*There is nothing **very surprising** in this.*
*...a **very exciting** idea.*
*...a **really pleasing** evening at the theatre.*
*When Bernard moans he's much more **convincing**.*
*...one of the **most boring** books I've ever read.*

2.70 这些形容词既可作定语也可作表语。

*They can still show **amazing** loyalty to their parents.*
*It's **amazing** what they can do.*
*...the most **terrifying** tale ever written.*
*The present situation is **terrifying**.*

2.71 这些 '-ing' 形容词都有相应的及物动词，而这些动词可描述某事物如何对某人产生影响。例如，'an alarming increase' 表示增长令人吃惊，'a surprising number' 表示数目令人吃惊。

下列 '-ing' 形容词表示影响，其意义与相应动词的意义相似：

alarming	compelling	embarrassing	intimidating	shocking
amazing	confusing	enchanting	intriguing	sickening
amusing	convincing	encouraging	menacing	startling
annoying	demeaning	entertaining	misleading	surprising
appalling	depressing	exciting	mocking	tempting
astonishing	devastating	frightening	overwhelming	terrifying
astounding	disappointing	harassing	pleasing	threatening
bewildering	disgusting	humiliating	refreshing	thrilling
boring	distracting	infuriating	relaxing	tiring
challenging	distressing	inspiring	rewarding	welcoming
charming	disturbing	interesting	satisfying	worrying

☞ 及物动词在 3.15 至 3.26 节讨论。

描述过程或状态
describing a process or state

2.72 另一大类 '-ing' 形容词用来描述过程或状态在一段时间内的持续。

*...**dwindling** herds of humpback whales.*
*Oil and gas drillers are doing a **booming** business.*
*...a life of **increasing** labour and **decreasing** leisure.*

2.73 由于这些形容词是类别形容词，因而不与普通次前置修饰语如 'very' 和 'rather' 连用。但表示过程的形容词可有描述过程进展速度的副词作次前置修饰语。

...a ***fast diminishing*** *degree of personal freedom.*
...***rapidly*** *rising productivity.*

2.74 这些 '-ing' 形容词有相应的不及物动词。

下列 '-ing' 形容词描述事物的持续过程或状态，其意义与相应动词的意义相似：

ageing	bursting	existing	recurring	ruling
ailing	decreasing	increasing	reigning	
bleeding	dwindling	living	remaining	
booming	dying	prevailing	resounding	

☞ 不及物动词在 3.9 至 3.14 节讨论。

2.75 这些 '-ing' 形容词一般只能用作定语，因此，如果不及物动词的 '-ing' 形式出现在动词 'be' 之后，实际上就成了进行时的一部分。

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.76 大多数不及物动词的 '-ing' 形式可用作形容词作定语，表示某人或某物正在做什么。

...*a* ***walking*** *figure.*
Let every person be subject to the ***governing*** *authorities.*
He escorted her around the ***bowing*** *and* ***chanting*** *multitude.*
...*two years of* ***falling*** *employment.*
...*a tremendous noise of* ***crashing*** *glass.*

动词的 '-ing' 形式可用作形容词，这是英语的**产出性特征** (productive feature)。**产出性特征**在**前言**中讨论。

形式和意义
form and meaning

2.77 上述 '-ing' 形容词大多由动词转化而来，但是也有些 '-ing' 形容词并非从动词转化而来，例如，英语并没有动词 'to neighbour'。
Whole families came from ***neighouring*** *villages.*

下列形容词并非由动词转化而来：

appetizing	enterprising	neighbouring
balding	excruciating	scathing
cunning	impending	unwitting

2.78 有时，'-ing' 形容词与某个动词的罕见用法有联系，或者虽似与某个动词有联系，但与该动词的常见用法并无联系。例如，动词 'haunt' 常与鬼有联系，但形容词 'haunting' 则常用来指歌曲和记忆等等。在心头萦绕的曲调就表示这曲调难以忘怀。

下列表示属性的 '-ing' 形容词与相应动词的常见及物意义无联系：

becoming	engaging	penetrating	ravishing	trying
bracing	fetching	piercing	retiring	
cutting	halting	pressing	revolting	
dashing	haunting	promising	searching	
disarming	moving	rambling	taxing	

下列表示类别的 '-ing' 形容词与相应动词的常见不及物意义无联系：

acting	floating	going	missing
driving	gathering	leading	running

2.79 有些形容词由动词加前缀转化而来。例如，'outgoing' 由动词 'go' 加前缀 'out-' 转化而来。动词 'to outgo' 并不存在。

*Wouldn't that cause a delay in **outgoing** mail?*

下列是由动词加前缀转化来的 '-ing' 形容词：

forthcoming	ongoing	overbearing
incoming	outgoing	uplifting
oncoming	outstanding	upstanding

2.80 在非正式口语体中，少数 '-ing' 形容词可用于强调，通常表示异议。参见 2.41 至 2.42 节。有些复合形容词（见 2.98 至 2.107 节）以 '-ing' 结尾。

特殊形式：'-ed' 形容词
Special forms: '-ed' adjectives

2.81 许多英语形容词以 '-ed' 结尾。其中不少与动词的**过去分词**（past participles）形式相同；另有一些在名词后加 '-ed' 构成；还有一些与其他任何词无密切联系。

*...a **disappointed** man.*
*...a **bearded** man.*
*...**sophisticated** electronic devices.*

2.82 与**不规则过去分词** (irregular past participles)（见附录**参考部分** R75）形式相同的形容词本书也归入 '-ed' 形容词。

*Was it a **broken** bone, a **torn** ligament, or what?*

有些**短语动词**（见 3.84 至 3.117 节）的过去分词也可作形容词用。用作定语时，短语动词的两个部分通常用连字号连接。

*...the **built-up** urban mass of the city.*

2.83 大多数 '-ed' 形容词由及物动词转化而来，而且具有被动意义，它们表示所谈及的人或物经历过或正在经历某种情况。例如，'a frightened person' 指被惊吓的人。'A known criminal' 指已被警察发现的罪犯。

*There are least one or two **satisfied** customers.*
*We cannot refuse to teach children the **required** subjects.*
*Our victory is **assured**; nothing can stop us.*

属性 '-ed' 形容词
qualitative '-ed' adjectives

2.84 表示人们精神或情感上对某事所作出的反应的 '-ed' 形容词通常为属性形容词。

*He was a **worried** old man.*
*...a **bored** old woman.*
*...an **interested** student.*

与其他属性形容词（见 2.145 至 2.161 节）一样，这些形容词可用 'very' 和 'extremely' 等词作次前置修饰语。

形式和意义
form and meaning

2.85 与其他表示感情的形容词一样，这些形容词不直接谈某人如何，而常用来描述受影响的人的表情、声音或举止。

*...her big blue **frightened** eyes.*
*She could hear his **agitated** voice.*
*...his lazy walk and **bored** air.*

2.86 下列 '-ed' 属性形容词的意义与相应动词的最常用意义相似：

agitated	confused	disgusted	inhibited	shocked
alarmed	contented	disillusioned	interested	surprised
amused	delighted	distressed	pleased	tired
appalled	depressed	embarrassed	preoccupied	troubled
astonished	deprived	excited	puzzled	worried
bored	disappointed	frightened	satisfied	

下列 '-ed' 属性形容词的意义与相应动词的常用意义不同：

animated	determined	guarded	mixed
attached	disposed	hurt	strained
concerned	disturbed	inclined	

'-ed' 类别形容词 classifying '-ed' adjectives

2.87 其他许多 '-ed' 形容词是类别形容词，因而不可分级。例如 'a furnished apartment' 指与 'an apartment without furniture' 相对的那种公寓套房。

*...a **furnished** apartment.*
*...a **painted** wooden bowl.*
*...the **closed** bedroom door.*

大多数表示有形特征的形容词是类别形容词。

2.88 下列 '-ed' 类别形容词的意义与相应动词的最常见意义相似：

abandoned	closed	established	integrated	reduced
armed	concentrated	fixed	known	trained
blocked	condemned	furnished	licensed	united
boiled	cooked	haunted	loaded	wasted
broken	divided	hidden	paid	
canned	drawn	improved	painted	
classified	dried	infected	processed	

下列 '-ed' 类别形容词的意义与相应动词的最常用意义不同：

advanced	noted	spotted
marked	pointed	veiled

前置修饰性 '-ed' 形容词 modifying '-ed' adjectives

2.89 '-ed' 类别形容词不能被普通次前置修饰语 'quite'、'very' 等修饰。但**方式副词** (adverbs of manner)，(见 6.36 至 6.44 节) 或**程度副词** (adverbs of degree)，(见 6.45 至 6.52 节) 常与 '-ed' 形容词连用。例如 'a pleasantly furnished room' 指备有家具，令人悦目的房间。

*...pleasantly **furnished** rooms.*
*...a **well-known** novelist.*

2.90 有些 '-ed' 形容词单独使用时毫无意义，因而需与副词连用。通常都不说 'dressed people'，因为人一般都穿衣服、但可以说 'well dressed' 或 'smartly dressed'。在下列例句中，'-ed' 形容词前面几乎总是有副词。

*...a **cautiously worded** statement.*
*...**impeccably dressed** men.*
*...**strongly motivated** students.*
*It was a **richly deserved** honour.*
*...**superbly cut** clothes.*
*...the existence of a **highly developed** national press.*
*...a large and **well equipped** army.*
*...a tall, **powerfully built** man.*
*...**perfectly formed** people.*

注意，这类表达式有时可用连字号连接构成**复合形容词**(compound adjectives)。

*...a **well-equipped** army.*

具有主动意义的 '-ed' 形容词
'-ed' adjectives with an active meaning

2.91 少数 '-ed' 形容词由不及物动词的过去分词转化而来。这些形容词具有主动意义，无被动意义。例如，'a fallen tree' 指倒下的树。

*Here and there a **fallen** tree-trunk spans the narrow gorge.*
*She is the daughter of a **retired** army officer.*
*...an **escaped** prisoner.*

下列是具有主动意义的 '-ed' 形容词：

accumulated	escaped	fallen	swollen
dated	faded	retired	wilted

系动词后的 '-ed' 形容词
'-ed' adjectives after link verbs

2.92 大多数 '-ed' 形容词既可置于名词之前也可作系动词的补足语。

*The **worried** authorities decided to play safe.*
*My husband was **worried**.*

少数 '-ed' 形容词通常只作系动词的补足语。它们常带介词短语、'to'-不定式小句或 'that'- 从句。

*I was **thrilled** by the exhibition.*
*The Brazilians are **pleased** with the results.*
*...food **destined** for areas of south Sudan.*
*He was always **prepared** to account for his actions.*

下列 '-ed' 形容词常作系动词的补足语，随后可接也可不接短语或从句：

convinced	intimidated	pleased	tired
delighted	intrigued	scared	touched
interested	involved	thrilled	

下列 '-ed' 形容词通常作系动词的补足语，后接短语或从句：

agreed	dressed	lost	shut
destined	finished	prepared	stuck

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.93 几乎所有及物动词的过去分词都可作形容词，尽管有些更常用一些。这是英语的**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**中讨论。

*...she said, with a **forced** smile.*
*There was one **paid** tutor and three volunteer tutors.*
*The **recovered** animals will be released.*
*...the final **corrected** version.*

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.94 有些 '-ed' 形容词由名词转化而来。例如，可用 'winged' 描述有翅膀的动物，用 'skilled' 描述有技巧的人。这是英语的**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**中讨论。

*...figures of **winged** creatures.*
*...a **skilled** engineer.*
*She was dressed in black and carried a black **beaded** purse.*
*...**armoured** cars.*
*...the education of **gifted** children.*

由名词转化而来的 '-ed' 形容词
'-ed' adjectives formed from nouns

2.95 下列是由名词转化而来的 '-ed' 形容词：

armoured	flowered	hooded	salaried	turbaned
barbed	freckled	mannered	skilled	walled
beaded	gifted	pointed	spotted	winged
bearded	gloved	principled	striped	

由名词转化来的 '-ed' 形容词通常作**复合形容词**（见 2.98 至 2.107 节）的第二个成份，如 'grey-haired' 和 'open-minded'，因为人们常常想描述某人或某物具有的特征。

非由动词也非由名词转化的 '-ed' 形容词
'-ed' adjectives unrelated to verbs or nouns

2.96 有些常用 '-ed' 形容词不像前面描述的那样由动词或名词转化而来。例如，英语就没有 'parch' 或 'belove' 这两个词。虽然有名词 'concert'，但形容词 'concerted' 的意思并不是 'having a concert'。

*He climbed up the dry **parched** grass to the terrace steps.*
*...a rocking horse for a **beloved** child.*
*...attempts to mount a **concerted** campaign.*
*...the purchase of expensive **sophisticated** equipment.*

2.97 下列 '-ed' 形容词并非由动词或名词转化而来：

antiquated	beloved	crazed	indebted	sophisticated
ashamed	bloated	deceased	parched	tinned
assorted	concerted	doomed	rugged	

复合形容词
Compound adjectives

2.98 **复合形容词** (compound adjectives) 由两个或两个以上的单词组成，通常用连字号连接。它们可能是属性形容词、类别形容词，也可能是颜色形容词。

I was in a ***light-hearted*** *mood.*
Olivia was driving a long, ***low-slung, bottle-green*** *car.*
...the ***built-up*** *urban mass of the city.*
...an ***air-conditioned*** *restaurant.*
...a ***good-looking*** *girl.*
... ***one-way*** *traffic.*
...a ***part-time*** *job.*

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.99 复合形容词的构成表现了英语的**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**讨论。

构词形式
formation patterns

2.100 下列构成复合形容词的形式最为常见，所受限制也最少：

- 形容词或数词＋名词＋ '-ed'：如 'grey-haired' 和 'one-sided'。
- 形容词或副词＋过去分词，如 'low-paid' 和 'well-behaved'。
- 形容词、副词或名词＋现在分词，如 'good-looking'、'long-lasting' 和 'man-eating'。

2.101 下列构成复合形容词的形式既不多见，所受限制也较多：

- 名词＋过去分词，如 'tongue-tied' 和 'wind-blown'。
- 名词＋形容词，如 'accident-prone' 和 'trouble-free'。
- 形容词＋名词，如 'deep-sea' 和 'present-day'。
- 过去分词＋副词，如 'run-down' 和 'cast-off'。
- 数词＋单数具数名词，如 'five-page' 和 'four-door'。

注意，由最后一种形式构成的复合形容词总是作定语。

复合属性形容词 compound qualitative adjectives

2.102 下列是复合属性形容词：

absent-minded	light-hearted	second-class	tongue-tied
accident-prone	long-lasting	second-rate	top-heavy
big-headed	long-standing	shop-soiled	trouble-free
clear-cut	long-suffering	short-handed	two-edged
close-fitting	low-cut	short-lived	two-faced
cold-blooded	low-paid	short-sighted	warm-hearted
easy-going	low-slung	short-tempered	well-balanced
far-fetched	mouth-watering	slow-witted	well-behaved
far-reaching	muddle-headed	smooth-talking	well-dressed
good-looking	narrow-minded	soft-hearted	well-known
good-tempered	nice-looking	starry-eyed	well-off
hard-up	off-hand	strong-minded	wind-blown
hard-wearing	off-putting	stuck-up	worldly-wise
ill-advised	old-fashioned	sun-tanned	wrong-headed
kind-hearted	one-sided	swollen-headed	
labour saving	open-minded	tender-hearted	
laid-back	run-down	thick-skinned	

复合类别形容词 compound classifying adjectives

2.103 下列是复合类别形容词：

air-conditioned	duty-free	late-night	purpose-built
all-out	empty-handed	lead-free	ready-made
all-powerful	face-saving	left-handed	record-breaking
audio-visual	far-flung	life-size	red-brick
blue-blooded	first-class	long-distance	remote-controlled
bow-legged	free-range	long-lost	right-angled
brand-new	free-standing	long-range	right-handed
breast-fed	freeze-dried	loose-leaf	second-class
broken-down	front-page	made-up	second-hand
broken-hearted	full-blown	man-eating	see-through
built-up	full-face	mass-produced	silver-plated
bullet-proof	full-grown	middle-aged	single-handed
burnt-out	full-length	never-ending	so-called
cast-off	full-scale	north-east	so-so
clean-shaven	gilt-edged	north-west	south-east
cross-Channel	grey-haired	nuclear-free	south-west
cross-country	half-price	odds-on	strong-arm
cut-price	half-yearly	off-guard	tax-free
deep-sea	hand-picked	off-peak	tone-deaf
deep-seated	high-heeled	one-way	top-secret
double-barrelled	home-made	open-ended	unheard-of
double-breasted	ice-cold	open-mouthed	wide-awake
drip-dry	interest-free	panic-stricken	world-famous
drive-in	knee-deep	part-time	worn-out
duty-bound	last-minute	present-day	year-long

复合颜色形容词
compound colour adjectives

2.104 下列是复合颜色形容词：

blood-red	flesh-coloured	nut-brown	shocking-pink
blue-black	ice-blue	off-white	sky-blue
bottle-green	iron-grey	pea-green	snow-white
dove-grey	jet-black	pearl-grey	
electric-blue	lime-green	royal-blue	

长复合形容词
long compound adjectives

2.105 少数复合形容词由两个以上的单词组成。由三个或三个以上单词构成的复合词置于名词之前时，常用连字号连接；它们作系动词的补足语时则不用连字号。

*...the **day-to-day** chores of life.*
*...a **down-to-earth** approach.*
*...a **free-and-easy** relationship.*
*...**life-and-death** decisions.*
*...a trip to an **out-of-the-way** resort.*
*Their act is **out of date**.*

2.106 有些复合形容词似乎相当奇特，因为构成它们的词从不单独使用。例如 'namby-pamby'、'higgledy-piggledy' 和 'topsy-turvy'。这类词通常不太正式。

*...all that **arty-crafty** spiritualism.*
*...his **la-di-da** family.*

外来复合形容词
foreign compound adjectives

2.107 有些英语复合形容词是外来词，特别是来自法语和拉丁语。

*...the arguments once used to defend **laissez-faire** economics.*
*...their present **per capita** fuel consumption.*
*In the commercial theatre, almost every production is **ad hoc**.*

下列是外来复合形容词：

à la mode	compos mentis	hors de combat
a posteriori	cordon bleu	infra dig
a priori	de facto	laissez-faire
ad hoc	de jure	non compos mentis
ad lib	de luxe	per capita
au fait	de rigueur	prima facie
avant-garde	de trop	pro rata
bona fide	ex gratia	sub judice

比较事物：比较级
Comparing things: comparatives

2.108 描述事物时，可用比较级形容词说明某事物比另一件事物更具某种属性。通常只有属性形容词有比较级，但少数颜色形容词也有比较级形式。比较级一般是由形容词加词尾 '-er' 或前面加 'more' 构成的，如 'harder'、'smaller'、'more interesting' 和 'more flexible'。

注意，'good' 和 'bad' 的比较级形式不规则，分别是 'better' 和 'worse'。

构成规则和不规则形容词比较级的形式在附录**参考部分** R20 至 R31 讨论。

作前置修饰语
as modifiers

2.109 比较级作名词的**前置修饰语** (modifiers)。

*Their demands for a **bigger** West German defence budget were refused.*
*To the **brighter, more advanced** child, they will be challenging.*
*A **harder** mattress often helps with back injuries.*

注意，比较级也可作 'one' 的前置修饰语。

*An understanding of this reality provokes a **better** one.*

作补足语
as complements

2.110 比较级还可置于系动词之后作**补足语** (complements)。

*The ball soaked up water and became **heavier**.*
*His breath became **quieter**.*
*We need to be **more flexible**.*

☞ 形容词作系动词补足语的用法在 3.133 至 3.138 节讨论。

比较级后的后置修饰语
qualifiers after comparatives

2.111 如果要明确交代比较中的另一件事物，常可在比较级后接 'than'。'Than' 后有几种结构，从中选择一种，便可准确表示比较什么。

这些结构是：

• 名词词组：

*Charile was **more honest than his predecessor**.*
*...an area **bigger than Great Britain**.*

注意，如果 'than' 后跟单独使用的代词，则必须用宾语代词 'me'、'him' 或 'her' 等等。

*My brother is **younger than me**.*
*Lamin was **shorter than her**.*

• 附加状语

*The changes will be even **more striking** in the case of teaching than **in medicine**.*
*Last year, terrorist activities were **worse than in any of the previous twelve years**.*

• 分句

*I would have done a **better** job **than he did**.*
*I was a **better** writer **than he was**.*
*He's taller **than I am**.*

注意，如果比较级后未跟 'than' 短语，那么比较的另一件事物应该显而易见。例如，若某人说 'Could I have a bigger one, please?'，很可能说此话时手里拿着自认为太小的东西。

*A mattress would be **better**.*

比较级的位置
position of comparatives

2.112 比较级作前置修饰语时，如果再用 'than' 引出后置修饰短语或从句，这些短语或从句应放在整个名词词组之后，而不是紧接比较级形容词。

*Kairi was a **more satisfactory** pet **than Tuku had been**.*
*Willy owned a **larger** collection of books **than anyone else I have ever met**.*

只有紧接 'than' 和名词短语时，比较级才可直接置于名词之后。

*We've got a rat **bigger than** a cat living in our roof.*
*...packs of cards **larger than** he was used to.*

'more' 和 'more than'
'more' and 'more than'

2.113 'More' 有时可置于整个名词词组前，表示一件事物比另一件事物更具某种属性或表示一件事物是甲事物而不是乙事物。

*Music is **more** a way of life **than** an interest.*
*This is **more** a war movie **than** a western.*

注意，'more than' 可置于形容词前，作加强语气的程度副词。

*Their life may be horribly dull, but they are **more than satisfied**.*
*You would be **more than welcome**.*

比较级作中心词
comparatives as headwords

2.114 在比较正式的英语中，比较级形容词有时可作中心词。比较级形容词作中心词时，前面加 'the'，后跟 'of' 加表示比较两件事物的名词词组。

*...**the shorter of the two lines**.*

Dorothea was ***the more beautiful of the two****.*
There are two windmills, ***the larger of which*** *stands a hundred feet high.*

如果所述明确，'of' 和后面的名词词组可以省略。

Notice to quit must cover the rental period or four weeks, whichever is ***the longer****.*

'less'

2.115 如果表示一件事物所具有的属性比另一件事物少，可用 'less'，后跟形容词。

The answer had been ***less truthful*** *than his own.*

'Less' 后跟形容词也可表示事物所具有的属性比以往少。

As the days went by, Sita became ***less anxious****.*

注意，'less than' 置于形容词前时，表示加强语气的否定。

It would have been ***less than fair****.*

对照性比较级 contrasted comparatives

2.116 进行对照时，比较级前加 'the' 可表示一种属性的大小或事物的数量与另一种属性或另一件事物有关。

The earlier *you detect a problem,* ***the easier*** *it is to cure.*
The more militant *we became,* ***the less confident*** *she became.*
The larger *the organization,* ***the less scope*** *there is for decision.*

比较事物：最高级
Comparing things: superlatives

2.117 另一种描述事物的办法是用**最高级形容词** (superlative adjectives) 表示一件事物在同类事物中最具某种属性。通常只有属性形容词有最高级形式，但少数颜色形容词也有。一般情况下，由形容词加词尾 '-est' 或词前加 'the most' 构成最高级形容词，如 'the hardest'、'the smallest'、'the most interesting' 和 'the most flexible'。

注意，'good' 和 'bad' 的最高级形式不规则，它们分别是 'the best' 和 'the worst'。

构成规则和不规则形容词最高级的形式在附录**参考部分** R20 至 R31 讨论。

注意，最高级形容词前几乎总是用 'the'，因为所述事物是确定的。当最高级作**补足语** (complements) 时，'the' 间或也可省略，见 2.122 节。

⚠注意 Warning

2.118 'Most' 与形容词连用时并非总是最高级，它还可作次**前置修饰语** (submodifiers)，表示 'very' 的意思。

*This book was **most interesting**.*
*My grandfather was a **most extraordinary** man.*

☞ 次前置修饰语在 2.145 至 2.161 节讨论。

作前置修饰语 used as modifiers

2.119 最高级可作名词的前置修饰语。

*He was **the cleverest man** I ever knew.*
*It was **the most exciting** summer of their lives.*
*She came out of **the thickest** part of the crowd.*
*Now we come to **the most important** thing.*
*...**the oldest** rock paintings in North America.*
*...**the most eminent** scientists in Britain.*

注意，最高级也可作 'one' 的前置修饰语。

*No one ever used **the smallest** one.*

作补足语 used as complements

2.120 最高级还可置于**系动词**之后作**补足语** (complements)。

*He was **the youngest**.*
*The sergeant was **the tallest**.*

☞ 形容词作系动词补足语的用法在 3.133 至 3.138 节讨论。

后置修饰结构 qualifying structures

2.121 如果用于比较的事物很清楚，最高级可单独使用。例如，在 'The sergeant was the tallest' 中，用于比较的显然是已经指明的一群士兵。

如果要指出比较的范围，可用下列后置修饰短语或从句：

- 通常由 'in' 或 'of' 引出的介词短语

*Henry was **the biggest of them**.*
*The third requirement is **the most important of all**.*
*These cakes are probably **the best in the world**.*

注意，如果最高级作名词的前置修饰语，介词短语则置于名词之后。

*...**the best** bargain for his money.*
*I'm in **the worst** business in the world.*

- 关系从句

***The best** I'm likely to get.*

*The visiting room was **the worst** I had seen.*

注意，如果最高级作名词的前置修饰语，关系从句置于名词之后。

*...**the most dangerous** man in the country.*
*He and Nell had **the most expensive** dinner of their lives.*
*That's **the most convincing** answer that you've given me.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.122 'The' 通常置于最高级前，偶尔也可以省去，在非正式口语或书面语中尤其如此。

*Wool and cotton blankets are generally **cheapest**.*
*It can be used by whoever is **closest**.*

但是，如果最高级后跟 'of' 或另一个表示对哪一类事物进行比较的结构时，'the' 不能省去。例如，可以说 'Amanda was the youngest of our group'、'Amanda was the youngest' 或 'Amanda was youngest'，但不能说 'Amanda was youngest of our group'。

有时名词的领属格形式或物主限定词可代替 'the' 用于最高级前。名词的领属格常用来代替介词短语。例如 'Britain's oldest man' 可代替 'the oldest man in Britain'。

*...**the school's most famous** headmaster.*
*...**my newest** assistant.*

☞ 名词的领属格在 2.180 至 2.192 节讨论。
☞ 物主限定词在 1.192 至 1.207 节讲解。

与其他形容词连用 used with other adjectives

2.123 有时，最高级可与另一个以 '-able' 或 '-ible' 结尾的形容词连用，该形容词既可置于最高级和名词词组之间，也可置于名词词组之后。

*...**the narrowest imaginable** range of interests.*
*...**the most beautiful** scenery **imaginable**.*
*...**the longest possible** gap.*
*'Who invited you?' said Etta, in **the pleasantest** manner **possible**.*

最高级作中心词 superlatives as headwords

2.124 在较为正式的英语中，最高级有时可作中心词。最高级作中心词时，前面加 'the'，后跟 'of' 加表示比较对象的名词词组。作中心词的最高级可指一件事也可指多件事。

*They are often too poor to buy or rent even **the cheapest** of houses.*
*He made several important discoveries. **The most interesting** of these came from an examination of an old manuscript.*

如果所述清楚，'of' 及其后面的名词词组可以省去。

There are three types of ant-eater. ***The smallest*** *lives entirely in trees.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

2.125 在非正式口语中比较两件事情，人们常常用最高级替代比较级。例如，比较火车和汽车时，有人可能会说 'The train is quickest' 而不是 'The train is quicker'。但有人认为最高级最好用于比较两件以上的事。

与序数词连用
used with ordinal numbers

2.126 序数词 (ordinal numbers) 与最高级连用可表示某事物比同类中几乎所有的事物更具某种属性。例如，如果说一座山是 'the second highest mountain'，那么这座山是除最高一座山之外比其余山都高的山。

...Mobil, ***the second biggest*** *industrial company in the United States.*
...Stonehenge, ***the second most popular*** *tourist attraction in Britain.*
It is ***Japan's third largest*** *city.*

☞ 序数词在 2.249 至 2.256 节讲解。

'the least'

2.127 'The least' 与形容词连用可表示某事物所具属性少于其他所有事物。

This is ***the least popular*** *branch of medicine.*

同样，'the least' 可表示一类事物所具有的属性少于同类中的其他事物。

*...****the least savage*** *men in the country.*

比较事物的其他方法：表示事物相同
Other ways of comparing things: saying that things are similar

2.128 描述事物的另一种方法是表示一件事与另一件事在某些方面相同。

表示事物具有相同的属性
indicating things with the same quality

2.129 如果表示一个人或一件事物与另一个人或另一件事物具有相同的属性，可用 'as' 加属性形容词结构。通常该属性形容词又后接也由 'as' 引出的后置修饰短语或从句。后置修饰短语可以是：

- 介词 'as' 引出的介词短语

You're just ***as bad as your sister****.*
...huge ponds ***as big as tennis courts****.*
Takings were ***as high as ever****.*

• 连词 'as' 引出的从句

Conversation was not ***as slow as I feared it would be****.*
The village gardens aren't ***as good as they used to be****.*

2.130 如果这种比较结构后接由 'as' 和单个代词组成的介词短语，该代词必须以相应宾格形式出现，如 'me'、'him' 或 'her'。但是，如果这种比较结构后接连词 'as' 引出的从句，并且代词作从句的主语，那么这个代词须用主格形式，如 'I'、'he' 或 'she'。

Jane was not as clever as ***him****.*
They aren't as clever as ***they appear to be****.*

2.131 如果人或物所比较的对象清楚，后置修饰语和从句可以省略。

A megaphone would be ***as good****.*

2.132 'As...as...' 结构还可用来表示一件事物所具有的属性比另一件事物多得多或少得多，表达这种意义时可在第一个 'as' 前加 'twice'、'three times'、'ten times' 或 'half' 一类表达式。例如，若一座建筑物高10米而另一座建筑物高20米，那么可说第二座建筑物 'twice as high as' 第一座建筑物或者第一座建筑物 'half as high as' 第二座建筑物。

The grass was ***twice as tall as in the rest of the field****.*
Water is ***eight hundred times as dense as air****.*

这种结构还常用来表示难以量度的属性。例如，若表示一件事物比另一件事物有用得多，可说第一件事 'a hundred times as useful as' 第二件事。

Without this rearing our children would be ***ten times as hard as it is****.*

2.133 若 'as...as...' 结构前加 'not'，其意义与 'less...than' 相同。例如，'I am not as tall as George' 等于 'I am less tall than George'。也有人用 'not so...as...' 代替 'not as...as...'。

No 14 Sumatra Road was ***not as pretty as Walnut Cottage****.*
The young otter is ***not so handsome as the old****.*

2.134 次前置修饰语 'just'、'quite'、'nearly' 和 'almost' 等可置于这类比较结构之前，以其常用意义修饰比较级。

Sunburn can be ***just as severe as a heat burn****.*

☞ 次前置修饰语在比较级中的用法在 2.162 至 2.173 节讨论。

2.135 使用 'as...as...' 结构时，有时可在形容词和后置修饰短语或从句间加名词词组，该名词词组必须由 'a' 或 'an' 引出。例如，可用 'This is as good a knife as that one' 代替 'This knife is as good as that one'。

I'm ***as good a cook as*** *she is.*
This was not ***as bad a result as*** *they expected.*

除了在该结构前加 'not' 之外，有时可用 'not such' ＋ 'a' 或 'an' ＋形容词＋名词＋ 'as'。

Water is ***not such a good conductor as*** *metal.*

2.136 除了使用 'as...as...' 结构外，还可用 'the height of' 和 'the size of' 一类表达式表示一件事物与另一件事物大小相同、大于或小于另一件事物。

For a week my hand was ***the size of*** *a boxing glove.*
It is roughly ***the length of*** *a man's arm.*

'like'

2.137 如果一件事物与另一件事物具有相似属性或特征，可说甲事物 'like' 乙事物，代替 'as...as...' 结构。表达这个含义时，'like' 引出的介词短语可置于**系动词** (link verbs) 之后。

He looked ***like*** *an actor.*
That sounds ***like*** *an exaggeration.*
The whole thing is ***like*** *a bad dream.*

这种结构的意义与一般补足语结构（见 3.139 至 3.148 节）的意义接近。比较上面最后一个例句与 'the whole thing is a bad dream'，可以看出 'a bad dream' 作系动词补足语时，陈述更为肯定。

下列是与 'like' 连用的系动词：

be	look	smell	taste
feel	seem	sound	

如果表示一件事物与另一件事物相像，'like' 引出的介词短语可置于系动词之后。

It was ***like a dream****.*
He still feels ***like a child****.*
He looked ***like a nice man****.*
The houses seemed ***like mansions****.*
You smell ***like a wild animal****.*
It sounded ***like a fine idea****.*

2.138 'Like' 的比较级是 'more like' 和 'less like'，最高级是 'most like' 和 'least like'。

*It made her seem **less like** another of Theodore's possessions.*
*Of all his children, she was the one **most like** me.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.139 'Like' 前可用次前置修饰语。

*He looks **just like** a baby.*
*She looked like a queen, **just exactly like** a queen.*

此用法在 2.170 节详细讲解。

'same as'

2.140 如果一件事物与另一件事物完全相同，可说一件事物 'the same as' 另一件事物。

*The output signal will be **the same as** the input signal.*

'The same as' 可后接名词词组、代词、附加状语或从句。

*24 Spring Terrace was **the same as** all its neighbours.*
*Her colouring was **the same as** mine.*
*The furnishings are not exactly **the same as** when Morris lived there.*

如果两个或两个以上的事物完全相同，可说它们 'the same'。

*Come and look! They're exactly **the same**.*
*They both taste **the same**.*

如果将人或物与刚提到过的人或物相比，也可用 'the same'。

*It looks like a calculator and weighs about **the same**.*
*The message was **the same**.*
*The end result is **the same**.*

注意，'the opposite'、'the converse' 和 'the reverse' 也可以这样用。

*The kind of religious thoughts I had were just **the opposite**.*
*This was true though **the converse** was not true.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.141 有些次前置修饰语可用于 'the same as'、'the same' 之前。

*They are **virtually the same as** other single cells.*
*You two look **exactly the same**.*

下列次前置修饰语可与 'the same as' 和 'the same' 连用：

exactly	more or less	nearly
just	much	virtually

☞ 次前置修饰语在 2.145 至 2.173 节讨论。

2.142 'The same' 可与 'size'、'length' 或 'colour' 等名词连用。例如，若表示两条街道一样长，可说街道甲 'the same length as' 街道乙，或说两条街道 'the same length'。

*Its brain was about **the same size** as that of a gorilla.*
*They were almost **the same height**.*

与 'the same' 含义相同的形容词
adjectives meaning 'the same'

2.143 形容词 'alike'、'comparable'、'equivalent'、'identical' 和 'similar' 也可表示两件或两件以上的事物相同或相像。除 'alike' 之外，其他几个形容词都可带介词 'to'，指出比较的另一件事物。

*They all looked **alike**.*
*The houses were all **identical**.*
*Flemish is **similar to** Afrikaans.*

比较级中的次前置修饰语
submodifiers used in comparisons

2.144 如果比较属性的不同程度，可用 'comparatively'、'relatively' 和 'equally' 等次前置修饰语。

*Psychology's **a comparatively new** subject.*
*The costs remained **relatively low**.*
*Her technique was less dramatic than Ann's, but **equally effective**.*
*He was **extra polite** to his superiors.*

表示属性的不同程度：次前置修饰语
Indicating different amounts of a quality: submodifiers

2.145 如果要更详细地表示形容词所描述的属性，可用 'very' 和 'rather' 等**次前置修饰语** (submodifiers) 修饰。这样做是为了表示或强调属性大小程度。许多次前置修饰语是**程度副词** (adverbs of degree)。参见 6.45 至 6.52 节。

次前置修饰形容词
submodifying adjectives

2.146 由于属性形容词可分级，可表示属性的不同程度，因而，较之其他类别的形容词更易与次前置修饰语连用。

*...an **extremely narrow** road.*

...a ***highly successful*** *company.*
...in a ***slightly different*** *way.*
I was ***extraordinarily happy.***
...helping them in a ***strongly supportive*** *way.*
...a ***very pretty*** *girl.*
She seems ***very pleasant.***
...a ***rather clumsy*** *person.*
His hair was ***rather long.***

2.147 虽然属性形容词被次前置修饰语修饰最常见，类别形容词（见 2.151 至 2.153 节）和颜色形容词（见 2.35 节）也可与次前置修饰语连用。

注意，与其他属性形容词一样，大多数 '-ed' 形容词可被 'very'、'extremely' 等词作为次前置修饰语修饰。

...a ***very frightened*** *little girl.*
...an ***extremely disappointed*** *young man.*

加强属性形容词 intensifying qualitative adjectives

2.148 许多次前置修饰语与属性形容词连用可加强其意义。

*...**extremely high** temperatures.*
Geoffrey was a ***deeply religious*** *man.*
France is ***heavily dependent*** *on foreign trade.*

下列次前置修饰语可用于加强形容词的意义：

amazingly	exceedingly	incredibly	suspiciously
awfully	extraordinarily	infinitely	terribly
bitterly	extremely	notably	unbelievably
critically	fantastically	particularly	very
dangerously	greatly	radically	violently
deeply	heavily	really	vitally
delightfully	highly	remarkably	wildly
disturbingly	hopelessly	seriously	wonderfully
dreadfully	horribly	strikingly	
eminently	hugely	supremely	
especially	impossibly	surprisingly	

注意，若要特别加强语气，可用 'very' 作最高级的次前置修饰语。参见 2.172 至 2.173 节。

另外，'most' 作形容词的前置修饰语时并非一定是最高级，它还可作次前置修饰语表示 'very' 的意思。

This book was ***most interesting.***
My grandfather was a ***most extraordinary*** *man.*

2.149 许多这类次前置修饰语不但能强调形容词的意义，而且又能使说话人表达自己的看法。例如，'surprisingly large'，既可强调某物体'large'，又可表示说话人对其巨大感到吃惊。

*He has **amazingly long** eyelashes.*
*...a **delightfully refreshing** taste.*
*The cabin was **extraordinarily quiet**.*
*...a **horribly uncomfortable** chair.*
*...**incredibly boring** documents.*

但是，少数次前置修饰语只能用于加强形容词的意义。

*They're **awfully brave**.*
*The other girls were **dreadfully dull** companions.*

下列次前置修饰语只用于加强形容词的意义：

awfully	extremely	horribly	very
dreadfully	greatly	really	
especially	highly	terribly	

注意，'awfully'、'dreadfully'、'horribly' 和 'terribly' 用于非正式语言；'highly' 用于特别正式的语言。'So' 一般只能用于系动词之后。

*I am **so sorry**.*

弱化属性形容词 reducing qualitative adjectives

2.150 有些次前置修饰语可减弱属性形容词的作用。

*It was **faintly funny**.*
*It's a **fairly common** feeling.*
*...**moderately rich** people.*
*...his **rather large** stomach.*
*My last question is **somewhat personal**.*

下列次前置修饰语用于减化形容词的作用：

faintly	moderately	rather	so
fairly	pretty	reasonably	somewhat
mildly	quite	slightly	

注意，'quite' 和 'rather' 既可作次前置修饰语减弱形容词的作用，又可作前位限定词 (predeterminers)，参见 1.236 节。

注意，'quite' 通常只与系动词后的形容词连用。

*She was **quite tall**.*

表示程度
indicating extent

2.151 有些次前置修饰语可表示所述属性的程度。

下列次前置修饰语表示属性的程度：

almost	nearly	absolutely	quite
exclusively	partly	altogether	simply
fully	predominantly	completely	totally
largely	primarily	entirely	utterly
mainly	roughly	perfectly	
mostly	~	purely	

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

2.152 上表中的第一类词几乎总是表示程度，它们常与类别形容词连用。

*It was an **almost** automatic reflex.*
*... described in **exclusively** human terms.*
*Kashmir is a **largely** muslim region.*
*The wolf is now **nearly** extinct.*
*The reasons for this were **partly** economic and practical, and **partly** political and social.*

'Almost' 和 'nearly' 还可与属性形容词连用。

*The club was **almost empty**.*
*It was **nearly dark**.*

注意，'roughly' 可表示一件事物与另一件事物几乎或近乎相同。

*West Germany, Japan and Sweden are at **roughly similar** levels of economic development.*

注意，'half' 有时也有类似用语。例如，当某人的父母只有一方是美国人时，可称他为 'half American'。

2.153 上表中的第二类词不但能表示属性的程度，而且还用来强调形容词。它们既可与类别形容词连用，也可与属性形容词连用。

*You're **absolutely right**.*
*This policy has been **completely unsuccessful**.*
*Everyone appeared to be **completely unaware** of the face.*
*The discussion was **purely theoretical**.*
*It really is **quite astonishing**.*
*...a **totally new** situation.*
*We lived **totally separate** lives.*
*...**utterly trivial** matters.*

注意，'absolutely' 常与表达热情或缺乏热情的属性形容词连用。'Absolutely' 这样用时强调人们对自己所述内容的情绪如何强烈。

*...an **absolutely absurd** sermon.*
*I think it's **absolutely wonderful**.*
*The enquiry is **absolutely crucial**.*

下列属性形容词常用 'absolutely' 加以强调：

absurd	crucial	furious	perfect	wonderful
awful	enormous	huge	splendid	
brilliant	essential	impossible	terrible	
certain	excellent	massive	vital	

注意，'completely' 和 'utterly' 也可这样用。

*It is **completely** impossible to imagine such a world.*
*He began to feel **utterly** miserable.*

表示足够量
indicating sufficiency

2.154 次前置修饰语 'adequately'、'sufficiently' 和 'acceptably' 等可表示某人或某物具有足够的有关属性。

*The roof is **adequately insulated**.*
*We found a bank of snow **sufficently deep** to dig a cave.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

2.155 'Enough' 可表示人们认为某物充足，总是置于形容词之后，从不前置。

*I was not a **good enough** rider.*
*It seemed that Henry had not been **careful enough**.*

'Enough' 可后随 'for' 引出的介词短语指出有关的人，也可后随 'to'- 不定式小句表示有关的动作。

*A girl in the factory wasn't **good enough for him**.*
*If you find that the white wine is not **cold enough for you**, ask for some ice to be put in it.*
*The children are **old enough to travel to school on their own**.*
*None of the richly growing crops was **ripe enough to eat**.*

注意，'enough' 用于形容词之后时，形容词前可用 'just' 修饰，表示人或物充分具有形容词所描述的属性，但并不过多。

*Some of these creatures are **just large enough** to see with the naked eye.*

2.156 'Enough' 还可作限定词，参见 1.208 至 1.232 节。

*He hasn't had **enough** exercise.*

'Enough' 作限定词，前面可加次前置修饰语。

*There was **just enough** space for a bed.*
*They now have **almost enough** scholars.*

表示不充足 indicating insufficiency

2.157 次前置修饰语 'inadequately'、'insufficiently' 和 'unacceptably' 等可表示有关事物不够充足。

*...**insufficiently subtle** and **detailed** methods.*
*Their publications were **inadequately researched**.*

表示过多 indicating excess

2.158 通常次前置修饰语 'too' 置于表语类属性形容词前，可表示某人或某物具有的某种属性过多。

*My feet are **too big**.*
*It was **too hot**.*
*Dad thought I was **too idealistic**.*

'Too' 之后可接 'for' 引出的介词短语指出有关的人，或接 'to'- 不定式小句表示有关动作。

*The shoes were **too big for him**.*
*He was **too old for that sort of thing**.*
*She was **too weak to lift me**.*
*He was **too proud to apologise**.*

注意，虽然 'too' 可置于限定词 'many'、'much' 和 'few' 之前，但通常不能和形容词连用置于名词之前。

*You ask **too many** questions, Sam.*
*There is **too much** chance of error.*
***Too few** people nowadays are interested in Literature.*

2.159 'Too' 不能代替 'very'，因而不能说 'I am too happy to meet you'，而必须说 'I am very happy to meet you'。

2.160 其他表示属性过量的词有 'excessively'、'overly' 和前缀 'over-'。它们像 'too' 一样，不但可与表语形容词连用，而且可与定语形容词连用。

*...**excessively high** accident rates.*
*...an intellectual but **over-cautious** man.*
*They were **overly eager**.*

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.161 与程度副词一样，时间副词及其他种类的副词也可作形容词的前置修饰语。这是英语的**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**讲解。副词在第六章讨论。

...the ***once elegant*** *palace.*
...a ***permanently muddy*** *road.*
*...****internationally famous*** *golfers.*
*...****naturally blonde*** *hair.*
*...****coolly elegant*** *furniture.*
*...****purposely expensive*** *gadgets.*

表示差异程度：比较中的次前置修饰语
Indicating the degree of difference: submodifiers in comparison

2.162 使用比较级形容词表示一件事物的属性比另一件事物多得多或少得多时，可加**次前置修饰语** (submodifiers) 。

He is a ***much better*** *dentist than you.*
These creatures are ***much less mobile****.*
There are ***far worse*** *dangers.*
Some children are a lot ***more diffcult*** *than others.*

加次前置修饰语还可表示某物的属性比以往多得多或少得多。

He had become ***much more mature****.*
That's ***much less important*** *than it was.*

2.163 有些次前置修饰语只有在比较级形容词作补足语时才能使用。

You look ***a lot better****.*
It would be ***a good deal easier*** *if you came to my place.*
The journey back was ***a great deal more unpleasant*** *than the outward one had been.*

下列次前置修饰语用于比较级形容词前：

a good deal	a great deal	a lot	heaps	lots

注意，'lots' 和 'heaps' 只能用于非正式的英语口语。

2.164 但其他次前置修饰语既可与作前置修饰语的比较级形容词连用，也可与作补足语的比较级形容词连用。

They are faced with a ***much harder*** *problem than the rest of us.*
Scientific activity is now ***much greater****.*
Computers can be applied to a ***far wider*** *range of tasks.*
The process is ***far simpler*** *than multiplication.*

下列次前置修饰语既可与作定语的比较级形容词连用，也可与作表语的比较级形容词连用：

considerably	infinitely	vastly
far	much	very much

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.165 如果某事物颇具某种属性而另一件事物比它具有的更多，可用 'even' 和 'still'。'Even' 位于比较级形容词之前；'still' 可置于比较级形容词之前或之后。

She's ***even lazier*** *than me!*
She was ***even more possessive*** *than Rosamund.*
I had a ***still more recent*** *report.*
The text is actually ***worse still****.*

同样，如果某事物略具某种属性，而另一件事物比它具有的更少，可用 'even' 或 'still'。

Selection and assessment tend to be ***even less*** *fair.*

'Even' 或 'still' 还可比较事物在两个不同时间里所具属性的多少。

Their non-nuclear superiority has grown ***even bigger*** *since 1967.*
They will become ***richer still****.*

在正式或文学英语中，有时可用 'yet' 代替 'still'。

He would have been ***yet more alarmed*** *had she withdrawn.*
The planes grow ***mightier yet****.*

2.166 重复比较级形容词可表示事物越来越具备某种属性或越来越不具备某种属性。例如，可说某物变得 'bigger and bigger'、'more and more difficult' 或 'less and less common'。

He's getting ***fatter and fatter****.*
...defences that were proving ***more and more effective.***

'Increasingly' 和 'decreasingly' 可分别代替 'more and more' 及 'less and less'。

I was becoming ***increasingly*** *depressed.*
It was the first of a number of ***increasingly*** *frank talks.*

2.167 如果表示一件事物所具有的属性略多于或略少于另一件事物，可在比较级形容词前加 'rather'、'slightly'、'a bit'、'a little bit' 或 'a little'。

*It's a **rather more complicated** story than that.*
*She's only **a little bit taller** than her sister.*

这些结构也可表示事物所具有的属性比以往略多或略少。

*We must be **rather more visible** to people in the community.*
*...the little things that made life **slightly less intolerable**.*

2.168 如果强调一件事物所具有的属性并不多于另一件事物或并不比它以往多，可在比较级形容词前加 'no'。

*Some species of dinosaur were no **bigger** than a chicken.*

在否定句、疑问句和条件从句中，'any' 可置于比较级前表示强调。例如，'He wasn't any taller than Jane' 等于 'He was no taller than Jane'。

*I was ten and didn't look **any older**.*
*If it will make you **any happier**, I'll shave off my beard.*
*Is that **any clearer**?*

注意，'no' 和 'any' 的这种用法只适用于比较级作补足语。如果比较级置于名词之前，'no' 和 'any' 就不能这样用。如不能说 'It was a no better meal'，也不能说 'Is that an any faster train?'。

2.169 如果使用比较结构 'as...as...'（见 2.129 至 2.135 节），'just'、'quite'、'nearly' 和 'almost' 等可用作次前置修饰语，以其常用意义修饰比较级。

*Mary was **just as pale as** he was.*
*They set upon insects **quite as large as** themselves.*
*...a huge bird which was **nearly as big as** a man.*
*The land seemed **almost as dark as** the water.*

如果 'as...as...' 结构前加 'not' 表示 'less...than'，'nearly' 可作次前置修饰语置于 'not' 之后。例如，'I am not nearly as tall as George' 等于 'I am much less tall than George'。

*This is **not nearly as complicated as** it sounds.*

2.170 用 'like' 比较两个人或物时（参见 2.137 至 2.139 节），前面可加次前置修饰语。

*...animals that looked **a little like** donkeys.*
*It's a plane **exactly like** his.*

下列次前置修饰语与 'like' 连用：

a bit	exactly	quite	somewhat
a little	just	rather	very

2.171 如果使用 'the same as' 和 'the same' 表示两个人或物相同，'just'、'exactly'、'much'、'nearly'、'virtually' 和 'more or less' 等可用作次前置修饰语，以其常用意义来修饰 'the same as' 和 'the same'。

*She wore plimsolls, **just the same as** the ones we wore at school.*
*The situation was **much the same** in Germany.*
*The moral code would seem to be **more or less the same** throughout the world.*

2.172 与比较级一样，最高级形容词可以被**次前置修饰语** (submodifiers) 修饰，表示某物所具有的属性比同类中其他事物多得多或少得多。

次前置修饰语 'much'、'quite'、'easily'、'by far' 和 'very' 可与最高级形容词连用。

'Much'、'quite' 和 'easily' 用于 'the' 和最高级之前。

*Music may have been **much the most respectable** of his tastes.*
*...the most frightening time of my life, and **quite the most dishonest**.*
*The Granada is **easily the most popular** model.*

'By far' 既可用于 'the' 和最高级之前，也可用于其后。

*They are **by far the most dangerous** creatures on the island.*
*The Union was **the largest by far**.*

2.173 'Very' 只能与加 '-est' 构成的最高级或不规则最高级如 'the best' 和 'the worst' 连用。'Very' 置于 'the' 和最高级之间。

*...**the very earliest** computers.*
*It was of **the very highest** quality.*

如果要进行特别强调，'very' 可作最高级形容词的次前置修饰语，位于限定词 'the'、'that' 等之后，最高级形容词或 'first'、'last' 等词之前。

...in the **very smallest** countries.
...one of the **very finest** breeds of dogs.
...on the **very first day** of the war.
He had come at the **very last** moment.
That **very next** afternoon he was working in his room.
He spent weeks in that **very same** basement.

用名词前置修饰：名词前置修饰语
Modifying using nouns: noun modifiers

2.174 名词可作其他名词的前置修饰语，更准确地说明某人或某物。有些这样使用的名词成了固定表达式，称作**复合名词** (compound nouns)（见 1.84 至 1.93 节）。名词用于其他名词之前，如果不是固定表达式，则叫**名词前置修饰语** (noun modifiers)。

...the **car** door.
...**tennis** lessons.
...a **football** player.
...**cat** food.
...the **music** industry.
...a **surprise** announcement.

单数和复数形式 singular and plural forms

2.175 名词前置修饰语通常用**具数名词**（见 1.16 至 1.25 节）的单数形式，即使指一个以上的事物也是如此。例如，书店的表达式是 'a book shop' 而不是 'a books shop'，尽管书店出售的书籍不只是一本，而是为数很多。

用于其他名词之前时，许多**复数名词**都去掉词尾 '-s'

...my **trouser** pocket.
...**pyjama** trousers.
...**paratroop** attacks.

下面是作前置修饰语时不用词尾 '-s' 和 '-es' 的常见复数名词：

knickers	pyjamas	spectacles	trousers
paratroops	scissors	troops	

但有些复数名词用于其他名词之前时，形式不变。

...**arms** control.
...the **arms** race.
...**clothes** pegs.

下面是作前置修饰语时保留复数形式的常见名词：

arms	clothes	jeans
binoculars	glasses	sunglasses

复数名词在 1.42 至 1.47 节讲解。

使用一个以上的名词前置修饰语 using more than one noun modifier

2.176 如果要更准确地表述人或物，可用一个以上的名词前置修饰语。例如，'car insurance certificate' 指汽车保险证书；'state pension scheme' 表示州退休金方案。

*...a **Careers Information** Officer.*
*...**car body repair** kits.*
*...a **family dinner** party.*
*...a **school medical** officer.*

与形容词连用 used with adjectives

2.177 如果要详述带有名词前置修饰语的名词，可在名词前置修饰语前加**形容词** (adjectives)。

*...a **long** car journey.*
*...a **new scarlet** silk handkerchief.*
*...**complex** business deals.*
*...this **beautiful** morning sunlight.*
*...the **French** film industry.*

形容词位于两个名词之前时，是只用来修饰名词前置修饰语，还是用来修饰两个名词，一般是清楚的。

例如，在 'an electric can opener' 中，形容词 'electric' 修饰 'can opener'；而在 'electric shock treatment' 中，'electric' 首先修饰名词 'shock'，形容词 'electric' 和名词 'shock' 再一起修饰名词 'treatment'。

☞ 形容词在 2.2 至 2.107 节讨论。

使用专有名词 use of proper nouns

2.178 **专有名词** (proper nouns) 也可作名词前置修饰语。例如，若表示某物与某个地方、组织或机构有关，可将该地方、组织或机构的名称置于其他所有名词前置修饰语之前。专有名词还可放在类别形容词之前。

*...**Brighton** Technical College.*
*...the **Cambridge House** Literacy Scheme.*

☞ **专有名词**在 1.53 至 1.59 节讲解。

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.179 在英语中，名词作前置修饰语非常普通。事实上，如果上下文把说话意义交代清楚，几乎所有名词都可作其他名词的前置修饰语。名词前置修饰语可表示两个名词间的许多不同关系。

例如，在 'cotton socks' 中，它表示某物由什么原料制造；在 'a glass factory' 中，它表示特定地方制造什么产品；在 'a football player' 中，它表示某人从事什么活动；在 'my bedroom curtains' 中，它表示某物在某处。

它还可表示某事发生的时间，如 'the morning mist' 和 'her wartime activities'；描述事物的性质和大小，如 'a surprise attack' 和 'a pocket chess-set'。

使用名词前置修饰语是英语的**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**中讲解。

表示领属或关联：领属结构
Indicating possession or association: possessive structures

2.180 确指事物的一种办法是说明它属于谁或属于什么或者与谁或与什么有关，如可以说 'Elizabeth's book' 或 'the teacher's role'。本部分讨论在名词词组内表示领属的方法，特别是 **''s' 结构** (apostrophe s ('s))。在名词或名称上加 ''s' 结构叫**领属形式** (possessive form)。有些语法书称其为**属格**(genitive)。

领属形式
possessive form

2.181 表示某物属于某人或与某人有关，通常在人名上加 ''s'，并将领属形式置于属于人们或与他们有关的事物之前。例如，若约翰有一辆摩托车，可说 'John's motorbike'。

*Sylvia put her hand on **John's** arm.*
*It was probably **Mrs Thatcher's** greatest error.*

如果不是用人名而是用名词表示人，一般情况下，含领属形式的名词词组通常也含限定词。

*...**his grandmother's** house.*
***Your mother's** best handbag.*

注意，限定词只限定领属形式而不限定被领属形式修饰的名词。

拼写和读音
spelling and pronunciation

2.182 领属形式的拼写和读音因名称或名词的拼写和读音的不同而变化。详见附录**参考部分** R32 至 R40。

's 的其他用法
other uses of 's

2.183 ''s' 不仅可加在名词和名称上，也不限于表示领属或关联，它还可用于介词 'of' 引出的后置修饰语中，也可像物主代词一样使用。有些带 ''s' 的名词还可作名词的前置修饰语。领属形式的其他用法在2.188至2.192节讨论。

注意，''s' 不仅是领属形式，也可附加在词后成为 'is' 或 'has' 的缩约式。这种用法在附录**参考部分**讨论。

表示领属的其他方法
other ways of indicating possession

2.184 'Of' 引出的介词短语或含有名词前置修饰语的结构有时也可表示领属。

☞ 'Of' 引出的介词短语在2.294至2.300节讨论。名词前置修饰语在2.174至2.179节讲解。

表示密切关系：撇号 s('s)
Indicating close connection: apostrophe s('s)

2.185 ''s' 常常加在指人或动物的名词后。

*I wore a pair of my **sister's** boots.*
*Philip watched his **friend's** reaction.*
*Billy patted the **dog's** head.*

''s' 还可用来表示某物属于一个群体或机构，也可表示与他们有关。

*She runs the foreign exchange desk for the **bank's** corporate clients.*
*They also prepare the **university's** budget.*
*...the **paper's** political editor, Mr Fred Emery.*
*There was a raid on the **Democratic Party's** headquarters.*
*What is your **government's** policy?*

2.186 有时，''s' 可加在指物的名词后表示该物体的一个部分及它具有的属性或特征。

*You can predict a **computer's** behaviour because it follows rules.*
*I like the **car's** design.*

''s' 也可加在地方名词或名称之后，确指该地的事物。

*He is the administrative head of the **country's** biggest city.*
*The **city's** population is in decline.*
*...**Britain's** most famous company.*

2.187 如果要强调某物只属于特定个人或只与特定个人有关，可在名称或名词的领属形式及物主限定词之后加 'own'。

Professor Wilson's own *answer may be unacceptable.*
We must depend on ***David's own*** *assessment.*

如果确指若干事物，'own' 后可用数词。

...the Doctor's ***own two*** *rooms.*

其他用撇号 s ('s)的结构
Other structures with apostrophe s ('s)

2.188 与物主代词一样，名称或名词的领属形式可表示同类中的两件事物分属不同的人，以避免重复，如在下列例句中的第一句，'David's' 代替 'David's hand'。

Her hand *felt different from* ***David's****.*
Her tone was more friendly than ***Stryker's****.*
It is your responsibility rather than your ***parents'****.*

领属形式还可单独使用表示住宅或工作场所。

He's round at ***David's****.*
She stopped off at the ***butcher's*** *for a piece of steak.*
She hasn't been back to the ***doctor's*** *since.*

☞ 物主代词在 1.110 至 1.114 节讨论。

用于后置修饰语中
used in qualifying phrases

2.189 领属形式可用于由 'of' 引出的介词短语修饰名词词组。这一个结构用于指属于某人或与某人有关的许多事物中的一件，不指独一无二的事物。

Julia, a friend ***of Jenny's****, was there too.*
That word was a favourite ***of your father's****.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

2.190 领属形式也可表示与某种人有联系的特定种类的事物。

...a woman dressed in a ***man's*** *raincoat.*
...a ***policeman's*** *uniform.*
*...****women's*** *magazines.*
...the ***men's*** *lavatory.*

2.191 有时，领属形式可与动作名词连用，表示谁或什么是动作的施行者。

...the ***banking service's*** *rapid growth.*
*...****Madeleine's*** *arrival at Fairwater House School.*

注意，表示这一个意义时，由 'of' 引出的介词短语比领属形式更常用、更正式。'Of' 介词短语表示动作施行者的用法在 2.299 节讨论。

2.192 有时，可在受动作施行者影响的名词之后加 ''s'，名词加 ''s' 后置于表示动作施行者的名词之前。例如，可说 'the scheme's supporters'。

*...**Mr Healy's** supporters.*
*...the **car's** owner.*

有时 ''s' 结构可表示受动作影响的事物。

*...**Benn's** appointment as Minister of Technology.*

另外，表示这个意义时，'of' 结构比领属形式更常用。

叙述数和量
Talking about quantities and amounts

2.193 本部分讨论表示事物数和量的方法。数和量通常用数词表示，但在日常运用中，有时也用量词结构表示，如 'several' 和 'a bottle' ＋ 'of' ＋名词词组。'Several' 等词如此使用时叫量词。量词在 2.194 至 2.210 节讨论。

'A bottle' 等短语如此使用时叫单位词。

☞ 单位词在 2.211 至 2.224 节讲解。

如果要表示某物的精确数量，可用数词，(见 2.225 至 2.256 节)或分数，(见 2.257 至 2.266 节)。

数词、分数和量词也可用于度量衡表示事物的大小、重量和长度等。度量衡表达式在 2.267 至 2.274 节讲解。近似度量衡在 2.281 至 2.288 节讨论。数词还用于表示人的年龄或物的年份，参见 2.275 至 2.280 节。

谈论事物的量：量词
Talking about amounts of things: quantifiers

2.194 在日常英语中，量词用来表示事物的数或量。

*I am sure **both of** you agree with me.*
*...a house with **lots of** windows.*
***Most of** the population have fled.*
*I make **a lot of** mistakes.*
*In Tunis there are **a number of** art galleries.*
*I never found **the rest of** my relatives.*

注意，由于量词都含'of'，因而它们由两个或两个以上的词构成。下表中的'of'用以提示这种构成。

2.195 下列是量词一览表：

all of	more of	an amount of	a majority of
another of	most of	a bit of	the majority of
any of	much of	a little bit of	a minority of
both of	neither of	a couple of	~
certain of	none of	a good deal of	the remainder of
each of	numbers of	a great deal of	the rest of
either of	one of	a few of	the whole of
enough of	part of	a little of	~
few of	plenty of	a lot of	heaps of
fewer of	quantities of	a good many of	loads of
less of	several of	a great many of	masses of
little of	some of	a number of	tons of
lots of	various of	a quantity of	
many of	~	~	

注意，在上表中，最后一类量词只用于非正式口语。

只与特指限定词连用
only with specific determiners

2.196 有些量词只能用'of'与由'the'、'these'或'my'等特指限定词开始的名词词组连用。'Us'、'them'或'these'等代词也可用于'of'之后。

*Nearly **all of** the increase has been caused by inflation.*
***Part of** the farm lay close to the river bank.*
*Only **a few of** the atttackers were armed.*

下列量词通常或总是与由特定限定词开始的名词词组连用：

all of	few of	neither of	a few of
another of	fewer of	none of	a little of
any of	less of	one of	a good many of
both of	little of	part of	a great many of
certain of	many of	several of	~
each of	more of	some of	the remainder of
either of	most of	various of	the rest of
enough of	much of	~	the whole of

其他量词既可与由特指限定词开始的名词词组连用，也可与由泛指限定词开始的名词词组连用。

与地点名称连用
with place names

2.197 部分这类量词还可与地点名称连用。

The whole of *America will be shocked by what happened.*
*...involving a large **part of** Africa and a large **part of** South America.*

下列量词与地点名称连用：

all of	much of	~	a great deal of	the whole of
less of	none of	a bit of	a lot of	
more of	part of	a little bit of	~	
most of	some of	a good deal of	the rest of	

动词的一致
verb agreement

2.198 量词作动词的主语时，动词用单数还是复数取决于量词指一件事物还是一件以上的事物。

*Some of the information **has** already been analysed.*
*Some of my best friends **are** policemen.*

与复数名词连用
with plural nouns

2.199 许多量词只能置于复数名词词组之前。

*I am sure **both of** you agree with me.*
*Start by looking through their papers for **either of** the two documents mentioned below.*
Few of *these organizations survive for long.*
Several of *his best books are about space flight.*
*I would like to ask you **a couple of** questions.*
*The report contained large **numbers of** inaccuracies.*

下列量词只能与复数名词词组连用：

another of	few of	one of	a few of
both of	fewer of	several of	a good many of
certain of	many of	various of	a great many of
each of	neither of	~	a number of
either of	numbers of	a couple of	

关于 'each of'，详见 2.203 至 2.204 节；'fewer of'，详见 2.206 节；'a number of'，详见 2.208 至 2.209 节。

注意，在否定句中，谈及两件事物时，'neither of' 与 'either of' 用法相同，参见 4.75 节。

与不具数名词和单数名词连用
with uncount nouns and singular nouns

2.200 少数量词只能与不具数名词和单数名词词组连用。

Much of *the day was taken up with classes.*
*This is **a bit of** a change.*
*There was **a good deal of** smoke.*

*If you use rich milk, pour off **a little of** the cream.*
*I spent **the whole of** last year working there.*

下列量词只能与不具数名词和单数名词词组连用：

less of	part of	a little bit of	a little of
little of	~	a good deal of	~
much of	a bit of	a great deal of	the whole of

☞ 关于 'less of'，详见 2.206 节。

与复数名词和不具数名词连用
with plural nouns and uncount nouns

2.201 极少数量词只能与复数名词词组和不具数名词连用。

*Her immense **quantities of** jewels, robes, cosmetics and carpets.*
*Very large **quantities of** aid were needed.*
*They had **loads of** things to say about each other.*
*We had **loads of** room.*
*...**plenty of** the men.*
*Bake us **plenty of** bread for our journey.*

下列量词只能与复数名词词组和不具数名词连用：

plenty of	~	loads of	tons of
quantities of	heaps of	masses of	

注意，在上表中，当第二类量词与不具数名词连用作动词的主语时，动词用单数形式，尽管量词看上去像复数。

*Masses and **masses of** food **was** left over.*

与各类名词连用
with all types of noun

2.202 有些量词可与复数名词词组、单数名词词组或不具数名词连用。

*...**some of** the most distinguished men of our time.*
*We did **some of** the journey by night.*
***Some of** the gossip was surprisingly accurate.*

下列量词与单数名词词组、复数名词词组或不具数名词连用：

all of	more of	~	~
any of	most of	an amount of	the remainder of
enough of	none of	a lot of	the rest of
lots of	some of	a quantity of	

注意，'an amount of' 几乎总是与 'small' 等形容词连用，如 'a small amount of'，参见 2.209 节。

另外，'lots of' 与不具数名词连用作动词的主语时，动词用单数形式，尽管量词好像是复数。

*He thought that **lots of** lovely money **was** the source of happiness.*

☞ 'Any of' 在 2.205 节详述。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.203 如果表示特定群体中的每个成员，可用 'each of' 接复数名词词组。

***Each of** the drawings is slightly different.*
*We feel quite differently about **each of** our children.*
*Work out how much you can afford to pay **each of** them.*

注意，'each one' 和 'every one' 可置于 'of' 之前，代替 'each' 表示强调。

*This view of poverty influences **each one** of us.*
***Every one** of them is given a financial target.*

注意

2.204 量词 'each of' 与复数名词词组连用时，动词总是用单数。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.205 'Any of' 可指单个或几个人或物，也可指事物的一部分。注意，'any of' 作动词的主语时，若指几个人或物，动词用复数；若指事物的一部分，动词用单数。

*She has those coats. She might have been wearing **any of** them.*
*Hardly **any of** these find their way into consumer products.*
*Has **any of** this been helpful?*
*It was more expensive than **any of** the other magazines we were normally able to afford.*

2.206 有三个比较级量词可与名词词组连用。通常 'less of' 与单数和不具数名词词组连用；'fewer of' 与复数名词词组连用；'more of' 与所有三类名词词组连用。

*I enjoy cooking far more now, because I do **less of** it.*
***Fewer of** these children will become bored.*
*He was far **more of** an existentialist.*

注意，'more of' 有时与名词词组连用表示强调。

*He could hardly have felt **more of** a fool than he did at that moment.*
*She was **more of** a flirt than ever.*
*America is much **more of** a multi-ethnic society.*

另外，'less of' 有时用来代替 'fewer of'，但许多人认为这种用法不正确。

省去 'of'
omitting 'of'

2.207 如果上下文已将意义交代明确或说话人认为对方知道指什么，量词有时可单独使用。例如，谈及20名申请人求职时，可用 'Some were very good' 代替 'Some of them were very good'。

A few *crossed over the bridge.*
Some parts can be separated from ***the whole****.*
I have four bins. I keep one in the kitchen and ***the rest*** *in the dustbin area.*
Most of the books had been packed into an enormous trunk and ***the remainder*** *piled on top of it.*

2.208 在 'a number of' 和 'a quantity of' 中可加形容词，表示事物数量的多少。

There are ***a large number of*** *students.*
We had ***a limited number of*** *people to choose from.*
The novel provides ***an enormous quantity of*** *information.*
*...****a tiny quantity of*** *acid.*

'An amount of' 总是与形容词连用，通常跟不具数名词。

He couldn't stop himself from sipping ***a small amount of*** *the water.*
He has ***a large amount of*** *responsibility.*
It only involves ***a small amount of*** *time.*
There has to be ***a certain amount of*** *sacrifice.*
They have done ***a vast amount of*** *hard work.*

'Quantity'、'number' 和 'amount' 可用复数形式，尤其是指若干单独的数量时。

...groups which employ ***large numbers of*** *low-paid workers.*
Enormous amounts of *money are spent on advertising.*

次前置修饰量词
submodifying quantifiers

2.209 量词含有形容词时，形容词前可加 'very'。

*...****a very great deal of*** *work.*
*...****a very large amount of*** *money.*

2.210 有些量词可用 'quite' 作次前置修饰语。

I've wasted ***quite enough of*** *my life here.*
Quite a few of *the employees are beginning to realise the truth.*
Most of them have had ***quite a lot of*** *experience.*
*...****quite a large amount of*** *industry.*

下列量词可用 'quite' 作次前置修饰语：

enough	a lot of	a small amount of	a large number of
a few	a large amount of	a number of	

谈论事物的数：单位词
Talking about amounts of things: partitives

2.211 如果要谈及事物的特定数量，可用**量词结构** (partitive structure)。这一种结构由某一个单位词＋ 'of' ＋名词构成。

单位词 (partitives) 均为具数名词。

*Who owns this **bit of** land?*
*...**portions of** mashed potato.*

如果单位词是单数，与它连用的动词通常用单数；如果单位词是复数，动词也用复数。

*A piece of paper **is** lifeless.*
*Two pieces of metal **were** being rubbed together.*

注意，由于所有单位词都需有 'of'，因此，它们由两个或两个以上的词构成。作为提示，下列几节的表格中都列出了 'of'。

单位词与不具数名词连用
partitives with uncount nouns

2.212 与不具数名词连用时，可用 'bit'、'drop'、'lump' 或 'piece' 等具数名词作单位词。

*Here's a **bit of** paper.*
*...a **drop of** blood.*
*...a cobweb covered with little **drops of** dew.*
*...a tiny **piece of** material.*
*...a **pinch of** salt.*
*...**specks of** dust.*
*The potter shaped and squeezed the **lump of** clay into a graceful shape.*

如果意思清楚，这些单位词使用时，'of' 和名词词组可以省略。

*He sat down in the kitchen before a plate of cold ham, but he had only eaten one **piece** when the phone rang.*

2.213 下列单位词与不具数名词连用：

amount of	grain of	mountain of	scrap of	touch of
bit of	heap of	piece of	sheet of	trace of
blob of	knob of	pile of	shred of	
clump of	lump of	pinch of	slice of	
dash of	mass of	pool of	speck of	
drop of	morsel of	portion of	spot of	

上表中，有些单位词也可与表示聚集成堆的事物的复数名词连用。

*...a huge **heap of** stones.*
*...a **pile of** materials.*

下列单位词既与不具数名词连用，也与复数名词连用：

amount	heap	mountain	portion
clump	mass	pile	

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.214 用于表示一定数量事物的形状时，许多名词可作与不具数名词或复数名词连用的单位词。

*...a **ball of** wool.*
*...**columns of** smoke.*
*...a **ring of** excited faces.*

下列单位词表示一定数量事物的形状：

ball of	shaft of	strip of	wall of
column of	square of	thread of	
ring of	stick of	tuft of	

许多既表示事物形状又表示事物移动的名词也可作单位词。

*It blew a **jet of** water into the air.*
*....a constant **stream of** children passing through the door.*

下列单位词既表示事物形状也表示事物移动：

dribble of	gust of	spurt of	torrent of
gush of	jet of	stream of	

单位词表示事物形状以及既表示事物形状，又表示事物移动的用法是英语的**产出性特征**，因为任何表示形状的名词都可以这样用。例如，可说 'a triangle of snooker balls'。**产出性特征**在前言中讨论。

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.215 许多表示群体的名词可作单位词用，它们用 'of' 与说明群体的复数名词连用。

It was evaluated by an independent ***team of*** *inspectors.*
A ***group of*** *journalists gathered at the airport to watch us take off.*
They kept a small ***flock*** *of sheep.*
...a ***bunch of*** *flowers.*

下列单位词表示群体：

audience of	company of	gang of	team of
bunch of	family of	group of	troupe of
clump of	flock of	herd of	

单位词表示群体的用法是英语的**产出性特征**，因为任何表示人或物的群体的名词都可以这样用。例如，可说 'an army of volunteers'。**产出性特征**在**前言**中讲解。

度量衡名词
measurement nouns

2.216 度量衡名词常用于量词结构，表示事物的长度、面积、体积或重量。表示长度时，'of' 带不具数名词；表示重量时，'of' 之后既可跟不具数名词也可跟复数名词。

...ten ***yards of*** *velvet.*
Supar owns only five hundred ***square metres of*** *land.*
I drink a ***pint of*** *milk a day.*
...three ***pounds of*** *strawberries.*
...10 ***ounces of*** *cheese.*

☞ 度量衡名词在 2.267 至 2.274 节讨论。

表示内容和容器
referring to contents and containers

2.217 单位词可表示容器中的内容和容器本身。例如，'a carton of milk' 表示装有奶的盒子。

I went to buy a ***bag of*** *chips.*
The waiter appeared with a ***bottle of*** *red wine.*
...a ***packet of*** *cigarettes.*
...a ***pot of*** *honey.*
*...****tubes of*** *glue.*

单位词也可只指容器内的内容。

They drank another ***bottle of*** *champagne.*
She ate a whole ***box of*** *chocolates.*

下列单位词表示容器：

bag of	bucket of	glass of	pot of	tub of
barrel of	can of	jar of	sack of	tube of
basin of	carton of	jug of	spoon of	tumbler of
basket of	case of	mug of	tablespoon of	
bottle of	cask of	pack of	tank of	
bowl of	crate of	packet of	teaspoon of	
box of	cup of	plate of	tin of	

以 '-ful' 结尾
ending in 'ful'

2.218 表示容器的名词可加后缀 '-ful'。

*He brought me a **bagful of** sweets.*
*Pour a **bucketful of** cold water on the ash.*
*...a **cupful of** boiled water.*
*...a **tankful of** petrol.*

下列单位词表示容器，它们常以 '-ful' 结尾：

bag	bucket	spoon	teaspoon
basket	cup	tablespoon	
box	plate	tank	

以 '-ful' 结尾的名词变为复数时，通常在词尾加 '-s'，如 'bucketfuls'，但也有人在 '-ful' 前加 '-s'，如 'bucketsful'。

*She ladled three **spoonfuls of** sugar into my tea.*
*They were collecting **basketfuls of** apples.*
*...two **teaspoonfuls of** powder.*
*...2 **teaspoonsful of** milk.*

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.219 其他单位词也可加后缀 '-ful'。这是英语的**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在前言中讲解。

*Eleanor was holding an **armful of** red roses.*
*I went outside to throw a **handful of** bread to the birds.*
*He took another **mouthful of** whisky.*
*...a **houseful of** children.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

2.220 有时，团性名词可代替量词结构。例如，'two teas' 等于 'two cups of tea'；'two sugars' 等于 ' two spoonfuls of sugar'。

*We drank a couple of **beers**.*
*I asked for two **coffees** with milk.*

☞ **团性名词**在 1.29 至 1.32 节讲解。

表示部分和小部分
referring to parts and fractions

2.221 单位词可表示特定事物大小不同的部分。

I spent a large ***part of*** *my life in broadcasting.*
The system is breaking down in many ***parts of*** *Africa.*
An appreciable ***portion of*** *the university budget goes into the Community Services area.*
...a mass movement involving all ***segments of*** *society.*

下列单位词表示事物的一部分：

part of	portion of	section of	segment of

表示单个事物
referring to individual items

2.222 单位词与表示某类事物的不具数名词连用，可表示该类中的单个事物。

...an ***article of*** *clothing.*
I bought a few ***bits of*** *furniture.*
Any ***item of*** *information can be accessed.*

下列单位词表示一类中的单个事物：

article of	bit of	item of	piece of

下列表示某类事物的不具数名词常与上表中的单位词连用：

advice	clothing	homework	luggage	research
apparatus	equipment	information	machinery	
baggage	furniture	knowledge	news	

'pair of'

2.223 有些复数名词可表示通常被视为由两个部分组成的事物，如裤子或剪刀。还有一些复数名词表示成双的事物，如鞋子或袜子。如果要表示由两部分组成或成双的事物，可用单位词 'pair' 接 'of' 再加这些复数名词。

...a ***pair of*** *jeans.*
...a ***pair of*** *tights.*
...a dozen ***pairs of*** *sunglasses.*
I bought a ***pair of*** *tennis shoes.*
I smashed three ***pairs of*** *skis.*

这些复数名词在 1.42 至 1.47 节讲解。

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

2.224 无论何时谈及一件有限数量的事物，表示事物所占的面积或确指事物所具有的特征，均可用表示该事物数量或面积的名词词组＋'of'＋表示该事物的名词。例如，'a forest of pines' 表示大面积的树木；同样也可以说 'a border of roses'。这种结构适用范围可以扩展得很广，可说 'a city of dreaming spires'。这是英语最具产出性的特征之一。**产出性特征**在前言讲解。

表示事物的准确数目：数词
Referring to an exact number of things: numbers

基数词
cardinal numbers

2.225 数词 'two'、'thirty' 和 '777' 等可表示事物的准确数目，它们叫**基数词** (cardinal numbers/cardinals)。

*I'm going to ask you **thirty** questions.*
*...**two hundred and sixty** copies of the record.*

☞ 基数词在附录**参考部分** R42 至 R45 列出，其用法在 2.230 至 2.248 节讲解。

序数词
ordinal numbers

2.226 序数词 (ordinal numbers/ordinals) 'first'、'second'、'fourteenth' 或 'twenty-seventh' 等可指明或阐述事物在一个系列或一个序列中所处的位置。

*She received a video camera for her **fourteenth** birthday.*
*She repeated this escape for the **second** and last time.*

☞ 序数词在附录**参考部分** R46 列出，其用法在 2.249 至 2.256 节讨论。

分数
fractions

2.227 分数 (fractions) 用于表示部分在整体中所占的比例。例如，'a third' 和 'three-quarters'。

***A third** of the American forces were involved.*
*The bottle had been about **three-quarters** full when he'd started.*

☞ 分数在 2.257 至 2.266 节讲解。

度量事物
measuring things

2.228 如果要表示大小、距离、面积、体积、重量、数量或温度，可在**度量衡名词** (measurement nouns) 如 'feet' 和 'miles' 之前加数词或量词。

*He was about six **feet** tall.*
*I walked ten **miles**, there and back, to Woodbridge every day.*

度量衡名词在 2.267 至 2.274 节讨论。如果不知道事物的准确数目、大小或数量，可用表示大致数量或度量衡的词或表达式。参见 2.281 至 2.288 节。

年龄 age **2.229** 表示人的年龄或事物的年份，有几种可供选择的方法。参见 2.275 至 2.288 节。

表示事物的数目：基数词
Referring to the number of things: cardinal numbers

2.230 如果要表示群体中的部分或所有成员，可用**基数词** (cardinal numbers) 指出所表示的数量。

☞ 基数词在附录**参考部分** R42 列出。

*By Christmas, we had **ten** cows.*

在名词前同时使用限定词和数词时，限定词位于数词之前。

*...**the three** young men.*
*...**my two** daughters.*
*Watch the eyes of **any two** people engrossed in conversation.*
***All three** candidates are coming to Blackpool later this week.*

在名词之前同时使用数词和形容词时，通常数词位于形容词之前。

*...**two small** children.*
*...**fifteen hundred local** residents.*
*...**three beautiful young** girls.*

'one' **2.231** 'One' 作为数词用于名词之前，可强调仅有一件事物；表示说话人力求精确，或将一件事物与另一件事物加以对比。'One' 后跟单数名词。

*That is the **one** big reservation I've got.*
*He balanced himself on **one** foot.*
*There was only **one** gate into the palace.*
*This treaty was signed **one** year after the Suez Crisis.*
*It was negative in **one** respect but positive in another.*

与其他数词一样，'one' 可作量词。

***One of** my students sold me her ticket.*

...**one of** the few great novels of the century.
I was **one of** the most experienced organisers on campus.

'One' 作为限定词和代词有几种特殊用法。参见 1.234 及 1.157 至 1.160 节。

2.232 如果一个大数目以数字 '1' 开头，'1' 可说成或写成 'a' 或 'one'。'One' 比 'a' 较为正式。

*...**a million** dollars.*
*...**a hundred and fifty** miles.*
*Over **one million** pounds has been raised.*

谈及否定数量
talking about negative amounts

2.233 在日常英语中，不用数字 0 表示零，而用否定限定词 'no'，否定代词 'none' 或 'any' 加否定词替代。参见 4.45 和 4.65 至 4.67 节。

数词及数的一致
numbers and agreement

2.234 数词用于名词之前时，除 'one' 之外，其他所有数词均要求名词为复数。

*There were ten **people** there, all men.*
*...a hundred **years**.*
*...a hundred and one **things**.*

2.235 数词和复数名词连用，表示两件或两件以上的事物时，通常用复数动词。'One' 与单数动词连用。

*Seven guerrillas **were** wounded.*
*There **is** one clue.*

然而，谈到金钱、时间、距离、速度或重量时，一般用数词、复数名词和单数动词。

*Three hundred pounds **is** a lot of money.*
*Ten years **is** a long time.*
*Three miles **is** generally taken to be the boundary of a country's airspace.*
*90 miles an hour **is** much too fast.*
*Ninety pounds **is** all she weighs.*

☞ 度量事物的方法在 2.267 至 2.274 节讨论。

与序数词和后位限定词连用的数词
numbers with ordinals and postdeterminers

2.236 基数词可与序数词（见 2.249 至 2.256 节）和后位限定词（见 2.44 节）连用。基数词与限定词加序数词或后位限定词连用时，基数词通常位于限定词、序数词或后位限定词之后。

*The **first two** years have been very successful.*

...throughout the **first four** months of this year.
...the **last two** volumes of the encyclopedia.
...in the **previous three** years of his reign.

注意，有些后位限定词同时又是普通的类别形容词（见 2.44 节）。后位限定词作类别形容词时，置于基数词之后。

He has written ***two previous*** *novels.*
*...****two further*** *examples.*

数词作代词 numbers as pronouns

2.237 如果上下文已把意思交代清楚或说话人认为对方已经有所了解，基数词可单独使用，省去名词。

These ***two*** *are quite different.*

基数词如此使用时，序数词、后位限定词或最高级形容词可置于基数词与限定词之间。

I want to tell you about the programmes. ***The first four*** *are devoted to universities.*
The other six *are masterpieces.*
The best thirty *have the potential to be successful journalists.*

表示巨大数目 expressing large numbers

2.238 'Dozen'、'hundred'、'thousand'、'million' 或 'billion' 表示准确数目时，前面可加 'a' 或另一个数词。

*...****a hundred*** *dollars.*
*...****six hundred and ten*** *miles.*
*...****a thousand billion*** *pounds.*
*...****two dozen*** *diapers.*

2.239 即使 'dozen'、'hundred'、'thousand'、'million' 或 'billion' 之前的数词大于一，它们仍用单数形式。

2.240 数词 'dozen'、'hundred'、'thousand'、'million' 或 'billion' 不带 'of' 时，前面可加 'several'、'a few' 和 'a couple of' 表示大致数目。

*...****several hundred*** *people.*
A few thousand *cars have gone.*
...life ***a couple of hundred*** *years ago.*

近似量 approximate quantities

2.241 如果想强调数量的多少，但无意说得十分准确，可用像基数词后跟 'of' 那样，使用 'dozens'、'hundreds'、'thousands'、'millions' 和 'billions'。

That's going to take ***hundreds of*** *years.*
We travelled ***thousands of*** *miles across Europe.*
...languages spoken by ***millions of*** *people.*
We have ***dozens of*** *friends in the community.*

这些复数形式前可加 'many'。

I have travelled ***many hundreds of*** *miles with them.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.242 人们常用这类复数形式进行夸张。

I was meeting ***thousands of*** *people.*
Do you have to fill in ***hundreds of*** *forms before you go?*

这些词也可用于由 'by' 引出的用作后置修饰语的介词短语中，强调或夸张数量巨大。

...a book which sells ***by the million.***
...people who give injections ***by the dozen.***
Calculators like this are now selling ***by the hundred thousand.***

数词作标签 numbers as labels

2.243 基数词可用于标明或指明事物。

Room ***777*** *of the Stanley Hotel.*
Number ***11*** *Downing Street.*

数词作量词 numbers as quantifiers

2.244 基数词也可用作量词，后跟 'of' 和表示群体的名词词组。这种用法可强调说明说话人正谈及群体的全部或部分。

I saw ***four of*** *these programmes.*
Three of *the questions today have been about democracy.*
I use plastic kitchen bins. I have ***four of*** *them.*
All eight of *my great-grandparents lived in the city.*
The clerk looked at ***the six of*** *them and said, 'All of you?'*
I find it less worrying than ***the two of*** *you are suggesting.*

☞ 量词在 2.194 至 2.210 节讨论。

数词类量词作代词 number quantifiers as pronouns

2.245 如果所指清楚，基数词可单独用来表示事物的数量，后面不接 'of' 和名词词组。

...a group of painters, ***nine*** *or* ***ten*** *in all.*
Of the other wives, ***two*** *are dancers and one is a singer.*
...the taller student of ***the two.***
...breakfast for ***two.***

数词作后置修饰语 numbers as qualifiers

2.246 基数词也可置于代词后作后置修饰语用。

*I am a woman, and **you three** are not.*
*In the fall **we two** are going to England.*

复合形容词中的数词 numbers in compound adjectives

2.247 基数词加名词可构成**复合形容词** (compound adjectives)，（见 2.98 至 2.107 节），通常用连字号连接。

*He took out a **five-dollar** bill.*
*I wrote a **five-page** summary of the situation.*

注意，复合形容词中的数词即使是二或二以上的数字，名词仍用单数形式。另外，这类复合形容词不能作补足语。例如，不能说 'My essay is five-hundred-word'，而应该说 'My essay is five hundred words long'。

数词与时间表达式 numbers with time expressions

2.248 基数词有时可与 'month' 和 'week' 等普通时间词连用，表达某事持续的时间。如果所谈事物以不具数名词表示，可用普通时间词的**领属形式** (possessive form)，见 2.180 至 2.192 节。

*She's already had at least **nine months'** experience.*
*On Friday she had been given **two weeks'** notice.*

有时撇号可以省去。

*They wanted **three weeks** holiday and **three weeks** pay.*

一般用限定词 'a' 谈及一段时间。如果要更正式一些，可用 'one' 代替 'a'。

*She's on **a year's** leave from Hunter College.*
*She was only given **one week's** notice.*

基数词还可与普通时间词连用，作形容词的前置修饰语。

*She was **four months** pregnant.*
*The rains are **two months** late.*
*His rent was **three weeks** overdue.*

表示序列中的事物：序数词
Referring to things in a sequence: ordinal numbers

2.249 **序数词** (ordinal numbers) 可指明或阐述事物在一个序列或一个系列中所处的位置。

*Quietly they took their seats in the **first** three rows.*

*Flora's flat is on the **fourth** floor of this five-storey block.*
*They stopped at the **first** of the trees.*

注意，'following'、'last'、'next'、'preceding'、'previous'和'subsequent'也可像序数词一样，表示事物在一个系列或一个序列中所处的位置。

*The **following** morning he checked out of the hotel.*
*...the **last** rungs of the fire-escape.*
*...at the **next** general election.*
*The theory stated in the **preceding** chapters is invaluable.*
*I mentioned this in a **previous** programme.*
*...the **subsequent** career patterns of those taking degrees.*

'Following'、'subsequent'、'previous' 和 'preceding' 只用于表示事物在时间顺序或书面语篇中的位置。'Next' 和 'last' 应用范围较广。例如，它们可表示事物在行次或清单中的位置。

序数词在附录**参考部分** R46 至 R47 列出。

作前置修饰语
as modifiers

2.250 序数词常常用于名词之前，通常不作系动词的补足语，前面通常有限定词。

*...**the first** day of autumn.*
*He took the lift to **the sixteenth** floor.*
*...on **her twenty-first** birthday.*
*...**his father's second** marriage.*

在某些习语中，序数词前不用限定词。

*The picture seems **at first glance** chaotic.*
*I might. **On second thoughts**, no.*
*Almost all babies — especially **first babies** — have fretful spells.*

书面语
written forms

2.251 在日期、标题或非正式书面语中，序数词可用缩写形式。书写时，该序数词的末尾两个字母可加在表达该数词的数字上。例如：'first'、'twenty-second'、'hundred and third' 和 'fourteenth' 可分别被缩写为 '1st'、'22nd'、'103rd' 和 '14th'。

*...on August **2nd**.*
*...the **1st** Division of the Sovereign's Escort.*
*...the **11th** Cavalry.*

序数词与 'of' 连用
ordinals with 'of'

2.252 序数词带介词 'of' 可明确说明由它所表示的事物属于哪个群体。

*This is **the third of** a series of programmes from the University of Sussex.*
*Tony was **the second of** four sons.*

序数词如此使用时，一般指单个人或物。它们带 'to'- 不定式小句、其他后置修饰语或后置修饰小句时，既可指单个人或物，也可指一个以上的人或物。序数词这样使用，以 'first' 最为常见。

*I was **the first to recover**.*
*They had to be **the first to go**.*
*The proposals — **the first for 22 years** — amount to a new charter for the mentally ill.*
*...the fashion in which Theodore treats the Europeans, **the first he has encountered**.*

作代词 as pronouns

2.253 序数词可表示已经提到过的群体中的一员或与已提到的类别相同的事物，有关的名词可以省去。

*In August 1932 two of the group's members were expelled from the party and **a third** was suspended.*
*The third child tries to outdo **the first and second**.*
*A second pheasant flew up. Then **a third** and **a fourth**.*

2.254 如果上下文已把意义交代清楚，形容词 'next' 和 'last' 也可和序数词一样单独使用。

*You missed one meal. **The next** is on the table in half an hour.*
*Smithy removed **the last** of the screws.*

序数词用作副词 ordinals used as adverbs

2.255 表示一件事物在其他事物之前发生时，序数词 'first' 作副词用。其他序数词有时也可用于表示事物发生的次序，在非正式英语中尤其如此。序数词用于列举论点、理由或项目时，也是副词。这种用法在 10.79 节讨论。

序数词的其他用法 other uses of ordinals

2.256 序数词表示分数的用法在 2.258 至 2.260 节讲解；序数词表示日期的用法，如 'the seventeenth of June' 在 5.87 节讨论。

序数词可用于基数词前，参见 2.236 至 2.237 节。

精确表示事物的一部分：分数
Referring to an exact part of something: fractions

2.257 表示部分在整体中所占的比例，可用分数。如 'a third' + 'of' + 表示整体的名词词组。分数可用数字表示，见 2.265 节。

分子是一的分数
singular fractions

2.258 用词语表达分数的方法取决于分子是单数还是复数。如果表达分子为 '1' 的分数，可在序数词或 'half' 和 'quarter' 等特殊分数术语前加数词 'one' 或限定词 'a'，并用 'of' 连接分数与名词词组。

*This state produces **a third** of the nation's oil.*
*...**a quarter** of an inch.*
*You can take **a fifth** of your money out on demand.*
***A tenth** of the working population will be writing material for computers.*
*Forests cover **one third** of the country.*
*...**one thousandth** of a degree.*
*...**one quarter** of the total population.*

形容词可用于限定词和分数词之间。

*...**the first half** of the twentieth century.*
*I read **the first half** of the book.*
*...**the southern half** of England.*
*...in **the last quarter** of 1980.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

2.259 'Half' 用于代词之前，后面仍跟 'of'。

*Nearly **half of it** comes from the Middle East.*
*More than **half of them** have gone home.*
***Half of us** have lost our jobs.*

注意，分数 'a half' 与 'of' 连用作量词时，通常只用 'half'。'A half' 和 'one half' 极少使用。

*They lost **half of** their pay.*
***Half of** the people went to private schools.*
*I had crossed more than **half of** America.*

分子大于一的分数
plural fractions

2.260 如果要表达分子为复数的分数，可在**序数词**或特殊分数词 'quarter' 的复数形式前加**基数词**。

*...the poorer **two thirds** of the world.*
*The journey is going to take **three quarters** of an hour.*
*...**four fifths** of the money.*
***Nine tenths** of them live on the land.*
*...**3 millionths** of a centimetre.*

'Half' 与整数连用时，可用限定词 'a'。

*...**one and a half acres** of land.*
*...**four and a half** centuries.*

与动词的一致 agreement with verb

2.261 谈到单个事物的一部分时，动词用单数形式。

Half of our work ***is*** *to design programmes.*
Two thirds of the planet's surface ***is*** *covered with water.*
Two fifths of the forest ***was*** *removed.*

但是，谈到许多事物的一部分时，动词用复数形式。

Two thirds of Chad's exports ***were*** *cotton.*
A quarter of the students ***were*** *seen individually.*
Nearly half of Jakarta's one million workers ***are*** *in the informal sector.*

分数作代词 fractions as pronouns

2.262 如果上下文交代清楚而且交谈双方都知道所指是什么，分数可作代词，不带 'of' 和名词词组。

Two thirds *were sterilized.*
One fifth *are appointed by the Regional Health Authority.*

数词后跟分数 numbers followed by fractions

2.263 除用作量词＋ 'of' ＋名词词组之外，分数还可置于整数和 'and' 之后。分数之后的名词必须用复数，即使数词是 'one' 也是如此。

You've got to sit there for ***one and a half hours.***
*...****five and a quarter days****.*
...more than ***four and a half*** *centuries ago.*

如果用 'a' 代替 'one'，'and' 和分数则置于名词之后。

*...****a mile and a half*** *below the surface.*
*...****a mile and a quarter*** *of motorway.*

'half' 作前位限定词 'half' as predeterminer

2.264 除与 'of' 连用作量词外，'half' 还可用作**前位限定词** (predeterminers)，见 1.236 节，直接用于限定词之前。

I met ***half*** *the girls at the conference.*
The farmers sold off ***half*** *their land.*
*...****half*** *a pound of coffee.*
*...****half*** *a bottle of milk.*

注意，'half' 用于代词之前，总是后接 'of'，见 2.259 节。

数字表示分数 fractions expressed in figures

2.265 分数可用数字表达。例如，$\frac{1}{2}$、$\frac{1}{4}$、$\frac{3}{4}$ 和 $\frac{2}{3}$ 分别与 'a half'、'a quarter'、'three quarters' 和 'two thirds' 相对应。

表示百分数 expressing percentages

2.266 人们常用 100 作分母表示分数，这类特殊分数叫百分数。'Three hundredths' 的百分数是 'three per cent'、'three percent' 或 '3%'；'a half' 的百分数是 'fifty per cent'、'fifty percent' 或 '50%'。

90 percent *of most food is water.*
About ***20 per cent*** *of student accountants are women.*
Before 1960 ***45%*** *of British trade was with the Commonwealth.*

如果意义明确，百分数可作为名词词组单独使用。

Ninety per cent *were self employed.*
...interest at ***10%*** *per annum.*

表示度量衡
Talking about measurements

2.267 度量衡名词前加数词或量词可表示大小、距离、面积、体积、重量、速度或温度。度量衡名词为可数名词。

They grow to twenty ***feet****.*
...blocks of stone weighing up to a hundred ***tons****.*
Reduce the temperature by a few ***degrees****.*
Average annual temperatures exceed ***20° centigrade****.*

表示距离的其他方法在6.71至6.22节讲解。表示大小、面积、体积和重量的度量衡名词常用于单位词结构（见2.211至2.224节），如'a pint of milk'和'a pound of onions'。它们还可用于由'of'引出的**后置修饰语** (qualifiers) 中，见2.300节。

英制和公制度量衡
imperial and metric measurements

2.268 英国有两种度量衡制：英制和公制，它们各有不同的度量衡名词。

下列是表示大小、距离、面积、体积和重量的英制度量衡单位：

inch	~	quart	pound
foot	acre	gallon	stone
yard	~	~	hundredweight
mile	pint	ounce	ton

注意，虽然'foot'的复数是'feet'，'foot'可与数词连用。同样'stone'常用以代替'stones'。

下列是表示大小、距离、面积、体积和重量的公制度量衡单位：

millimetre	kilometre	centilitre	gram
centimetre	hectare	litre	kilogram
metre	millilitre	milligram	tonne

作补足语
as complements

2.269 度量衡名词常作 'be'、'measure' 和 'weigh' 等**系动词** (link verbs) 的**补足语** (complements)。

*The fish **was** about eight feet long.*
*It **measures** approximately 26 inches wide x 25 inches long.*
*...a square area **measuring** 900 metres on each side.*
*It **weighs** fifty or more kilos.*

☞ 形容词作系动词补足语的用法在 3.133 至 3.138 节讲解。

度量衡名词后跟形容词
adjectives after measurements

2.270 表示大小的度量衡名词作补足语时，后面常跟形容词，准确说明是对什么进行度量。

*He was about **six feet tall**.*
*The spears were about **six foot long**.*
*...a room **2 metres wide**.*
*The water was **fifteen feet deep**.*
*...a layer of stone **four metres thick**.*

下列形容词用于度量衡名词之后表示大小：

broad	high	tall	wide
deep	long	thick	

注意，不可说 'two pounds heavy'，必须说 'two pounds in weight'。

度量衡名词后跟介词短语
prepositional phrases after measurements

2.271 同样，有些度量衡名词可跟由 'in' 引出的介词短语。

*...a block of ice one cubic foot **in size**.*
*I put on nearly a stone **in weight**.*
*They are thirty centimetres **in length**.*
*...deposits measuring up to a kilometre **in thickness**.*
*It was close on ten feet **in height**.*

下表中的介词短语用于度量衡名词之后：

in area	in distance	in length	in thickness	in weight
in depth	in height	in size	in volume	in width

度量衡名词作前置修饰语
measurement nouns used as modifiers

2.272 描述事物大小时，度量衡名词可作名词的前置修饰语。

*...a **5 foot 9 inch** bed.*
*...**70 foot high** mounds of dust.*

*...**12 x 12 inch** tiles.*
*...a **five-pound** bag of lentils.*

注意，这里度量衡名词是单数。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

2.273 详述一件物体或面积的大小时，可交代其维度，即指出其长和宽，或长、宽和深度。表示维度时，可用 'and'、'by' 或乘号 'x' 将数字分开。

*...planks of wood about **three inches thick and two feet wide**.*
*The island measures about **25 miles by 12 miles**.*
*Lake Nyasa is **450 miles long by about 50 miles wide**.*
*The box measures approximately **26 inches wide x 25 inches deep x 16 inches high**.*

描述正方形物体或面积时，可在各边边长之后加 'square'。

*Each family has only one room eight or ten feet **square**.*
*The site measures roughly 35 feet **square**.*

'Square' 用于长度单位之前时，表示面积。'Cubic' 用于长度单位之前时，表示体积。

*...a farm covering 300 **square miles**.*
*The brain of the first ape-men had been about the same size as that of a gorilla, around 500 **cubic centimetres**.*

温度分摄氏度和华氏度两种。注意，在日常英语中用公制术语 'centigrade' 表示，在科技语言中，用 'celsius' 指与 'centigrade' 完全相同的测定标度。

2.274 速度指单位时间内事物行进的距离。可用名词 'mile'、'kilometre' 等 + 'per'、'a' 或 'an' + 时间名词表示。

*The car could do only forty-five **miles per hour**.*
*Wind speeds at the airport were 160 **kilometres per hour**.*
*Warships move at about 500 **miles per day**.*

表示年龄
Talking about age

2.275 表示人的年龄，可用不同的方法，既可准确表示，也可大致说明。同样，表示事物的年份也有不同的方法，可准确表示也可大致说明。

表示准确年龄 indicating exact age

2.276 表示人的准确年龄，可用下列方法：

- 'be' ＋数词，有时在数词后还可加 'years old'

*I **was nineteen**, and he **was twenty-one**.*
*I'**m** only **63**.*
*She **is twenty-five years old**.*
***I am forty years old**.*

- 名词之后用 'of'（间或也用 'aged'）＋数词

*...a child **of six**.*
*...two little boys **aged** about **nine and eleven**.*

- 复合形容词

该形容词通常由数词＋表示时间段的单数名词＋ 'old' 组成。单词之间用连字号连接。

*...a **twenty-two-year-old** student.*
*...a **five-month-old** baby.*
*...Mr Watt's rattling, **ten-year-old** car.*
*...a violation of a **six-year-old** agreement.*

- 由数词＋ '-year-old' 构成的复合名词

*The servant was a pale little **fourteen-year-old** who looked hardly more than ten.*
*All the **six-year-olds** are taught by one teacher.*
*...Melvin Kalkhoven, a tall, thin **thirty-five-year-old**.*

表示大致年龄 indicating approximate age

2.277 表示人的大致年龄，可用下列方法：

- 'in' ＋物主限定词＋表示特定年龄段的复数名词，如 'twenties' 和 'teens'

*He was **in his sixties**.*
*I didn't mature till I was **in my forties**.*
*...the groups who are now **in their thirties**.*
*...when I was **in my teens**.*

注意，'early'、'mid-'、'middle' 或 'late' 可表示某人的年龄在特定年龄段中的大致阶段。

*He was then **in his late seventies**.*
*She was **in her mid-twenties**.*
*Jane is only **in her early forties**.*

- 'over' 或 'under' ＋数词

*She was well **over fifty**.*
*She was only a little **over forty years old**.*
*There weren't enough people who were **under 25**.*

注意，‘above’ 或 ‘below’ + ‘the age of’ +数词也可表示大致年龄。

*55 per cent of them were **below the age of twenty-one**.*

• 表示年龄大于或小于一定岁数的若干人的复合名词。这种名词由 ‘over’ 或 ‘under’ +某一种数词的复数形式构成。

*The **over-sixties** do not want to be turned out of their homes.*
*Schooling for **under-fives** should be expanded.*

2.278 在上述诸结构中，有几种可置于名词之后表示人的年龄或事物的年份。

*...a woman **in her early thirties**.*
*...help for elderly ladies **over 65**.*
*She had four children **under the age of five**.*

2.279 如果表示一个人的年龄与另一个人相同，可在名词后用 ‘of his age’ 或 ‘of her parents’ age’ 一类结构。‘Of’ 常常省去。

*In France most folk **of Mike's age** are doing their National Service.*
*It's easy to make friends because you're with people **of your own age**.*
*She will have a tough time when she plays with children **her own age**.*

表示事物的年份
indicating the age of a thing

2.280 表示事物的年份，可用下列方法：

• ‘be’ +数词+ ‘years old’

*It's at least **a thousand million years old**.*
*The house was about **thirty years old**.*

注意，这种结构也可用于名词之后。

*...rocks **200 million years old**.*

• 序数词+ ‘century’

这种复合形容词表示事物存在于哪个世纪或在哪个世纪制造。

*...a **sixth-century** church.*
*...life in **fifth-century** Athens.*

大致数量
Approximate amounts and measurements

2.281 事物的确切数目、大小或数量不详时，可用一类特殊的词和表达式表示其大致数量。这些特殊的词和表达式有的用于数量之前，有的用于数量之后。

下列是一些表示大致数量的词和表达式：

about	at most	no more than	roughly
almost	at the most	odd	some
approximately	less than	or so	something like
around	more than	or thereabouts	under
at least	nearly	over	up to

表达最小量 expressing minimum amounts

2.282 在上表中，有些单词和表达式表示最小数量，而实际数字要大一些或可能大一些。

下列表达式表示最小量：

a minimum of	minimum	or more	plus
at least	more than	over	

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.283 'A minimum of'、'more than' 和 'over' 可放在数目之前。

*He needed **a minimum of** 26 Democratic votes.*
*...a school with **more than** 1300 pupils.*
*The British have been on the island for **over** a thousand years.*

'Or more' 和 'plus' 可置于数目或数量之后；'minimum' 则只能放在数量之后。

*...a choice of three **or more** possibilities.*
*This is the worst disaster I can remember in my 25 years **plus** as a police officer.*
*They should be getting £38 a week **minimum**.*

'At least' 既可置于数目之前也可置于数目或数量之后。

*She had **at least** a dozen brandies.*
*I must have slept twelve hours **at least**!*

表达最大量 expressing maximum amounts

2.284 在大致数量表达式中，有些用于表示最大量，而实际数字比要表示的量小一些，或可能小一些。

下列表达式表示最大量：

almost	at the most	no more than	up to
a maximum of	less than	or less	
at most	maximum	or under	
at the maximum	nearly	under	

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

2.285 'Almost'、'a maximum of'、'less than'、'nearly'、'no more than'、'under' 和 'up to' 用于数目之前。

The company now supplies ***almost*** *100 of Paris's restaurants.*
These loans must be repaid over ***a maximum of*** *three years.*
...a puppy ***less than*** *seven weeks old.*
She had ***nearly*** *fifty dollars.*
We managed to finish the entire job in ***under*** *three months.*
Their bodies might be ***up to*** *a metre wide.*

'At the maximum'、'at most'、'at the most'、'maximum'、'or less' 和 'or under' 用于数目之后。

They might have IQs of 10 or 50 ***at the maximum****.*
The images take thirty-six hours ***maximum****.*
The area would yield only 200 pounds of rice ***or less****.*
...12 hours a week ***or under****.*

表达大致数量
expressing approximate amounts

2.286 在大致数量表达式中，有些用于表示近似数量。实际数量可能要大一些，也可能要小一些。

下列表达式表示近似数量：

about	odd	roughly
approximately	or so	some
around	or thereabouts	something like

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

2.287 'About'、'approximately'、'around'、'roughly'、'some' 和 'something like' 用于数目前。

About *85 students were there.*
Every year we have ***approximately*** *40 pupils who take mathematics.*
It would cost ***around*** *35 million pounds.*
It costs ***roughly*** *£55 a year to keep a cat in food.*
They have to pay America ***some*** *$683,000 this year.*
Harrington has cheated us out of ***something like*** *thirty thousand quid over the past two years.*

'Odd' 和 'or so' 用于数目或数量之后，'or thereabouts' 用于数量之后。

...a hundred ***odd*** *acres.*
For half a minute ***or so****, neither of them spoke.*
Get the temperature to 30°C ***or thereabouts****.*

2.288 'Between' 和 'and'；'from' 和 'to'；或 'to' 单独使用可表示一范围内的数目。

Most of the farms around here are ***between four and five hundred*** *years old.*
My hospital groups contain ***from ten to twenty*** *patients.*
...peasants owning ***two to five*** *acres of land.*

注意，'between' 和 'from' 之前加 'anything' 可强调范围的大小。

An average rate of ***anything between 25 and 60 per cent*** *is usual.*
It is a job that takes ***anything from two to five weeks.***

扩展名词词组：后置修饰语
Expanding the noun group: qualifiers

2.289 本部分讨论后置修饰中心词的结构，即可置于中心词后，进一步说明人或物的结构。它们叫后置修饰语或后置修饰结构。中心词通常是名词，但不定代词或 'those' 也可作中心词。

后置修饰结构 qualifying structures

2.290 后置修饰语由一个或一个以上的词组成。本部分讨论下列后置修饰语。

- 介词短语

...a girl ***with red hair.***
...the man ***in the dark glasses.***

介词短语作后置修饰语的用法在 2.292 至 2.307 节讨论。

- 形容词＋短语或小句

...machinery ***capable of clearing rubble off the main roads.***
...the sort of weapons ***likely to be deployed against it.***
...a concept ***inconceivable a hundred years earlier.***

形容词＋短语或分句作后置修饰语的用法在 2.308 至 2.309 节讲解。

- 非限定小句

...a simple device ***to test lung function.***
...two of the problems ***mentioned above.***
He gestured towards the three cards ***lying on the table.***

关于非限定小句作后置修饰语的用法，参见 2.310 至 2.318 节。

- 说明其他名词词组的名词词组。参见 2.319 至 2.320 节。

2.291 还有些其他结构可作后置修饰语，这些结构在其他章节详述。它们是：

- 单词后置修饰语，如 'galore' 和 'concerned'。参见 2.62 至 2.66 节。
- 关系从句

Shortly after the shooting, the man ***who had done it was arrested****.*
Mooresville is the town ***that John Dillinger came from****.*

关系从句在 8.83 至 8.116 节讲解。

- 地点副词和时间副词

...down in the dungeon ***beneath****.*
...a reflection of life ***today*** *in England.*

时间副词在 5.7 至 5.83 节讲解；地点副词在 6.82 至 6.100 节讨论。

带介词短语的名词
Nouns with prepositional phrases

2.292 一般说来，任何描述事物或指明事物类别的介词短语都可直接用于名词或代词之后，作它们的后置修饰语。

...the man ***in charge****.*
...a film about four men ***on holiday****.*
She reached into the room ***behind her****.*

2.293 特别是有几种介词短语通常只能用作后置修饰语，其中 'of' 引出的介词短语为数最多，其他包括 'with'、'in' 和 'by' 短语的某些用法。

'of'

2.294 许多表示事物和动作的名词可用 'of' 引出的介词短语作后置修饰语来扩展名词的意义，使名词获得广泛的意义。'Of' 与 'love'、'fear' 等表示感情的名词连用时，表示对什么的感情，如 'fear of flying' 和 'love of animals'。'Of' 的其他意义在以下几节分述。

⚠ 注意 Warning

2.295 通常人称代词不用于 'of' 之后，如不能说 'Joyce was the daughter of him' 或 'the pages of it'。可用物主限定词代替表示领属关系。参见 1.192 至 1.207 节。

2.296 'Of' 引出的介词短语可表示事物的构成成份。

...gifts ***of olive oil****.*
...strong feelings ***of jealousy****.*

它们还可用来表示事物的话题。

...a picture of ***a house****.*
...Gretchen's account ***of her interview with Nichols****.*
...the idea ***of death****.*

2.297 'Of' 引出的介词短语可表示事物属于某人或某物或与某人或某物有关。

COBUILD is a trademark ***of William Collins Sons & Co. Ltd****.*
No. 28 was the town house ***of Sir Winston Churchill****.*
Joyce was the daughter ***of the village cobbler****.*
The acting ability ***of the pupils*** *is admirable.*
...the beauty ***of the Welsh landscape****.*
Four boys sat on the floor ***of the living room****.*
Ellen aimlessly turned the pages ***of her magazine****.*

注意，表示事物属于某人或某物，''s' 结构比 'of' 引出的介词短语要常用得多。''s' 在 2.180 至 2.192 节讨论。

2.298 'Of' 引出的介词短语可表示某人或某物具有特定的品质。

...a woman ***of energy and ambition****.*
...problems ***of varying complexity****.*
...a flower ***of monstrous proportions****.*
A household ***of this size*** *inevitably has problems.*

'Of' 还可用于数词之前，表示人的年龄。

...a woman ***of twenty-two****.*
...a child ***of six****.*

☞ 关于表示年龄的其他方法，参见 2.275 至 2.280 节。

2.299 'Of' 引出的介词短语与动作名词连用，可表示谁或什么是动作的施行者。

...the arrival ***of the police****.*
...the growth ***of modern industry****.*

它们还可表示谁或什么是动作的承受者。例如，可称支持某计划的人为 'the supporters of the scheme'。

*...supporters **of the hunger strike**.*
*...critics **of the Trade Union Movement**.*
*...the creator **of the universe**.*
*...a student **of English**.*
*...the cause **of the tragedy**.*

'Of' 结构可表示受动作影响的事物。

*...the destruction **of their city**.*
*...the appointment **of Robert Courtney Smith** as the official receiver.*

2.300 'Of' 引出的介词短语和度量衡词连用可表示面积、速度、距离的大小或温度的高低。

*There were fires burning over a total area **of about 600 square miles**.*
*It can barely maintain a speed **of 25 kilometres an hour**.*
*...an average annual temperature **of 20°C**.*

☞ 度量事物的方法在 2.267 至 2.274 节讨论。

'with' **2.301** 'With' 引出的介词短语可表示某人或某物所具有的特征、特点或拥有的事物。

*...a girl **with red hair**.*
*...a girl **with a foreign accent**.*
*...a big car **with reclining seats**.*
*...a man **with a violent temper**.*
*...the man **with the gun**.*
*...those **with large families**.*

它们还可用来表示某物表面具有或内部包含的事物。

*...a sheet of paper **with writing on it**.*
*...a round box **with some buttons in it**.*
*...a white, plain envelope **with her name printed on it**.*
*...fragments of wrapping paper **with bits of sticky tape still adhering to them**.*

'in' **2.302** 'In' 引出的介词短语可表示穿戴。

*...a grey-haired man **in a raincoat**.*
*...the man **in the dark glasses**.*
*...little groups of people **in black**.*

'by' **2.303** 'By' 引出的介词短语用于动作名词之后，可表示谁或什么是动作的施行者。

...his appointment ***by the King****.*
...the compression of air ***by the piston****.*

与介词短语连用 with prepositional phrases

2.304 有些名词，尤其是抽象名词，需要带介词短语表明它们与什么有关。特定名词带哪个介词选择的余地常常极小，有时根本没有。

I demanded access ***to a telephone****.*
...his authority ***over them****.*
...the solution ***to our energy problem****.*
...the bond ***between mother and child****.*

2.305 下列名词通常或时常带 'to'：

access	answer	disloyalty	recourse	susceptibility
addiction	antidote	exception	reference	testimony
adherence	approach	fidelity	relevance	threat
affront	attachment	immune	reply	vulnerability
allegiance	aversion	incitement	resistance	witness
allergy	contribution	introduction	return	
allusion	damage	preface	sequel	
alternative	devotion	prelude	solution	

下列名词通常或时常带 'for'：

admiration	cure	disrespect	recipe	substitute
appetite	demand	hunger	regard	sympathy
aptitude	desire	love	remedy	synonym
bid	disdain	need	respect	taste
craving	dislike	provision	responsibility	thirst
credit	disregard	quest	room	

下列名词通常或时常带 'on'：

assault	comment	curb	hold	restriction
attack	concentration	dependence	insistence	stance
ban	constraint	effect	reflection	tax
claim	crackdown	embargo	reliance	

下列名词通常或时常带 'with'：

affinity	correspondence	familiarity	link
collision	date	identification	parity
collusion	dealings	intersection	quarrel
connection	dissatisfaction	intimacy	relationship
contrast	encounter	involvement	sympathy

下列名词通常可带两个介词中的一个，下表说明有哪些介词可供选择：

agreement about	battle against	debate about	transition from
agreement on	battle for	debate on	transition to
argument against	case against	decision about	
argument for	case for	decision on	

下列名词通常带一个介词：

complex about	reaction against	excerpt from	relapse into
~	safeguard against	freedom from	~
crime against	~	quotation from	authority over
grudge against	departure from	~	control over
insurance against	escape from	foray into	

从上面表格及例句可以看出，同义词常用同一个介词。例如：'appetite'、'craving'、'desire'、'hunger' 和 'thirst' 均带介词 'for'。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

2.306 有些动词总是或时常与特定介词连用，由这些动词转化而成的名词也用相同的介词。它们表示受动作影响的事物。例如，动词 'refer' 及其相应的名词 'reference' 均带介词 'to'。

*We have already **referred to** this phenomenon.*
*...reverent **references to** the importance of home.*
*They swim about busily **searching for** food.*
*...the **search for** food.*
*I want to **escape from** here.*
*...an **escape from** reality.*

2.307 有些表示感情或状态的形容词通常与固定介词连用，由这些形容词转化而成的名词也用相同的介词。例如，形容词 'aware' 及其相应的名词 'awareness' 均带介词 'of'。

*She was quite **aware of** her current situation.*
*...the public's increasing **awareness of** the problems.*

*He was **angry at** Sally Gardner for accusing him.*
*...her **anger at** the kids.*

*I am, of course, **familiar with** your work.*
*...**familiarity with** western ideas.*

*It is clean and **free from** pollutants and infections.*
*...**freedom from** oppression.*

名词与形容词连用
Nouns with adjectives

2.308 在后置修饰小句中，形容词用在名词或代词之后时，后跟：

- 介词短语

...machinery ***capable of clearing rubble off the main roads****.*
...a warning to people ***eager for a quick cure****.*
...those ***responsible for the project****.*
...the vicious poverty cycle ***so common in single-parent families****.*

- 'to'- 不定式小句

...the sort of weapons ***likely to be deployed against it****.*
It has been directed against those ***least able to retaliate*** *.*

- 时间或地点附加状语

...a concept ***inconceivable a hundred years earlier****.*
For the facilities ***available here****, I must ask for a fee.*
Unfortunately, the work ***visible in this location*** *is a late-nineteenth-century restoration.*

注意，形容词前加时间附加状语或度量衡词时，可作后置修饰语。

...those ***still alive****.*
...a small hill ***about 400 feet high****.*

注意，'present'、'responsible' 等少数形容词可单独用于名词或代词之后。参见 2.62 至 2.66 节。

其他后置修饰结构 other qualifying structures

2.309 其他一些结构，特别是表示比较、程度或结果的结构，也常含有后置修饰语。特别是一些形容词的次前置修饰语，它们常带后置修饰语使其意义完整。

Peter came in, ***more excited than anyone had seen him before****.*
Ralph was ***too angry to think clearly****.*
...steel cylinders ***strong enough to survive a nuclear catastrophe****.*
...a grand piano ***as big as two coffins****.*
The winter has been ***so bitter that the stream was low****.*
Technology has made ***such spectacular advances that it is difficult to keep up****.*

比较级形容词加 'than' 用于名词词组之后的用法，在 2.111 至 2.113 节讨论。比较事物的其他方法，见 2.128 至 2.144 节。'So...that' 和 'such...that' 的用法在 8.58 至 8.63 节讲解。

名词与非限定小句连用
Nouns with non-finite clauses

2.310 有三类非限定小句可作后置修饰语，它们是：'to'-不定式小句（见 2.311 至 2.316 节）、过去分词小句（见 2.317 节）和现在分词小句（见 2.318 节）。

与 'to'-不定式小句连用
with 'to'-infinitive clauses

2.311 'To'-不定式小句常用于名词之后，表示所指事物被用来起什么作用。

The government of Mexico set up a programme ***to develop new varieties of wheat****.*
...a simple device ***to test lung function****.*
They need people ***to work in the factories****.*

2.312 'To'-不定式小句置于名词或不定代词之后，可表示应该或能够对所指事物做点什么。

I make notes in the back of my diary of things ***to be mended or replaced****.*
...when I've had something ***to eat****.*

'To'-不定式小句可含 'to'-不定式＋介词。

...a room with nothing in it except a string cot ***to sleep on****, a lectern* ***to write on*** *and two wooden shelves.*
He remembered he had nothing ***to write with****.*

2.313 表示第一、年龄最长者或从事某事的唯一的一位时，可用 'to'-不定式小句。

...the first woman ***to be elected to the council****.*
...the next person ***to speak****.*
...the oldest person ***to be chosen****.*

2.314 'To'-不定式小句用于某些抽象名词后，可表示它们与哪种动作有关。

...people who didn't have the opportunity ***to go to university****.*
...trying to think of a way ***to stop him****.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

2.315 许多这类名词的相应动词或形容词，也常带 'to'-不定式小句。例如，动词 'need' 和名词 'need'，均带 'to'-不定式小句；形容词 'able' 及其相应名词 'ability' 也皆带 'to'-不定式小句。

*I **need to** borrow five thousand dollars.*
*...the **need to** preserve secrecy about their intentions.*
*I may be **able to** help you.*
*...the **ability to** read.*
*It **failed to** grow.*
*...our **failure to** adapt ourselves to modern life.*

8.316 下列名词通常或时常带不定式小句：

ability	compulsion	inability	reason	way
attempt	desire	need	refusal	willingness
bid	disinclination	opportunity	unwillingness	
chance	failure	readiness	urge	

与过去分词分句连用 with past participle clauses

8.317 过去分词小句可直接置于名词之后，表示动作的结果或承受者。

*...a girl **called Patricia**.*
*...dresses **made of paper**.*
*...two of the problems **mentioned above**.*
*...the machine **already mentioned**.*
*...a minister **appointed by the Prime Minister**.*
*...a story **written by a nine-year-old girl**.*
*...instruments **designed to extend the range of our senses**.*

与现在分词小句连用 with present participle clauses

8.318 现在分词小句可直接用于名词之后，表示某人或某物正在做某事。

*He gestured towards the three cards **lying on the table**.*
*...a wicker shopping-basket **containing groceries**.*
*...those **still working**.*
*...the scream of a man **dying in torment**.*

同位语 apposition

8.319 描述或指明某人或某事的名词词组可用于中心词之后。名词词组作同位语的用法与限定和非限定关系从句十分相似。参见 8.83 至 8.111 节。

8.320 如果这个名词词组用于主要名词词组之后，主要名词词组后几乎总是用逗号，因为第二个名词词组并非主要名词词组的一部分，是与它分开的。

*...the sifaka, **a beautiful creature with pure white fur**.*
*...Orville Wright, **the first man to fly**.*

...Dan Melnick, ***the head of MGM****.*
...Steve Race, ***the musician and broadcaster****.*
Her mother, ***a Canadian****, died when she was six.*
*...****a book by a distinguished Scotsman****, Ramsey Weir.*

如果这个名词词组位于主要名词词组之前，是否用逗号将名词词组分开有时可以随意。

*...****the American writer*** *Alvin Toffler.*
*...****Joan's husband****, Jim Inglis.*
*...****my husband*** *George.*

第三章 信息构成

3 信息构成
Making a message

概述
Introduction

3.1 进行陈述，可用句子。用以陈述的句子含名词词组和动词词组。

名词词组指所谈及的人或物，动词词组表示所述的某种动作、过程或状态。名词词组通常置于动词词组之前，作为动词或句子的主语。例如，在 'Ellen laughed' 中，'Ellen' 是主语。关于名词词组的构成，参见第一章和第二章。

陈述句的动词词组是**限定的** (finite)。限定动词词组的成份和形式因时态和动作施行者的单、复数不同而不同。动词词组的构成在附录**参考部分**讨论。在陈述分句中，由于动词词组常常只有一个单词，因而人们也常说句子的"动词"。

谈论某事时，可述及其动作的参与者是一个还是多个。在句子中表示参与者的功能叫**关涉性** (transitivity)。参见 3.2 至 3.126 节。其次可对某人或某物进行描述或指明他们是某特定事物或人。描述和指明事物叫**补足** (complementation)。参见 3.127 至 3.180 节。第三类陈述表示两个密切关联的动作，称作**级阶** (phase)。参见 3.183 至 3.213 节。

本章虽然主要讨论限定句，但其关涉性和补足同样适用于**非限定小句** (non-finite clauses)，即动词为不定式或分词的小句。与限定动词词组一样，非限定性动词词组也可带宾语、附加状语和补足语。

本章重点讲解**主动** (active) 句中动词的用法。主动句中主语是动作的施行者，而非动作的承受者。**被动** (passive) 句中动词的用法在 10.8 至 10.24 节讨论。被动句中主语是动作的承受者。

表示参与者的数目：关涉性
Indicating how many participants are involved: transitivity

3.2 在本书中，关涉性是对整个句子而言的，而在其他许多语法书中，关涉性则以动词选择宾语的情况而言。尽管一般情况下，句子虽然常以动词为中心，但这并不是说动词一定要首先选择。本书通过描述陈述句的构成，讲解主语、动词和宾语的关系。

不及物动词
intransitive verbs

3.3 如果动作或事件只涉及一个人或物，指出动作的施行者（主语）和动作（动词）即可。

The girl screamed.
I waited.
An awful thing has happened.

这类句子叫**不及物句** (intransitive clauses)。不及物句中的动词叫**不及物动词** (intransitive verbs)。如果还要指出有关的另一个人或物，可用介词短语。

She walked ***across the street****.*

☞ 关于不及物动词，参见 3.9 至 3.14 节。

及物动词
transitive verbs

3.4 如果动作或事件涉及另一个人或物作为其承受者，或与其相关或为其产物，可在动词词组后用表示这类人或物的名词词组。这样的名词词组叫动词的或句子的**宾语** (object)。如果需要将它们与其他宾语区分开来，可称这类宾语**直接宾语** (direct object)。

He closed ***the door****.*
I hate ***sport****.*
Some of the women noticed ***me****.*

含有直接宾语的句子叫**及物句** (transitive clauses)，及物句中的动词叫及物动词。关于及物动词，参见 3.15 至 3.26 节。

反身动词 (reflexive verbs) 和**泛词义动词** (delexical verbs) 是两类特殊及物动词。参见 3.27 至 3.32 和 3.33 至 3.46 节。

不及物动词或及物动词
intransitive or transitive verbs

3.5 大多数英语动词既可表示某事件只涉及主语也可表示某事件同时涉及主语和宾语。

He ***paints*** *every day.*
Yarkov ***paints vivid portraits of friends and acquaintances****.*
Gus asked me whether I'd like to have dinner with him. ***I accepted****.*
I ***accepted the invitation****.*

换句话说，大多数动词既可用于及物句也可用于不及物句。用于两类句子的动词在 3.47 至 3.55 节讨论。对于某些动词来说，其动作的承受者既可作动词的宾语，也可作介词的宾语。关于这些动词，参见 3.56 至 3.59 节。**双向动词** (ergative verbs) 是一类特殊动词，它们既可用于不及物句，也可用于及物句。参见 3.60 至 3.68 节。

相互动词
reciprocal verbs

3.6 **相互动词** (reciprocal verbs) 表示人们相互做同一动作。这类动词分为两类：一类用于及物或不及物句，另一类用于及物句，可带介词短语用以交代参与双方中的一方，也可不带介词短语。

*We **met** at Hargreaves' place.*
*I **had met him** in Zermatt.*
*We **argued** over this question for a long time.*
*I **argued with this man** for half an hour.*

☞ 关于相互动词，参见 3.69 至 3.73 节。

双及物动词
ditransitive verbs

3.7 少数及物动词还可以让说话人表示动作的受益者或由于动作的结果而有所得。这种分句既含直接宾语，又含间接宾语。

*Piggy handed **Ralph his glasses**.*
*His uncle had given **him books on India**.*
*She sends **you her love**.*
*She passed **him his cup**.*

带间接宾语和直接宾语的动词叫**双及物动词** (ditransitive verbs)。参见 3.74 至 3.83 节。

短语动词及复合动词
phrasal verbs, compound verbs

3.8 有些动词由两个或三个成份组成。这些动词叫**短语动词** (phrasal verbs) 和**复合动词** (compound verbs)。

☞ 短语动词在 3.84 至 3.117 节讨论；复合动词在 3.118 至 3.126 节讲解。

谈论只涉及主语的事件：不及物动词
Talking about events which involve only the subject: intransitive verbs

3.9 谈论不涉及其他人或物而只涉及主语的动作或事件时，用不及物动词。

*Her whole body **ached**.*
*Such people still **exist**.*
*My condition **deteriorated**.*

许多不及物动词描述人体行为或事物发出的声音。

*Bob **coughed**.*
*Vicki **wept** bitterly.*
*The gate **squeaked**.*

3.10 下列动词一般用于不及物句，通常或时常不带附加状语：

ache	disappear	fluctuate	rise	squeal
advance	disintegrate	gleam	roar	stink
arise	doze	growl	scream	subside
arrive	droop	happen	shine	sulk
bleed	economize	hesitate	shiver	surrender
blush	elapse	howl	sigh	swim
cease	ensue	itch	sleep	throb
collapse	erupt	kneel	slip	tingle
cough	evaporate	laugh	smile	vanish
crackle	exist	moan	snarl	vary
cry	expire	occur	sneeze	vibrate
decay	faint	pause	snore	wait
depart	fall	persist	snort	waver
deteriorate	falter	prosper	sob	weep
die	fidget	quiver	sparkle	wilt
digress	flinch	recede	speak	work
dine	flourish	relent	squeak	yawn

少数上述动词在习语中可用作及物动词或可与特定的宾语连用，但用于其所有的常用意义时仍为不及物动词。

不及物动词后跟介词短语
intransitive verbs followed by prepositional phrases

3.11 许多不及物动词总是或常常后跟附加状语。其中有些不及物动词的附加状语，一定是某一个介词引出的介词短语。使用介词可以指出动作的承受者，作为介词的宾语。

Everything you see here ***belongs to*** *me.*
Landlords often ***resorted to*** *violence.*
I ***sympathized with*** *them.*
I'm ***relying on*** *Bill.*
He ***yearned for*** *academic recognition.*

3.12 表示特定意义时下列动词总是或通常用特定介词：

rave about	~	yearn for
~	appeal for	~
insure against	atone for	detract from
plot against	care for	emanate from
react against	clamour for	emerge from
~	hope for	radiate from
hint at	long for	shrink from
~	opt for	stem from
alternate between	pay for	suffer from
differentiate between	qualify for	~
oscillate between	strive for	believe in

consist in	~	dictate to
culminate in	bet on	lead to
dabble in	feed on	listen to
indulge in	insist on	object to
invest in	spy on	refer to
result in	trample on	relate to
wallow in	~	resort to
~	adhere to	revert to
lapse into	allude to	stoop to
~	amount to	~
complain of	appeal to	alternate with
conceive of	aspire to	associate with
consist of	assent to	consort with
despair of	attend to	contend with
learn of	belong to	flirt with
smack of	bow to	grapple with
think of	cling to	sympathize with
tire of	defer to	teem with

下列动词后接可供选择的两个介词：

abound in	end in	lust after
abound with	end with	lust for
cater for	engage in	prevail on
cater to	engage on	prevail upon
conform to	enthuse about	profit by
conform with	enthuse over	profit from
contribute to	gravitate to	rely on
contribute towards	gravitate towards	reply upon
depend on	hunger after	revolve around
depend upon	hunger for	revolve round
dote on	improve on	spring from
dote upon	improve upon	spring out of
embark on	liaise between	
embark upon	liaise with	

注意，有些不及物动词带介词时，可用被动结构，参见 10.23 节。

不及物动词后跟附加状语
intransitive verbs followed by adjuncts

3.13 另外一些动词可带各种不同的介词短语或副词作附加状语，这类状语时常作**地点附加状语**(adjuncts of place)。关于这些附加状语，参见第六章。行进动词经常或时常后跟表示方向的附加状语。

*He went **back to his own room**.*
*I travelled **south**.*

下列是行进动词：

come	flow	hurtle	spring
crawl	gallop	plunge	stroll
creep	glide	run	travel
drift	go	soar	walk

'Look'、'gaze' 和 'stare' 也可后跟表示方向的附加状语。定位动词通常带方位附加状语。

Donald was lying ***on the bed****.*
She lives ***in Lausanne****.*
I used to live ***here****.*

下列是定位动词：

be	lie	sit	stay
belong	live	be situated	
hang	remain	stand	

'Extend'、'stretch' 等动词后接表示范围的附加状语。

The storm we're in now extends ***all the way from here to Newfoundland****.*

少数几个动词总是后接其他种类的附加状语。

It behaves ***rather like a squirrel****.*
The Child-minders' Action Movement has successfully campaigned ***for many improvements****.*
I hoped that the absorption of poison hadn't progressed ***too far****.*

下列动词总是后接其他种类的附加状语：

act	behave	campaign	progress

偶尔作及物动词的动词
verbs which are occasionally transitive

3.14 少数动词通常不及物，但若与某一个特定宾语连用，它们则及物。这类宾语通常直接由动词转化而来。例如 'smile' 一般情况下不及物，但它与名词 'smile' 连用时则为及物动词，如 'He smiled a patient smile' 可代替 'He smiled patiently'。上述含有宾语的句子属文学语言，强调微笑的类型，而非微笑这一个动作。

Steve ***smiled his thin, cruel smile****.*
He appears to have ***lived the life of any other rich gentleman****.*
Alice ***laughed a scornful laugh****.*
I once ***dreamed a very nice dream*** *about you.*

下列动词只有当其宾语直接由动词转化而来时，才用作及物动词：

dance (a dance)	dream (a dream)	live (a life)	smile (a smile)
die (a death)	laugh (a laugh)	sigh (a sigh)	

突出名词词组的常用方法是，使用 'give'、'take' 和 'have' 等**乏词义动词** (delexical verbs)。例如，'Mary gave him a really lovely smile'。关于乏词义动词的用法，详见 3.33 至 3.46 节。

涉及主语以外的其他人或物：及物动词
Involving someone or something other than the subject: transitive verbs

3.15 许多描述事件的动词，除涉及主语外，还一定涉及其他人或物。部分这类动词只能用于及物句。

*The extra profit **justifies** the investment.*
*He **had committed** a disgraceful action.*
*They **wanted** an assistant in the box office.*

这意味着它们带直接宾语。

*She had **friends**.*
*Children seek **independence**.*
*The trial raised **a number of questions**.*

不同种类的宾语
different types of object

3.16 许多只用于及物句的动词可带各种各样的宾语。例如，可用动词 'want' 表达人们需要金钱、休息、成功等许多东西。

*She **wanted** some help.*
*I **put** my hand on the door.*
*She **described** her background.*
*I still **support** the government.*
*He **had** always **liked** Mr Phillips.*
*Japan **has** a population of about a hundred million.*

由于意义限制，有些及物动词只能与某些宾语连用。例如，动词 'kill' 的宾语只能是有生命的东西；动词 'waste' 的宾语必须是有用的事物，如时间、金钱或食物。

*They **killed** huge elephants with tiny poisoned darts.*
*Why **waste** money on them?*

3.17 下列是及物动词表：

achieve	cut	get	maintain	rent
address	damage	give	make	report
admire	defy	grant	mean	respect
affect	demand	guard	mention	reveal
afford	describe	handle	name	risk
avoid	design	hate	need	see
bear	desire	have	own	seek
believe	destroy	hear	plant	sell
blame	discover	heat	please	shock
build	discuss	hire	prefer	specify
buy	display	hit	prevent	spot
calm	do	include	process	support
carry	dread	influence	produce	take
catch	enjoy	introduce	pronounce	tease
claim	equal	issue	protect	test
commit	exchange	justify	provide	threaten
complete	expect	keep	raise	trust
concern	experience	kill	reach	upset
consider	express	know	receive	use
control	favour	lack	recommend	value
convince	fear	like	record	want
correct	fill	list	release	waste
cover	find	love	remember	wear
create	free	lower	remove	welcome

注意，‘do’ 和 ‘have’ 还时常作助动词用，这种用法在附录**参考部分**讲解。

表示领属时，‘have got’ 和 ‘has got’ 常用来代替 ‘have’ 的现在时，用于 ‘got’ 之前的 ‘have’ 具有助动词的功能。‘Had got’ 有时也可表示过去，但一般常用 ‘had’。

*I**'ve got** an umbrella.*
*She**'s got** a degree.*
*He**'d got** over fifty horses.*

‘Measure’ 和 ‘weigh’ 表示度量衡时，有时被认为是及物动词。这种用法在 2.269 节讲解。‘Cost’ 用来表示某物的费用，如 ‘An adult ticket costs 90p’。

指人的宾语
human objects

3.18 说明某物影响的是人而不是物时，在英语中，一般要交代这个人。因而 ‘anger’、‘thank’ 和 ‘warn’ 一类影响人的动词一般用于及物句。

*My questions **angered** the crowd.*

Her sudden death ***had surprised*** *everybody.*
Blue ***suits*** *you.*
Money did not ***interest*** *him very much.*
Lebel ***briefed*** *Caron on the events of the afternoon.*

3.19 下列动词通常带指人的宾语：

anger	contact	suit	thank
brief	frighten	surprise	trouble
comfort	interest	tease	warn

需要附加状语的及物动词 transitive verbs which need an adjunct

3.20 某些及物动词的宾语必须带**附加状语** (adjuncts) 详述情况如何。

有些动词的宾语后常跟以特定介词引出的介词短语。

The judge ***based*** *his decision* ***on constitutional rights****.*
He ***had subjected*** *me* ***to the pressure of financial ruin****.*
Mr. Claude Cheysoon ***regards*** *the third world* ***as his top priority****.*

下列动词的宾语后总是或通常跟特定介词：

regard as	deprive of	condemn to	subordinate to
view as	remind of	confine to	~
~	rid of	consign to	acquaint with
mistake for	rob of	dedicate to	associate with
swap for	~	entitle to	confront with
~	accustom to	liken to	engrave with
dissociate from	ascribe to	owe to	pelt with
prevent from	attribute to	return to	ply with
~	compare to	subject to	trust with

下列动词可跟不同介词：

divide by	~	~	present to
divide into	base on	entrust to	present with
~	base upon	entrust with	supply to
incorporate in	lavish on	equate to	supply with
incorporate into	lavish upon	equate with	

3.21 其他动词主要带**地点附加状语** (adjuncts of place)，不带以特定介词引出的介词短语。

*He **placed** the baby **on the woman's lap**.*
*I **positioned** my chair **outside the room**.*
*He never **puts** anything **away**.*
*He **treated** his labourers **with kindness**.*

通常下列动词的宾语后带某类附加状语：

bring	escort	lead	rip	store
chuck	fling	place	send	throw
convey	hoist	point	set	thrust
cram	jab	position	shove	tie
direct	jot	prop	smear	treat
drag	lay	put	stick	

☞ 关于附加状语，参见第六章。

定位和行进及物动词
transitive verbs of position and movement

3.22 注意：有些行进和定位动词是及物动词，不是不及物动词，它们后接表示地点的名词词组，不接副词或介词短语，因为这些动词本身已具体表示某种移动或方位。

例如，'enter' 已隐含移动 'into' 某个地方；'occupy' 表示 'in' 某个地方的位置。

*As they **neared** the outskirts of the city the traffic thickened.*
*It was dark by the time they **reached** their house.*
*A small ornamental pool **occupied** the centre of the room.*
*Roaring aircraft **filled** the sky.*

下列是表示行进的及物动词：

approach	leave	reach
enter	near	round

下列是表示定位的及物动词：

cover	fill	occupy
crowd	inhabit	throng

有些行进动词既可带名词词组，也可带介词短语。参见 3.59 节。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

3.23 注意：即使几乎总是带直接宾语的动词，偶尔也可用作不及物动词。这种用法只用于被特别限定的上下文中。例如对比两个动作时，就不一定指出所涉及的其他事物。

*Money markets are the places where people with money **buy** and **sell**.*
*Some people **build** while others **destroy**.*
*We **gave**, they **took**.*

使用一组不同的动词进行强调时，也不必指出宾语。

*They set out to be rude; to **defy**, **threaten**, or **tease**.*

为了将一个动作与另一个类似动作进行对比或者为了强调某一个动作而重复动词时，宾语可以省去。

*She had ceased **to love** as she **had** once **loved**.*

3.24 描述情感和态度的动词，有时不带宾语，在 'to'-**不定式** ('to'-infinitive) 中尤其如此。这是因为此不定式的宾语泛指所有人。例如，'please' 通常需带宾语，但可说 'He likes to please'，意即他喜欢取悦于人。

*He likes **to shock**.*
*She was anxious **to please**.*
*He must be convinced if he is **to convince**.*
*I have a tendency **to tease**.*

转述动词
reporting verbs

3.25 许多动词，如 'say'、'suggest' 和 'think' 可用来转述人们的所言或所想。这些动词叫**转述动词** (reporting verbs)，它们带 'that'-从句，叫**被转述从句** (reported clauses)。

*She **said** that she would come.*

被转述从句常被视为宾语，这些动词通常也被称为及物动词。在本书中，转述动词在第七章讨论。

转述动词 'advise'、'persuade' 等带有指动作对象的宾语。它们在 7.71 至 7.72 节讲解。

有些转述动词可接名词作宾语，如表示所述或所写的名词 'question' 或 'story'。这些动词在 7.78 节列出。

还有一些转述动词带表示事件或事实的宾语，因而与 'that'-从句有紧密联系。这些动词在 7.79 节列出。

'Believe'、'know' 等动词可作转述动词用，但它们用于另一种常见意义时，属普通及物动词。这些动词已列入上述及物动词表中。

3.26 大多数及物动词可用于被动语态。参见 10.8 至 10.21 节。

动词的宾语返指主语：反身动词
Verbs where the object refers back to the subject: reflexive verbs

产出性特征
PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

3.27 如果某个动作通常涉及两个不同的人，而说话人却想表示同一个人被涉及两次，表达这一个信息可用**反身代词** (reflexive pronouns) 作句子的宾语。例如，若某事出了差错，通常会责怪别人，但若说话者是唯一一个应受责备的人时，可说 'I blame myself for what happened'。

虽然少数动词常常与反身代词连用，事实上如果意义允许，反身代词可作任何及物动词的宾语。

*I **blame myself** for not paying attention.*
*She **freed herself** from my embrace.*
*After the meeting, he **introduced himself** to me.*
*I had decided to **kill myself**.*
***Don't deceive yourself**.*
*We Americans **must ask ourselves** several questions.*
*The insect, in effect, **is eating itself**.*

这是英语的**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**讲解。

☞ 反身代词在 1.115 至 1.122 节讲解。

真正的反身动词
true reflexive verbs

3.28 注意，动词 'busy'、'content' 和 'pride' 是真正的反身动词，它们必须与反身代词连用。

*He **had busied himself** in the laboratory.*
*Conrad and I **contented ourselves** with expressing our relief.*
*He **prides himself** on his tidiness.*

3.29 还有少数动词只能用反身代词作宾语指人。例如，可用 'express an opinion' 和 'express yourself' 来表达自己的观点，但不能说 'express a person'。

*Professor Baxendale **expressed himself** very forcibly.*
*She **enjoyed herself** enormously.*
*He **applied himself** to learning how Parliament worked.*

下列动词带反身代词作宾语指人：

apply	distance	excel	express
compose	enjoy	exert	strain

反身代词用来强调
reflexive pronouns used for emphasis

3.30 有些动词通常不带宾语，因为它们只牵涉动作的施行者，但若强调主语正在为自己做某件事时，可用反身代词作宾语。例如，'Bill washed himself' 可代替 'Bill washed'。

*I always **wash** five times a day.*
*Children were encouraged to **wash themselves**.*

*I stood in the kitchen while he **shaved**.*
*He prefers to **shave himself** before breakfast.*

*Ashton **had behaved** abominably.*
*He is old enough to **behave himself** like a gentleman.*

*The Eskimoes **are adapting** to change.*
*You've got to be willing to **adapt yourself**.*

下列动词具有某些强调意义时，可用带反身代词：

acclimatize	dress	readjust	wash
adapt	hide	shave	
behave	move	undress	

3.31 谈及自己为自己做某事，反身代词在英语中不如在其他语言中用得多。如上所述，'I washed' 一般在英语中代替 'I washed myself'。有时可用含有领属格的名词词组替代反身代词。例如 'I combed my hair' 可代替 'I combed myself'。

3.32 注意，反身动词不用于被动语态。

几乎没有词义的动词：乏词义动词
Verbs with little meaning: delexical verbs

3.33 部分带名词宾语的常用动词仅表示某人进行一个动作，不表示他影响或创造某个物，动词这样用时不含什么意义。

例如，在 'She had a shower' 中，'had' 本身的词义几乎消失，整个句子的基本含义由名词 'shower' 传达。

*We **were having a joke**.*
*Roger **gave a grin** of sheer delight.*
*He **took a step** towards Jack.*

乏词义动词
verbs which are often delexical

3.34 本部分集中讨论用于上述及物结构的最常见动词。这些动词叫**乏词义动词** (delexical verbs)。由有乏词义动词加名词词组构成的结构叫**乏词义结构** (delexical structure)。

下列动词是乏词义动词，其中前四个极为常用：

give	take	hold
have	~	keep
make	do	set

注意，在乏词义结构中，'have got' 不能代替 'have'。在当代英语中，尽管乏词义动词数目不大，但乏词义结构却非常普通。乏词义动词包括一些英语中最常见的词。这一种结构有助于使用英语的外国人流利地用英语表达。

3.35 在许多情况下，动词与乏词义结构具有相似的含义。例如，动词 'look' 几乎与 'have a look' 含义相同。所不同的是动词 'look' 侧重看的动作，如 'I looked round the room'。乏词义结构中的名词则用于指出事件的名称。乏词义结构比突出动词的结构似乎更为可取。注意，与乏词义结构相对应的动词常常是不及物动词。

*She **made a signal**.*
*She **signalled** for a taxi.*

*A couple **were having a drink** at a table by the window.*
*A few students **were drinking** at the bar.*

*She **gave an amused laugh**.*
*They both **laughed**.*

*He **gave a vague reply**.*
*They **replied** to his letter.*

但也有一些动词是及物动词。

*I **had a glimpse** of the speedometer.*
*I **glimpsed** a bright flash of gold on the left.*

*He **gave a little sniff**.*
*I **sniffed** the room.*

*Comis **took a photograph** of her.*

*They **photographed** the pigeons in Trafalgar Square.*

与单数名词连用
with singular noun

3.36 作乏词义动词宾语的名词常常是单数而且前面通常有不定冠词。

*She **made a remark** about the weather.*
*She **gave a cry** when I came in.*
*I **might take a stroll**.*

下列具数名词与乏词义动词连用时，几乎总是用单数形式：

cry	grumble	smell
feel	need	taste
grouse	read	try

注意，在整个英语里，这些词多用作动词。

与复数名词连用 with plural noun

3.37 乏词义动词也可与复数名词连用。

*She **took little ladylike sips** of the cold drink.*
*He **took photographs** of Vita in her summer house.*
*The newspaper **had made disparaging remarks** about his wife.*

与不具数名词连用 with uncount noun

3.38 乏词义动词偶尔也与不具数名词连用。

*We **have made progress** in both science and art.*
*Cal **took charge** of this side of their education.*

表示短暂事件 indicating a brief event

3.39 乏词义结构与近义动词在含义上的一个区别是：乏词义结构暗含所描写的是短暂的事件，例如，'She gave a scream' 表示一声短暂的尖叫，而 'She screamed' 无此含义。

*Mr. Sutton **gave a shout** of triumph.*
*Zoe **gave a sigh** of relief.*
*He **gave a laugh**.*

使用形容词 using adjectives

3.40 选择乏词义结构的另一个理由是：可在名词前加形容词详述事件，从而避免使用副词。例如，人们常说 'He gave a quick furtive glance round the room'，很少说 'He glanced quickly and furtively round the room'，因为后一句话显得臃肿且不自然。

*He **gave a long lecture** about Roosevelt.*
*She **had a good cry**.*
*Benn **made a sincere personal appeal** to the Committee.*
*These legends **hold a romantic fascination** for many Japanese.*

无相应动词形式的名词
nouns with no equivalent verb

3.41 乏词义结构中的部分名词没有相应的近义动词。有时虽然有这种动词，但形式却不尽相同。

Work experience allows students to ***make more effective career decisions****.*
The Prime Minister ***decided*** *she had heard enough.*

He ***made the shortest speech*** *I've ever heard.*
Iain ***spoke*** *candidly about the crash.*

在乏词义结构中，还有一些名词根本就没有意义相近的动词，因而无其他结构可供使用。

He had been out all day ***taking pictures*** *of the fighting.*
That is ***a very foolish attitude to take****.*
She ***made a number of relevant points****.*
Try not ***to make so much noise****.*

与 'have' 连用的名词
nouns used with 'have'

3.42 在大多数情况下，只有一个特定的乏词义动词能与任何一个特定的名词连用。

下列例句说明与 'have' 连用的名词：

They ***have a desperate need*** *to communicate.*
The Americans ***had a nonchalant belief*** *in their technological superiority.*
She ***had had a good cry****.*
Let's not ***have a quarrel****.*
We ***could have a talk****.*

下列名词用于 'have' 之后:

belief	dance	grumble	respect
chat	fall	need	sleep
cry	grouse	quarrel	talk

与 'take' 连用的名词
nouns used with 'take'

3.43 下列例句说明与 'take' 连用的名词。

His work was ***to take photographs*** *while flying over Germany.*
...kids ***taking turns*** *to use a playground slide.*
He ***was taking no chances****.*
She was prepared ***to take great risks****.*
Mr Korwin ***takes a protectionist attitude*** *towards women who, he claims, look for someone* ***to take care*** *of them.*
Davis ***took the lead*** *in blaming the pilots.*
The Government fought against suggestions that it ***should take full blame*** *for the affair.*

下列名词与 'take' 连用。其中第一类是具数名词；第二类是不具数名词或总是单数或复数的名词：

attitude	picture	charge	power
chance	risk	consequences	responsibility
decision	turn	form	shape
interest	~	lead	time
photo	blame	offence	trouble
photograph	care	office	

与 'give' 连用的名词
nouns used with 'give'

3.44 许多名词可用于 'give' 之后。一些与 'give' 连用的名词表示口头发声或面部表情。这种用法表示无意识的动作或并非有针对性的动作。例如，'She gave a scream' 表示她禁不住大叫一声。

The young cashier ***gave a patient sigh****.*
Roger ***gave a grin*** *of sheer delight.*
He ***gave a shrill gasp*** *of shock.*
Both of them ***gave an involuntary little giggle****.*
He ***gave a rare chuckle****.*

下列名词表示口头发声或面部表情类动作：

chuckle	grin	scream	smile	yell
cry	groan	shout	sniff	
gasp	laugh	shriek	snigger	
giggle	scowl	sigh	whistle	

另一类名词前面常带间接宾语，因为它们所描述的动作，除涉及主语外，还涉及其他人。

They ***gave us a wonderfully warm welcome****.*
Elaine ***gave him a hug****.*
He ***gave her hand a squeeze****.*
He ***gave him a good kick****.*
She ***gave him a long kiss****.*

下列名词前可加间接宾语：

clue	hug	look	ring	squeeze
glance	kick	punch	shove	welcome
hint	kiss	push	slap	

第三类名词表示言语行为。

*The Oxford poetry professor is required **to give a lecture** every term.*
*Lord Young **will be giving a first-hand account** of the economic difficulties the Russians are struggling to overcome.*
*Sir Stephen Brown **has given warning** that conflict over the plans could lead to a constitutional crisis.*

下列名词表示言语行为：

account	example	lecture	report	talk
advice	information	news	speech	thought
answer	interview	reason	summary	warning

与 'make' 连用的名词
nouns used with 'make'

3.48 许多名词可用于 'make' 之后。与大量这类名词连用的乏词义结构与转述结构有相应联系。**转述结构** (reporting structure) 在第七章讨论。乏词义结构通常有相应的动词，用于被转述结构之前。

*She **made a remark** about the weather.*
*Allen **remarked** that at times he thought he was back in America.*

*Now and then she **makes a comment** on something.*
*Henry Cecil **commented** that the ground was too firm.*

*I **haven't made a full confession**, sir.*
*Fox **confessed** that he had stolen the money.*

*The cricketers **made a public protest** against apartheid.*
*She was greeted by supporters **protesting** that Reagan had betrayed his allies.*

*I **made a secret signal** to him.*
*The Bank of England **signalled** that there would be no change in interest rates.*

*You **made the right decision**.*
*One candidate resigned, **deciding** that banking was not for her.*

下列名词用于 'make' 之后，有相应的转述动词：

arrangement	confession	protest	suggestion
claim	decision	remark	
comment	promise	signal	

其他与 'make' 连用的名词可表达转述以外的言语行为或描述变化、结果、努力等等。

*I'll **make some enquiries** for you.*
*They agreed **to make a few minor changes**.*
*McEnroe was desperate **to make one last big effort** to win Wimbledon again.*
*He **made an attempt** to calm down.*
*It was put to him that he **was making a serious charge** against Mrs Thatcher.*

下列是用于 'make' 之后的名词：

appeal	contribution	noise	sound
attempt	effort	point	speech
change	enquiry	progress	start
charge	impression	recovery	success

注意，'progress' 不可数。在这一点上，它与上表中的其他名词不同。

与 'have' 和 'take' 连用的名词
nouns used with 'have' and 'take'

3.46 有一类名词既可用于 'have' 之后，也可用于 'take' 之后。在英国英语中，这些名词多与 'have' 连用，但在美国英语中，这些名词多与 'take' 连用。这些名词中有一类表示体育活动。

*I'd rather **have a swim**.*
***Have a drink**.*
*She decided to **take a stroll** along the beach.*
*I **took a bath**, my second that day.*

下列名词表示体育活动：

bath	holiday	rest	stroll
break	jog	run	swim
drink	paddle	shower	walk

另一类则表示涉及使用感官的动作。

*She should let a doctor **have a look** at you.*
*Even Lally **had a little sip** of wine.*
*A Harvard scientist was once allowed in to **have a peep**.*
*Meadows **took a bite** of meat.*

下列名词表示这类动作：

bite	look	sip	sniff
feel	peep	smell	taste

既用于不及物句又用于及物句的动词
Verbs which can be used in both intransitive and transitive clauses

不同意义
different meanings

3.47 由于几个原因，动词既可用于不及物句又可用于及物句。

3.48 动词之所以既可用于不及物句又可用于及物句，一个重要原因是许多动词的常用意义不止一个。例如，动词 'run' 表示 'to move quickly' 时为不及物动词，但表示 'to manage or operate' 时则是及物动词。

*The hare **runs** at enormous speed.*
*She **runs a hotel**.*

*She **reflected** for a moment and then decided to back out.*
*His ideas **reflected the influence of progressive thinkers**.*

*I **can manage** perfectly well on my own.*
*I can no longer **manage my life**.*

*She **moved** rather gracefully.*
*The whole incident **had moved her** profoundly.*

3.49 下列动词可用于不及物和及物句，这取决于动词用于哪个意义：

add	drive	leak	propose	study
aim	escape	lose	reflect	tend
beat	exercise	manage	run	touch
blow	fit	meet	shoot	turn
call	fly	miss	show	win
change	follow	move	sink	
cheat	hang	pass	spread	
count	head	play	stand	
draw	hold	point	stretch	
dress	hurt	press	strike	

并非总是需要宾语的动词
Verbs which do not always need an object

3.50 许多英语动词的基本意义相同，但宾语可有可无。如果所述事物的种类清楚，宾语可以省去。例如，既可说 'She eats food slowly'，也可说，'She eats slowly'。在这个情况下，可明显看出她所吃的是食物，因为只有强调事实（但不需要这样做）或表示她吃哪类食物时，才提及食物。

这些动词只有需要具体说明或将特定情形下发生的事情与正常情况下发生的事情进行对比时才用宾语。例如，只有在想或需要特别说明学科或通常在学习其他学科时，才用 'I've been studying history' 代替 'I've been studying'。

*...a healthy person who **eats** sensibly.*
*Twice a week he **eats an apple** for lunch.*

*Father never smoked or **drank**.*
*He **drank a good deal of coffee**.*

*He had won – and she **had helped**.*
*She **could help him** to escape.*

*I **cooked** for about eight directors.*
*She had never **cooked dinner** for anyone.*

*I washed and **ironed** for them.*
*She **ironed my shirt**.*

*Rudolph **waved** and went into the house.*
*She smiled and **waved her hand**.*

*She sat and **typed**.*
*She **typed a letter** to the paper in question.*

如果动词的宾语与人们通常由动词所联想到的宾语不一致，就需指出宾语。例如，'to wave' 通常会被理解为表示 'to wave your hand'，因此若挥动其他东西，就需指出所挥动的是什么。

*He waved **a piece of paper** in his left hand.*
*Charlie washed **Susan's feet**.*
*Many growers save **their own seeds**.*

如果要对宾语作具体说明也应指出宾语。

*He washed **his summer clothes** and put them away.*
*Bond waved **a cheerful hand**.*
*I could save **quite a lot of money**.*

3.51 如果宾语指什么样的事物显而易见，下列动词的宾语可以省去：

borrow	drive	learn	read	steal
change	dust	lend	ride	study
clean	eat	marry	save	type
cook	film	paint	sing	wash
draw	help	park	smoke	wave
drink	iron	point	spend	write

宾语已经提及 object already mentioned

3.52 还有一类动词，它们通常是及物动词。不过它们也可用作不及物动词，意义相同。这类动词的宾语由于已经提及，因而非常清楚。例如，若上文已经提到过某件事发生的地点，可只说 'I left'，毋须再指出地点的名称。

*At last she thanked them and **left**.*
*He turned away and walked quickly up the passage. I locked the door and **followed**.*
*I was in the middle of a quiet meal when the tanks **attacked**.*

*She did not look round when he **entered**.*
*The sentry fired at the doctor and fortunately **missed**.*
*Only two or three hundred men belonged to the Union before the war, now thousands **joined**.*

3.53 如果前文已经提及，下列动词的宾语可以省去：

accept	check	guess	notice	ring
aim	choose	improve	observe	rule
answer	consider	join	offer	search
approach	direct	judge	order	serve
ask	dry	know	pass	share
attack	enter	lead	phone	sign
begin	explain	leave	play	strike
bite	fit	lose	produce	telephone
blow	follow	mind	pull	understand
board	forget	miss	push	watch
call	gain	move	remember	win

3.54 如果宾语从上文不易看出或说话人想对宾语特别加以强调，他可以提及宾语。

*All I know is that Michael and I never **left the house**.*
*Miss Lindley **followed Rose** into the shop.*
*He **attacked the enemy** by night.*
*I **entered the Duke's cabin** without knocking.*
*She threw the first dart and **missed the board** altogether.*
*I **had joined an athletic club** in Chicago.*

由说话人确定的关涉性
speaker's decisions on transitivity

3.55 只能作及物或不及物用的动词的数目不多，因而是否提及宾语由语言使用者决定。如果他们认为受话人或读者清楚动作的承受者，宾语可以省去，反之，宾语不能省略，以免引起误解。省略宾语的主要原因是宾语从动词本身的意义或从上文中可以明显看出。

可带宾语或介词短语的动词
Verbs which can take an object or a prepositional phrase

3.56 有一小类动词可带宾语或介词短语，动词 'fight' 是其中之一，因此，可说 'He fought the enemy' 或 'He fought against the enemy'。

*The Polish Army **fought the Germans** for nearly five weeks.*
*He **was fighting against history**.*

The New Zealand rugby team ***played South Africa's Springboks****.*
In his youth, Thomas ***had played against Glamorgan****.*

3.57 通常，动词单独使用和动词带介词的意义差别甚微。例如，在下列例句中，'brush'和'brush against'；'gnaw'和'gnaw at'；'hiss'和'hiss at'间的意义差异微乎其微。

Her arm ***brushed my cheek****.*
Something ***brushed against the back of the shelter****.*

Rabbits often ***gnaw the woodwork of their cages****.*
Insects had been ***gnawing at the wood****.*

They ***hissed the Mayor*** *at the ceremony.*
Frederica ***hissed at him****.*

3.58 下列动词可带直接宾语，也可带介词短语，意义差别甚微：

boo (at)	gnaw (at)	play (against)
brush (against)	hiss (at)	rule (over)
check (on)	infiltrate (into)	sip (at)
distinguish (between)	jeer (at)	sniff (at)
enter (for)	juggle (with)	tug (at)
fight (against)	mock (at)	twiddle (with)
fight (with)	mourn (for)	
gain (in)	nibble (at)	

行进动词
verbs of movement

3.59 很多带宾语或介词短语的动词描述实际行进动作，如'wander'和'cross'。由于介词表示地点，因而可用来强调与宾语相关的主语的位置。

He ***wandered the hills*** *in his spare time.*
He ***wandered through the streets of New York****.*

I ***crossed the Mississippi****.*
The car ***had crossed over the river*** *to Long Island.*

We ***climbed the mountain****.*
I ***climbed up the tree****.*

下列动词描述行进动作，可带所列介词：

chase (after)	jump (over)	roam (through)	wander (through)
climb (up)	leap (over)	skirt (round)	
cross (over)	roam (over)	walk (through)	

更换主语以改变焦点：双向动词
Changing your focus by changing the subject: ergative verbs

3.60 有些动词既能使人们从施行者的角度描述动作，又能使人们从动作承受者的角度描述动作。换句话说，同一个动词既是及物动词，后随宾语，又是不及物动词，不提及动作的施行者。

在下面第一组例子的第一句中，'the door' 作动词 'opened' 的宾语，但在第二句中，'the door' 则是动词 'opened' 的主语，不提及是谁开门。

When I opened ***the door****, there was Laverne.*
Suddenly ***the door*** *opened.*

An explosion shook ***the rooms****.*
The whole room *shook.*

注意，及物动词的宾语作不及物动词的主语时，通常指物，不指人。动词由及物变为不及物，所带宾语也相应变为主语的动词叫**双向动词** (ergative verbs)。对许多英语学习者来说，双向动词是个新概念，可能要花点时间学习。但它是一类重要的动词，这一点从下列例句中可以清楚看出。在当代英语中，常用的双向动词有好几百个。

变化 changes

3.61 许多双向动词描述事件由一种状态转变为另一种状态。

He ***was slowing*** *his pace.*
She was aware that the aircraft's taxiing pace ***had slowed****.*

I ***shattered*** *the glass.*
Wine bottles ***had shattered*** *all over the pavement.*

He ***should have closed*** *the beaches.*
The street markets ***have closed****.*

The Director of the Budget ***has changed*** *his title but not his authority. Over the next few months their work pattern* ***changed****.*

The driver ***stopped*** *the car.*
A big car ***stopped****.*

3.62 下列双向动词描述涉及某种变化的事件：

age	burn	crack	double	fade
begin	burst	darken	drown	finish
bend	change	decrease	dry	grow
bleach	close	diminish	empty	improve
break	continue	disperse	end	increase

open	shrink	spread	stretch	worsen
quicken	shut	start	tear	
rot	slow	stick	thicken	
shatter	split	stop	widen	

食品、动向和交通工具
food, movement, vehicles

3.63 许多双向动词与某些方面的意义有联系。例如，有些动词表示食品或烹调，另一些描述实际行进动作，还有一些动词及物或不及物时，分别用交通工具作宾语和主语。

I've ***boiled*** *an egg.*
The porridge ***is boiling****.*

I'm ***cooking*** *spaghetti.*
The rice ***is cooking****.*

The birds ***turned*** *their heads sharply at the sound.*
Vorster's head ***turned****.*

She ***rested*** *her head on his shoulder.*
Her head ***rested*** *on the edge of the table.*

She ***had crashed*** *the car twice.*
Pollock's car ***crashed*** *into a clump of trees.*

3.64 下列动词与食品、实际行进动作和交通工具有关：

bake	simmer	rock	~	run
boil	thicken	shake	back	sail
cook	~	spin	crash	
defrost	balance	stand	drive	
fry	drop	steady	fly	
melt	move	swing	park	
roast	rest	turn	reverse	

对双向动词主语的限制
restrictions on ergative subjects

3.65 注意，有些双向动词只能与一至两个名词连用。例如，可说 'He fired a gun' 或 'The gun fired'，也可说 'He fired a bullet' 但通常不能说 'The bullet fired'。

I ***rang*** *the bell.*
The bell ***rang****.*

A car ***was sounding*** *its horn.*
A horn ***sounded*** *in the night.*

He ***had caught*** *his sleeve on a splinter of wood.*
The hat ***caught*** *on a bolt and tore.*

3.66 下列双向动词与列出的名词或所列的一类名词连用：

catch (an article of clothing)	ring (a bell, the alarm)
fire (a gun, rifle, pistol)	show (an emotion such as fear, anger)
play (music)	sound (a horn, the alarm)

需要附加状语的双向动词
ergative verbs which need adjuncts

3.67 有一小部分双向动词用作不及物动词时，通常带副词或其他附加状语，因为选择这种结构是为了强调事物受到某种作用时的情况如何。因此，动作的施行者是谁并不重要。

*I like the new Range Rover. It **handles beautifully**.*
*Wool **washes well** if you treat it carefully.*

下列双向动词作不及物动词时，一般带附加状语：

clean	handle	polish	stain
freeze	mark	sell	wash

被动语态和双向用法的比较
comparison of passive voice and ergative use

3.68 注意，双向动词的作用与**被动语态** (passive voice) 相似，因为使用两种结构时都可避免提及动作的施行者。例如，可说 'Jane froze a lot of peas from the garden'，但若对她冷冻的东西而不是谁冷冻这些东西感兴趣时，可用被动语态 'A lot of peas were frozen'。如果对这些东西是如何冷冻的感兴趣，则可用双向结构 'The peas from the garden froze really well'。

☞ 关于被动语态，参见 10.8 至 10.24 节。

涉及人们相互做同一件事的动词：相互动词
Verbs which involve people doing the same thing to each other: reciprocal verbs

3.69 有些描述过程的动词涉及两个人或两个群体相互做同一件事。例如，'John and Mary argued'，表示约翰与玛丽争辩，玛丽与约翰争辩。

*The pair of you **have argued** about that for years.*
*He came out and we **hugged**.*
*They **competed** furiously.*

这些动词叫**相互动词** (reciprocal verbs)。

与复数主语连用的相互动词
reciprocal verbs with plural subject

3.70 相互动词的结构之一，是参与双方一起作复数主语，动词不及物。

Their faces ***touched****.*
Their children ***are always fighting****.*
They ***kissed****.*

强调等同参与
emphasizing equal involvement

3.71 如果要强调参加者双方等一起参与一个动作，可在动词词组后加 'each other' 或 'one another'。

We embraced ***each other****.*
They kissed ***each other*** *in greeting.*
They fought ***each other*** *desperately for it.*
It was the first time they had touched ***one another****.*

下列相互动词用作及物动词，与代词 'each other' 和 'one another' 连用：

consult	engage	kiss	meet
cuddle	fight	marry	touch
embrace	hug	match	

与有些动词连用时，'each other' 或 'one another' 之前可加介词，通常是 'with'。

You've got to be able to communicate ***with each other****.*
Third World countries are competing ***with each other*** *for a restricted market.*
His visitors agreed ***with one another*** *to proceed to the coffee-house.*

与代词 'each other' 和 'one another' 连用时，下列相互动词必须带 'with'：

agree	coincide	consult	disagree	mix
alternate	collide	contend	engage	quarrel
argue	combine	contrast	integrate	struggle
balance	communicate	converse	mate	
clash	conflict	co-operate	merge	

除 'with' 之外，下列动词还与其他介词连用：

compete (against)	correspond (with)	part (from)	talk (to)
compete (with)	fight (against)	relate (to)	talk(with)
correspond (to)	fight (with)	separate (from)	

注意，'consult'、'engage' 和 'fight' 可作及物动词用或带介词。

表示非等同参与
indicating unequal involvement

3.72 在上述例句中，语言的使用者显然认为有关的人或群体双方等一起参与一件事，因为参与双方均作主语。但语言的使用者也许会表示一方对动作负责或已开始施行动作。在这种情形下，指这个人的名词词组作主语用。

如果该动词及物，表示另一个参加者的名词词组便作动词的宾语。

He embraced ***her****.*
She married ***a young engineer****.*
You could meet ***me*** *at a restaurant.*
The Algerians were fighting ***the French army*** *in their mountains.*

如果该动词需带介词，那么另一个名词词组便作介词的宾语。

Our return coincided ***with the arrival of bad weather****.*
Youths clashed ***with police*** *in Belfast.*
The distribution of aid corresponds ***to need****.*

3.73 在暴力或不愉快事件中，为了使参加者中一方看上去行为过份或应对暴力负责，人们有时让这一方作主语。例如，报刊标题 'Police clash with youths' 可能含有警方应对冲突负责这一个暗示，尽管年青人也与警察冲突。

Paul *collided with a large man in a sweat-stained shirt.*
The role of worker *conflicts with the role of mother.*
She liked him even when ***she*** *was quarrelling with him.*

带双宾语的动词：双及物动词
Verbs which can have two objects: ditransitive verbs

3.74 有时，有些事件除涉及主语和宾语所表示的人或物以外，还涉及其他人。涉及的第三个参加者是动作的受益者或以获得某物作为动作的结果，它是句子的**间接宾语** (indirect object)。通常，**直接宾语** (direct object) 指作为动作对象的人或物。例如，在 'I gave John a book' 中，'John' 是间接宾语，'the book' 为直接宾语，可带直接宾语和间接宾语的动词叫**双及物动词** (ditransitive verbs)。

间接宾语直接位于动词之后，直接宾语之前。

Dad gave ***me a car****.*
Dr Robey handed ***David a piece of string****.*
She brought ***me a boiled egg and toast****.*
He had lent ***Tim the money****.*
A man promised ***him a job****.*

介词词组中的间接宾语
indirect objects in prepositional phrases

3.75 间接宾语除可置于直接宾语之前外，还可置于直接宾语后的介词词组中。

He handed his room key ***to the receptionist****.*
Ralph passed a message ***to Jack****.*
He gave it ***to me****.*

突出间接宾语时，这种结构尤其常用。例如，间接宾语比直接宾语长得多时，可用这种结构。

He had taught English ***to all the youth of Ceylon and India****.*
The Express offered $100 ***to any reader who could relate what Bal had said****.*

代词作宾语
pronouns as objects

3.76 直接宾语为 'it'、'them' 等代词时，一般用这种介词结构。

I took the bottle and offered ***it to Oakley****.*
Woodward finished the second page and passed ***it to the editor****.*
It was the only pound he had and he gave ***it to the little boy****.*
God has sent ***you to me****.*

这是因为代词通常表示已经提到过的事物，即受话人或读者已经知道的信息。在英语中，新信息通常放在句末，因而当间接宾语为新信息，直接宾语是已知信息时，间接宾语置于句末。

注意，在非正式的英语口语中，当两种宾语均为代词时，有人将间接宾语置于直接宾语之前。例如，有人用 'He gave me it' 代替 'He gave it to me'。这两个代词都不重读而且均指已知信息，因而，前后次序无关紧要。

与 'to' 连用的间接宾语
indirect objects with 'to'

3.77 有些动词，特别是其直接宾语表示事物由一个人手中转入另一个人手中的动词，可与介词 'to' 连用，将间接宾语置于介词短语中。

Mr Schell wrote a letter the other day ***to the New York Times****.*
I had lent my apartment ***to a friend*** *for the weekend.*
I took out the black box and handed it ***to her****.*

下列动词带由 'to' 引出的间接宾语：

accord	give	mail	quote	show
advance	grant	offer	read	sing
award	hand	owe	rent	take
bring	lease	pass	repay	teach
deal	leave	pay	sell	tell
feed	lend	play	send	write
forward	loan	post	serve	

间接宾语与 'for' 连用
indirect objects with 'for'

3.78 如果所描述的动作涉及一个人作有益于另一个人的事情，可用介词 'for' 引出间接宾语。

*He left a note **for her** on the table.*
*He poured more champagne **for the three of them**.*
*He had saved an apple **for the beggar**.*

下列动词带由 'for' 引出的间接宾语：

book	design	leave	pour	spare
bring	fetch	make	prepare	take
build	find	mix	reserve	win
buy	fix	order	save	write
cash	get	paint	secure	
cook	guarantee	pick	set	
cut	keep	play	sing	

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

3.79 注意，上述两个词表（3.77 和 3.78 节）均有动词 'bring'、'leave'、'play'、'sing'、'take' 和 'write'。这是因为少数动词依据其所表达的意义，间接宾语前既可用 'to' 也可用 'for'。例如，'Karen wrote a letter to her boyfriend' 这句话表示凯伦的信是写给她男朋友的，而且信也将由他来读。而 'Karen wrote a letter for her boyfriend' 一句的意思是她男朋友想给别人写封信，而执笔写此信的人是凯伦。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

3.80 有些双及物动词的间接宾语几乎总是置于直接宾语之前，不用于 'to' 或 'for' 引出的介词短语之中。例如，可说 'He begrudged his daughter the bread she ate' 和 'She allowed her son only two pounds a week'。'She allowed two pounds a week to her son' 非常罕见。

下列动词一般不用 'to' 或 'for' 引出间接宾语：

allow	bet	cost	envy	promise
ask	cause	deny	forgive	refuse
begrudge	charge	draw	grudge	

注意，当 'wish' 的直接宾语为 'luck'、'good luck'、'happy birthday' 等词或短语时，其用法与上表中的双及物动词相同。

3.81 双及物动词用于被动语态时，直接宾语和间接宾语均可作为主语，详见 10.20 节。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

3.82 主语和间接宾语指同一个人时，间接宾语可用**反身代词** (reflexive pronouns)。

***Rose** bought **herself** a piece of cheese for lunch.*
***He** had got **himself** a car.*
***He** cooked **himself** an omelette.*

☞ 反身代词在 1.115 至 1.122 节讲解。

及物用法 transitive uses

3.83 在上表中，大多数双及物动词在意义不变的情况下，也可只带直接宾语。

*He left **a note**.*
*She fetched **a jug** from the kitchen.*

但是，下列动词总是或通常既带直接宾语也带间接宾语：

accord	deny	hand	save	write
advance	feed	lend	show	
allow	give	loan	tell	

少数动词可用动作的受益者或从动作中得到某物的人作直接宾语。

*I **fed the baby** when she woke.*
*I **forgive you**.*

下列是这类动词：

ask	feed	pay
envy	forgive	teach

扩展或改变动词的意义：短语动词
Extending or changing the meaning of a verb: phrasal verbs

3.84 由两个或三个词构成的特殊动词叫**短语动词** (phrasal verbs)，它们的构成如下：

• 动词＋副词

*He **sat down**.*
*Ralph stood on his head and **fell over**.*
*The cold weather **set in**.*

• 动词＋介词

*She **looked after** her invalid mother.*
*She **sailed through** her exams.*
*The other day I **came across** a letter from Brunel written in the last year of his life.*

• 或动词＋副词＋介词

*You may **come up against** unexpected difficulties.*
*I **look forward to** reading it.*
*Fame has **crept up on** her almost by accident.*

动词与副词或介词结合，可扩展动词的常用意义或产生不同于动词自身任何意义的新意义。因此，不能总是从动词和副词或介词的常用意义猜测短语动词的意义。

少数短语动词的第一个词不单独用作动词。例如，虽然 'sum up'、'tamper with' 和 'zero in on' 是短语动词，但英语中并无动词 'sum'、'tamper' 或 'zero'。

注意，短语动词从不连写成一个词，也不用连字号连接。

3.85 大多数短语动词由两个单词构成。参见 3.86 至 3.111 节。由三个单词构成的短语动词在 3.112 至 3.114 节讨论。

不及物短语动词与副词连用
intransitive phrasal verbs with adverbs

3.86 有些短语动词用于不及物句，而且其中有许多由动词加副词构成。

*Rosamund **went away** for a few days.*
*The boys **were fooling around**.*
*She **must have dozed off**.*

3.87 下列短语动词由不及物动词加副词构成：

back away	check up	cool off	end up	get up
back down	chip in	creep in	fade away	give in
back off	climb down	crop up	fade out	glaze over
balance out	close in	cry off	fall apart	go ahead
barge in	cloud over	cuddle up	fall away	go along
bear up	club together	curl up	fall back	go around
boil over	come about	cut in	fall behind	go away
bounce back	come along	die away	fall out	go back
bow down	come apart	die down	fall over	go down
bow out	come away	die out	fall through	go on
branch out	come back	dine out	fight back	go out
break away	come down	double back	fizzle out	go under
break out	come forward	doze off	flare up	go up
butt in	come in	drag on	fool around	grow up
camp out	come on	drop back	forge ahead	hang back
cast about	come out	drop by	get about	hang together
catch on	come round	drop out	get ahead	hit out
change down	come to	ease up	get along	hold on
change up	come up	ebb away	get by	land up

lash out	pass away	run out	stand back	tag along
let up	pay up	rush in	stand down	tail away
lie back	pine away	seize up	stand in	tail off
lie down	play around	sell up	stand out	taper off
live in	pop up	set in	start out	tick over
look ahead	press ahead	settle down	stay in	touch down
look back	press on	settle in	stay on	tune in
look in	push ahead	settle up	stay up	wade in
loom up	push on	shop around	steam up	wait about
make off	rear up	simmer down	step aside	wait up
meet up	ride up	sink in	step back	walk out
melt away	ring off	sit around	step down	waste away
mount up	rise up	sit back	step in	watch out
move off	roll about	sit down	stick around	wear off
move over	roll in	slip up	stock up	weigh in
nod off	roll over	speak up	stop by	
opt out	rot away	splash out	stop off	
own up	run away	spring up	stop over	

不及物短语动词与介词连用 intransitive phrasal verbs with prepositions

3.88 用于不及物句的其他短语动词由动词加介词构成。

*Ski trips now **account for** nearly half of all school visits.*
*I'**m** just **asking for** information.*
*...the arguments that **stem from** gossip.*

注意，上述例句句末的名词词组('nearly half of all school visits', 'information' 和 'gossip')是介词的宾语，不直接是动词的宾语。

3.89 下列短语动词由不及物动词加介词组成：

abide by	come by	fall for	keep to
account for	come for	fall into	laugh at
allow for	come from	fall on	launch into
answer for	come into	feel for	lay into
ask after	come under	flick through	leap at
ask for	come upon	frown upon	level with
bank on	count on	get at	lie behind
bargain for	cut across	get into	live for
break into	dawn on	get over	live off
break with	deal with	go about	live with
brood on	dispose of	go against	look after
bump into	draw on	go for	look into
burst into	drink to	grow on	look to
call for	dwell on	hang onto	make for
call on	eat into	head for	meet with
care for	embark on	hit on	part with
come across	enter into	hold with	pick at
come between	expand on	jump at	pick on

pitch into	reckon on	set about	take after
plan for	reckon with	settle for	take against
plan on	reckon without	settle on	tamper with
play at	rise above	skate over	tangle with
play on	romp through	smile on	trifle with
poke at	run across	stand for	tumble to
pore over	run into	stem from	wade through
provide for	run to	stick at	wait on
puzzle over	sail through	stick by	walk into
rattle through	see to	stumble across	watch for
reason with	seize on	stumble on	worry at

介词或副词 preposition or adverb

3.90 在某些不及物短语动词中，如果涉及的第二件事需要提及，短语动词中的第二个词是介词；如果涉及的第二件事在上下文中很清楚，这第二个词则为副词。

*I could **hang around your office**.*
*We'll have to **hang around** for a while.*
*...a dog who had **lagged behind the others**.*
*After a while, I see he is deliberately **lagging behind**.*

3.91 下列短语动词中的第二个词可为介词或副词：

ask around	crowd around	go up	push through
bend over	do without	go without	rally round
break through	fall behind	hang around	run around
bustle about	fall down	join in	run down
come across	fall off	knock about	run up
come after	gather around	lag behind	scrape through
come along	get in	lean over	see round
come by	get off	lie about	shine through
come down	get on	look round	show through
come in	get round	look through	sit around
come off	go about	lounge about	spill over
come on	go along	move about	stand around
come over	go down	pass by	stop by
come through	go in	pass over	trip over
come up	go round	push by	
cross over	go through	push past	

及物短语动词 transitive phrasal verbs

3.92 另一类短语动词几乎总是用于及物句，因为其动词带直接宾语。

*I **left** my pack **behind** and took only a water bottle.*
*Morris **tracked** Hilary **down** in the bathroom.*
*She **read** the poem **out** quietly.*

3.93 下列短语动词由及物动词加副词组成：

add on	filter out	pay back	set apart
beat up	find out	pay out	set aside
blot out	fix up	phase in	set back
board up	follow up	phase out	set down
bring about	frighten away	pick off	shake off
bring along	gather up	pick out	shake up
bring back	give away	piece together	shoot down
bring down	give back	pin down	shrug off
bring forward	give off	pin up	shut away
bring in	hammer out	play back	shut in
bring off	hand down	play down	shut off
bring out	hand in	plug in	shut out
bring round	hand on	point out	size up
bring up	hand out	print out	smooth over
buy out	hand over	pull apart	snap up
buy up	hand round	pull down	soak up
call off	have on	push about	sort out
call up	hire out	push around	sound out
carry off	hold down	push over	spell out
carry out	hold up	put about	spin out
cast aside	hunt down	put across	stamp out
catch out	hush up	put around	step up
chase up	keep back	put away	stick down
chat up	kick out	put down	summon up
clean out	knock down	put forward	switch on
conjure up	knock out	put off	take apart
count out	knock over	put on	take away
cross off	lap up	put out	take back
cross out	lay down	put through	take down
cut back	lay on	put together	take in
cut down	lay out	put up	take on
cut off	leave behind	read out	take up
cut up	leave out	reason out	talk over
deal out	let down	reel off	talk round
dig up	let in	rinse out	tear apart
do down	let off	rip off	tear down
do up	let out	rip up	tear up
drag in	lift up	rope in	tell apart
drag out	live down	rope off	tell off
drag up	melt down	rub in	think over
dream up	mess up	rub out	think through
drink in	mix up	rule out	think up
drive out	nail down	rush through	thrash out
drum up	note down	scale down	throw away
eat away	order about	screen off	throw off
eat up	pack off	seal off	throw on
explain away	pass down	see off	throw out
fight off	pass over	seek out	tidy away
fill in	pass round	sell off	tie down
fill up	patch up	send up	tie up

tip off	trade in	warn off	win back
tip up	try on	wash away	win over
tire out	try out	weed out	wipe away
tone down	turn down	weigh out	wipe out
top up	turn on	weigh up	wipe up
track down	use up	whip up	

由及物动词和介词构成的短语动词在 3.108 至 3.111 节讨论。

及物和不及物短语动词
phrasal verbs used transitively and intransitively

3.94 有一大类短语动词既用于及物也用于不及物结构。

出现这种情况的常见原因是短语动词的含义不止一个。例如，'break in' 表示 'get into a place by force' 时，通常是不及物动词，但当其表示 'get someone used to a new situation' 时，则是及物动词。

*If the door is locked, I will try to **break in**.*
*Brody liked to **break in** his assistants slowly.*
*A plane **took off**.*
*Gretchen **took off** her coat.*
*The engine **cut out**.*
*She **cut out** some coloured photographs from a magazine.*

3.95 下列短语动词既可用于及物句也可用于不及物句，这取决于动词用于哪个意义：

add up	get down	kick off	put in	sum up
bail out	get in	knock about	roll up	switch off
black out	get out	knock off	run down	take off
break in	get together	lay off	run off	tear off
call in	give up	leave off	run over	throw up
carry on	hang out	look out	set forth	tuck in
clear out	hold off	look up	set off	turn away
cut out	hold out	make out	set out	turn back
draw on	join up	make up	show off	turn in
draw out	keep away	mess about	show up	turn out
draw up	keep down	miss out	split up	turn round
dress up	keep in	pass off	stick out	turn up
drop off	keep off	pass on	stick up	wind down
drop round	keep on	pay off	stow away	wind up
fight back	keep out	pick up	strike out	work out
finish up	keep up	pull in	string along	wrap up

3.96 少数短语动词虽然只有一种意义，但既可及物，也可不及物。它们之所以可不及物是因为宾语显而易见或从特定上下文可以猜出。

*It won't take me a moment to **clear away**.*
*Brody began to **clear away** the soup bowls.*

3.97 下列短语动词只有一种含义，但既可及物也可不及物：

answer back	call back	cover up	open up	wash up
breathe in	clear away	drink up	take over	
breathe out	clear up	help out	tidy away	

双向短语动词 ergative phrasal verbs

3.98 与普通动词一样，有些短语动词属**双向动词** (ergative verbs)，即及物动词的宾语作不及物动词的主语。

*The guerrillas blew up **the restaurant**.*
***The gasworks** blew up.*

*I won't wake **him** up just yet.*
***He** woke up in the middle of the night.*

3.99 下列是双向短语动词：

back up	build up	get off	pull through	thaw out
block up	burn up	heat up	rub off	wake up
blow up	check in	hurry up	shut up	warm up
book in	check out	line up	sign up	wear down
break off	cheer up	move on	slow down	wear out
break up	close down	open up	spread out	
buck up	dry up	peel off	start off	

3.100 在某些双向动词中，如果涉及的另一件事需要提及，短语动词中的第二个词为介词；如果涉及的另一件事在上下文中很清楚，则第二个词是副词。

*...leaves that **had been blown off the trees**.*
*My hat **blew off**.*

3.101 下列双向短语动词的第二个词可为介词或副词：

blow off	get through	move up	stick in
chip off	get up	peel off	stick on
get down	move down	poke through	

3.102 当短语动词用于及物句，而且宾语为较短的名词词组时，通常宾语的位置有选择的余地，可置于短语动词的第二个词之后，也可置于短语动词的两个词之间。

*I **filled up** a jar with potassium permanganate.*
*She **filled** my glass **up**.*
*He **handed over** the box.*
*Mrs Kaul **handed** the flowers **over** to Judy.*

3.103 但由较长的名词词组构成的宾语，则很可能置于短语动词的第二个单词之后，这样，短语动词的两部分就不至于分得太开。这种用法将注意力集中于名词词组所包含的信息，而不是短语动词的第二个词。

*The authorities have **turned down** a request by the Argentine Embassy to examine the wreckage of the plane.*

代词宾语
pronoun object

3.104 宾语为 'me'、'her'、'it' 等代词时，通常置于短语动词的第二个词之前。由于代词不是新信息，所以不放在句末这个重要位置上。

*I waited until he had **filled** it **up**.*
*George **handed** it **over** to one of the tribesmen.*

抽象名词作宾语
abstract nouns as object

3.105 短语动词的宾语为抽象名词 'hope'、'confidence'、'support' 等时，通常该宾语位于短语动词的第二个词之后。虽然可说 'He built his business up'，但通常说 'We are trying to build up trust with the residents'，同样，虽可说 'He put my parents up for the night'，但一般说 'The peasants are putting up a lot of resistance'。

*The newspapers **whipped up** sympathy for them.*
*They attempted to **drum up** support from the students.*
*He didn't **hold out** much hope for them.*

置于短语动词第一个词之后的宾语
object after first word of phrasal verb

3.106 少数短语动词的宾语总是位于两个单词之间。例如，可说 'I can't tell your brothers apart'，但不能说 'I can't tell apart your brothers'。

*Captain Dean **was** still **ordering** everybody **about**.*
*I **answered** him **back** and took my chances.*

注意，大多数这样的动词带表示人的宾语。

下列短语动词具有及物意义时，总是属于这一类：

answer back	churn up	invite over	pull to	slap around
ask in	count in	jolly along	push about	stand up
bash about	drag down	keep under	push around	stare out
bind over	dress down	knock about	push to	string along
book in	drop round	mess about	run through	talk round
bring round	feel out	move about	see through	tear apart
bring to	get away	muck about	send ahead	tell apart
brush off	hear out	order about	send away	tip off
call back	help along	play along	send up	truss up
carry back	invite in	play through	shut up	turf out
catch out	invite out	pull about	sit down	

有些短语动词的及物意义不止一个，但只有当它们用于特定含义时，才属于这一类。例如 'take back' 表示 'remind someone of something' 时属于这一类，表示 'regain something' 时不属于这一类。

The scent of the hay ***took Ash back*** *to long-ago evenings in Devon.*
Philip ***took back his glasses*** *and looked at the smoke.*

下列短语动词用于特定意义时属于这一类：

bowl over	get out	nail down	set up	take off
bring down	give up	pass on	shake up	throw about
bring out	have on	pin down	show around	toss about
buoy up	hurry up	pull apart	show up	trip up
cut off	keep up	push around	start off	turn on
do over	kick around	put down	straighten out	ward off
draw out	knock out	put out	take back	wind up
get back	knock up	see out	take in	

介词宾语
prepositional objects

3.107 记住，当短语动词由不及物动词带介词构成时，名词词组总是置于介词之后，即使是代词也是如此。

A number of reasons ***can account for*** *this change.*
They ***had dealt with*** *the problem intelligently.*
If I went away and left you in the flat, would you ***look after*** *it?*

在 3.89 节中有一张由不及物动词和介词构成的短语动词词表。

含有介词的及物短语动词
transitive phrasal verbs with prepositions

3.108 有些短语动词由及物动词加介词构成，其第一个词后的名词词组作动词的宾语，第二个词后的名词词组作介词的宾语。

They agreed to ***let*** *him* ***into*** *their secret.*
The farmer threatened to ***set*** *his dogs* ***on*** *them.*
*They'****ll hold*** *that* ***against*** *you when you apply next time.*

3.109 下列短语动词由及物动词加介词构成：

build into	hold against	lumber with	read into	thrust upon
build on	keep to	make of	set against	write into
draw into	lay before	put on	set back	
drum into	leave off	put onto	set on	
frighten into	let into	put through	talk into	

介词或副词 preposition or adverb

3.110 在某些及物短语动词中，如果动作涉及的第三个事物需要提及，其第二个词为介词，如果动作涉及的第三个事物从上下文可以清楚看出，其第二个词则为副词。

Rudolph ***showed them around the theatre****.*
Come on. I'll ***show you around****.*

3.111 下列及物短语动词的第二个词可以是介词或副词：

cross off	hurl about	lop off	show around
dab on	keep off	push around	shut in
hawk around	knock off	scrub off	sink in

由三个词构成的不及物短语动词 intransitive three-word phrasal verbs

3.112 大多数短语动词由两个单词构成：动词加副词或动词加介词。但也有一些短语动词由三个单词组成：动词、副词和介词。

大多数由三个单词构成的短语动词为不及物动词，句末的介词自带宾语。

His girlfriend ***walked out on*** *him.*
By the 1990's, society ***will have faced up to*** *the inevitable.*
He suddenly ***burst in on*** *me one morning.*
The local people have to ***put up with*** *a lot of tourists.*
Terry Holbrook ***caught up with*** *me.*

3.113 下列短语动词由三个单词构成：

be in for	catch up with	come on to	crowd in on
be on to	chime in with	come out in	cry out against
bear down on	clamp down on	come out of	cry out for
boil down to	clean up after	come out with	cut back on
break out of	come across as	come up against	date back to
brush up on	come down on	come up to	do away with
bump up against	come down to	come up with	double back on
burst in on	come down with	crack down on	face up to
call out for	come in for	creep up on	fall back on

fall in with	go over to	make up to	stick out for
get away with	go through with	match up to	stick up for
get down to	grow out of	measure up to	suck up to
get in on	keep in with	miss out on	take up with
get off with	keep on at	monkey about with	talk down to
get on to	keep up with	play along with	tie in with
get on with	kick out against	play around with	walk away from
get round to	lead up to	put up with	walk away with
get up to	live up to	read up on	walk off with
give up on	look down on	run away with	walk out on
go along with	look forward to	run off with	wriggle out of
go back on	look out for	run up against	zero in on
go down with	look up to	shy away from	
go in for	make away with	sit in on	
go off with	make off with	snap out of	

由三个词构成的及物短语动词 transitive three-word phrasal verbs

3.114 少数由三个词构成的短语动词为及物动词。动词的直接宾语紧跟动词之后，第二个名词词组通常置于介词之后。

*Multinational companies can **play** individual markets **off against** each other.*
*Kroop tried to **talk** her **out of** it.*
*I'll **take** you **up on** that generous invitation.*

下列及物短语动词由三个词构成：

do out of	let in on	put down to	take up on
frighten out of	play off against	put up to	talk out of
let in for	put down as	take out on	

⚠ 注意 Warning

3.115 短语动词只能带直接宾语和介词宾语，不能带间接宾语。

疑问句和关系从句中的短语动词 phrasal verbs in questions and relative clauses

3.116 短语动词中的介词与普通介词的用法有一点不同。

一般情况下，如果介词宾语位于疑问句或关系从句的句首，前面可加介词，在正式语体或书面语中尤其如此。例如，可说 'From which student did you get the book?' 和 'the document on which he put his signature'。

在这类结构中，如果介词是短语动词的一部分，介词则不能放在其宾语的前面。因为必须说 'What are you getting at?' 和 'the difficulties which he ran up against'，不能说'At what are you getting?'和 'the difficulties against which he ran up'。

*Who were they laughing **at**?*
*This was one complication he had not bargained **for**.*

3.117 大多数含有及物动词的短语动词可用于被动语态。少数含有不及物动词和介词的短语动词也可用于被动语态。参见 10.17 和 10.23 节。

由两个词构成的动词：复合动词
Verbs which consist of two words: compound verbs

3.118 有些动词，如 'cross-examine' 和 'test-drive'，由两个单词构成。它们有时被称为**复合动词** (compound verbs)。

*He would have been **cross-examined** on any evidence he gave.*
*Take the baby along if you can't find anyone to **baby-sit**.*
*It is not wise to **hitch-hike** on your own.*

3.119 对不熟悉的复合动词，不能总去望文生义。意识到这一点很重要，例如，to 'soft-soap' 并不表示使用软肥皂，它表示奉承某人，以说服他为自己做某件事。

复合动词的书写形式
written forms of compound verbs

3.120 复合动词通常用连字号连接。

*No one had **cross-referenced** the forms before.*
*Children **ice-skated** on the sidewalks.*

但是，有的复合动词的词分开书写，有的则连写成一个词。例如，'roller-skate' 和 'roller skate'；'baby-sit' 和 'babysit' 这些形式均可使用。

复合动词的构成
form of compound verbs

3.121 许多复合动词由名词加动词构成。

*It may soon become economically attractive to **mass-produce** hepatitis vaccines.*

另一些复合动词由形容词加动词构成。

*Somebody had **short-changed** him.*

3.122 少数复合动词由陌生词构成，因为这些词通常不单独使用，例如，'pooh-pooh' 和 'shilly-shally'。

*Sally had **pooh-poohed** the idea of three good meals a day.*
*Their policy was to hesitate, to **shilly-shally**, to temporise.*

另一些看上去陌生的复合动词是外来语，如 'ad-lib' 和 'kow-tow'。

*They **ad-libbed** so much that the writers despaired of them.*
*He resents having to **kow-tow** to anyone or anything.*

不及物复合动词
intransitive compound verbs

3.123 有一类复合动词通常用于不及物句。

*Many people **window-shopped** in the glass of the great store.*
*If you keep to the rules, you may **roller-skate**.*
*He has learned to **lip-read**.*
*I **baby-sat** for a friend.*

下列是不及物复合动词：

baby-sit	hitch-hike	kow-tow	roller-skate	water-ski
back-pedal	ice-skate	lip-read	shilly-shally	window-shop
goose-step	jack-knife	play-act	touch-type	wolf-whistle

及物复合动词
transitive compound verbs

3.124 另一类复合动词专用于及物句。

*You can **spin-dry** it and it will still retain its shape.*
*Send it to the laundry. Don't **dry clean** it.*
*At first we **cold-shouldered** him.*
*They **ill-treated** our ancestors.*

下列是及物复合动词：

back-comb	cross-reference	ghost-write	soft-soap
blow-dry	double-cross	ill-treat	spin-dry
cold-shoulder	double-glaze	pooh-pooh	spoon-feed
court-martial	dry-clean	proof-read	stage-manage
cross-check	field-test	rubber-stamp	tape-record
cross-examine	force-feed	short-change	toilet-train
cross-question	frog-march	short-weight	wrong-foot

及物或不及物
transitive or intransitive

3.125 还有一类复合动词既可用于及物句又可用于不及物句。

*He **chain-smoked** cheap cigars.*
*The husband is left to **chain-smoke** in the waiting-room.*
*I tried to **ad-lib** a joke.*
*The commentator decided to **ad-lib**.*

下列复合动词既可及物也可不及物：

ad-lib	chain-smoke	double-park	spring-clean
bottle-feed	criss-cross	mass-produce	stir-fry
breast-feed	deep-fry	short-circuit	tie-dye
bulk-buy	double-check	sight-read	

复合动词的屈折变化
inflecting compound verbs

3.126 只有复合动词的第二部分有屈折变化。如果其第二部分可单独作动词用，那么复合动词与单独使用的动词的屈折变化相同。

关于动词的屈折变化方法，见附录**参考部分** R52 至 R80。

描述和指明事物：补足
Describing and identifying things: complementation

3.127 描述人或物，如说明他们是谁或是什么或说明他们具有什么性质，可用一类特殊动词。这些动词叫**系动词**(link verbs)或**系词**(copulas)。

Cigarette smoking is dangerous to your health.
*The station **seemed** a very small one.*
*He **looked** English.*
*I **became** enormously fond of her.*

'Be'、'become'、'look'、'remain' 和 'seem' 是最常用的系动词。

补足语
complements

3.128 系动词联结主语和补足语，主语通常放在句首，补足语位于动词之后。补足语描述或指明主语。这个结构以形容词或名词为中心。

*Her general knowledge is **amazing**.*
*The children seemed **frightened**.*
*That's **a very difficult question**.*
*I'm **the Chairman of the Howard League for Penal Reform**.*
*Suleiman Salle became **the first President of Eritrea**.*

☞ 系动词与补足语连用的用法在 3.133 至 3.155 节讲解。

还有一些不及物动词有时也与补足语连用。参见 3.156 至 3.161 节。

动词与宾语补足语连用
verbs with object complements

3.129 'Make'、'find' 等动词既带宾语又带补足语。由于补足语对宾语进行描述，因而叫**宾语补足语** (object complements)。

*The lights **made me sleepy**.*
*I **found the forest quite frightening**.*

☞ 这些动词在 3.162 至 3.172 节讲解。

介词短语
prepositional phrases

3.130 介词短语或其他附加状语常常用来代替补足语。

*The coffin was **in the front garden**.*
*I began to get **in a panic**.*

这些结构也可代替宾语补足语。

*An attack of malaria can keep a man **off work** for three days.*

☞ 关于用于系动词后的附加状语，详见 3.173 至 3.182 节。

'it' 和 'be'
'it' with 'be'

3.131 'Be' 常与无人称主语 'it' 连用，这种结构用来详述地点、情景、动作、经历和事实。

***It was** very quiet in the hut.*
***It was** awkward keeping my news from Ted.*
***It's** strange you should come today.*

某些其他系动词偶尔也这么用。'It' 作无人称主语的用法在 10.31 至 10.45 节讨论。

'there' 和 'be'
'there' with 'be'

3.132 'Be' 常与其主语 'there' 连用，表示某物的存在。

***There is** another explanation.*
***There is** a rear bathroom with a panelled bath.*

☞ 'There' 的用法在 10.46 至 10.55 节讨论。

描述事物：形容词作系动词的补足语
Describing things: adjectives as complements of link verbs

3.133 许多形容词 (adjectives) 可用作主语补足语。

*I am **proud** of these people.*
*They seemed **happy**.*
*You don't want them to become **suspicious**.*
*They have remained **loyal** to the Government.*

它们可加各种前置修饰语，也可带各种各样的后置结构。

*We were **very happy**.*
*Your suspicions are **entirely correct**.*
*Their hall was **larger than his whole flat**.*
*He was **capable of extraordinary kindness**.*

☞ 系动词后的形容词以及与这些形容词连用的结构在 2.45 至 2.57 节讨论。

3.134 下列动词作系动词用，后带形容词作补足语：

be	prove	~	go	turn
~	seem	become	grow	
appear	smell	come	keep	
feel	sound	fall	remain	
look	taste	get	stay	

注意，第三类动词表示变化或保持原状。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

3.135 在上表中，第二类动词具有特殊性质。

'Appear'、'prove' 和 'seem' 常接 'to be' 和补足语，不直接带补足语。

Mary was breathing quietly and ***seemed to be asleep****.*
The task of inspecting it ***proved to be exacting and interesting****.*

☞ 关于这些动词带 'to'- 不定式小句的用法，参见 3.193 节。

3.136 在上表中第二类中的某些动词，特别是 'feel'、'look' 和 'seem'，可用及物动词的过去分词作补足语。

The other child looked ***neglected****.*
The quarrel of the night before seemed ***forgotten****.*

3.137 若上表中的第二类动词是用来表示人或物似乎具有某种性质，而说话人也想交代这是谁的看法时，可用 'to' 引出的介词短语。这类短语通常置于补足语之后。

They looked all right ***to me****.*
It sounds unnatural ***to you****, I expect.*

⚠ 注意 Warning

3.138 并非所有的系动词可与所有形容词连用。'Be'、'look' 等系动词可与许多形容词连用，而有些系动词只能与有限的形容词连用。例如，'taste' 只能与描述味觉的形容词连用；'go' 主要与表示颜色的形容词或表示疯狂状况的形容词连用；'fall' 主要与 'asleep'、'ill' 和 'silent' 连用。

Sea water ***tastes nasty****.*
Its flesh ***tasted sweet****.*

Jack ***went red****.*
The world ***has gone crazy****.*

He ***fell asleep*** *at the table.*
The courtroom ***fell silent****.*

表示一事物是另一事物：名词词组作系动词的补足语
Saying that one thing is another thing: noun groups as complements of link verbs

3.139 名词词组 (noun groups) 可作补足语，置于下列系动词之后：

be	feel	sound	represent
become	look	~	~
remain	prove	constitute	comprise
~	seem	make	form

性质
qualities

3.140 描述性名词或名词词组置于 'be'、'become'、'remain'、'feel'、'look'、'prove'、'seem'、'sound'、'constitute'和'represent'之后，表示人或物所具有的性质。

Their policy on higher education is ***an unmitigated disaster****.*
He always seemed ***a controlled sort of man****.*
I feel ***a bit of a fraud****.*
The results of these experiments remain ***a secret****.*
His talks with the Russians constituted ***a breakthrough****.*

作系动词用的 'make' 只能与表示某人是否擅长某项工作的补足语连用。

He'll make ***a good president****.*

使用 'one'
using 'one'

3.141 'Be'、'become'、'remain'、'feel'、'look'、'prove'、'seem'和'sound'可以与'one'为中心词的名词词组连用，代替形容词单独作补足语。如果主语是单数，这类名词词组由'a'或'an'加形容词和'one'组成。例如，可用 'The school is a large one' 代替 'The school is large'。

The sound is ***a familiar one****.*
The impression the region gives is still ***a rural one****.*

如果主语是复数，可用形容词加 'ones'。

My memories of a London childhood are ***happy ones****.*

另一类补足语由 'one' 加介词短语或关系从句组成。

Their story was indeed ***one of passion****.*
The problem is ***one that always faces a society when it finds itself threatened****.*

大小、年份、颜色和形状
size, age, colour, shape

3.142 如果表示事物的大小、年份、颜色或形状，可用前一节提到的系动词加由 'size'、'age'、'colour' 或 'shape' 作中心词的名词词组。该名词词组由限定词引出，名词前可加形容词，名词后可加介词 'of'。

*It's just **the right size**.*
*The opposing force would be about **the same size**.*
*The walls are **a delicate pale cream colour**.*
*His body was **the colour of bronze**.*
*It is only **the size of a mouse**.*

人和物的类别
types of people and things

3.143 'Be'、'become'、'remain'、'comprise' 和 'form' 由 'a' 或 'an' 引出的名词词组或带无限定词的复数名词词组，表示某人或某物的类别。

*He is **a geologist**.*
*Our friend Otto isn't **an American**.*
*He is now **a teenager**.*
*The air moved a little faster and became **a light wind**.*
*They became **farmers**.*
*Promises by MPs remained just **promises**.*
*These arches formed **a barrier to the tide**.*

表示身份
indicating identity

3.144 'Be'、'become'、'remain'、'constitute'、'represent'、'comprise' 和 'form' 与指特定人或物的名称或名词词组连用，可准确表示某人或某物是谁或是什么。

*This is **Desiree, my father's second wife**.*
*He's now **the Director of the Office of Management and Budget**.*
*The founder of the company is **the English theatre director Peter Brook**.*
*The downstairs television room became **my room for receiving visitors**.*
*...the four young men who comprised **the TV crew**.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

3.145 如果用名词词组表示机构内独一无二的工作或职位，名词前不用限定词。

*At one time you wanted to be **President**.*
*He went on to become **head of one of the company's largest divisions**.*

代词作补足语
pronouns as complements

3.146 **人称代词** (personal pronouns) 有时用作补足语表示身份。注意，除了非常正式的语体外，一般用宾语代词。

*It's **me** again.*

物主代词 (possessive pronouns) 也可作补足语表示身份或描述事物。

*This one is **yours**.*
*This place is **mine**.*

不定代词 (indefinite pronouns) 有时用来描述事物，通常接后置修饰结构。

*It's **nothing serious**.*
*You're **someone who does what she wants**.*

代词一般作 'be' 的补足语。

其他补足语
other complements

3.147 含有**度量衡名词** (measurement nouns) 的名词词组置于 'be' 和其他动词之后的用法在 2.269 至 2.271 节讲解。

非限定性小句 (non-finite clauses) 作补足语的用法在10.27至10.97节讨论。

动词和介词组合
combinations of verbs and prepositions

3.148 有些带特定介词的动词具有系动词的功能。

介词的宾语对主语进行描述或分类。

*His fear **turned into unreasoning panic**.*
*Taylor's fascination with bees **developed into an obsession**.*
*An autobiography really **amounts to a whole explanation of yourself**.*

下列动词和介词组合具有系动词的功能：

amount to	change to	grow into	turn to
change into	develop into	turn into	

除 'amount to' 表示 'constitute' 外，其他组合的基本意义均是 'become'。

短语动词 'make up' 也具有系动词的功能。

*Wood **made up 65% of the Congo's exports**.*

评注：补足语之后的 'to'- 不定式小句
Commenting: 'to' -infinitive clauses after complements

3.149 在如下几种情况中，'to'- 不定式小句可用于补足语之后，评注与动作有关的人或物。

对举止的评注
commenting on behaviour

3.150 如果表示某人做某事时，具有某种特别性质，可在描述性补足语后用 'to'- 不定式。

*Most people think I am **brave to do this**.*
*I think my father was **a brave man to do what he did**.*

补足语可以是形容词或由 'a' 或 'an' 加形容词或名词构成的名词词组。

对适宜性的评注
commenting on suitability

3.151 补足语后随 'to'- 不定式小句可表示某人或某物比其他人或物更适合于承担某项任务。

*He was absolutely **the right man to go to Paris and negotiate**.*
*She may be **an ideal person to look after the children**.*
*He is **just the man to cool their reforming zeal**.*

这类结构中的补足语必须是含有形容词和名词的名词词组。形容词有 'right'、'ideal'、'best' 和 'just the' 等等，名词是 'person'、'man' 或 'woman'。形容词不能作这类结构的补足语。例如，可说 'He was the ideal person to lead the expedition'，但不能说 'He was ideal to lead the expedition'。有时可用由 'for' 引出的介词短语代替 'to'- 不定式小句。在这种结构中，形容词可作补足语。

*He's not **the right man for it**.*
*They are **ideal for this job**.*

对事件的评注
commenting on an event

3.152 如果要表示自己对一件事的感觉，补足语可后随 'to'- 不定式小句。

*It seemed such **a terrible thing to happen**.*

该 'to'- 不定式由 'to' 和不及物动词组成，动词通常为 'happen'，这类结构中的补足语必须是 'a' 或 'an' 加形容词和名词的名词词组。形容词不能单独用于这类结构。例如，可说 'It was a wonderful thing to happen'，但不能说 'It was wonderful to happen'。

对意愿的评注
commenting on willingness

3.153 如果表示某人愿意或不愿意作某件事，可在补足语后接 'to'- 不定式小句。

*They were **willing to risk losing their jobs**.*
*I am **anxious to meet Mrs Burton-Cox**.*
*She is **eager to succeed**.*
*He is **unwilling to answer questions**.*
*I was **reluctant to involve myself in this private fight**.*

这类结构中的补足语必须是 'willing'、'unwilling' 等形容词。名词词组不能作这类结构的补足语。例如，可说 'He was willing to come'，但不能说 'He was a willing person to come'。

对某事的评注
commenting on something

3.154 如果要表示自己对某事的观点，可通过说明做某事的感受来表示。补足语后跟 'to'- 不定式小句可传达这个意义。

Its flesh is particularly ***good to eat****.*
It's ***a nice thing to have****.*
It is ***a pleasant thing to remember****.*
She was ***easy to talk to****.*

这类结构中的补足语既可是形容词，也可是由 'a' 或 'an' 加形容词和名词组成的名词词组。

注意，这类 'to'- 不定式必须是及物动词的 'to'- 不定式或不及物动词带介词。

对动作的评注
commenting on an action

3.155 如果要表示自己对一个动作的看法，补足语可后随及物的 'to'- 不定式小句。

They thought this was ***a sensible thing to do****.*
This is ***a very foolish attitude to take****.*

'To'- 不定式通常是 'to do'、'to make' 或 'to take'。这类结构中的补足语必须是由 'a' 或 'an' 加形容词和名词组成的名词词组。形容词不能单独用于这类结构。例如，可说 'It was a silly thing to do'，但不能说 'It was silly to do'。

描述和谈及动作：与补足语连用的其他动词
Describing as well as talking about an action: other verbs with complements

3.156 有些不及物动词与系动词一样可与形容词连用。

George ***stood motionless*** *for at least a minute.*
Pugin ***died insane*** *at the early age of forty.*

但这些动词显然不仅仅是系动词。'George stood motionless' 不等于 'George was motionless'。在 'George stood motionless' 一句中，动词 'stand' 具有双重功能：既说明当时乔治正站着，又起系动词的作用，连接 'George' 和补足语 'motionless'。

下列动词具有上述用法：

hang	gaze	go	flame	be born
lie	stare	pass	gleam	die
sit	~	survive	glow	return
stand	emerge	~	run	
~	escape	blush	~	

这些动词与补足语的用法在下面几节讨论。

形容词有时与其他动词组合，但用逗号与主句分开。这种用法在 8.135 节讲解。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

3.157 描述状态的形容词可与 'hang'、'lie'、'sit' 和 'stand' 连用。

*I used to **lie awake** watching the rain seep through the roof.*
*A sparrow **lies dead** in the snow.*
*Francis Marroux **sat ashen-faced** behind the wheel.*
*She **stood quite still**, facing him.*

'Gaze' 和 'stare' 与某些形容词也可以这样用。

*She **stared** at him **wide-eyed**.*

3.158 动词和形容词的某些组合可表示对某人或某物未发生某件事或表示某人没有某个事物。

'Go'、'pass'、'emerge'、'escape' 和 'survive' 常用于这类组合，与它们组合的形容词常由过去分词加 'un-' 构成。

*Such men often **go unrecognised** in their lifetime.*
*I think that on this occasion the guilty should **go unpunished**.*
*Here in Soho he **passed unnoticed**.*
*Fortunately we all **escaped unscathed**.*
*Mostly, they **go unarmed**.*
*The children always **went naked**.*

3.159 'Blush'、'flame'、'gleam'、'glow' 和 'run' 可带颜色形容词表示事物的颜色是什么或变成了什么颜色。

*They blew into the charcoal until it **glowed red**.*
*The trees **flamed scarlet** against the grass.*

3.160 'Die'、'return' 和被动动词 'be born' 可用形容词或名词词组作补足语。

*She **died young**.*
*He **died a disappointed man**.*

*If he had fought in the First World War, he might have **returned a slightly different man**.*

*These girls have to work hard because they **were born poor**.*
*He **was born a slave**.*

固定短语
fixed phrases

3.161 有些动词和形容词组合是固定短语，这类动词不能用于其他任何形容词之前。

*I wanted to **travel light**.*
*The children **ran wild**.*
*The response 'Oh don't' **was wearing thin** with use.*

描述动词的宾语：宾语补足语
Describing the object of a verb: object complements

3.162 有些及物动词的宾语可带对其进行描述的补足语。这类补足语叫宾语补足语。

*Willie's jokes made her **uneasy**.*
*I find the British legal system **extremely complicated**.*

这类动词中的一部分可表示某人或某物发生了变化或者得到了一项新任务。其他动词表示对某人或某物的看法。关于这些动词如何用于被动语态，参见 10.21 节。

起因动词
verbs of causing

3.163 如果表示某人或某物致使他人或事物具有某种性质，可将下表中的及物动词与作补足语的形容词连用。

*He said waltzes **made him dizzy**.*
*They**'re driving me crazy**.*
*Then his captor **had knocked him unconscious**.*
*She **painted her eyelids deep blue**.*
*He **wiped the bottle dry** with a dishcloth.*

下列是这类动词：

cut	make	plane	shoot
drive	paint	render	sweep
get	pat	rub	turn
knock	pick	send	wipe

大多数这类动词只能用某一个形容词或少数几个形容词作补足语，但 'make' 和 'render' 可与许多形容词连用。

'keep', 'hold','leave'

3.164 'Keep'、'hold'、和 'leave' 可作及物动词带形容词补足语，表示使某人或某物保持特定状态。

*The light through the thin curtains **had kept her awake**.*
***Leave the door open**.*
***Hold it straight**.*

委任动词 verbs of appointing

3.165 如果想表示某人被任命做一项重要工作，可用表示工作的名词词组作 'make'、'appoint'、'crown' 或 'elect' 的补足语。

*In 1910 Asquith **made him a junior minister**.*

作补足语的名词指独一无二的工作时，通常不带限定词。

*Ramsay MacDonald appointed him **Secretary of State for India**.*

表示观点的动词 verbs of opinion

3.166 有些及物动词的基本意义是 'consider'。它们与作补足语的形容词或名词词组连用可表示某人对他人或其他事物的看法。

*They **consider him an embarrassment**.*
*Do you **find his view of America interesting**?*

下列是这类动词：

account	find	presume
believe	hold	reckon
consider	judge	think

'Prove' 的意思虽然是 'show' 不是 'consider'，但可用形容词或名词词组作补足语。

*He had **proved them all wrong**.*

3.167 这些动词常用于被动结构。其中 'believe'、'presume'、'reckon' 和 'think' 在这类结构中几乎总是用于被动语态。

*In many ways the gathering **could be considered successful**.*
*30 bombers **were believed shot down**.*

3.168 除 'account' 之外，3.166 节中列出的所有动词均可与 'to'- 不定式小句连用，置于其宾语之后，表示某人认为他人或其他事物怎么样或做什么。

She had always considered George Garforth ***to be a very presentable young man.***

☞ 这些动词的宾语后随 'to'- 不定式小句的用法在 3.207 节讨论。

3.169 在 3.166 节中列出的动词，可用 'it' 作宾语后随补足语和 'to'- 不定式小句以表示某人对一个动作的看法。例如，可用 'She found it difficult to breathe' 代替 'She found breathing difficult'。

Gretchen found ***it*** *difficult* ***to speak.***
He thought ***it*** *right* ***to resign.***
He considered ***it*** *his duty* ***to go.***

这些例句中的 'it'， 是非人称 'it'。

☞ 关于 'it' 的非人称用法，详见 10.31 至 10.45 节。

描述和指名
describing and naming

3.170 如果要表示人们用特定的词、词组、名称描述或指出某人或某物的名称，可用这些词、词组或名称作下表中及物动词的补足语。

People who did not like him ***called him dull.***
They ***called him an idiot.***
Everyone ***called her Molly.***
He got his trial and ***was declared innocent.***
They ***named the place 'Tumbo Kutu'.***

下列为这些动词，其中第一类用形容词作补足语，第二类用名词词组作补足语，第三类用名称作补足语：

call	pronounce	call	proclaim	christen
certify	term	declare	term	dub
declare	~	designate	~	name
label	brand	label	call	nickname

题目
titles

3.171 题目或标题可作被动动词 'be entitled'、 'be headed' 和 'be inscribed' 的补足语。

Her pamphlets ***were boldly headed: 'Hungry Relief Fund'.***

描述状态
describing states

3.172 少数及物动词可用形容词作补足语表示当某人或某物经历某事时处于一种特定状态，或者人们宁愿某人或某物处于这种特定状态。

More than forty people ***were burned alive.***
...a soup which can ***be served cold.***

*They **found it dead**.*
*Do you **want it white or black**?*

下列是这类动词：

burn	leave	serve
eat	like	show
find	prefer	want

有时描述状态的过去分词或现在分词也可作补足语。

*She **found herself caught** in a vicious tidal current.*
*Maureen came in and **found Kate sitting** on a straight chair staring at the window.*

☞ 分词结构与级阶结构 (phase structures) 相似。参见 3.205 和 3.213 节。

描述事物的其他方法：附加状语代替补足语
Describing something in other ways: adjuncts instead of complements

3.173 谈论人或物的境况有时可用系动词后接介词短语代替补足语。

用于 'be' 之后
use after 'be'

3.174 'Be' 之后可跟许多类介词短语。

*He was still **in a state of shock**.*
*I walked home with Bill, who was **in a very good mood**.*
*She had an older brother who was **in the army**.*
*I'm **from Dortmund** originally.*
*...people who are **under pressure**.*
*Summerhill is a school in which play is **of the greatest importance**.*
*This book is **for any woman who has ever said 'If only I knew where to find help.'***

用于其他动词之后
use after other verbs

3.175 其他系动词只能与有限的介词短语连用。

*He **seemed in excellent health**.*
*We do ask people to **keep in touch** with us.*
*These methods have gradually **fallen into disuse**.*
*He **got into trouble** with the police.*

下列是与介词短语连用的其他系动词：

appear	feel	keep	seem
fall	get	remain	stay

地点附加状语
adjuncts of place

3.176 有些带补足语的动词也可后随**地点附加状语**(adjuncts of place)。

She's ***in California****.*
I'll stay ***here*** *with the children.*
The cat was now lying ***on the sofa****.*

下列是这类动词：

be	stay	lie
keep	~	sit
remain	hang	stand

☞ 关于地点附加状语，详见 6.53 至 6.72 和 6.82 至 6.93 节。

时间附加状语
adjuncts of time

3.177 'Be' 与**时间附加状语** (adjuncts of time) 连用，表示某件事何时发生或将要发生。

That final meeting was ***on 3 November****.*

☞ 关于时间附加状语，详见 5.84 至 5.110 节。

用于及物结构
use in transitive structures

3.178 介词短语也可用于及物结构中，表示某人或某物被置于特定状态。

They'll get me ***out of trouble****.*
The fear of being discovered kept me ***on the alert****.*

表示某事的作用以及人们如何看待：介词 'as'
Indicating what role something has or how it is perceived: the preposition 'as'

3.179 'As' 引出的介词短语可用于某些不及物动词和及物动词之后。'As' 之后的名词词组与补足语的意义相似。

用于不及物结构
use in intransitive structures

3.180 'As' 引出的介词短语可用于某些不及物动词之后，表示主语的作用或功能是什么，或者表示主语试图拥有什么身份。

Bleach removes colour and acts ***as an antiseptic and deodoriser****.*
He served ***as Kennedy's ambassador to India****.*
They attempted to get an agent posing ***as a telephone repairman*** *into the Stein residence.*

下列动词可与 'as' 连用：

act	double	pass	serve
come	function	pose	

'Work' 的主语是人时，也可这样用。

My father worked ***as a draughtsman*** *in a shipyard.*

用于及物结构
use in transitive structures

3.181 一些及物动词的宾语可后接 'as'。

其中，部分结构中的 'as' 之后跟名词词组。这类 'as' 词组描述宾语的作用或说明宾语被当作什么。

I wanted to use him ***as an agent****.*
I treated business ***as a game****.*

下列及物动词与 'as' 和名词词组连用：

brand	condemn	elect	label	suggest
cast	consider	establish	name	take
categorize	define	give	perceive	treat
certify	denounce	hail	recognize	use
characterize	depict	identify	regard	view
choose	describe	intend	scorn	
class	diagnose	interpret	see	

另一部分结构中的 'as' 之后跟形容词。该形容词表示人们认为宾语具有什么性质或特性。

Party members and officials ***described him as brilliant****.*
They ***regarded manual work as degrading****.*

下列及物动词与 'as' 和形容词连用：

brand	class	depict	label	see
categorize	condemn	describe	perceive	view
certify	define	diagnose	regard	
characterize	denounce	establish	scorn	

3.182 'Look upon'、'refer to' 和 'think of' 也可以与 'as' 这样用。'As' 与 'refer to' 连用时，必须带名词词组。

*In some households the man **was referred to as 'the master'**.*

谈及两个密切联系的动作：在级阶结构中连用两个动词
Talking about closely linked actions: using two verbs together in phase

3.183 为了谈及两个密切关联的动作或状态，可在句子中使用两个动词。这类结构叫**级阶** (phase)。本部分阐述其用法。

☞ 这两个动作可能由同一个人施行。参见 3.190 至 3.202 节。

*She **stopped speaking**.*
*Davis **likes to talk** about horses.*

另外，这两个动作也可能由不同的人施行。如果这样的话，那么第二个动作的施行者是第一个动词的宾语。参见 3.203 至 3.213 节。

*I don't **want them to feel** I've slighted them.*
*One of the group began pumping her chest to **help her breathe**.*

3.184 注意，第一个动词后之所以需要另一个动词，是因为该动词单独使用不能提供足够的信息。例如，'I want' 所提供的信息不足以成为有用的陈述，而 'I want to talk to you' 就是有用的陈述。

下面讨论的一些动词，如 'want' 和 'like'，也可以是带名词词组的普通及物动词。

☞ 及物动词在 3.15 至 3.26 节讨论。

3.185 如果要谈及两个关系不十分密切的动作，可将它们分别置于两个小句中。连接小句的方法在第八章讨论。

动词的形式 verb forms

3.186 在级阶结构中，第一个动词是主要动词，通常具有限定性，就是说，它为表示时态而有屈折变化并且在数上与句子的主语保持一致。

*I **wanted** to come home.*
*Lonnie **wants** to say 'sorry'.*

*More and more people **are coming** to appreciate the contribution which Muslims make to our society.*

不过，它也可以是非限定形式。

*There is a tendency for teachers **to advise** people to take their best school subjects at A Level.*

3.187 该结构中的第二个动词始终具有非限定性，即它不为表示时态而有屈折变化，或改变形式。

*Castle tried **to read**.*
*They had been trying **to read**.*

关于限定和非限定形式，见附录**参考部分** R89 及 R124。

3.188 用于级阶结构中第二个动词的非限定形式有四类：

- 现在分词
- 'to'- 不定式
- 不带 'to'- 不定式
- 过去分词

注意，在这类结构中，不带 'to'- 的不定式和动词的过去分词形式用得极少。

有时也用其他类型的 '-ing' 形式和不定式，它们是非限定形式的组合。

*Those very close to the blast risk **being burnt**.*
*Neither Rita nor I recalled ever **having seen** her.*
*She wanted **to be reassured**.*
*They claimed **to have shot down** 22 planes.*

3.189 'Not' 否定级阶结构中的位置在 4.53 和 4.54 节讨论。

谈及由同一个人施行的两个动作：级阶动词连用
Talking about two actions done by the same person: phase verbs together

3.190 谈及由同一个人施行的两个动作时，第二个动词（非限定动词）可直接置于第一个动词之后。

*Children **enjoy playing** alongside each other.*
*You **deserve to know** the truth.*

后接现在分词的动词
verbs followed by a present participle

3.191 在此类级阶结构中，有些动词总是后接现在分词。

*He **contemplated setting up** a private estate in Hungary.*
*I could **avoid putting** too much weight on my arm.*
*He **missed having** someone to dislike.*
*I **recall being** very impressed with the official anthems.*

下列动词与现在分词连用，不与 'to'- 不定式连用：

admit	defer	endure	lie	report
adore	delay	enjoy	loathe	resent
appreciate	deny	explain	mention	resist
avoid	describe	fancy	mind	risk
celebrate	detest	finish	miss	sit
commence	discontinue	go	postpone	stand
consider	dislike	imagine	practise	stop
contemplate	dread	keep	recall	suggest

这些动词有时也与 '-ing' 的被动形式连用。

*They enjoy **being praised**.*

'Admit'、'celebrate'、'deny'、'mention' 和 'recall' 还常与 '-ing' 的完成形式连用。

*Carmichael had denied **having seen** him.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

3.192 注意，'need' 可后接现在分词，但该现在分词与 'to'- 不定式的被动形式具有相同意义。例如，'The house needs cleaning' 与 'The house needs to be cleaned' 含义相同。

'Require' 和 'want' 间或也这样用，尽管有人不喜欢 'want' 的这种用法。

后接 'to' - 不定式的动词
verbs followed by a 'to' -infinitive

3.193 其他动词与 'to'- 不定式小句连用。

*Mrs Babcock **had** always **longed to go** to Ireland.*
*She **forgot to bring** a suitcase.*
*She **wishes to ask** a favour of you.*

下列动词与 'to'- 不定式连用，不与现在分词连用：

ache	aim	ask	choose	dare
afford	appear	attempt	claim	decide
agree	arrange	care	consent	demand

deserve	help	neglect	reckon	venture
desire	hesitate	offer	refuse	volunteer
disdain	hope	opt	resolve	vote
endeavour	intend	pay	scorn	vow
expect	learn	plan	seek	wait
fail	live	pledge	seem	want
fight	long	prepare	survive	wish
forget	manage	pretend	swear	
grow	mean	promise	tend	
happen	need	prove	threaten	

大多数这类动词可与不定式的被动形式连用。

*She refused **to be photographed**.*
*He deserves **to be shot**.*

由于意义限制，上表中的下列动词通常不与不定式的被动形式连用：

claim	intend	mean	threaten
dare	learn	neglect	venture
forget	manage	pretend	

'Appear'、'claim'、'happen'、'pretend'、'prove'、'seem'和'tend'常与不定式的完成时连用。

*They seemed **to have disappeared**.*

注意，'help'也可后接不带'to'-的不定式。

*Coffee **helped keep** him alert.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

3.194 注意，'afford'之前，总是加情态动词；'care'通常与否定式连用。

*Can we **afford to ignore** this source of power as other sources of energy are diminishing?*
*I would**n't care to put** money into it.*

3.195 'Have'后接'to'-不定式小句的用法在4.248节讨论。

可与两种形式连用的动词
verbs used with either form

3.196 少数动词既可与现在分词小句连用，也可与'to'-不定式小句连用，意义不变。

*It **started raining**.*
*A very cold wind **had started to blow**.*

*Maureen **began dancing**.*
*Anne **began to cry**.*

*Babies **prefer sleeping** on their back.*
*Russians **prefer to give** gifts at New Year.*

*We both **love dancing**.*
*He **loves to talk** about metalwork.*

下列动词可后接现在分词或 'to'- 不定式，意义变化不大：

attempt	cease	fear	love	try
begin	continue	hate	prefer	
bother	deserve	like	start	

注意，'bother' 常与否定词或广义否定词连用。

*He **didn't bother complaining** about it.*
*We **hardly** even **bother to clean** it.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

3.197 少数动词后接现在分词小句或 'to'- 不定式小句时，意义不同。它们是：'come'、'go on'、'remember' 和 'regret'。

某人 'comes running'、'come flying' 或 'hurtling' 到某处的意思是：他以那种方式移动；而某人 'comes to do something' 则表示他渐渐开始做那件事了。

*When they heard I was leaving, they both **came running** out.*
*People **came to believe** that all things were possible.*

其他动词在意义上的差异与动作发生的时间有关。

'Go on doing something' 的意思是：继续做那件事；而 'go on to do something' 则表示随后又开始做那件事。

*We **went on fighting** the Incomes Policy for 18 months after that.*
*She **went on to talk** about the political consequences.*

'Remember doing something' 的意思是：过去做过那件事；而 'remember to do something' 则表示现在做那件事。

*I **remember promising** that I would try.*
*She **must remember to get** the wood under cover.*

同样，'regret doing something' 的意思是：已经做过那件事；而 'regret to do something' 则表示现在必须做那件事。

*She did not **regret accepting** his offer.*
*I **regret to say** rents went up.*

'Regret' 仅与一小部分动词的 'to'- 不定式连用，这些动词表示提供或获取信息。它们是：

announce	learn	see
inform	say	tell

注意 Warning

3.198 在现在分词和 'to'- 不定式之间进行选择时，若第一个动词是进行时，便不再用现在分词。

The Third World ***is beginning to export*** *to the West.*
The big clouds ***were starting to cover*** *the sun.*
Educational budgets ***are continuing to increase.***

若动词不能接 'to'- 不定式，通常则用名词词组代替现在分词。

I knew Miss Head would just be finishing ***her cello practice.***

3.199 注意，谈及由同一个人施行的两个动作时，少数动词与宾语和 'to'- 不定式连用。这些动词主要是 'need'、'want'、'have'、'buy' 和 'choose'。这类结构中的 'to'- 不定式必须是及物动词，可理解为名词的后置修饰语，而非与第一个动词密切联系。

I ***wanted some goods to place*** *in the window.*
She ***chose the correct one to put*** *in her bag.*

'to' -不定式表示目的
'to' -infinitive showing purpose

3.200 注意，表示有意举动的动词有时后接表示目的的 'to'- 不定式小句。

Several women ***moved to help*** *her.*
The captain ***stopped to reload*** *the machine-gun.*

这类结构不属于级阶结构，因为其第一个动词本身具有完整的意义；第二个动词只用于表明第一个动作的原因，而非补足其意义。

注意，在这类结构中，'to' 可扩展为短语 'in order to'，详见 8.43 至 8.46 节。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

3.201 用于祈使结构或与情态动词连用时，'try' 的原形形式有时后接 'and' 和第二个动词的原形，而非 'to'- 不定式。这两个动作由于 'and' 的缘故似乎分开了，事实上，它们是密切联系的。

Try and get *a torch or a light, it's terribly dark down here.*
I'll ***try and answer*** *the question.*

有人认为这种用法非正式或不正确。'Come' 和 'go' 的简单时态及原形形式也常与 'and' 这样连用。'And' 之后的动词可有屈折变化。

__Come and see__ me whenever you feel depressed.
I __went and fetched__ another glass.

'get' 与过去分词连用
'get' with a past participle

3.202 在非正式英语中，在有被动意义的结构里，'get' 之后有时直接用过去分词。

Then he __got killed__ in a plane crash.

谈及两个由不同的人施行的动作：被宾语分开的级阶动词
Talking about two actions done by different people: phase verbs separated by an object

3.203 若表示两个紧密联系的动作由不同的人施行，可在第一个动词之后接宾语，然后该宾语再充当第二个动词的主语。例如，在 'She asked Ginny to collect the book' 中，'Ginny' 既是被要求的对象又是收集书籍这一个动作的施行者。

I __saw him looking__ at my name on the door.
She knew her father wouldn't dare to __stop her associating__ with her friends.
They __left her to lie__ on the wooden floor.
The committee's lawyers __had advised certain people to stay__ away.

使用物主限定词
use of possessive determiner

3.204 注意，当第二个动词为现在分词时，物主限定词有时代替代词用于该动词之前。这种用法相当正式。

...a set of professional ethics to prevent __their__ discussing their clients with the public.
She did not like __my__ living in London.

注意，只有当第二个动词用人作主语时，物主限定词才能这样用。

及物动词与现在分词连用
transitive verbs with a present participle

3.205 有些动词与宾语及现在分词小句连用。

He __caught Hooper looking__ at him.
She __felt her grip tightening__.
I __heard him gasping__ and __shrieking__.

下列动词与宾语及现在分词连用：

catch	hear	like	prevent	spot
describe	imagine	notice	save	stop
feel	keep	observe	see	want
find	leave	picture	send	watch

'Listen to' 也属于这一类，其后的宾语是介词 'to' 的宾语。

*I **listened to Kaspar talking**.*

这些动词有时与 '-ing' 的被动形式连用，但一般不与 '-ing' 的完成时形式连用。

*He felt himself **being snatched** upright and shoved across a flat space.*

动词与不带 'to'-不定式连用
verbs with an infinitive without 'to'

3.206 上一节中的某些动词也可与不带 'to'-不定式连用。

*She **felt her hair rise** on the back of her neck.*
*Dr Hochstadt **heard her gasp**.*

选用不同的形式，意义稍有变化。如果选用现在分词，那么，强调的是动作持续发生了一段时间。

*But I lay on, **listening to her singing**.*
*I looked over and **saw Joe staring** at me.*

如果选用不带 'to'-不定式，则强调动作已经完成。

*We **listened to Jenny finish** the Sonnet.*
*It was the first time she **had heard him speak** of his life.*

下列动词可与现在分词或不带 'to'-的不定式连用，其意义变化上文已经叙述：

feel	listen to	observe	watch
hear	notice	see	

注意，这些动词后接不带 'to'-的不定式时，只能用于主动语态。参见 3.209 节。

及物动词与 'to'-不定式连用
transitive verbs with a 'to'-infinitive

3.207 其他动词与宾语及 'to'-不定式小句连用。

*His sister **had taught him to sew**.*
*I **encourage students to do** these exercises at home.*

下列动词与宾语及 'to'- 不定式连用：

advise	defy	instruct	pay	tell
allow	enable	intend	permit	train
ask	encourage	invite	persuade	trust
beg	expect	lead	prefer	urge
cause	forbid	leave	press	use
challenge	force	like	programme	want
choose	get	mean	prompt	warn
command	help	move	recruit	
compel	induce	oblige	remind	
dare	inspire	order	teach	

☞ 注意，上表中的某些动词用于转述命令、请求和劝告。关于这种用法，详见 7.36 节。

下列动词后接 'to'- 不定式时，总是或通常用于被动语态：

allege	deem	know	require	understand
assume	discover	learn	rumour	
believe	estimate	prove	say	
claim	feel	reckon	see	
consider	find	report	think	

它们表示言谈、想法或发现时，后面常接 'be' 或 'have' 的 'to'- 不定式或不定式的完成时。

*The house **was believed to be** haunted.*
*Over a third of the population **was estimated to have** no access to the health service.*
*...the primitive molecules which **are believed to have given** rise to life on Earth.*

使用被动语态
using the passive

3.208 如果第二个动词的主语不详或说话人不想提及他们，可用被动语态。

*A gardener was immediately sacked if he **was caught smoking**.*
*I **was asked to come** for a few days to help them.*
*Their children **are left to play** among the rubble.*

下列动词后接现在分词时，通常不用被动语态：

feel	like	prevent	stop
imagine	listen to	save	want

下列动词后接 'to'- 不定式时，通常不用被动语态：

defy	like	want
get	prefer	

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

3.209 'Hear'、'observe' 和 'see' 为主动语态时，不与 'to'- 不定式连用；但当它们是被动语态时，则可与现在分词或 'to'- 不定式连用。

如果要表示由第二个动词所描述的动作在一段时间里发生，可用现在分词。

*A terrorist **was seen standing** in the middle of the road.*
*Her companions **could be heard playing** games.*

使用 'to'- 不定式时，意味着该动作已经完成。

*She **could** distinctly **be seen to hesitate**.*
*The baby **was** seldom **heard to cry**.*

☞ 关于 'to'- 不定式，详见 3.206 节。

动词后跟 'for' 和 'to' - 不定式
verbs followed by 'for' and a 'to'-infinitive

3.210 在级阶结构中，有一类与 'to'- 不定式连用的动词，后随介词 'for' 及其宾语，而非直接宾语。'For' 的宾语是第二个动作的施行者。

*He **arranged for Waddell to have** the services of another solicitor.*
*They **called for action to be taken** against the unions.*
*I **waited for him to speak**.*

注意，这种 'to'- 不定式常常是被动语态。下列动词具有这种用法：

appeal	ask	long	plead	wait
apply	call	opt	press	wish
arrange	clamour	pay	vote	yearn

及物动词与不带 'to' - 的不定式
transitive verbs with an infinitive without 'to'

3.211 少数动词后随宾语和不带 'to'- 不定式，不跟现在分词或 'to'- 不定式。它们是含有 'cause to happen' 或 'experience' 意义的 'let'、'make' 和 'have'。

*Jenny **let him talk**.*
*My father **made me go** for the interview.*
*...so that he could lie in a darkened room and **have her bring** him meals on trays.*

☞ 可与不带 'to'- 不定式或现在分词连用的动词在 3.206 节讨论。

'have' 和 'get' 的使役用法 causative use of 'have' and 'get'

3.212 在级阶结构中，'have' 的一种特殊用法是：主语令他人处理某事。在这种用法中，'have' 后随宾语（指由他人处理的那件事）和及物动词或带介词的不及物动词的过去分词。

*He went to **have a cavity filled** and had an injection.*

这类结构也用于表示属于 'have' 的主语的某物受到某种影响。

*She'd just lost her job and **had some money stolen**.*

如果要提及第二个动作的施行者，可用 'by' 加名词词组。

*Gary Jones twice had his face trampled on **by Butts**.*

'Get' 也可与宾语和过去分词连用，表示某事由他人处理，或某物受到某种影响。

*We must **get the car repaired**.*
*One of these days I am going to **get myself elected** to Parliament.*

'want' 和 'need' 与过去分词连用 'want' and 'need' with past participle

3.213 'Want' 也可与宾语和过去分词连用，表示说话人期望某事发生。

*I **want the whole approach changed**.*
*I don't **want you hurt**.*

通常，当宾语为属于主语的事物时，'need' 也这样用。

*You **need your eyesight tested**.*

第四章　使信息变化

4 使信息变化
Varying the message

概述
Introduction

4.1 通过变化词序或在动词词组上加词，可改变句子的意义。本章讨论三种不同的变化方法。

4.2 至 4.42 节讲解**语气** (mood) 如何用来区分句子的主要类型，例如如何用来区分陈述句和疑问句。

4.43 至 4.94 节讲解**否定词** (negative words) 如何用来表示事物的反面或没有某事物。

4.95 至 4.262 节讲解**情态动词** (modals) 如何用来谈及可能性或表示说话人对受话人或所述内容的态度。

陈述、疑问、命令和建议
Statements, questions, orders, and suggestions

4.2 句子可用于做许多不同的事情。最常见的用途是提供信息。

I went to Glasgow University.
Carol was one of my sister's best friends.

有时人们用句子获取信息，而不是提供信息。

Where is my father?
What did you say to Myra?
How long have you been out of this country?

其他时候，人们则想表达看法、发布命令、提出建议或作出许诺。

That's an excellent idea.
Go away, all of you.
Shall we listen to the news?
If you have any questions, I'll do my best to answer them.

为了清楚起见，说或写一个句子时，句子使用者需要表示他们使用语句的意图。例如，他们使用句子是进行提问，不是进行陈述。

语气
mood

4.3 句子的词序常常说明句子的使用方式。例如，如果某人说 'He is Norwegian'，句子词序清楚地表明他在陈述；如果他说 'Is he Norwegian?'，句子词序则表示他在提问。

另一种表示句子使用方法的办法是句首用动词而不是主语。如果说 'Give this book to Michael'，很显然他是在命令或指示，而不是在陈述或提问。

这些区别语言使用的方式是说明语气的例子。每个句子的主句都有特定的语气。

语气的类型
types of mood

4.4 英语中有三种主要语气：**陈述**(declarative)，**疑问**(interrogative)和**祈使**(imperative)。陈述语气用于大多数主句中。陈述句几乎总是用陈述语气。句子为这种语气时，主语位于动词之前。陈述语气又叫**直陈语气**(indicative mood)。

I want *to talk to Mr Castle.*
Gertrude looked *at Anne.*
We'll give *you fifteen pounds now.*

疑问语气通常用于问句。这种语气的句子中，主语常常置于主要动词或助动词之后。

Is she *very upset?*
Where ***is my father****?*
Have you *met Halliday?*
Did you *give him my letter?*

祈使语气用于关照某人做某事。句子为这种语气时，主语通常省去，动词用原形。

Give *him a good book.*
Show *me the complete manuscript.*

还有第四种语气，叫**虚拟语气**(subjunctive mood)。这是英语动词的一个特征，有时在从句中出现。由于人们不用虚拟语气来区分语言的不同用途，因而本章不进行讨论。

☞ 使用虚拟语气的从句在 7.40 和 8.48 节讲解。

4.5 语气使用的方法在下列几节讲解。

4.6 至 4.9 节讲解陈述语气如何用来进行陈述。4.10 至 4.30 节讨论疑问语气如何用来提问。4.31 至 4.35 节阐述祈使语气如何用来关照某人做某事。陈述语气、疑问语气和祈使语气的其他用法在 4.36 至 4.42 节讨论。

进行陈述：陈述语气
Making statements: the declarative mood

提供信息
giving information

4.6 人们用陈述语气提供信息。

We ate dinner at six.
I like reading poetry.
Japan had agreed to restrict car shipments.

表达看法
expressing opinions

4.7 人们表达看法时，通常也用陈述语气。

I think she is a brilliant writer.
It's a good thing Father is deaf.
He ought to have let me know he was going out.

进行许诺
making promises

4.8 人们还用陈述语气许诺。

I shall do everything I can to help you.
I'll have it sent down by special delivery.

强调
emphasis

4.9 在动词原形前加 'do'、'does' 或 'did' 可强调陈述。

*I **do feel** sorry for Roger.*
*A little knowledge **does seem** to be a dangerous thing.*
*He had no time or energy to play with his children or talk with his wife, but he **did bring** home a regular salary.*

提出问题：疑问语气
Asking questions: the interrogative mood

4.10 人们提问时，通常用疑问语气。

疑问句的类型
types of question

4.11 疑问句主要有两类。

可用 'yes' 或 'no' 回答的问句叫**是非疑问句**('yes/no'-questions)。

'Is he your only child?' – 'Yes.'
'Are you planning to marry soon?' – 'No.'
'Can I help you?' – 'Yes, I'd like to book a single room, please.'
'Are you interested in racing?' – 'Yes, I love it.'
'Are you a singer as well as an actress?' – 'No, I'm not a singer at all.'
'Did you go through?' – 'No, I didn't bother.'

是非疑问句的真正答案并非总是 'yes' 或 'no'。例如，如果询问某人 'Do you read in bed?'，他也许会回答 'Sometimes' 或 'Never'。如果问某人 'Do you like Michael Jackson?'，他可能会答道 'I think he's wonderful'。但 'Do you read in bed?' 和 'Do you like Michael Jackson?' 仍为是非疑问句，因为 'yes' 和 'no' 是提问者所期望的那类答案。'Sometimes' 可理解为语气较弱的 'yes' 的回答；'never' 为语气较强的 'no' 的回答；'I think he's wonderful' 是语气较强的 'yes' 的回答。是非疑问句在 4.12 至 4.16 节详述。

另一类主要疑问句以 'what'、'where'、'when' 等 'wh'- 词('wh'-words)开头。询问这类问题时，不能用 'yes' 或 'no' 回答。

'Who is he?' – 'A man called Boylan.'
'Why didn't you ask me?' – 'I was afraid to.'
'Where is he now?' – 'He's at university.'

这类问句叫 **'wh'-疑问句** ('wh'-questions)。'Wh'-词在 'wh'-疑问句的句首作代词或副词用时，叫疑问代词或疑问副词。

☞ 'Wh'-疑问句在 4.17 至 4.30 节讲解。

是非疑问句
'Yes/no' – questions

助动词的位置
position of auxiliary verbs

4.12 在是非疑问句中，如果有助动词，则助动词后随主语和主要动词。

Are you staying *here, by any chance?*
Had Mary Jane slept *there?*
Will they like *my garden?*
Can he read *yet?*

如果助动词不止一个，那么第一个助动词位于句子的句首，后跟主语和其他动词。

Had he been murdered*?*
Has it been thrown away*, perhaps?*

关于助动词，见附录**参考部分** R80 至 R87 节。

4.13 如果句中无助动词，'do'、'does' 或 'did' 可置于句首，后接主语和动词原形。

***Do you understand** what I'm saying?*
***Does it hurt much**?*
***Did you meet** George in France?*

注意，即使主要动词是 'do'，'do'、'does' 或 'did' 仍置于句首，放在主语之前。

***Do they do** the work themselves?*
***Does David do** this sort of thing often?*

'be' 和 'have' 作主要动词
'be' and 'have' as main verbs

4.14 如果动词是 'be'，就不必用 'do'。只要将动词置于句首，后随主语即可。

***Are you** okay?*
***Is she** Ricky's sister?*
***Am I** right?*
***Was it** lonely without us?*

如果动词是 'have'，通常 'do'、'does' 或 'did' 用于句首，后随主语。

***Do hedgehogs have** intelligence?*
***Does anyone have** a question?*
***Did you have** a good flight?*

不过，当 'have' 表示 'own' 或 'possess' 的意义时，可不必用 'do'、'does' 或 'did'。'Have'、'has' 或 'had' 只要置于句首即可。这种用法比较正式。

***Have we** anything else we ought to talk about first?*
***Has he** any idea what it's like?*

若在是非疑问句中用 'have got' 或 'has got'，可将 'have' 或 'has' 置于句首，后随主语和 'got'。

***Have you got** any brochures on Holland?*
***Has she got** a car?*

☞ 'Have got' 和 'has got' 在 3.17 节中讲解。

附加疑问句
tag questions

4.15 如果想要别人证实某事物是真实的，可用陈述语气进行陈述，然后加 'isn't it?' 或 'was she?' 一类表达式。这样的结构叫**附加疑问句**(tag questions)。

'Isn't it?' 等否定表达式可附加在肯定句后。'Was she?' 等肯定表达式可附加在否定句后。

否定表达式附加在肯定句中时，说话人期望得到 'yes' 的回答。肯定表达式附加在否定句中时，说话人则期望得到 'no' 的回答。

*'David's **is** quite a nice school, isn't it?' – '**Yes**, it is.'*
*'You **don't** always remember them, do you?' – '**No**.'*
*'You **are going** to do this, aren't you?' – '**Yes**.'*
*'We **don't want** these tables here like this, do we?' – '**No**, Dr Kirk.'*

附加疑问句在 10.122 至 10.130 节详述。'Are you?' 等肯定表达式也可附加在肯定句中，这种用法在 4.40 节讨论。

选择疑问句
'either/or' question

4.16 人们提问时，有时会提及两个或两个以上的可能答案，这些可能的答案由 'or' 连接。例如，人们可能会问 'Is he awake or asleep?' 或 'Do you like your coffee white or black?' 并且希望问题的实际答案是自己所提及的答案之一。

词、词组和小句都可这样连接。这样的疑问句叫**选择疑问句**(either/or-questions)。

*'Is it **a boy or a girl**?' – 'A beautiful **boy**.'*
*'Was it **healthy or diseased**?' – '**Diseased**, I'm afraid.'*
*'**Will you have your whisky, or do you want dinner straight away**?' – '**Whisky**. Make it a large one.'*

'Wh' - 疑问句
'Wh' – questions

4.17 使用 'wh'- 疑问句提问时，人们指望回答者明确指出特定的个人、事物、地点、理由、方式或数量，并不指望 'yes' 或 'no' 回答。

'wh' - 词
'wh' - words

4.18 'Wh'- 疑问句以 'wh'- 词开头。

'Wh'- 词是一组代词、副词和限定词。除 'how' 以外，其余均以 'wh'- 开头。下面是主要的 'wh'- 词：

how	where	whom
what	which	whose
when	who	why

'wh' - 词作主语
'wh' - word as subject

4.19 'Wh'- 词作动词的主语或主语的一部分时，其句子的词序与陈述语气的句子的词序相同，即主语置于句首，后随动词。

***Who invited** you?*
*And then **what happened**?*
***Which mattress is** best?*

'wh' - 词作宾语或作副词
'wh' - word as object or adverb

4.20 'Wh'- 词用作动词或介词的宾语，构成宾语的一部分或用作副词时，主语的位置就是其通常在疑问语气中的位置，即位于句子第一个动词之后。

*What **am I** going to do without you?*
*Which graph **are you** going to use?*
*Why **has Cherubini** written this?*
*When **would you** be coming down?*

如果使用除 'be' 以外的其他动词的**简单现在时** (simple present tense) 或**简单过去时** (simple past tense)，'do'、'does' 或 'did' 用于主语之前。

*What **do you** really think?*
*Which department **do you** want?*
*Where **does she** live?*
*How **do you** know what it's like?*
*When **did you** last see John Cartwright?*

如果使用 'be' 的简单现在时或简单过去时，则将主要动词置于主语之前，不用 'do'、'does' 或 'did'。

*Where **is the station**?*
*How **was your meeting**?*
*When **was the last time you cleaned the garage**?*

无动词疑问句
questions without a verb

4.21 在会话中，'wh'- 疑问句有时只含 'wh'- 词。例如，如果你对某人说 'I'm learning to type'，他可能会问 'Why?'，意思是 'Why are you learning to type?'。

*'He saw a snake.' – '**Where**?'*
*'I have to go to Germany.' – '**When**?'*
*'I knew you were landing today.' – '**How**?'*

'Wh'- 疑问句也可能由含有 'wh'- 词的名词词组构成。例如，如果你对某人说 'I gave your book to that girl'，他可能会问 'Which girl?' 意思是 'Which girl did you give my book to?'。

*'He knew my cousin.' – '**Which cousin**?'*
*'Who was your friend?' – '**What friend**?'*

'who' 和 'whom'
'who' and 'whom'

4.22 代词 'who' 用来询问人的身份。'Who' 可作动词的主语或宾语。

Who *discovered this?*
Who *were her friends?*
Who *are you expecting?*
Who *did he marry?*

在比较正式的英语中，'whom' 有时用来代替 'who' 作动词的宾语。

Whom *shall we call?*
Whom *did you see?*

'Who' 和 'whom' 还可作介词的宾语。'Who' 作介词的宾语时，介词置于句末。

Who *did you dance* ***with****?*
Who *do I pay this* ***to****?*

'Whom' 作介词的宾语时，介词位于句首，放在 'whom' 之前。

For whom *were they supposed to do it?*
To whom *is a broadcaster responsible?*

'whose'

4.23 'Whose' 作限定词或代词，用来询问某物属于哪个人或与哪个人有关。

Whose babies *did you think they were?*
Whose body *was it?*
Whose *is that?*

'which'

4.24 'Which' 作代词或限定词，用于要求某人在若干人或物中指明特定的人或物。

Which *is the best restaurant?*
Which *is her room?*
Which *do you like best?*
Which doctor *do you want to see?*

'Which' 作限定词时，可作介词宾语的一部分。介词通常位于疑问句句末。

Which station *did you come* ***from****?*
Which land *will they have passed* ***over****?*

'when' 和 'where'
'when' and 'where'

4.25 'When' 用于询问事情过去、现在或将来发生的时间。

When *did you find her?*
When *do we have supper?*
Ginny, ***when*** *are you coming home?*

'Where' 用于询问地点、位置或方向。

Where *does she live?*
Where *are you going?*
Where *do you go to complain?*

'why'

4.26 'Why' 用于询问某事的理由。

Why *are you here?*
Why *does Amy want to go and see his grave?*
Why *does she treat me like that when we're such old friends?*

'Why' 有时与无主语的动词原形连用，通常用于询问为什么某个动作现在或过去是必要的。

Why *wake me up?*
Why *bother about me?*
Why *make a point of it?*

'Why not' 可与动词原形连用，提出建议或询问为什么未采取某项特定行动。

Why not end *it now?*
Why not read *a book?*
If it was Haldeman, then ***why not say*** *so?*

'how'

4.27 'How' 通常用来询问做某事的方法或某事得以完成的途径。

How *do we open it?*
How *are you going to get that?*
How *could he explain it to her?*
How *did he know when you were coming?*

'How' 也可用于询问人的感觉如何；人或物的外貌或某物听起来如何，给人的感觉如何，或味道怎样。

How *are you feeling today?*
*'****How*** *do I look?' – 'Very nice.'*
How *did you feel when you stood up in front of the class?*

'how' 与其他词
'how' with other words

4.28 'How' 可与其他词结合，放在疑问句的句首。

'How many' 和 'how much' 用于询问事物的数和量。

'How many' 后跟复数具数名词。

How many *people are there?*
How many *languages can you speak?*
How many *times have you been?*

'How much' 后随不具数名词。

How much money *have we got in the bank?*
Just ***how much time*** *have you been devoting to this?*

如果不明确指的是什么，'how many' 和 'how much' 之后可不带名词。

How many *did you find?*
How much *did he tell you?*
How much *does it cost?*
How much *do they really understand?*

'How long' 用于询问一段时间的长短。

How long *have you lived here?*
How long *will it take?*
How long *can she live like this?*
How long *ago was that?*

'How long' 也用于询问距离，尽管这种用法罕见。

How long *is the side of that triangle there?*

'How far' 用于询问距离和范围。

How far *can we see?*
How far *is it to Montreal from here?*
How far *have you got with your homework?*

当询问在多大程度上某物具有某种特定性质或特征时，'how' 可与形容词连用。

How big*'s your overdraft at the moment?*
How old *are your children?*

'what'

4.29 'What' 可作代词或限定词，也可与 'if' 或 'for' 组合起来使用。

'What' 作代词时，用于寻求各种各样的确指信息，如事件的细节、词或表达式的意义或事情的理由。

***What**'s wrong with his mother?*
***What** has happened to him?*
***What** is the Cup Final?*
***What** keeps you hanging around here?*

'What' 可用来询问某人对某物的看法。

***What** do you think about the present political situation?*

'What' 还常用作介词的宾语，该介词一般放在疑问句的句末。

***What** are you interested **in**?*
***What** did he die **of**?*
***What** do you want to talk **about**?*

'What' 作限定词时，用于了解某事物是什么事物或询问事物的种类。

***What books** does she read?*
***What church** did you say you attend?*

'What if' 用于陈述语气句的句首询问若出现某特定困难时，人们应该怎么办。

***What if** it's really bad weather?*
***What if** they didn't want to part with it, what would you do then?*

如果想知道某事发生的原因或目的，'what' 可置于疑问句句首，'for' 置于句末。'Why are you staring?' 与 'What are you staring for?' 意义相同；'What is this handle for?' 与 'What is the purpose of this handle?' 意思一致。

***What** are you going **for**?*
***What** are those lights **for**?*

'What' 也可与 'about' 或 'of' 组合。这种用法在 4.41 节讲解。

'whatever'、'wherever' 和 'whoever'
'whatever', 'wherever' and 'whoever'

4.30 如果想令疑问句听上去语气更强，可用 'whatever'、'wherever' 或 'whoever' 分别代替 'what'、'where' 或 'who'。

***Whatever** is the matter?*
***Wherever** did you get this?*
***Whoever** heard of a bishop resigning?*

关照某人做某事：祈使语气
Telling someone to do something: the imperative mood

命令和指示
orders and instructions

4.31 人们下命令或指示时，通常用**祈使语气** (imperative mood)。

Stop *her.*
Put *that gun down.*
Tell *your mother as soon as possible.*

书面指示用祈使语气。

Boil up *a little water with washing up liquid in it.*
Fry *the chopped onion and pepper in the oil.*

动词之前加 'you' 可使命令更加有力。

You *get in the car.*
You *shut up!*

忠告和警告
advice and warnings

4.32 提出忠告或警告时，可用祈使语气。

Be *sensible.*
You ***be*** *careful.*

忠告或警告常用否定形式表达。动词原形前加 'don't' 或 'do not' 构成否定祈使句。

Don't be *afraid of them.*
Don't be *discouraged.*
Do not move *out of your home without getting legal advice.*

动词原形之前加 'never' 也可构成否定祈使句。

Never open *the front door without looking through the peepholes.*

提出忠告或警告的另一种方法是在陈述句中用 'should' 或 'ought to'。

You ***should get*** *to know him better.*
You ***shouldn't keep*** *eggs in the refrigerator.*

这种用法在 4.219 节详述。

请求
appeals

4.33 请求某人做某事时，可用祈使语气。

Come *quickly...* ***Come*** *quickly...* ***Hurry****!*

在动词前加 'do' 可使请求更加有力。

Do help *me out.*
And now, please ***do stop*** *crying.*

解释 explanations **4.34** 解释某事时，如果希望受话人或读者考虑特定事物或可能性，或希望他们比较两件事物，某些动词可用祈使语气。

Take*, for instance, the new proposals for student loans.*
Imagine*, for example, an assembly line worker in a factory making children's blocks.*
But ***suppose*** *for a moment that the automobile industry had developed at the same rate as computers.*
For example, ***compare*** *a typical poor country like Indonesia with a rich one like Canada.*
Consider*, for example, the contrast between the way schools today treat space and time.*

下列动词可以这样使用：

compare	contrast	look at	suppose
consider	imagine	picture	take

'let' **4.35** 'Let' 在祈使句中有四种不同用法：

• 用于命令或指示。

Let *Philip have a look at it.*

• 当说话人建议自己和他人做某事时，可用 'Let' 后随 'us'。'Let us' 几乎总是缩约为 'Let's'。

Let's *go outside.*
Let's *creep forward on hands and knees.*

• 说话人自己主动提出做某事时，'Let' 可后随 'me'。

Let me *take your coat.*

• 在非常正式的英语中，'Let' 用于表达祝愿。

Let *the joy be universal.*
Let *confusion live!*
Let *the best man or woman win.*

语气的其他用途
Other uses of moods

确认 confirming

4.36 使用**陈述语气** (declarative mood) 提问，说话人可确认某事是真实的。

So you admit something is wrong?
Then you think we can keep it?

当人们用陈述语气提问时，指望得到的回答是 'yes'。只有使用否定结构，人们才指望得到的回答是 'no'。

'You mean it's still here?' – 'Of course.'
'You never learned the deaf and dumb alphabet?' – 'No, never.'

用陈述语气表达的疑问句常常以连词开头。

So *you're satisfied?*
And *you will listen dutifully?*

指示 instructing

4.37 使用以 'you' 作主语的陈述句，人们可不太正式地下达指示。

You *put the month and the temperature on the top line.*
You *take the bus up to the landing stage at twelve-thirty.*
You *just bung it in the oven.*

主动提供和邀请 offers and invitations

4.38 主动提供或发出邀请时，通常用以 'can' 或 'would' 等情态动词开头的**是非疑问句** ('yes/no'-question)。这种用法在 4.177 至 4.182 节详述。

Can *I help you?*
Can *I give you a lift?*
Would *you like me to get something for you?*
Would *you like some coffee?*
Would *you like to go to Ernie's for dinner?*

使用祈使语气，人们可更随便地表示主动提供或发出邀请。注意，只有显然不是下命令时，才能用祈使语气。

Have *a cigar.*
Come *to my place.*
Come *in, Mrs Kintner.*

动词之前加 'do' 可加强语气。

Do have *a chocolate biscuit.*
Do help *yourselves.*

请求、命令和指示 requests, orders, and instructions

4.39 人们通常用 'could'、'can' 或 'would' 等情态动词开头的是非疑问句提出请求。

Could *I ask you a few questions?*
Can *I have my hat back, please?*
Would *you mind having a word with my husband?*

情态动词引出的是非疑问句也可用于发布命令或指示。

Will *you tell Watson I shall be in a little late?*

☞ 这些用法在 4.160 至 4.170 节详述。

修辞疑问句 rhetorical questions

4.40 使用是非疑问句提出帮助或要求时，人们仍然指望得到 'yes' 或 'no' 的回答。有时，人们虽然并不指望得到任何回答，他们仍会用一些看上去像是非疑问句的句子。他们用是非疑问句表达强烈的感情、意见或印象。

例如，代替 'That's an ugly building'，有人可能会说 'Isn't that an ugly building?'。或者用 'Don't you ever get upset?' 代替 'You never seem to get upset'。

这类疑问句叫**修辞疑问句** (rhetorical questions)。

Doesn't the whole set-up strike you as crazy?
Can't you see that I'm busy?
Hasn't anyone round here got any sense?
Does nothing ever worry you?

另一类修辞疑问句由陈述句加 'are you?' 或 'is it?' 一类表达式构成。例如，有人可能会说 'So you are the new assistant, are you?' 或 'So they're coming to tea, are they?'。

So you want to be an actress, do you?
So you came up to sit beside me, did you?

修辞疑问句也可由 'how' 引出，通常表示震惊或愤怒的感情。例如，代替 'You are very cruel'，有人可能会说 'How can you be so cruel?'。

How *can you say such things?*
How *dare you speak to me like that?*

☞ 修辞疑问句在 10.12 节详述。

无动词疑问句 questions without a verb

4.41 'What about' 或 'what of' 用于名词词组之前不接动词，可构成疑问句。提这类问题是为了使某人想起某事，或把某人的注意力吸引到某事上来。提这类问题时，人们常指望对方有所行动，而不是给予答复。

What about *the others on the list?*
What about *your breakfast?*
But ***what of*** *the growing disadvantages of having too many children?*

建议 suggestions

4.42 提出建议的方法有如下几种：

• 可在陈述句中用情态动词 'could'（见 4.187 节）

We ***could have*** *tea.*
You ***could get*** *someone to dress up as a pirate.*

• 可用 'why' 引出的否定 'wh'- 疑问句

Why don't *we just give them what they want?*
Why don't *you write to her yourself?*

• 可用由 'what about' 或 'how about' 后随非限定小句构成的疑问句

What about *becoming an actor?*
How about *using makeup to dramatize your features?*

• 可用祈使语气

*'****Give*** *them a reward each,' I suggested.*

'Let's' 也可用于建议说话人和他人做某事。这种用法在 4.35 节讲解。

否定
Negation

构成否定陈述
Forming negative statements

4.43 如果想表示某事不真实，未发生或不是那种情形时，通常可用**否定陈述** (negative statements)。否定陈述含 'not'、'never' 或 'nowhere' 等词。这些词叫**否定词** (negative words)。

下列是英语中的否定词：

neither	nobody	nor	nowhere
never	none	not	
no	no one	nothing	

否定词表示某事物的反面或没有某事物。

4.44 还有一些词，如 'unhappy'、'meaningless' 也可对陈述进行否定，因为它们含有 'un-' 或 '-less' 等否定词缀。这些词在 4.76 至 4.82 节讨论。

另一类词，如 'scarcely' 和 'seldom' 也几乎可用以否定陈述，这些词叫**广义否定词** (broad negatives)，它们在 4.83 至 4.90 节讨论。

4.45 表示某物存在的陈述句若含有否定词，那么 'any'（不是 'no'）可置于随后的名词词组之前作限定词用。

以 'any-' 开头的词，如 'anyone' 或 'anywhere' 也可这么用。

*We had**n't any** money.*
*He writes poetry and **never** shows it to **anyone**.*
*It is **impossible** to park the car **anywhere**.*

☞ 关于 'any' 的另一种用法，参见 2.168 节。

⚠ **注意 Warning**

4.46 在同一个句子中，几乎永远不能使用两个否定词。例如，不能说 'I don't never go there' 和 'I don't know nothing'。

4.47 否定在**间引结构** (report structures) 中的用法在 7.13 节讲解。

☞ **情态动词** (modals) 的否定用法在 4.105 节讲解。

'not'

4.48 最常用的否定词就是 'not'。它和不同动词组合的用法与这些动词在**是非疑问句** ('yes/no'- question) 中的用法相对应，参见 4.12 至 4.14 节。

在动词词组中的位置 postition in verb groups

4.49 'Not' 与含有助动词的动词词组连用时，'not' 位于动词词组中第一个动词之后。

*They **could not exist** in their present form.*
*They **might not** even **notice**.*
*Unemployment **has not been** a major cause of the recent events.*
*He **had not attended** many meetings.*

*I **was not smiling**.*
*The council **was not entitled** to any rebate.*

加 'do'
adding 'do'

4.50 如果句子无助动词，那么可将 'do'、'does' 或 'did' 置于主语之后，再跟 'not' 或 '-n't' 加主要动词的原形。

*They **do not need** to talk.*
*He **does not speak** English very well.*
*I **didn't know** that.*

'Be' 和 'have' 属于例外情况，这一点在 4.51 和 4.52 节讲解。'Not' 的缩约式 '-n't' 在 4.55 至 4.56 节讲解。

'not' 与 'be'
'not' with 'be'

4.51 如果动词是 'be'，便不必用 'do'，只要将 'not' 或 '-n't' 置于动词之后即可。

*It **is not** difficult to see why they were unsuccessful.*
*There **is not** much point in heading south.*
*That **isn't** always the wisest course.*

'not' 与 'have' 和 'have got'
'not' with 'have' and 'have got'

4.52 如果动词是 'have'，通常将 'do'、'does' 或 'did' 置于主语之后，再跟 'not' 或 '-n't' 以及 'have' 的原形形式。

*Sydney's new opera house **does not have** a parking lot.*
*He **didn't have** a very grand salary.*

'Not' 或 '-n't' 也可直接用于动词之后，但这种用法罕见。

*He **hadn't** enough money.*
*I **haven't** any papers to say that I have been trained.*

如果用 'have got'，'not' 或 '-n't' 则位于 'have' 之后，'got' 之前。

*I **haven't got** the latest figures.*
*He **hasn't got** a daughter.*

☞ 'Have got' 在 3.17 节讲解。

与非限定动词连用的位置
position with non-finite verbs

4.53 'Not' 与 '-ing' 形式或 'to'- 不定式小句连用时，位于 '-ing' 形式或 'to'- 不定式之前。

*We stood there, **not knowing** what was expected of us.*
*He lost out by **not taking** a degree at another university.*
*Try **not to worry**.*
*It took a vast amount of patience **not to strangle** him.*

与限定和非限定动词连用 with finite and non-finite verbs

4.54 当句子含有限定动词和非限定动词词组时，'not' 既可与限定动词词组连用，也可与非限定动词词组连用，究竟跟哪一种，取决于要表达的意义。

例如，既可说 'Mary tried not to smile'，也可说 'Mary did not try to smile'，但它们表达的意义不同。第一句的意思是玛丽设法避免微笑；而第二句的意思则是玛丽甚至未试图去微笑。

但对于某些和 'to'-不定式小句连用的动词，'not' 无论与主要动词连用，还是与 'to'-不定式连用，意思都一样。

*She **did not appear** to have done anything.*
*Henry **appears not to appreciate** my explanation.*
*It **didn't seem** to bother them at all.*
*They **seemed not to notice** me.*

下列动词与 'to'-不定式连用。'Not' 与这些动词连用时，无论置于动词之前还是 'to'-不定式之前，句子的意思都一样：

appear	intend	tend
expect	plan	want
happen	seem	wish

两个动词用于同一个句子谈及两个动作或状态，叫**级阶** (phase)。级阶在 3.183 至 3.213 节讨论。

注意，'not' 与某些**转述动词** (reporting verbs) 连用时，无论置于转述动词之前还是主要动词之前，意义相同。这种用法在 7.13 节讲解。

'not' 的缩约式 contractions of 'not'

4.55 在口头英语和非正式书面英语中，'be'、'have' 或助动词之后的 'not' 常缩约为 '-n't'，并附加在动词末尾。

*Marigold **isn't** really my aunt at all.*
*He does**n't** believe in anything.*
*I have**n't** heard from her recently.*

注意，'cannot'、'shall not' 和 'will not' 可分别缩约为 'can't'、'shan't' 和 'won't'。

下列是所有的缩约式：

aren't	didn't	hasn't	mightn't	shouldn't
isn't	doesn't	haven't	mustn't	won't
wasn't	don't	can't	oughtn't	wouldn't
weren't	hadn't	couldn't	shan't	

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

4.56 注意，如果动词已经缩约，并且附加在主语上，'not' 则不能缩约为 '-n't'。例如，'she is not' 可缩约为 'she isn't' 或 'she's not'，但不能缩约为 'she'sn't'。

*It **isn't** easy.*
*It**'s not** easy.*
*I **haven't** had time.*
*I**'ve not** had time.*

注意，'-n't' 不能附加在 'am' 上。'I'm not' 是唯一的缩约形式。

***I'm not** excited*

☞ 'Aren't I ?' 用于疑问句。关于这一点，详见 10.125 节。

疑问句中 'not' 通常缩约为 '-n't'，附加在动词词组中第一个动词的末尾。

***Didn't** she win at the Olympics?*
***Hasn't** he put on weight?*
***Aren't** you bored?*

但在正式英语中，'not' 也可以置于主语之后。

*Did he **not** have brothers?*
*Was it **not** rather absurd?*

'not' 的其他用法
other uses of 'not'

4.57 在句子中，'not' 几乎可以与任何词或词组连用。例如，它可与名词词组、形容词、副词、介词短语和量词连用。通常，这样做的目的是为了更有力、更仔细、更礼貌、或更委婉一些。4.58 至 4.59 节讨论某些这种用法。

4.58 'Very' 常常用于 'not' 之后，减弱句子的否定意义。'Very' 可置于形容词补足语、含有形容词的补足语或副词之前。这种用法比不用 'very' 显得更客气、更委婉一些。

*His attitude is **not very logical**.*
*It's **not very strong tea**, it won't stain.*
*He wasn't **a very good actor**.*
*She shook her head, but **not very convincingly**.*

'Not' 与 'absolutely'、'altogether'、'entirely' 或 'necessarily' 连用也具相同用法。这样做是为了显得更客气一些或不过份苛刻。

*She wasn't **absolutely convinced** of her usefulness.*
*I was not **altogether sure**.*

*They are **not entirely reliable**.*
*Science is **not necessarily hostile** to human values.*

'Not' 可用于含有否定意义的补足语之前，表示所描述的事物事实上具有某些好的属性，尽管说话人并不想使它们听上去比实际情况好。这类结构常与含有 'un-' 或 'less' 等否定词缀的词连用。

*Well, it certainly is **not a hindrance**.*
*It's **not a bad start**.*
*It's a small point, but **not an unimportant one**.*
*America is very well developed, but **not limitless**.*

☞ 含有否定词缀的词在 4.76 至 4.82 节讲解。

'not' 用于对比
'not' used for contrast

4.59 'Not' 可用于对比句中的两个部分。这样 'not' 强调陈述的肯定部分。

*He held her arm in his hand, **not hard**, but firmly.*
*We move steadily, **not fast, not slow**.*
*'Were they still interested?' – '**Not just interested**. Overjoyed.'*
*I will move eventually, but **not from Suffolk**.*
*It's **not a huge hotel**, but it's very nice.*

'never'

4.60 'Never' 用于表示情况不是或永远不会是如此。

与含有助动词的动词词组连用时，'never' 置于第一个动词之后，主要动词之前。

*I **would never trust** my judgement again.*
*...a type of glass which is rare and **is never used**.*
*The number of people who died **will never be known**.*
*Thirty years ago, the man **was never expected to wash** the dishes or help with the children.*
*I **had never been** to this big town before.*
***I've never done** so much work in all my life.*

为了强调陈述的否定一面，'never' 可置于动词词组第一个动词之前。

*I **never would have guessed** if he hadn't told me.*
*There was no such person – there **never had been**.*

与 'be' 的简单形式连用
with simple forms of 'be'

4.61 如果主要动词是 'be' 的简单现在时或简单过去时，'never' 通常用于动词之后。

*She **was never** too proud to learn.*
*I'**m never** very keen on keeping a car for more than a year.*
*There **were never** any people in the house.*

不过，'never' 可置于 'be' 的简单形式之前，进行强调。

*There **never was** enough hot water at home.*
*It **never was** very clear.*
*There **never is** any great change.*

与其他动词的简单形式连用
with simple forms of other verbs

4.62 'Never' 与除 'be' 以外的其他主要动词的简单现在时或简单过去时连用时，放在动词之前。

*I **never want** to see you in my classes again.*
*She **never goes** abroad.*
*He **never went** to university.*
*He **never did** any homework.*

强调
emphasis

4.63 为了使否定陈述语气更强，'never' 之后用 'do'、'does' 或 'did' 再置于动词原形之前。例如，代替 'I never met him' 可说 'I never did meet him'。

*I **never do see** her now.*
*We **never did find** the gauze pad.*
*I **never did want** a council house.*
*Some people **never do adjust** adequately.*

祈使句中的 'never'
'never' in imperatives

4.64 'Never' 可用于祈使结构的开头。

***Never** change a wheel near a drain.*
***Never** dry clothes in front of an open fire.*

☞ 祈使结构在 4.4 和 4.31 至 4.35 节讲解。

'no'

4.65 泛指限定词 'no' 可用于单数和复数名词词组之前，表示某物不存在或无法得到。

*There was **no money** for an operation.*
*We had **no union**, nobody to look after us.*
*He has **no ambition**.*
*I could see **no tracks**.*

关于泛指限定词，参见 1.208 至 1.235 节。

4.66 在口语中，'-n't' 常与 'any' 连用代替 'no'。例如，代替 'I had no money'，可说 'I hadn't any money'。

*They had**n't** meant **any** harm to her.*
*I ca**n't** see **any** hope in it.*

'none' **4.67** 代词 'none' 可用来表示一个人或一件物件都没有，也可表示特定事物连一丁点都没有。

*I waited for comments but **none** came.*
*The entire area is covered with shallow lakes, **none** more than a few yards in depth.*
*We have been seeing difficulties where **none** exist.*

☞ 关于 'none' 的另一种用法，参见 1.154 节。

'none of' **4.68** 'None of' 是量词。

***None of** the townspeople had ever seen such weather.*
***None of** this has happened without our consent.*

☞ 关于 'none of'，参见 2.195 至 2.197 和 2.202 节。

以 'no'- 开头的词 words beginning with 'no' **4.69** 以 'no-' 开头，用于否定句中的词有四个：'nothing'、'no one' 和 'nobody' 是**不定代词** (indefinite pronoun)。'Nowhere' 是**不定地点副词** (indefinite place adverbs)。

*There's **nothing** you can do.*
***Nobody** in her house knows any English.*
*There's almost **nowhere** left to go.*

☞ **不定代词** (indefinite pronouns) 在 1.127 至 1.140 节讲解。**不定地点副词** (indefinite place adverbs) 在 6.90 至 6.100 节讲解。

后跟 'but' followed by 'but' **4.70** 'Nothing'、'no one'、'nobody' 和 'nowhere' 可后随 'but' 表示 'only'的意思。例如，'There was nothing but cheese'意思是'there was only cheese'。

*I look back on this period with **nothing but** pleasure.*
*He heard **no one but** his uncles.*

以 'any' 开头的不定代词和副词可用于类似的结构。但在这类结构中，'but' 的意思是 'except'，不是 'only'。

*I could never speak about **anything but** business to Ivan.*
*It's been years since he has taken her to visit **anyone but** the children.*

'neither' 和 'nor'
'neither' and 'nor'

4.71 'Neither' 和 'nor' 搭配使用，表示两种选择都不可能、不见得或不真实。'Neither' 用于第一种选择之前，'nor' 用于第二种选择之前。

Neither *Margaret* ***nor*** *John was there.*
They had ***neither*** *food* ***nor*** *money until the end of the week.*

'neither' 用作回答
'neither' in replies

4.72 'Neither' 单独使用可作为回答，指已经提到过的两种选择。

*'Does that mean Yes or No?' – '****Neither****'.*

4.73 若分句含有否定词，特别是含有 'not' 时，'neither' 或 'nor' 可用于否定第一个分句。在第二个分句中，'neither' 或 'nor' 位于句首，后随动词和主语。

This isn't a dazzling achievement, but ***neither is it*** *a negligible one.*
These people are not insane, ***nor are they*** *fools.*

如果有助动词的话，助动词可置于第二个分句的主语之前。

The organization had broken no rules, but ***neither had it acted*** *responsibly.*
I do not wish to be rude to you but ***neither do I wish*** *to be rude to Simon.*

'neither' 和单数名词
'neither' with singular nouns

4.74 对两种事物进行否定时，'neither' 可单独用于指两种事物中任何一个的单数名词之前。例如，'Neither partner benefited from the agreement' 的意思是：有两个合作者，否定陈述适用于这两者。

Neither report *mentioned the Americans.*
In reality ***neither party*** *was enthusiastic.*
Neither sex *has a monopoly on thought or emotion.*
Neither parent *is the good one or the bad one.*

注意，在这类结构中，'neither' 与单数动词连用。

'neither of'

4.75 'Neither' 带 'of' 后作量词用，否定两者。'Neither of' 后随复数名词词组。

Neither of us *was having any luck.*
Neither of the boys *screamed.*
Neither of them *was making any sound.*

'Neither of' 通常与单数动词连用。

Neither of these extremes is *desirable.*
Neither of these opinions proves *anything.*

不过 'neither of' 也可用复数动词。

***Neither of the children were** there.*

☞ 量词 (quantifiers) 在 2.193 至 2.210 节讲解。

构成否定陈述：否定词缀
Forming negative statements: negative affixes

4.76 'Un-'、'dis-' 等前缀可附加在词首，赋于某些词以否定意义。含有前缀的词可在所有收词较广的词典中查到。后缀 '-less' 可附加在词的末尾，赋于这些词以否定意义。

*She asked us to her house which was very small and **untidy**.*
*At last Janet sat down, as she was **breathless**.*

下列是常用的否定前缀：

a-	de-	il-	ir-	non-
anti-	dis-	im-	mal-	un-
counter-	ex-	in-	mis-	

'un-'

4.77 在这些前缀中 'un-' 最常用，它可附加在许多形容词、副词和动词上。

*They were **unhappy** with the way things were going.*
*They described what they saw, sometimes truthfully and at other times **untruthfully**.*
*She **unpacked** straightaway.*

'Un-' 也可附加在某些名词上。

*She wanted to save her sister from **unhappiness**.*

'in-', 'il-', 'ir-'

4.78 'In-' 是另一个常用前缀，它可代替 'un-' 附加在某些形容词、副词和名词上。

*The footpath was **invisible**.*
*Some radiation continues almost **indefinitely**.*
*There's enormous **inefficiency** in the system.*

'Il-' 附加在某些词首为 'l' 的形容词和名词上；'Im' 附加在某些以 'b'、'm' 或 'p' 开始的词上，'-ir' 附加在某些以 'r' 开始的词上。

*He has reached an **illogical** conclusion.*
*The windows will be almost **impossible** to open.*
*I was a crazy, **irresponsible** adventurer.*

'dis-' **4.79** 'Dis-' 可附加在某些动词、形容词、名词和副词上。

*I **disliked** change of any kind.*
*I was becoming **discontented**.*
*He gave a look of **disapproval**.*
*She just gets **disagreeably** rebellious.*

'non-' **4.80** 'Non-' 可附加在某些形容词和名词上。

*...a peaceful, **non-violent** protest.*
*Traffic signals were inadequate or **non-existent**.*
*The match was a **non-event**.*
*The oil companies stubbornly pursued a course of **non-cooperation**.*

'-less' **4.81** 后缀 '-less' 可附加在许多名词上，构成否定形容词。

*They were completely **helpless**.*
*Many people were in tears and almost **speechless**.*
*That was very **thoughtless** of you.*
*...a cold, **heartless** smile.*

下列是含有后缀 '-less' 的常用词：

breathless	harmless	lifeless	nameless	senseless
careless	heartless	limitless	needless	shapeless
childless	helpless	meaningless	pointless	speechless
countless	homeless	merciless	powerless	thoughtless
doubtless	hopeless	mindless	relentless	useless
endless	landless	motionless	restless	worthless

产出性特征 PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

4.82 如果从上下文可清楚地看出说话人谈论的是缺少某物，'-less' 可附加在其他许多名词上，这是**产出性特征**的一个例子。

产出性特征在前言中讲解。

构成否定陈述：广义否定词
Forming negative statements: broad negatives

4.83 另一种否定陈述的方法是用广义否定词。**广义否定词**(broad negatives) 指 'rarely' 和 'seldom' 一类副词，它们几乎可以完全否定陈述。

*The estimated sales will **hardly** cover the cost of making the film.*
*We were **scarcely** able to move.*
*Kuwait lies **barely** 30 miles from the Iranian coast.*

下列是最常见的广义否定词：

barely	hardly	rarely	scarcely	seldom

在句子中的位置
position in clause

4.84 在句子中广义否定词的位置与 'never' 的位置相同，见 4.60 至 4.62 节。

4.85 广义否定词与含有助动词的动词词组连用时，可置于动词词组的第一个词之后，主要动词之前。

*I **could scarcely believe** my eyes.*
*Mr Al-Fayed **is rarely photographed** with his family.*
*His eyes **had hardly closed**.*

与 'be' 的简单形式连用
with simple form of 'be'

4.86 如果动词是 'be' 的简单现在时或简单过去时，广义否定词通常置于动词之后。

*Examiners **were seldom** unkind.*
*The new pressure group **is barely** six months old.*
*The office **was hardly** ever empty.*
*The lagoons **are rarely** deep.*
*The results **were scarcely** encouraging.*

与其他动词连用
with other verbs

4.87 与 'be' 以外的其他动词的简单现在时或简单过去时连用时，广义否定词通常位于动词之前。

*He **seldom bathed**.*
*Marsha **rarely felt** hungry.*
*John **hardly** ever **spoke** to the Press.*

广义否定词也可用于动词之后，但这种用法不太常见。

*They **climb rarely** and do not have much reason to.*
*They **met** so **seldom**.*

作句子的第一个词
as first word in the clause

4.88 在正式英语或文学英语中，广义否定词有时置于句首进行强调。如果所用的动词词组含有助动词，那么，动词词组的第一个词可置于广义否定词之后，再接主语和动词词组的其余部分。

***Seldom has society offered** so wide a range of leisure time activities.*
***Hardly had we recovered** from this appalling shock when we were approached by a yacht.*

如果动词词组中，不含助动词，可置'do'的简单现在时或简单过去时于广义否定词之后，再接主语及主要动词的原形。

***Seldom did a week pass** without a request for assessment.*
***Rarely do local matches live up to** expectations.*

注意，'barely'和'scarcely'不常这样用。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

4.89 如果将含有广义否定词的陈述句变成**附加疑问句** (tag questions)，那么，句末的附加部分通常用肯定形式，这与其他否定词的用法相同。附加疑问句在 10.122 至 10.130 节讲解。

*She's hardly the right person for the job, **is she**?*
*You seldom see that sort of thing these days, **do you**?*

'Rarely'和'seldom'可用'so'、'very'、'too'或'pretty'前置修饰。'Rarely'还可用'only'前置修饰。

*It happens **so rarely**.*
*Women were **very seldom** convicted.*
*He **too seldom** makes the first greeting.*
*Most people go to church **only rarely**.*

如果要表示某物的量极少，广义否定词可与'any'或'any-'开头的词连用。

*The bonds show **barely any** interest.*
***Hardly anybody** came.*
*In fact, it is **seldom any** of these.*
*With **scarcely any** warning, the soldiers charged.*
*Sometimes two or three relatives are admitted, but **rarely any** friends.*

'almost' **4.90** 'Almost' 后随否定词 'no' 或 'never' 可代替广义否定词，例如：'There was almost no food left' 与 'There was hardly any food left' 含义相同。

*They've **almost no** money for anything.*
*The cars thinned out to **almost none**.*
*They were very private people, with **almost no** friends.*
*Men **almost never** began conversations.*

强调陈述的否定一面
Emphasizing the negative aspect of a statement

'at all' **4.91** 为了加强语气，'at all' 可用于否定陈述句中。'At all' 可与所有否定词，与 'without' 或广义否定词连用。

*She had **no** writing ability **at all**.*
*'There's no need' said Jimmie.–'**None at all**'.*
*They run education **without** any control **at all** from central government.*
*He **hardly** read anything **at all**.*

☞ **广义否定词** (board negatives) 在 4.83 至 4.90 节讲解。

'whatsoever' **4.92** 为了强调陈述的否定一面，'whatsoever' 可用于 'none' 和 'nothing' 之后。

*'You don't think he has any chance of winning?' – '**None whatsoever**.'*
*There was no compromise of principle involved, **none whatsoever**.*
*You'll find yourself thinking about **nothing whatsoever**.*

限定词 'no' 若用于名词词组中，'whatsoever' 可置于名词词组后。

*There is **no** need **whatsoever** to teach children how to behave.*
*There was **no** debate **whatsoever**, not even in Parliament.*

'Whatsoever' 还可置于含有 'any' 或由 'any-' 开头的词的否定句中。

*You are not entitled to **any** aid **whatsoever**.*
*He was devoid of **any** talent **whatsoever**.*
*I knew I wasn't learning **anything whatsoever**.*

'ever' **4.93** 为了强调陈述的否定一面，'ever' 可置于否定词之后。

*I can't say I **ever** had much interest in fishing.*
*Nobody **ever** leaves the airport.*
*I never **ever** believed we would have such success.*

其他表达式
other expressions

4.94 下面几个表达式可用来强调含有 'not' 的否定句。它们是 'in the least'、'the least bit'、'in the slightest' 和 'a bit'。

*I don't mind **in the least**, I really don't.*
*Neither of the managers was **the least bit** repentant afterwards.*
*I don't really envy you **in the slightest**.*
*They're not **a bit interested**.*

如果 'in the least' 和 'in the slightest' 与动词连用，它们紧跟动词之后；如果动词有宾语的话，它们则置于宾语之后。

*I wouldn't have objected **in the least**.*
*She did not worry Billy **in the least**.*
*The weather hadn't improved **in the slightest**.*

如果 'in the least' 与形容词连用，它可置于形容词之前。'In the slightest' 通常位于形容词之后。

*I wasn't **in the least surprised**.*
*She wasn't **worried in the slightest**.*

'The least bit' 和 'a bit' 只与形容词连用，放在形容词之前。

*I'm not **the least bit worried**.*
*They're not **a bit interested**.*

用情态动词
Using modals

4.95 人们使用语言并非总是只通过陈述和提问来交流信息。有时，我们需要提出要求、意向或建议，有时需要表达我们的愿望或打算。我们也可能想更礼貌一些、更得体一些。我们还会表示自己对所述内容的看法。

为了表达上述意义我们使用一组叫**情态动词** (modals) 的动词。情态动词总是与其他动词连用，它们是特殊**助动词** (auxiliary verbs)。

下列是英语中的情态动词：

can	might	shall	would
could	must	should	
may	ought to	will	

在某些语法书中，'dare'、'need' 和 'used to' 也被列入情态动词。本书称这些词为**半情态动词** (semi-modals)。它们分别在 4.252 至 4.262 节讲解。

'Ought' 有时被视为情态动词，而不是 'ought to'。关于这一点的详细注释，参见 4.102 节。情态动词有时又叫**情态助动词** (modal auxiliaries)。

4.96 情态动词的主要用法在 4.97 至 4.101 节讲解。情态动词的特征在 4.102 至 4.109 节阐述。

使用情态动词表达时间的方法在 4.110 至 4.117 节讨论，表示某事是否可能的方法在 4.118 至 4.157 节讨论。与他人相互交往时，使用情态动词的方法在 4.158 至 4.226 节讲解。

☞ 用于代替情态动词的表达式在 4.227 至 4.251 节讨论。

☞ 半情态动词在 4.252 至 4.262 节讲解。

情态动词的主要用法
The main uses of modals

4.97 情态动词主要用于表达说话人对所述内容的态度，或者关心所述内容对谈话或书写对象所产生的影响。

对信息的态度 attitude to information

4.98 提供信息时，人们有时用情态动词来表示自己对所述内容是否真实或是否正确有多大把握。

例如，若某人说 'Mr Wilkins is the oldest person in the village'，他无疑在陈述一项事实。如果他说 'Mr Wilkins must be the oldest person in the village'，情态动词 'must' 表示他认为威尔金斯先生的年龄最大，因为他想不出村子里还有谁比威尔金斯先生年龄更大。如果他说，'Mr Wilkins might be the oldest person in the village'，情态动词 'might' 则表示他认为威尔金斯先生可能是年龄最大的，因为他年龄非常大。

对打算的态度 attitude to intentions

4.99 情态动词可表示说话人对打算做的事情或不打算做的事情的态度。例如，如果某人说 'I won't go without Simon'，那么，他在表达不愿做某事的强烈愿望。如果他说 'I can't go without Simon'，那么，他在表示不愿意做某事的同时又说明了不愿意做的特殊理由。如果他说 'I couldn't go without Simon'，他的意思则是没有西蒙他也不愿意去，因为这样做不公平或道德上是错误的。

对人的态度 attitude to people

4.100 人们使用语言，会对特定的人或听众产生影响，作出反应。情态动词常用来取得特殊效果，所选用的情态词由好几个因素决定，如说话人与受话人的关系，正式情景还是非正式情景及所述内容的重要程度。

例如，若对陌生人说 'Open the door'，通常则显得粗鲁无礼，虽然在紧急情况下或说话对象是亲密朋友或小孩时可以这样说。通常可对陌生人说 'Will you open the door?'、'Would you open the door?' 或 'Could you open the door?'。具体选用哪一句，依说话人想要表现的礼貌程度而定。

复合句中的使用
use in complex sentences

4.101 在三种**复合句** (complex sentences) 中情态动词有特殊用法。

- 用于**被转述从句** (reported clauses)

Wilson dropped a hint that he ***might*** *come.*
I felt that I ***would*** *like to wake her up.*

关于被转述从句，详见第七章。

- 用于**条件结构** (conditional structures)

If the bosses had known that he voted liberal, he ***would*** *have got the sack.*
If only things had been different, she ***would*** *have been far happier with George.*

关于这些结构，详见 8.25 至 8.42 节。

- 用于**目的从句** (purpose clauses)

He stole under the very noses of the store detectives in order that he ***might*** *be arrested and punished.*
They marched us through the town, so that they ***could*** *say to the people, 'Look at the great British army.'*

☞ 关于这些结构，详见 8.47 至 8.48 节。

情态动词的特征
Special features of modals

后随动词的形式
form of following verb

4.102 情态动词后随动词的**原形** (base form)。

I must ***leave*** *fairly soon.*
I think it will ***be*** *rather nice.*
The rich ought to ***pay*** *the tuition fees of their sons and daughters.*

注意，'ought' 有时视为情态动词，而不是 'ought to'。'Ought' 后随 'to'- 不定式。

4.103 有时，情态动词后随助动词 'be' 或 'have' 的原形形式及小句。

情态动词后随 'be' 和现在分词时，表示说话人谈及的是现在或将来。

People ***may be watching****.*
You ***ought to be doing*** *this.*
The play ***will be starting*** *soon.*

情态动词后随 'have' 和过去分词时，表示说话人谈及的是过去。

You ***must have heard*** *of him.*
She ***may have gone*** *already.*
I ***ought to have sent*** *the money.*

在被动结构中，情态动词后随 'be' 或 'have been' 和过去分词。

The name of the winner ***will be announced****.*
They ***ought to be treated*** *fairly.*
Such charges ***may have been justified****.*

情态动词从不与助动词 'do' 或另一个情态动词连用。

无屈折变化
no inflections

4.104 情态动词无屈折变化。即它们无第三人称单数形式 '-s'，也没有 '-ing' 或 '-ed' 形式。

There's nothing I ***can*** *do about it.*
I am sure he ***can*** *do it.*

I ***must*** *leave fairly soon.*
She insisted that Jim ***must*** *leave.*

'Could' 有时被认为是 'can' 的过去时，关于这一点在 4.113 至 4.114 节讲解。

否定式
negatives

4.105 情态动词后紧跟 'not' 等**否定词** (negative words) 可构成否定式。在 'ought to' 中，否定词可置于 'ought' 之后。'Can not' 通常书写连成一个词 'cannot'。

You ***must not*** *worry.*
He ***ought not to*** *have done so.*
I ***cannot*** *go back.*

'Not' 位于 'could'、'might'、'must'、'ought'、'should' 和 'would' 之后时常常缩约为 '-n't' 并附加在情态动词上。

You ***mustn't*** *talk about Ron like this.*
Perhaps I ***oughtn't*** *to confess this.*

'Shall not'、'will not' 和 'cannot' 分别缩约为 'shan't'、'won't' 和 'can't'。'May not' 无缩约式。

*I **shan't** get much work done tonight.*
*He **won't** be finished for at least another half an hour.*
*I **can't** go with you.*

疑问句
questions

4.106 将情态动词置于主语之前，便构成疑问句。在 'ought to' 中，'ought' 可置于主语之前，'to' 置于主语之后。

***Could you** give me an example?*
***Ought you to** make some notes about it?*
***Might**n't **it** surprise people?*
*Why **could they** not leave her alone?*
*There are many questions we cannot answer, but **must we** not at least ask them?*

附加疑问
question tags

4.107 情态动词可用于**附加疑问** (question tags) 中。

*They can't all be right, **can they**?*
*You won't forget the canary, **will you**?*

否定附加疑问中的否定词用缩约式。

*It would be handy, **wouldn't it**?*
*It'll give you time to think about it, **won't it**?*

☞ 附加疑问在 10.122 至 10.130 节讲解。

缩约式
contractions

4.108 在英语口语中，'will' 和 'would' 用于代词之后时，常缩约为 '-'ll' 和 '-'d'，并且附加在代词后。

*I hope you**'ll** agree.*
*She**'ll** be all right.*
*They**'d** both call each other horrible names.*
*If I went back on the train, it**'d** be better.*

'Will' 和 'would' 单独使用，其后不随动词时，则不能这样缩约。例如，可说 'Paul said he would come, and I hope he will'，但不能说 'Paul said he would come, and I hope he'll'。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

4.109 人们有时仅单独使用情态动词，其后不再接动词，重复情态动词部分时就是如此。例如，如果某人说 'I expect Margaret will come tonight'，他人可说 'I hope she will'，意思是 'I hope she will come'。

*'I **must go**.' – 'I suppose you **must**.'*
*'You **should have become an archaeologist**.' – 'You're dead right, I **should**.'*
*If you **can't do it**, we'll find someone who **can**.*

若刚刚提及的动词之前无情态动词，或与之连用的情态动词与下文的情态动词不同，下文中情态动词之后的动词也可以省略。例如，若某人说 'George has failed his exam'，他人可说 'I thought he would'，意思是 'I thought he would fail his exam'。

*You **learned to deal with each other**. We never **will**.*
*They had come to believe that it not only **must go on for ever** but that it **should**.*

但若刚刚提及的动词是 'be'，而且未与情态动词连用，那么下文中情态动词之后的 'be' 不能省略。例如，若某人问 'Is he a teacher?'，就不能说 'I think he might'，必须说 'I think he might be'。

*Linguistics **is** not yet a science and perhaps never **will be**.*
*The Board's methods **are** not as stringent as they **could be**.*
*Relations between the two countries **have not been** as smooth as they **might have been**.*

省略某些词以避免重复这种语言特征叫**省略** (ellipsis)。关于动词词组中的省略，详见 9.49 至 9.69 节。

指时间
Referring to time

4.110 情态动词通常不表示人们谈及的是过去、现在或将来。一般用其他方法表示，如在情态动词后加助动词和分词。有时，人们所谈及的是过去、现在或将来的事件或情景，可从上下文中清楚知道。

将来：'shall' 和 'will'
the future: 'shall' and 'will'

4.111 'Shall' 和 'will' 属于例外。

'Shall' 总是表示人们谈及将来的事件或情景。

*I **shall** do what you suggested.*
*Eventually we **shall** find a solution.*

'Will' 通常表示人们谈及将来的事件或情景。

*The farmer **will** feel more responsible towards his workers.*
*He **will** not return for many hours.*

不过，'will' 有时用于说及现在的情景。

*You **will** not feel much love for him at the moment.*

☞ 'Will' 的这种用法在 4.124 节讲解。

4.112 'Could' 和 'would' 有时被说成是 'can' 和 'will' 的过去时形式。但这种说法只在少数次要用法上成立。下面几节讲解这些用法。

过去的能力：'could'
ability in the past: 'could'

4.113 如果只谈及人或物做某事的能力，'could' 可被视作 'can' 的过去时。例如，若谈及一个活着的人，可说 'He can speak Russian and Finnish'；若谈论一个去世的人，则可说 'He could speak Russian and Finnish'。

☞ 关于这些用法，详见 4.119 至 4.121 节。

被转述语
reported speech

4.114 转述某人所说的话时，'could' 和 'would' 有时可代替 'can' 和 'will'。

例如，如果有个人说 'I can come'，他的话可转述为 'He said that he could come'。同样，如果他说 'I will come'，他的话可转述为 'He said that he would come'。

☞ 关于被转述引语，详见第七章。

过去的经常性：'would'
regularity in the past: 'would'

4.115 'Would' 可用于谈及过去经常发生而现在不再发生的事情。

*She **would** sit crosslegged in her red robes.*
*A man with a list **would** come round and say you could go off duty.*

'Would' 这样用时，常需**时间附加状语** (adjuncts of time)。

*She would **often** hear him grumbling.*
***Once in a while** she'd give me some lilac to take home.*
***Every day** I'd ring up home and asked if they'd changed their minds.*

'Used to' 可代替 'would'。'Used to' 在 4.258 至 4.262 节讲解。

思考将来：'would'
thinking about the future: 'would'

4.116 在故事中，'would' 也可用来叙述某人对将来的想法。例如，若故事的主人公想第二天去看望一个叫珍妮的姑娘，作者可能会说 'He would see Jane the next day'。

*He **would** recognize it when he heard it again.*
*They **would** reach the castle some time.*

不愿意：'would not'
unwillingness: 'would not'

4.117 当 'would' 与 'not' 连用谈及某事在过去发生时，具有特殊含义。它表示某人不情愿或拒绝做某事。

*They just **would not** believe what we told them.*
*After all this, I **wouldn't** come back to the farm.*

☞ 情态动词表示不愿意或拒绝的用法在 4.200 至 4.205 节讲解。

表示可能性
Indicating possibility

4.118 情态动词可用来谈及某事发生的可能性或被完成的可能性。下面四节讲解它们的不同用法。

4.119 至 4.122 节讲解 'can' 和 'could' 如何用来谈及人或物做某事的能力。

4.123 至 4.145 节讲解情态动词如何用来表示对过去、现在和将来情景及事件的肯定程度。

4.146 至 4.149 节讲解情态动词如何用来表示某事是被许可的。

4.150 至 4.157 节讲解情态动词如何用来表示某事是被禁止的或不可接受的。

表示能力
Indicating ability

技巧和能力：'can' 和 'could'
skills and abilities: 'can' and 'could'

4.119 'Can' 可用于表示某人具有某种特定技巧和能力。

*You **can** all read and write.*
*Some people **can** ski better than others.*
*He **cannot** dance.*
*...the girl who **can't** act.*

'Could' 用于表示某人过去具有某种技巧和能力。

*...the good old days when everyone **could** read, write and do arithmetic.*
*I **could** barely walk.*
*He **could** kick penalty goals from anywhere.*

意识：'can' 和 'could'
awareness: 'can' and 'could'

4.120 'Can' 也可表示某人通过某一种感官意识到某物。

*I **can** see you.*
*I **can** smell it. **Can't** you?*

'Could' 表示在过去一种特定场合某人通过某一种感官意识到某物。

*I **could** see a few faint stars in a clear patch of sky.*
*I **could** feel my heart bumping.*
*Everyone in the village **could** hear her voice.*

潜在能力：'can' 和 'could'
capability: 'can' and 'could'

4.121 'Can' 和 'could' 也可用来表示某物或某人可产生某种效果，也可表示他们可能会有某种行为。

*It **can** be very unpleasant.*
*Art **can** be used to communicate.*
*I think unions **can** be stupid, intransigent, pigheaded.*
*He **could** be very stiff, could Haggerty.*
*He **could** really frighten me, and yet at the same time he **could be the most gentle and courteous of men**.*

⚠ 注意 Warning

4.122 'Can' 或 'could' 不能用来表示某人或某物在将来会有某种能力。'Be able to' 或 'be possible to' 可表达这个意义。

'Be able to' 和 'be possible to' 也可用来谈及某人现在或过去做某事的能力。

☞ 'Be able to' 和 'be possible to' 在 4.228 至 4.235 节讲解。

表示很大可能性
Indicating likelihood

4.123 下面几节讲解情态动词如何用来表达对过去、现在和将来的情景及事件的肯定程度。

4.124 至 4.131 节讲解情态动词用来表达肯定程度的主要方法。

☞ 4.132至4.138节讨论谈及将来可能出现的情景时，情态动词的特殊用法。
☞ 4.139至4.145节讲解谈及过去可能出现过的情景时，情态动词的特殊用法。

设想：'will' 和 'would'
assumption: 'will' and 'would'

4.124 如果人们假定某事是事实，并且认为没有理由怀疑其真实性，可用 'will'。

*Those of you who are familiar with the game **will** know this.*
*He **will** be a little out of touch, although he's a rapid learner.*
*Most listeners **will** have heard of hormones.*

同样，'will not' 和 'won't' 可用于假设某事不是事实。

*The audience **will not** be aware of such exact details.*
*You **won't** know Gordon. He's our new doctor.*

如果要更客气一些，可在 'you' 之后用 'would' 代替 'will'。

*You **would** agree that the United States should be involved in assisting these countries.*

肯定性：'would' 和 'should'
certainty: 'would' and 'should'

4.125 'Would' 也可用来表示在特定情形下某事肯定会发生。

*Even an illiterate person **would** understand that.*
*Few people **would** agree with this as a general principle.*
*A picnic **wouldn't** be any fun without you.*

在 'I' 之后，'should' 可代替 'would'。

*The very first thing I **should** do would be to teach you how to cook.*
*I **should** be very unhappy on the continent.*

信念：'must' 和 'cannot'
belief: 'must' and 'cannot'

4.126 由于特定事实或环境，说话人可用 'must' 表示自己相信某事是事实。

*Oh, you **must** be Sylvia's husband.*
*Fashion **must** account for a small percentage of sales.*
*This article **must** have been written by a woman.*

如果表示某事不是事实，可用 'cannot' 不能用 'must not'。参见 4.130 节。

*The two conflicting messages **cannot** possibly both be true.*
*You **can't** have forgotten me.*
*He **can't** have said that. He just **can't**.*

可能性：'could'、'might' 或 'may'
possibility: 'could', 'might', or 'may'

4.127 'Could'、'might' 或 'may' 可表示某事有可能发生或可能是事实。'May' 比 'could' 或 'might' 稍正式一些。除此之外，这些情态动词的差别甚微。

*Don't eat it. It **could** be a toadstool.*
*His route from the bus stop **might** be the same as yours.*
*In rare cases the jaw **may** be broken during extraction.*

相当大的可能性：加 'well'
strong possibility: adding 'well'

4.128 如果在 'could'、'might' 或 'may' 之后加 'well'，可表示某事颇有可能是事实。

*It **could well** be that rich people treasure peace more highly than poor people.*
*You **might well** be right.*
*I think that **may well** have been the intention.*

可能性的否定：'might not' 和 'may not'
negative possibility: 'might not' and 'may not'

4.129 'Might not' 和 'may not' 可用来表示某事可能不真实。

*He **might not** be in England at all.*
*That **mightn't** be true.*
*That **may not** sound very imposing.*

不可能：'could not' 和 'cannot'
impossibility: 'could not' and 'cannot'

4.130 'Could not' 和 'cannot' 用来表示某事不可能真实。

*...knowledge which **could not** have been gained in any other way.*
*It **couldn't** possibly be poison.*
*Kissinger **cannot** know what the situation is in the country.*
*You **can't** talk to the dead.*

有力的陈述：'could not' 与比较级连用
strong assertion: 'could not' with comparatives

4.131 在否定结构中，'could' 有时与形容词的比较级连用。'Could' 这样用时表示某人或某物不可能再更多地具有某种属性。

*I **couldn't** be happier.*
*You **couldn't** be more wrong.*
*The setting **couldn't** have been lovelier.*
*He **could hardly** have felt more ashamed of himself.*

谈及将来
talking about the future

4.132 下面几节讲解情态动词如何用来谈及将来可能出现的情况 'Must'、'cannot'、'could'、'might' 和 'may' 的这种用法与它们谈及现在可能出现的情况时的用法相同。

肯定性：'will'
certainty: 'will'

4.133 'Will' 可表示某事在将来肯定会发生或肯定是事实。

*They **will** see everything.*
*The price of food **will** go up.*
*The service **will** have been running for a year in May.*

'Be going to' 也可用来表示某事在将来肯定会发生。

☞ 'Be going to' 的这一种用法在 4.237 节讲解。

肯定性：'shall'
certainty: 'shall'

4.134 'Shall' 也可用来表示某事肯定会发生。'Shall' 通常用来谈及人们能够进行某种控制的事件或情景。

例如，可用 'shall' 表示决心或许诺。

*I **shall** be leaving as soon as I am ready.*
*Very well, my dear. You **shall** have the coat.*
*Of course he **shall** have water.*
*'You'll make a lot of money.' – 'I **shall** one day.'*

肯定性：'must' 和 'cannot'
certainty: 'must' and 'cannot'

4.135 'Must' 可用来表示由于特定事实或环境，某事必然会发生。

*Computer interviewing and rudimentary computer diagnosis **must** eventually lead to computer decision-making.*

'Cannot' 用来表示由于特定事实或环境某事肯定不会发生。'Must not' 不表示这个意义。

*Europe **cannot** hope to forge a united defence policy without first settling its internal quarrels.*
*The repression **can't** last.*

预期：'should' 和 'ought to'
expectation: 'should' and 'ought to'

4.136 'Should' 或 'ought to' 用来表示人们预期某事发生。

*We **should** be at Briceland by dinner time.*
*This course **should** be quite interesting for you.*
*The Court of Appeal **ought to** be able to help you.*
*It **ought to** get better as it goes along.*

'Should' 和 'ought to' 也可用来谈及做某事的重要性。这种用法在 4.219 节讲解。

可能性：'could'、'might' 或 'may'
possibility: 'could', 'might', or 'may'

4.137 'Could'、'might' 或 'may' 用于表示特定事件可能会发生。

*England's next fixture in Salzburg **could** be the decisive match.*
*The river **could** easily overflow.*
*They **might** be able to remember what he said.*
*Clerical work **may** be available for two students who want to learn about publishing.*

4.138 如果在 'could'、'might' 或 'may' 之后加 'well' 可表示某事相当可能会发生或相当可能是事实。

*When it is finished it **may well** be the largest cathedral in the world.*
*We **might well** get injured.*

如果在 'could'、'might' 或 'may' 之后加 'possibly' 或 'conceivably'，则表示某事虽有可能发生或有可能是事实，但可能性不太大。

*These conditions could **possibly** be accepted.*
*Rates could **conceivably** rise by as much as a whole percentage point.*

谈及过去
talking about the past

4.139 下面几节讲解谈及过去可能出现过的情景时，情态动词的用法。

预期：'should have'、'ought to have'
expectation: 'should have', 'ought to have'

4.140 'Should' 或 'ought to' 与 'have' 连用可表示人们预期某事已经发生。

*Dear Mom, you **should have** heard by now that I'm O.K.*

'Should' 或 'ought to' 与 'have' 连用也可表示人们预期某事发生，尽管事实上这件事尚未发生。

*Muskie **should have** won by a huge margin.*
*She **ought to have** been home by now.*

可能性：'would have'
possibility: 'would have'

4.141 'Would' 与 'have' 连用，可谈及过去可能发生的动作和事件，尽管事实上这些动作或事件并未发生。

*Denial **would have** been useless.*
*I **would have** said yes, but Julie talked us into staying at home.*
*You **wouldn't have** pushed him, would you?*

可能性：'could have'、'might have'
possibility: 'could have','might have'

4.142 'Could' 或 'might' 与 'have' 连用可表示某事在过去发生过的可能性是有的，尽管事实上这件事并未发生。

*It **could have** been awful.*
*I **could** easily **have** spent the whole year on it.*
*You **could have** got a job last year.*
*A lot of men died who **might have** been saved.*
*You **might have** found it very difficult.*

不肯定性：'could have'、'might have' 或 'may have'
uncertainty: 'could have', 'might have', or 'may have'

4.143 'Could'、'might' 或 'may' 与 'have' 连用，可表示某事有可能是事实，但这件事到底是不是事实，说话人并不知道。

*It is just possible that such a small creature **could have** preyed on dinosaur eggs.*
*Grandpapa **might have** secretly married Pepita.*
*I **may have** seemed to be overreacting.*

可能性的否定：'might not have'、'may not have'
negative possibility: 'might not have','may not have'

4.144 'Might not' 或 'may not' 与 'have' 连用，可表示某事可能没有发生或可能不是事实。

*They **might not have** considered me as their friend.*
*My father **mightn't have** been to blame.*
*The parents **may not have** been ready for this pregnancy.*

不可能：'could have' 与否定词连用
impossibility: 'could have' with negative

4.145 'Could' 与否定词和 'have' 连用，可表示某事不可能发生或不可能是事实。

*It **couldn't have** been wrong.*
*The money was not, and **never could have** been, the property of the Workers' Party.*

表示许可
Indicating permission

许可：'can'
permission: 'can'

4.146 'Can' 可用来表示某人被允许做某事。

*You **can** drive a van up to 3-ton capacity using an ordinary driving licence.*

如果说话人允许某事发生，也可用 'can'。

*You **can** borrow that pen if you want to.*
*You **can** go off duty now.*
*She **can** go with you.*

正式的许可：'may'
formal permission: 'may'

4.147 在比较正式的场合，'may' 用来表示许可。

*You **may** speak.*
*They **may** do exactly as they like.*

过去的许可：'could'
permission in the past: 'could'

4.148 'Could' 用来表示某人在过去被允许做某事。

*We **could** go to any part of the island we wanted to.*

⚠ 注意 Warning

4.149 'Can' 或 'could' 不能用来表示某人将来会被允许做某事，但 'be able to' 可用来表示这个意义。

☞ 'Be able to' 在 4.228 至 4.235 节讲解。

表示不可接受
Indicating unacceptability

4.150 情态动词常用于否定结构，表示某一个动作是遭禁止的或不可接受的。

禁止：'cannot'
prohibition: 'cannot'

4.151 'Cannot' 用来表示比如由于规章制度或法律条文，某事遭到禁止。

*Children **cannot** bathe except in the presence of two lifesavers.*
*We're awfully sorry we **can't** let you stay here.*

禁止：'may not'
prohibition: 'may not'

4.152 'May not' 与 'cannot' 的用法类似，但更正式一些。

*If the publisher decides to opt for a net price, the retailer **may not** sell that book below the publisher's price.*
*Communion **may not**, on principle, be celebrated by one who is not ordained.*

禁止：'will not'
prohibition: 'will not'

4.153 'Will not' 用于告诫某人他不被允许做某事。通常说话人有权力制止受话人做这件事。

*'I'll just go upstairs.' – 'You **will not**.'*
*Until we have cured you, you **won't** be leaving here.*

禁止：'shall not'
prohibition: 'shall not'

4.154 'Shall not' 用于正式表示某事是不允许的。'Shall not' 常用于书面的规章制度、法律条文和协议条款中。

*Persons under 18 **shall not** be employed in nightwork.*
*Equality of rights under the law **shall not** be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State.*

'Shan't' 与 'will not' 和 'won't' 的用法相同。

*You **shan't** leave without my permission.*

禁止：祈使句
prohibition: imperatives

4.155 使用祈使句也可表示某事是不允许的。祈使句在 4.4 和 4.31 至 4.35 节讨论。

不可取的动作：'should not'
undesirable actions: 'should not'

4.156 'Should not' 用于告诉某人某动作不可接受或不可取。

*You **should not** take her help for granted.*
*You **shouldn't** do that.*
*You **shouldn't** be so unfriendly.*

不可取的动作：'must not'
undesirable actions: 'must not'

4.157 'Must not' 用来更坚决地表示某事物不可接受或不可取。

*You **must not** accept it.*
*You **mustn't** do that.*
*You **mustn't** breathe a word of this to anyone.*

与他人相互交往
Interacting with other people

4.158 人们常常说一些话以便使他人按某种特定方式行动。例如，要某人采取某种特定行动，接受所提供的好意或事物；或允许他做某事。

情态动词常用于这些情景中。具体选用哪个情态动词由几个因素决定。它们主要是：

- 正式还是非正式情景
- 说话人与受话人的关系
- 所要表示的礼貌程度

在特定环境中，其他因素也可能很重要。例如，若主动提供某物或提出建议，情态动词的选择可根据说话人想具有多大的说服力而定。

4.159 下面几节讲解情态动词如何用于不同的情景。

4.160 至 4.176 节讲解如何发出指示和提出请求。

4.177 至 4.185 节讨论如何主动提供（帮助等）或发出邀请。

4.186 至 4.193 节讲解如何提出建议。

4.194 至 4.199 节讲解如何陈述打算。

4.200 至 4.205 节讨论如何表达不愿意或拒绝做某事。

4.206 至 4.214 节讲解如何表达愿望。

4.215 至 4.219 节讨论如何表示做某事的重要性。

4.220 至 4.226 节讲解引出将要叙述内容的各种不同方法。

发出指示和提出请求
Giving instructions and making requests

4.160 发出指示或提出请求时，通常人们在疑问句中使用情态动词。

'Will'、'would'、'can' 或 'could' 与 'you' 连用，可关照某人做某事或要求某人做某事。

'Can'、'could'、'may' 或 'might' 与 'I' 或 'we' 等人称代词或名词词组连用，可请求某人允许自己做某事。

加用 'please' 总会使指示和请求更加客气。'Please' 及其他表示礼貌的标记在 4.176 节讲解。

指示与请求
instructions and appeals

4.161 'Will'、'would' 和 'could' 与 'you' 连用有两种方法：

- 用于发出指示或命令
- 用于寻求帮助或援助

指示与请求：'will'
instructions and appeals: 'will'

4.162 'Will' 用来比较直接地发出指示或命令。这种用法比祈使句的语气稍弱一些。

Will *you please take her to her cubicle?*
Will *you please, at once, pack up and leave.*

在不太正式的语境中，'will' 可用来寻求帮助。

Mummy, ***will*** *you help me?*

指示与请求：'would'
instructions and appeals: 'would'

4.163 'Would' 用于发出指示或命令，较 'will' 客气。

Would *you tell her that Adrian phoned?*
Would *you ask them to leave, please?*

'Would' 用于寻求帮助较 'will' 正式和客气。

Would *you do me a favour?*

指示和请求：'could'
instructions and appeals: 'could'

4.164 'Could' 用于发出指示或命令时，比 'would' 更为客气。

Could *you make out her bill, please?*
Could *you just switch the projector on behind you?*

'Could' 用于寻求帮助时，比 'would' 更为礼貌。

Could *you show me how to do this?*

请求：'can'
appeals: 'can'

4.165 'Can' 可与 'you' 连用，寻求帮助。通常在对某人能否帮助无把握时用 'can'。

Oh hello. ***Can*** *you help me? I've been trying to get a London number for ten minutes and I can't get through.*

请求
requests

4.166 请求给予某物或请求被允许做某事时，'can'、'could'、'may' 和 'might' 可与 'I' 或 'we' 连用。

为他人请求获得某物时，这些情态动词还可和 'he'、'she'、'they' 或其他名词词组连用。例如，可说 'Can she borrow your car?' 或 'Could my mother use your telephone?'。

请求：'can'
requests: 'can'

4.167 'Can' 可用来直截了当地提出请求。

Can *I ask a question?*
*'**Can** I change this?' I asked the box office lady, offering her my ticket.*

请求：'could'
requests: 'could'

4.168 'Could' 比 'can' 更客气。

Could *I have a bottle of Vermouth, please?*
Could *I just interrupt a minute?*

请求：'can't' 和 'couldn't'
requests: 'can't' and 'couldn't'

4.169 'Can't' 或 'couldn't' 代替 'can' 或 'could' 可使请求听上去更具有说服力。例如，'Can't I come with you?' 可替代 'Can I come with you?'。

Can't *we have some music?*
Couldn't *we stay here?*

请求：'may' 和 'might'
requests: 'may' and 'might'

4.170 'May' 和 'might' 比 'can' 和 'could' 更正式。过去人们学到的是请求得到某事物时，正确的用法是用 'may' 而不是 'can'，'might' 而非 'could'。但现在 'can' 和 'could' 已普遍使用。以 'might' 开头的请求已经罕见，且大多数人认为这种用法已经过时。

May *I have a cigarette?*
May *we have something to eat?*
May *I ask what your name is?*
Might *I inquire if you are the owner?*

指示：'would like'
instructions: 'would like'

4.171 在陈述句中，'would like' 可与 'I' 或 'we' 连用发出指示或命令，其后接 'you' 和 'to'- 不定式。

*Penelope, I **would like** you to get us the files.*

'Want' 也可以像 'would like' 这样用。'Want' 的这种用法在 4.240 节讨论。

坚决的指示：'will'
firm instructions: 'will'

4.172 在陈述句中，'will' 也可用于发出指示或命令。说话者生气或不耐烦时采用这种形式。

*You **will** go and get one of your parents immediately.*
*You **will** give me those now.*

正式的指令：'shall'
formal instructions: 'shall'

4.173 'Shall' 有时用于陈述句，发出指示或命令。这种用法非常正式。

*After ten o'clock at night there **shall** be quietness on the upper corridor.*

祈使语气
imperatives

4.174 **祈使语气** (imperative mood) 也可用来发出指示或命令。这种用法在 4.31 节讲解。

请求：'would like'、'should like'
requests: 'would like','should like'

4.175 'Would like' 或 'should like' 可用于陈述句，提出请求。'Would like' 和 'should like' 后随 'to'- 不定式小句或名词词组。

*I **would like** to ask you one question.*
*I'**d like** to have a little talk with you.*
*I **should like** a large cutlet, please.*

请求的附加礼貌词语
polite additions to requests

4.176 加 'please' 可使上述指示或请求的方法更加礼貌和客气。

*Can I speak to Nicola **please**?*
*Could you tell me **please** what time the flight arrives?*
***Please** may I have the key?*

在疑问句句首或句末加用受话人的名字，也可使请求更加礼貌。

***Martin**, could you make us a drink?*
*Can I talk to you, **Howard**?*

在主语之后加副词 'perhaps' 或 'possibly' 是使请求更加礼貌的另一方法。

*Could I **perhaps** bring a friend with me?*
*May I **possibly** have a word with you, **please**?*

主动提出帮助或发出邀请
Making an offer or an invitation

4.177 情态动词常用来主动提出帮助或发出邀请。

'Will' 或 'would' 与 'you' 连用可用来请求某人接受某物或发出邀请。

主动提出帮助某人时，'can'、'may'、'shall' 或 'should' 可与 'I' 或 'we' 连用。

部分这类结构与前一部分所阐述的结构相同。

主动提出帮助及邀请：'will'
offers and invitations: 'will'

4.178 在疑问句中，'will' 与 'you' 连用可表示主动为某人提供某物或非正式地向某人发出邀请。说话人对受话人相当了解时才用 'will'。

Will *you have a whisky, Doctor?*
Will *you stay for lunch?*

主动提出帮助及邀请：'would' 和 'wouldn't'
offers and invitations: 'would' and 'wouldn't'

4.179 主动提供某物或发出邀请的一种更礼貌办法是将 'would' 与含义为 'to like' 的动词连用。

Would *you like a drink?*
Would *you care to stay with us?*

如果既想使自己的话听来更有说服力，又不愿让人觉得自己似乎不礼貌或太固执，可用 'wouldn't' 代替 'would'。

Wouldn't *you like to come with me?*
Wouldn't *you care for some more coffee?*

主动提出帮助：'can'
offers of help: 'can'

4.180 主动提出为某人做某事时，通常用 'can' 后随 'I' 或 'we'。

Can *I help you with the dishes?*
Can *we give you a lift into town?*

主动提出帮助：'may'
offers of help: 'may'

4.181 主动提出为某人做某事时，也可用 'may'。这种用法不如 'can' 常见，并且显得相当正式、陈旧。

May *I help you?*
May *I be of service to you?*

主动提出帮助：'shall' 和 'should'
offers of help: 'shall' and 'should'

4.182 主动提出做某事时，也可用 'shall' 或 'should'。

如果说话人对自己提出的帮助建议被采纳较有信心，可用 'shall'。

Shall *I shut the door?*
Shall *I spell that for you?*

如果对自己提出的帮助建议是否被采纳无把握，则用 'should'。

Should *I give her a ring?*

强调能力：'can'
emphasizing ability: 'can'

4.183 如果要强调自己有帮助他人的能力，可在陈述句中用 'can' 主动提出帮助。

I have a car. I ***can*** *drop Daisy off on my way home.*
I ***can*** *pop in at the shop tomorrow.*

说服性邀请：'must'
persuasive invitations: 'must'

4.184 如果要使邀请极具说服力，可用以 'you' 和 'must' 开头的陈述句。

You ***must*** *lunch with me tomorrow.*
You ***must*** *come and visit me.*

'Must' 的这种用法只适用于非常熟悉的人之间。

4.185 其他主动提出帮助或发出邀请的方法在 4.38 节讨论。

提出建议
Making suggestions

4.186 在陈述句或疑问句中使用情态动词可用来提出建议。句子的主语通常为 'we' 或 'you'。

提出建议：'could'
suggesting: 'could'

4.187 'Could' 用于陈述句，'couldn't' 用于疑问句，可用来提出建议。

We ***could*** *go sledging up at Wilmington.*
You ***could*** *have a nursery there.*
Couldn't *you just build more factories?*
Couldn't *some international agreement be concluded to ban these weapons?*

提出建议：'should' 和 'ought to'
suggesting: 'should' and 'ought to'

4.188 提出建议时，如果说话人想表示自己的确觉得该建议是个好主意，可用 'should' 或 'ought to'。

*You **should** ask Norry about this.*
*I think you **should** get in touch with your solicitor.*
*We **ought to** celebrate. Let's get a bottle of champagne.*
*I think you **ought to** try a different approach.*

提出自己十分肯定的建议时，一种更礼貌的办法是：在疑问句中使用 'shouldn't' 或 'oughtn't to'。

***Shouldn't** we at least give her a chance?*
***Oughtn't** we **to** phone the police?*

进行劝说：'must'
persuading: 'must'

4.189 提出建议做某件事时，如果试图说服某人应该做这件事，可用 'must'。只有对非常熟悉的人讲话时，'must' 才能这么用。

*You **must** say hello to your daughter.*
*We **must** go to the place, perhaps have a weekend there.*

有礼貌的建议：'might'
polite suggestions: 'might'

4.190 如果想非常礼貌地提出建议，可在陈述句中用 'might' 和 'you'。'Might' 后接意义为 'to like' 或 'to want' 的动词。

*You **might** like to comment on his latest proposal.*
*I thought perhaps you **might** like to come along with me.*

句型 'it might be' 加名词词组或形容词再加 'to'-不定式小句，也可用以提出有礼貌的建议。

*I think it **might** be a good idea to stop the recording now.*
*It **might** be wise to consult the wine waiter.*

提出建议：'might as well'、'may as well'
suggesting: 'might as well','may as well'

4.191 'Might as well' 和 'may as well' 一类表达式也可用于提出建议。

尽管说话人对所提建议并不热心，但该建议似乎是唯一合理的行动方案。提出这类建议时，可用 'might as well'。

*He **might as well** take the car.*
*We **might as well** call the whole thing off.*

用 'may as well' 提出建议时，该建议是否被采纳对说话人来说并不重要。

*You **may as well** open them all.*
*We **may as well** give her a copy.*

提出建议：'shall'
suggesting: 'shall'

4.192 'Shall' 和 'we' 连用所引出的疑问句可用来提议说话人自己和他人可以做什么。

Shall *we go and see a film?*
Shall *we go on to question number six?*
Shall *we talk about something different now?*

4.193 提出建议的其他方法在 4.42 节讲解。

陈述打算
Stating an intention

4.194 在陈述句中，通常用 'will'、'shall' 或 'must' 陈述打算。主语是 'I' 和 'we'。

打算：'will'
intentions: 'will'

4.195 陈述打算的常用方法是 'I' 或 'we' 与 'will' 连用。它们常常缩约为 'I'll' 和 'we'll'。

I ***will*** *call you when I am ready.*
We ***will*** *stay here.*
*I****'ll*** *write again some time.*
*We****'ll*** *discuss that later.*

'Will not' 或 'won't' 表示不打算做某事。

I ***will not*** *follow her.*
I ***won't*** *keep you any longer.*
We ***won't*** *let them through the gate.*

4.196 使用完全形式 'I will' 或 'we will'，'will' 重读，可表示下决心做某事。

使用 'I won't' 或 'we won't'，'won't' 重读或者使用 'I will not' 或 'we will not'，'not' 重读，可表示决心不做某事。

打算：'shall'
intentions: 'shall'

4.197 另一种陈述打算的方法是 'shall' 与 'I' 或 'we' 连用。这种用法有些过时而且相当正式。

I ***shall*** *be leaving soon.*
I ***shall*** *make some enquiries and call you back.*
We ***shall*** *be a very progressive group.*

使用 'shall not' 或 'shan't' ，可表示决心不做某事，这种用法比 'will not' 或 'won't' 语气更强。

*I **shall** not return unless paid to do so.*
*I **shan't** go back there.*

打算：'must'
intentions: 'must'

4.198 若说话人表示自己很有必要做某事，'must' 和 'I' 连用。

*I **must** leave fairly soon.*
*I **must** ask her about that.*
*I haven't seen her for ages. I **must** phone her up.*

4.199 不用情态动词陈述打算的方法在 4.241 至 4.244 节讲解。

表示不愿意或拒绝
Indicating unwillingness or refusal

4.200 在否定陈述句中使用情态动词可表示不愿意或拒绝。主语通常是 'I' 或 'we'，其他人称代词或名词词组也可用。

不愿意：'will not' 和 'won't'
unwillingness: 'will not' and 'won't'

4.201 如果想坚决地表示不愿做某事，可用 'will not' 或 'won't'。

*I **will not** hear a word said against the National Health Service.*
*I **won't** leave you. You can't make me!*

如果拒绝做某事，说 'I won't' 即可。

*'Tell me your secret.' – '**I won't**. It wouldn't be a secret if I told you.'*
*'You'll just have to search every single one.' –'Well, **I won't**!'*

'Won't' 还可表示他人不愿做某事。

*He **won't** give her a divorce.*

不愿意：'would not'
unwillingness: 'would not'

4.202 若要表示过去不愿做某事，可用 'would not' 或 'wouldn't'。

*He thought I was a freak because I **wouldn't** carry a weapon.*

不愿意：'cannot'
unwillingness: 'cannot'

4.203 若说话人要表示强烈的情绪妨碍自己做某事，可用 'cannot' 或 'can't'。

*I **cannot** leave everything for him.*
*I **can't** give you up.*

不愿意：'couldn't'
unwillingness: 'couldn't'

4.204 使用 'couldn't' 表示不愿做某事的方法有两种。

使用 'couldn't' 表示不愿做某事，一是由于自己感到害怕、窘迫或厌恶。

*I **couldn't** possibly go out now.*
*I **couldn't** let him touch me.*

二是由于自己认为这样做不公正或道德上是错误的。

*I **couldn't** leave Hilary behind to cope on her own.*
*I **couldn't** take your last cigarette.*

4.205 其他表示不愿意的方法在 4.245 至 4.247 节阐述。

表示愿望
Expressing a wish

4.206 在陈述句中使用情态动词可表达愿望。

愿望：'would'
wishes: 'would'

4.207 'Would' 后接意义为 'to like' 的动词可表示某人需要什么。该动词后可随 'to'- 不定式小句或名词词组。

*I **would** like to know the date.*
*I **would** prefer to say nothing about this problem.*
*We**'d** like to keep you here.*
*Oh, I hope it will be twins. I**'d** love twins.*

4.208 'Would not' 可表示某人不需要什么。

*I **would not** like to see it.*
*We **wouldn't** like to lose you.*

通常，'would' 与 'like' 连用表示某人不需要什么时，'not' 可用于 'would' 之后；'not' 置于 'like' 之后时，意义稍有变化。

例如，某人说 'I would not like to be a student'，他的意思是他不是学生，也不想做学生。但如果他说 'I would like not to be a student' 他的意思则是他是学生，但不想做学生。

*All of us **would like not** to have nuclear weapons.*

'Would' 与含有 'to dislike' 意义的动词连用也可表示某人不想做某事。

*I **would** hate to move to another house now.*
*Personally, I **would** loathe to be dragged into this dispute.*

愿望：'should'
wishes: 'should'

4.209 'Should' 也可表示某人想要什么或不想要什么。它不及 'would' 常用，但比 'would' 稍正式一些。

*I **should** like to live in the country.*
*I **should** hate to see them disappear.*

优先：'would rather'、'would sooner'
preference: 'would rather', 'would sooner'

4.210 若要表示某人喜欢某一种情况胜于另一种情况，可用 'would rather' 或 'would sooner'。

*He **would rather** have left it.*
*She**'d rather** be left alone.*
*I**'d sooner** walk than do any of these things.*

愿望：'would have'
wishes: 'would have'

4.211 如果想表示某人希望某事发生，尽管事实上这件事并未发生，可用 'would have' 加过去分词。

*I **would have** liked to hear more from the patient.*
*She **would have** liked to remain just where she was.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

4.212 另一种表示某人需要某物的方法是 'wouldn't' 与动词或 'mind'、'object to' 等表达式连用。'Object to' 一般用于拒绝。

*I **wouldn't mind** being a manager of a store.*
*'Drink, Ted?' – 'I **wouldn't say no**, Bryan.'*

遗憾：'would that'
regret: 'would that'

4.213 在非常老式的英语中，'would' 不带主语可表示一种愿望，即希望情景或许不是如此，也可对某事未在过去发生表示遗憾。'Would' 后接 'that'- 从句。

*'Are they better off now than they were two years ago?' – '**Would that** they were.'*
***Would that** the developments had been so easy.*

'I'、'he'、'she' 或 'it' 作 'that'- 从句的主语时，动词通常是 'were' 不是 'was'。

*Would that I **were** young again, and she were in my arms.*
*Two years ago we were told that they would be much better off by now. Would that they **were**.*

希望和祝愿：'may'
hopes and wishes: 'may'

4.214 在非常正式的英语中，'may' 可用于祝愿句中表示希望或祝愿。

*Long **may** they continue to do it.*
***May** he justify our hopes and rise to the top.*

表示重要性
Indicating importance

4.215 情态动词可用于陈述句中表示做某事是重要的。不同的情态动词表达的重要程度各异。

重要性：'must'
importance: 'must'

4.216 'Must' 用来谈及做某事的重要性时，有三种常用方法。

'Must' 与 'you' 或 'we' 连用可催促某人做某事，因为说话人觉得这件事重要。'Must not' 用来催促某人不要做某事。

*You **must** come at once.*
*We **must** accept the truth about ourselves.*
*You **must not** worry.*
*You **mustn't** let her suffer for it.*

'Must' 也用来表示某事是制度或法律所要求的。

*People who qualify **must** apply within six months.*
*European Community standards **must** be met.*

'Must' 还可用来表示为了另一件事情的发生，某事有必要发生或有必要完成。

*Meadows **must** have rain.*
*To identify a poison you **must** be able either to carry out a chemical analysis or observe the poison at work on the victim.*

'Have to'、'have got to' 和 'need to' 可代替 'must' 谈及做某事的重要性。这种用法在 4.248 至 4.249 节讲解。

'必要性'：'will have to'、'will need to'
necessity: 'will have to', 'will need to'

4.217 若要表示一个动作在将来是必要的，可用 'will have to' 或 'will need to'。

*They **will have to** pay for the repairs.*
*Mr Smith **will have to** make the funeral arrangements.*
*You **will need to** cover it with some kind of sheeting.*
*Electric clocks **will need to** be reset.*

必要性：'shall have to'
necessity: 'shall have to'

4.218 在'I'或'we'之后，有时可使用'shall have to'代替'will have to'。这种用法稍正式。

*I **shall have to** speak about that to Peter.*
*We **shall have to** assume that you are right.*

重要性：'should'和'ought to'
importance: 'should' and 'ought to'

4.219 谈及做某事的重要性时，'should'和'ought to'有三种不同的用法。

试图劝告某人做某事来帮助他时，可用'should'或'ought to'。

*Carbon steel knives **should** be wiped clean after use.*
*You **should** claim your pension 3-4 months before you retire.*
*You **ought to** try a different approach.*

表示做某事是应该的和正确的时候，也可用'should'或'ought to'。

*We **should** send her a postcard from Eastbourne.*
*Whoever discovers the body **should** contact the family doctor.*
*We **ought to** stay with him.*
*You **ought** not **to** do that.*

'Should'或'ought to'与'have'和过去分词连用还可表示做某事在过去是可取的，尽管事实上这件事并未发生。

*One sailor **should have** been asleep and one on watch.*
*We **ought to have** stayed in tonight.*
*A more junior member of staff **ought to have** done the work.*

'Should'和'ought to'还可表示人们期望某事发生。这种用法在4.136节讲解。

引出将要叙述的内容
Introducing what you are going to say

4.220 有时，情态动词与'say'、'ask'等表示叙述某事的行为动词连用，或与'think'或'believe'等指持有某种看法的动词连用，可引出将要叙述的内容。

使用情态动词是为了显得更为礼貌，是为了表示自己对将要叙述的内容的看法。

在这类结构中，主语通常是'I'。有时也可用由'it'或'you'引出的非人称结构。例如'It ought to be mentioned that he had never been there'可替代'I ought to mention that he had never been there'。

重要性：'must'
importance: 'must'

4.221 如果说话人强烈地感到自己所述的内容很重要，可用 'must'。

*I **must** apologise to you.*
*I **must** object.*
*It **must** be said that it never really came up to expectations.*

重要性：'should' 和 'ought to'
importance: 'should' and 'ought to'

4.222 如果说话人觉得叙述某事是很重要的或是很合适的，可用 'should' 或 'ought to' 表示自己将叙述此事。

*I **should** explain at this point that there are two different sorts of microscope.*
*It **should** also be said that I learned a great deal from the experience.*
*I **ought to** stress that this was not a trial.*
*Perhaps I **ought to** conclude with a slightly more light-hearted question.*

礼貌：'can' 和 'could'
politeness: 'can' and 'could'

4.223 在讨论过程中，若想叙述某事，可用 'can' 礼貌地表示自己将叙述此事。

*Perhaps I **can** mention another possibility.*
*If I **can** just intervene for one moment...*

如果还想再礼貌一些，可用 'could'。

*Perhaps I **could** just illustrate this by mentioning two cases that I know of personally.*
*Perhaps I **could** just ask you this...*

4.224 提及看法或提及描述某物的方法时，也可用 'can' 和 'could'。

'Can' 表示说话人赞同该看法或描述。

*English **can** be seen as an expressive discipline.*

'Could' 较为中性。

*You **could** argue that this is irrelevant.*
*You **could** call it a political offence.*

赞同：'may' 和 'might'
approval: 'may' and 'might'

4.225 'May' 和 'might' 也可用于提及看法或提及描述事物的方法。

'May' 表示说话人赞同该看法或描述，比 'can' 正式。

*This, it **may** be added, greatly strengthened him in his resolve.*

'Might' 也表示说话人同意该看法或描述。

'Might' 用于说话人认为受话人有可能不同意自己的观点。

*You **might** say she's entitled to get angry.*
*That, one **might** argue, is not too terrible.*

礼貌：'should'和'would'
politeness: 'should' and 'would'

4.226 陈述自己的意见时，可用 'should' 礼貌地表示自己将陈述这一点意见。

*I **should** think it would last quite a long time.*

'Would' 也可以这样用，但不常见。

*I **would** guess it may well come down to cost.*

替代情态动词的表达式
Expressions used instead of modals

4.227 有几个普通动词和固定表达式可与情态动词表达相同的态度和观点。这些动词和表达式在下列几节讲解。同一个意义分几节讨论，它们与本章前一部分讨论情态动词在特定情景中的用法相对应。

表示某事是否可能
saying whether something is possible

4.228 'Be able to' 和 'be possible to' 可代替 'can' 和 'could' 表示某事是否可能。

'Be able to' 和 'be unable to' 的主语通常指个人或群体，但也可指任何有生命的东西和人们所组织或经营管理的事物，如公司、国家或机器。

'Be possible to' 的主语总是非人称代词 'it'。

4.229 如果想表示某人或某物有可能做某事，可用 'be able to'。

*All members **are able to** claim travelling expenses.*
*The goliath frog **is able to** jump three metres or so.*

'Be able to' 与否定词连用可表示某人或某物不可能做某事。

*They **are not able to** run fast or throw a ball.*

4.230 'Be unable to' 也可表示某人或某事物不可能做某事。

*I am having medical treatment and **I'm unable to** work.*
*Terry Wogan **is unable to** be with us.*

4.231 'Be possible to' 与作主语的 'it' 连用可表示做某事有可能。通常这种表达式可表示某事对人们来说都有可能，而不是对某个个人来说有可能。

*It **is possible to** reach Tunheim on foot.*
***Is** it **possible to** programme a computer to speak?*

若用 'be possible to' 表示某事物对特定个人或群体来说有可能，可在 'possible' 后接 'for' 和名词词组。

*It is possible **for us** to measure his progress.*
*It's possible **for each department** to support new members.*

'Be possible to' 与否定词连用可表示做某事不可能。

*It **is not possible to** quantify the effect.*

4.232 'Be impossible to' 也可用来表示做某事不可能。

*It **is impossible to** fix the exact moment in time when it happened.*
*It **is impossible** for a European **to** understand Tewdros.*

4.233 若要改变 'be able to'、'be unable to'、'be possible to' 或 'be impossible to' 的时态，可将 'be' 的形式变成适当的简单时态。

*The doctor **will be able to** spend more time with the patient.*
*Their parents **were unable to** send them any money.*
*It **was not possible to** dismiss crowd behaviour as a contributing factor.*
*It **was impossible** for the husband **to** obey this order.*

4.234 除 'can' 和 'could' 之外，其他情态动词也可与这些表达式连用。

*A machine **ought to be able to** do this.*
*The United States **would be unable to** produce any wood.*
***It may be impossible to** predict which way things will develop.*

4.235 'Used to' 可与 'be able to' 和 'be possible to' 连用。

*You **used to be able to** go to the doctor for that.*
*It **used to be possible to** buy second-hand wigs.*

☞ 关于 'used to'，详见 4.258 至 2.262 节。

表示某事有多大可能性
saying how likely something is

4.236 由于特定事实或环境，'have to' 或 'have got to' 可代替 'must' 表示说话人认为某事是事实。

*'That looks about right.' – 'It **has to** be.'*
*Money **has got to** be the reason.*

4.237 'Be going to' 可替代 'will' 表示某事在将来肯定会发生或会成为事实。

*The children **are going to** be fishermen or farmers.*
*Life **is going to** be a bit easier from now on.*

4.238 'Be bound to' 可强调表示某事在将来肯定会发生。

*Marion**'s bound to** be back soon.*
*It **was bound to** happen sooner or later.*
*They'd **be bound to** know if it was all right.*

发出指示和邀请
giving instructions and making requests

4.239 发出邀请时，可不用 'can' 或 'could' 引出疑问句，而用 'is' 和非人称代词 'it'。'It' 后可接 'all right' 等表达式和 'to'- 不定式小句或 'if'- 从句。

***Is it** all right for him to come in and sit and read his paper?*
***Is it** okay if we have lunch here?*

4.240 'Want' 可替代 'would like' 发出指示或邀请。'Want' 比 'would like' 直接，但客气程度较差。

*I **want** you to turn to the front of the atlas.*
*I **want** to know what you think about this.*
*I **want** to have this pellet taken out.*

有时，也可用 'wanted'，它比 'want' 客气。

*I **wanted** to ask, Mr Nicholson, what was the effect of that newsreel on you?*
*Good morning, I **wanted** to book a holiday in the South of France.*

陈述打算
stating an intention

4.241 'Be going to' 可替代 'will' 陈述打算。

*I **am going to** talk to Boris.*
*I'**m going to** show you our little school.*

4.242 'Intend to' 可用来陈述语气较强的打算。

*I **intend to** go to Cannes for a month in August.*
*I don't **intend to** stay too long.*

4.243 'Be determined to' 或 'be resolved to' 可表示打算做某事的强烈意愿。'Be resolved to' 相当正式。

*I'**m determined to** try.*
*She **was resolved to** marry a rich American.*

4.244 'Have to' 或 'have got to' 可代替 'must' 表示做某事的重要性。

*I **have to** get home now.*
*It's something I **have got to** overcome.*

表达不愿意
expressing unwillingness

4.245 'I am not' 可代替 'I will not' 强烈表示不愿做某事或接受某物。'I am not' 后接现在分词。

***I am not** staying in this hospital.*
***I'm not** having dirty rugs.*

4.246 拒绝做某事时，可用 'refuse' 代替 'will not'。'Refuse' 后接 'to'-不定式小句。

*I **refuse** to list possible reasons.*
*I **refuse** to pay.*

4.247 'Unwilling' 或 'reluctant' 可与 'to'-不定式小句连用，表示某人不愿做某事或拒绝接受某物。

*He is **unwilling** to answer the questions.*
*I am always **reluctant** to explain anything as an expression of national character.*

有几个形容词与 'not' 连用也可表示某人不愿做某事或拒绝接受某物。

*Exporters are **not willing** to supply goods on credit.*
*I'm **not prepared** to teach him anything.*
*Thompson is **not keen** to see history repeat itself too exactly.*

表示重要性
indicating importance

4.248 'Have to' 或 'have got to' 可代替 'must' 表示做某事很必要或特别重要。

*The pine tree **has to** produce pollen in gigantic quantities.*
*We **have to** look more closely at the record of their work together.*

*This **has got to** be put right.*
*You**'ve got to** be able to communicate.*

4.249 'Need to' 也可代替 'must' 使用。

*We **need to** change the balance of power.*
*You do not **need to** worry.*

4.250 由非人称代词 'it' 引出，后接 'is' 和 'important'、'necessary' 等形容词及 'that'- 从句的句子也可表示某事必要或重要。

***It is important that** you should know precisely what is going on.*
***It is essential that** immediate action should be taken.*
***It is vital that** babies travel in government-approved carriers.*

'Important' 和 'necessary' 也可后接 'to'- 不定式小句。

***It's important to** recognise what industry needs at this moment.*
***It is necessary to** examine this claim before we proceed any further.*

4.251 'Had better' 可代替 'should' 或 'ought to' 表示某事应该做。'Had better' 与 'I' 或 'we' 连用可表示打算，与 'you' 连用可进行劝告或提出警告。

*I think I **had better** show this to my brother.*
*He decided that we **had better** meet.*
*You**'d better** go.*

半情态动词
Semi-modals

4.252 'Dare'、'need' 和 'used to' 既作情态动词使用，又有其他用法。作情态动词用时，它们具有某些其他情态动词所不具备的特征。为此，它们有时又叫**半情态动词** (semi-modals)。

'Dare' 和 'need' 作情态动词的用法在 4.253 至 4.257 节讨论。

'Used to' 作情态动词的用法在 4.258 至 4.262 节讲解。

'dare' 和 'need'
'dare' and 'need'

4.253 'Dare' 和 'need' 作情态动词用时，其意义与它们后接 'to'- 不定式小句时的意义相同。不过，作情态动词用时，它们通常只用于否定句和疑问句。

Nobody dare *disturb him.*
No *parent* ***dare*** *treat their child analytically.*
With his father, he ***need not*** *fear.*
How ***dare*** *you speak to me like that?*
Need *you go so soon?*

'Dare not' 和 'need not' 常常缩约为 'daren't' 和 'needn't' 。

I ***daren't*** *ring Jeremy again.*
We ***needn't*** *worry about that.*

屈折变化形式
inflected forms

4.254 与其他情态动词不同，'dare' 有几种屈折变化形式。这些屈折形式间或也用。

在简单现在时中，第三人称单数形式为 'dare' 或 'dares' 。

When it comes, she ***dare*** *not express her feelings.*
What nobody ***dares*** *suggest is that women be told to stay at home.*

在简单过去时中，可用 'dare' 或 'dared' 。'Dare' 比 'dared' 更正式。

He ***dare*** *not take his eyes off his assailant.*
He ***dared*** *not show he was pleased.*

'Need' 作情态动词时，无屈折变化形式。

与其他情态动词连用
use with other modals

4.255 一般情况下，情态动词不能与其他情态动词连用，但 'dare' 可与 'will' 、 'would' 、 'should' 和 'might' 连用。

No one ***will dare*** *override what the towns decide.*
I ***wouldn't dare*** *go to Europe.*
I ***should not dare*** *dogmatize about a matter such as this.*

与 'do' 连用
use with 'do'

4.256 与其他情态动词不同，'dare' 可与助动词 'do' 连用。

We ***do not dare*** *examine it.*
Don't *you ever* ***dare*** *come here again!*

在日常英语中，'did not dare' 和 'didn't dare' 比 'dared not' 或 'dare not' 常用得多。

She ***did not dare*** *leave the path.*
I ***didn't dare*** *speak or move.*
We ***didn't dare*** *say that many of us would prefer to go home.*

'dare' 和 'need' 的其他用法 other uses of 'dare' and 'need'

4.257 除用作情态动词外，'dare' 和 'need' 还有其他用法。在这些用法中，它们后接 'to'- 不定式小句，不接动词原形。'Need' 是常见的及物动词。

'used to'

4.258 'Used to' 既无屈折变化形式，也不能与其他情态动词连用。

*She **used to** get quite cross with Lally.*
*...these Westerns that **used to** do so well in Hollywood.*
*What did we **used to** call it?*

不过，'used to' 可与助动词 'do' 连用。这种用法在 4.261 至 4.262 节讨论。'Used' 有时被视为情态动词，后接 'to'- 不定式小句；'used to' 不是情态动词。

4.259 'Used to' 用来表示某事物尽管现在不再发生或存在，但在过去常常发生或存在。

描述过去重复发生的动作时，'used to' 与 'would' 用法类似。'Used to' 还可描述过去的状态和情形，但 'would' 不能。

*I'm not quite as mad as I **used to** be.*
*Actresses **used to** be very reluctant to wear tight corsets.*

☞ 使用 'would' 谈及过去常常发生的事情的方法在 4.115 节讨论。

省略随后的动词词组 omitting the following verb group

4.260 如果谈论的主题从上下文能够清楚看出，'used to' 可单独使用，后面不接动词词组。

*People don't work as hard as they **used to**.*
*I don't feel British anymore. Not as much as I **used to**.*

否定式 negatives

4.261 'Used to' 不常用于否定结构。

在非正式语体中，人们有时在 'used to' 之前加 'didn't' 构成否定。

*They **didn't used to** mind what we did.*

但许多人认为这种用法不正确。'Used to' 之前加 'never' 是构成否定的另一种办法。

*Where I was before, we **never used to** have posters on the walls.*

有时，'not' 可置于 'used' 和 'to' 之间。这种用法比较正式。

*It **used not to** be taxable.*

有些语法书列有否定缩约式 'usen't to' 或 'usedn't to' 这种用法现已非常少见，被认为早已过时。

疑问句
questions

4.262 使用 'used to' 构成疑问句时，通常在其主语之前加 'did'。构成 'wh'-疑问句时，'wh'-词位于句首，后接 'used to'。

Did you used to *play with your trains?*
What used to *annoy you most about him?*

构成否定疑问句时，'didn't' 位于主语之前，'used to' 位于主语之后。

Didn't *they* ***used to*** *mind?*

在更正式的英语中，'did' 位于主语之前，'not' 和 'used to' 位于主语之后。

Did *she* ***not used to*** *smile?*

第五章　表示时间

5 表示时间
Expressing time

概述
Introduction

5.1 进行陈述时，通常需要表示所指的是现在存在的情况、过去存在的情况还是将来可能存在的情况。陈述中的时间点通常部分地由句子中的**动词词组** (verb groups) 表示。

表示过去、现在或将来特定时间点或时间段的一组动词形式叫**时态** (tenses)。特定时态的形式一般通过在动词的原形上加**屈折变化** (inflections) 或在动词词组中用**助动词** (auxiliaries) 或**情态动词** (modals) 形成。

smile...smiled
was smiling...has been smiling...had smiled
will smile...may smile

有些动词的过去时形式不规则：

fight...fighting...fought
go...going...went

关于这些形式及所表示的时态，见附录参考部分 R90 至 R123。

5.2 有时，句子中的时间点由动词词组的时态充分表示，不再需要其他时间参照点。但是，若要把注意力吸引到动作的时间上，可用**时间附加状语** (adjuncts of time)。

She's moving ***tomorrow****.*
Record profits were announced ***last week****.*
He was better after undergoing surgery ***on Saturday****.*

时间附加状语包括**副词** (adverbs)、**名词词组** (noun groups) 或**介词短语** (prepositional phrases)。

关于时间附加状语的概要，参见第六章的开始部分。

附加状语的位置
position of adjuncts

5.3 时间附加状语通常位于句末，在动词之后，或在有宾语时，在宾语之后。将时间附加状语置于句首可强调时间。

*Mr Shamir will visit Washington **next month**.*
***Last month**, Mr Hurd asked his officials to report back to him.*
*I was playing golf **yesterday**.*
***Yesterday** the atmosphere at the factory was tense.*

如果附加状语是副词，那么，该附加状语可紧跟 'be' 或动词词组中的第一个助动词之后。

*She **is now** pretty well-known in this country.*
*Cooper **had originally** been due to retire last week.*
*Public advertisements for the post **will soon** appear in the national press.*

持续附加状语和频度附加状语 adjuncts of duration and frequency

5.4 有些动词用来表示事件在一段时间内持续发生或重复几次。人们也许还想表示某事持续了多长时间或某事发生的频度如何。表达这些内容时，可用**持续附加状语**(adjuncts of duration)和**频度附加状语**(adjuncts of frequency)。

*America has **always** been highly influential.*
*People who come in with enquiries are **often** very shy about making them.*
*1,000 dogs are put down **daily**, according to R.S.P.C.A. figures.*
*They would go on talking **for hours**.*

频度副词在 5.114 至 5.122 节讲解和列出。

持续副词在 5.123 至 5.144 节讲解和列出。

5.5 下面几节阐述表示现在、过去和将来时间的方法。对此逐一讨论之后，有一部分讨论附加状语与每种时态连用的方法。

有些附加状语主要与过去时态连用，参见 5.41 节。与将来时态连用的附加状语在 5.60 至 5.62 节讨论。

从句 subordinate clauses

5.6 本章只讨论**主句** (main clauses) 中时态的选择。有时，句子的时间点并非由附加状语表示，而是由**从句** (subordinate clauses) 表示。时间从句由表示时间的连词 'since'、'until'、'before' 和 'after' 引导。

☞ 关于从句中动词的时态，详见 8.9 节。

现在时间
The present

5.7 在讨论事物的现存状态时，可用动词的现在时态。通常，动词时态足以表明所指是现在。时间附加状语一般只用于强调，或者表示事物与现在时刻无关。

广泛意义上的现在：简单现在时
The present in general: the simple present

现在时刻
the present moment

5.8 若要谈及自己此时此刻的想法和感觉或谈及自己对某事的即时反应，可用**简单现在时** (simple present)。

__I'm__ awfully busy.
They both __taste__ the same.
God, he __looks__ awful.
I __want__ a breath of fresh air.

简单现在时也可用来谈及影响自己或他人的肌体感觉。

I __feel__ heavy. I do. I __feel__ drowsy.
My stomach __hurts__.

不过要注意，若谈及人体的知觉，如视觉和听觉，通常用情态动词 'can'，尽管间或也可用简单现在时。

I __can see__ the fishing boats coming in.
I __can smell__ it. Can't you?
I __see__ a flat stretch of ground.
I __hear__ approaching feet.

含此刻的广泛意义上的现在时间
general present including present moment

5.9 若要谈及事物的固定状态，虽然这状态包括现在时刻，但其时间的具体参照点在哪里并不重要，可用简单现在时。

My dad __works__ in Saudi Arabia.
He __lives__ in the French Alps near the Swiss border.
He is a very good brother. We __love__ him.
She__'s__ a doctor's daughter.
Meanwhile, Atlantic City __faces__ another dilemma.

常理
general truths

5.10 简单现在时还表示事物总是或大体上是确实的。

Near the equator, the sun __evaporates__ greater quantities of water.
A molecule of water __has__ two atoms of hydrogen and one of oxygen.
A chemical reaction __occurs__ in the fuel cell.
Windmills intended for electricity generation __rotate__ rapidly and __have__ a small number of vanes.

经常或习惯性动作
regular or habitual actions

5.11 如果要表示某特定个人或事物经常或习惯做的事情，可用简单现在时。

__Do__ you __smoke__?
I __get up__ early and __eat__ my breakfast listening to the radio.

用于评论中
used in reviews

5.12 讨论书本、戏剧或电影的内容时，一般也用简单现在时。

*In the film he **plays** the central character of Charles Smithson.*
*In those early chapters, he **does keep** himself very much in the background.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

5.13 动词 'say' 的简单现在时可描述从书本上读到的东西。

*The criminal justice system, **the author says**, has failed to keep pace with the drug problem.*
***The Bible says** love of money is the root of all evil.*

用于现场报道中
used in commentaries

5.14 在广播和电视上，评述员常用简单现在时描述体育比赛的实况、典礼的实况等现场发生的事件。

*Andy Gray **takes** the ball upfield again, **passes** to McInally on the edge of the box. He **turns**, **shoots** – and a fine save from Grobbelaar.*

用于转述
used in reporting

5.15 转述某人在不久前某刻对自己所说的话时，可用 'hear' 或 'tell' 等**转述动词** (reporting verbs) 的简单现在时。

*I've never been greyhound – racing myself, but they **tell** me it's a fascinating sport.*
*There are some fine railings in Westminster Abbey, I **hear**.*
*I **hear** you're moving.*
*Grace **says** you told her to come over here.*

☞ 关于转述动词，详见第七章。

用于评述
used in commenting

5.16 评论自己的所述或所为时，可用**行为动词** (performative verbs)，如 'admit'、'promise'、'reject' 或 'enclose' 的简单现在时。

☞ 关于行为动词，详见 10.102 至 10.105 节。

*This, I **admit**, was my favourite activity.*
*I **enclose** a small cheque which may come in handy.*
*I **leave** it with confidence in your hands, Emmanuel.*

强调现在时刻：现在进行时
Accent on the present: the present continuous

说话时刻
the moment of speaking

5.17 如果要谈及说话时刻发生的事情，可用**现在进行时** (present continuous)。

*We'**re having** a meeting. Come and join in.*
*What **am** I **doing**? **I'm looking** out of the window.*
*My head **is aching**.*
***I'm** already **feeling** tense.*

强调现在时刻
emphasizing the present moment

5.18 如果要强调此刻或表示某一种情况是暂时的，可用现在进行时。

*Only one hospital, at Angal, **is functioning**.*
*We'**re trying** to create a more democratic society.*
*She'**s spending** the summer in Europe.*
***I'm working** as a British Council Officer.*

持续变化
progressive change

5.19 现在进行时还可用来表示变化、趋势、发展和进展。

*The village **is changing** but it is still undisturbed.*
*His handwriting **is improving**.*
*World energy demand **is increasing** at a rate of about 3% per year.*

习惯性动作
habitual actions

5.20 如果要谈及经常发生的习惯性动作，尤其是刚刚发生的或暂时性的动作，可用现在进行时。

*'You'**re drinking** too much.' – 'Only at home. No one sees me but you.'*
*Do you know if she'**s** still **playing** these days?*
*She'**s seeing** a lot more of them.*

强调现在时间：使用附加状语
Emphasizing time in the present: using adjuncts

5.21 使用现在时态时，通常不必用时间附加状语或其他时间表达式，但为了强调即时现在或广泛意义上的现在，或为了将现在与过去或将来加以对比，则可用时间附加状语或其他时间表达式。

*We're working with Robert Hardy **just at this moment**, recording an autumn series.*
*We're safe **now**.*
*What's the matter with you **today**, Marnie?*
*I haven't got a grant **this year**.*

常理
general truths

5.22 使用简单现在时谈及某事总是真实的或大体上是真实的时候，可用副词来强化或弱化陈述。

*Babies **normally** lose weight in the beginning.*
*The official attitude is **usually** one of ridicule.*
***Traditionally**, the Communist Party does well in local elections.*

下列是可用来修饰陈述的常用副词：

always	mainly	often	usually
generally	normally	traditionally	

☞ 使用简单现在时谈及常理的用法在 5.10 节讨论。

经常性动作
regular actions

5.23 使用简单现在时表示一个动作经常发生时，可用**频度附加状语** (adjuncts of frequency) 更确切地说明其发生的经常程度。

*Several groups meet **weekly**.*
*I visit her about **once every six months**.*
*It **seldom** rains there.*
*I **never** drink alone.*

简单现在时用来谈及经常性活动的用法，在 5.11 节讨论。

☞ 关于频度附加状语及最常见的附加状语词表，详见5.114至5.122节。

频繁的动作
frequent actions

5.24 若强调动作发生的经常程度，现在进行时也可与频度附加状语连用。这种用法常用来表示异议或厌烦，频度附加状语可置于助动词之后。

*You're **always** looking for faults.*
*It's **always** raining.*
*And she's **always** talking to him on the telephone.*
*They are **forever** being knocked down by cars.*

☞ 使用现在进行时谈及频繁的和习惯性动作的用法，在 5.20 节讲解。

与现在时态连用的附加状语
adjuncts with present tenses

5.25 注意，许多表示现在时间的时间附加状语，如 'now' 和 'today' 有时也可与其他时态连用，但有少数附加状语几乎总是与现在时态连用。

*I shared a taxi with Jerry Laws, who was formerly a boxer and is **presently** a singer.*
*...the camping craze that is **currently** sweeping America.*
***Nowadays** fitness is becoming a generally accepted principle of life.*

下列是通常只与现在时态连用的附加状语：

at present	in this day and age	presently
currently	nowadays	these days

注意，在上表中，'presently' 的意思是 'now'。

过去时间
The past

5.26 谈及过去时间时，有必要用时间附加状语或其他时间表达式确指自己所表示的特定过去时间。由于时间参照点可在前一句确定，因而后一句的动词用过去时。

*It was very cold **that night**. Over my head **was** a gap in the reed matting of the roof.*
*I was talking to one of them **yesterday**. She **said** she got roast and Yorkshire pudding.*

陈述确定的过去时间：简单过去时
Stating a definite time in the past: the simple past

5.27 如果要表示一件事件在一个特定的过去时间发生或表示某事在一个特定的过去时间是事实，可用**简单过去时** (simple past)。

*The Israeli Prime Minister **flew** into New York yesterday to start his visit to the US.*
*Our regular window cleaner **went off** to Canada last year.*
*On 1 February 1968 he **introduced** the Industrial Expansion Bill.*
*I remember the time when Bill Tilden, about fifty years ago, **threw** his racquet at Wimbledon.*

过去情况
past situations

5.28 若要表示一种情况在过去存在了一段时间，也可用简单过去时。

*He **lived** in Paris during his last years.*
*Throughout 1954 he assiduously **studied** peerage law.*

5.29 谈及过去发生的事情时，若要提及那时存在的某种情况，可用简单过去时。无论该情况现在是否依然存在，都可使用简单过去时。

*All the streets in this part of Watford **looked** alike.*
*About fifty miles from the university there **was** one of India's most famous and ancient Hindu temples.*

习惯性和经常性动作
habitual and regular actions

5.30 简单过去时可表示一个活动过去常常或重复发生，而现在已不再发生。

*We **walked** a great deal in my boyhood.*
*Each week we **trekked** to the big house.*

'Would' 和 'used to' 也可用来表示某事在过去常常发生，而现在不再发生。详见 4.115 至 4.259 节。

强调过去时间：过去进行时
Accent on the past: the past continuous

重复出现的动作
repeated actions

5.31 若表示在过去持续存在的状态或重复发生的动作，可用**过去进行时** (past continuous)。

*Her tooth **was aching**, her burnt finger **was hurting**.*
*He **was looking** ill.*
*Everyone **was begging** the captain to surrender.*
*I **was meeting** thousands of people and **getting to know** no one.*

对比事件
contrasting events

5.32 若要将一种情况与该情况存在不久之后所发生的事件进行对比，可用过去进行时描述先存在的情况，再用简单过去时描述随后发生的事件，并引起人们对此事件的关注。

*We **were** all **sitting** round the fire waiting for my soldier brother to come home.*
*He **arrived** about six in the evening.*
*I **was waiting** angrily on Monday morning when I **saw** Mrs. Miller.*

与现在有联系的过去：现在完成时
The past in relation to the present: the present perfect

5.33 如果既想提及过去发生的事情，又不愿说出特定时间，可用**现在完成时** (present perfect)。

*They **have raised** £180 for a swimming pool.*
*I **have noticed** this trait in many photographers.*

5.34 现在完成时不能与表示过去某一个确定时间的附加状语连用。例如，不能说 'I have done it yesterday'。不过，现在完成时可与持续附加状语 (adjuncts of duration) 连用。

*The settlers have left the bay **forever**.*
*I ate brown rice, which I have **always** hated, and vegetables from my garden.*

持续附加状语在 5.123 至 5.142 节讨论并列出。

'Since' 和 'for' 也可与现在完成时连用，因为它们这样用时指确定时间。

*They have been back every year **since then**.*
*It was the only record to have stayed in the American charts **for a full six weeks**.*

☞ 关于 'since'，详见 5.137 节。
☞ 'For' 的其他用法在 5.125 至 5.128 节讨论。

依然存在的情况 situations that still exist

5.35 若要谈及活动或情况在过去某一个时间开始之后一直持续着，现在仍在进行，可用现在完成时或**现在完成进行时**(present perfect continuous)。

*All my adult life I **have waited** for the emergence of a strong centre party.*
*She**'s** always **felt** that films should be entertaining.*
*National productivity **has been declining**.*
*Caroline Johnstone is 26 and **has been cooking** for a bank for five years.*

强调事件的持续性 emphasizing duration of event

5.36 若要强调不久前刚发生的事件的持续性，可用现在完成进行时。

*She**'s been crying**.*
*It will no doubt be argued by some that what I **have been describing** is not a crisis of industry.*
*The Department of Aboriginal Affairs **has** recently **been conducting** a survey of Australian Aborigines.*

过去特定时间之前的事件：过去完成时
Events before a particular time in the past: the past perfect

5.37 若要谈及在过去特定时间之前发生的过去事件或情况，可用**过去完成时** (past perfect)。

*One day he noticed that a culture plate **had become** contaminated by a mould.*
*By dusk tear gas **had spread** through the south campus.*
*She **had lost** her job as a real estate agent and was working as a waitress.*
*I detested any form of games and **had** always **managed** to avoid children's parties.*

强调时间和持续性 emphasizing time and duration

5.38 若要强调活动在过去特定时间之前不久发生而且仍然持续着，可用**过去完成进行时** (past perfect continuous)。

*Until now the rumours that **had been circulating** were exaggerated versions of the truth.*
*The doctor **had been working** alone.*
*He arrived back in Munich from Rome where he **had been meeting** other OAS leaders.*
*They **had been hitting** our trucks regularly.*

期待和希望
expectations and wishes

5.39 若要表示在过去某个特定时间之前人们曾对某事有过期待、希望或打算，可用过去完成时或过去完成进行时，说明此事至今尚未发生。

*She **had** naturally **assumed** that once there was a theatre everybody would want to go.*
*It was the remains of a ten-rupee note which she **had hoped** would last till the end of the week.*
*It was not as nice on the terrace as Clarissa **had expected**.*
*I **had been expecting** some miraculous obvious change.*

强调过去时间：使用附加状语
Emphasizing time in the past: using adjuncts

5.40 使用过去时态时，通常可在句中某处加时间附加状语，表示谈及过去时间。

***At one time** the arts of reading and writing were classed among the great mysteries of life for the majority of people.*
*I've made some poor decisions **lately**, but I'm feeling much better now.*
*It was very splendid **once**, but it's only a ruin now.*
*It's Mark who lost his wife. **A year last January**.*
*It was terribly hot **yesterday**.*

附加状语的类型
types of adjuncts

5.41 时间附加状语既可表示一个确定时间又可表示一个比较笼统的不确定时间段。

下列两表中是最常见的不定时间附加状语，它们主要与过去时态连用。除 'since' 和 'ever since' 用于句末之外，其他附加状语在含有不止一个词的动词词组中位于助动词或情态动词之后。若它们与简单过去时连用，可置于动词之前。

下列单词可与所有过去时态连用：

again	ever since	in the past	previously
already	finally	just	recently
earlier	first	last	since

下列单词可与除现在完成时以外的所有过去时态连用：

afterwards	formerly	next	subsequently
at one time	immediately	once	
eventually	lately	originally	

注意，'once' 在这里的意思是 'at some time in the past'。关于频度副词 'once' 的用法，参见 5.115 节。

☞ 关于 'since' 在时间附加状语中作介词的用法，参见 5.137 节。

有些与过去时态连用的附加状语比较确定。如果还要更准确地说明时间，可用 'yesterday' 等附加状语及含有 'ago'、'other' 和 'last' 等表达式的附加状语。注意，'ago' 位于名词词组之后。

I saw him ***yesterday evening****.*
We bought the house from her ***the day before yesterday****.*
Three weeks ago *I was staying in San Francisco.*
I saw my goddaughter ***the other day****.*
It all happened ***a long time ago****.*

⚠ 注意 Warning

5.42 可说 'last night' 但不能说 'yesterday night'。

用于强调
used for emphasis

5.43 在某些情况下，人们必须使用附加状语确指时间，而在另一些情况下，附加状语只用于明确动作的时间安排或用于强调。这些用法在下面阐述。

与简单过去时连用
used with the simple past

5.44 使用简单过去时阐述习惯性或经常性活动时，可用**频度附加状语** (adjuncts of frequency) 表示活动的经常程度或重复程度。

He ***often agreed*** *to work quite cheaply.*
Sometimes *he* ***read*** *so much that he* ***became*** *confused.*
Etta ***phoned*** *Guppy* ***every day****.*

☞ 简单过去时用于描述习惯性动作的用法在 5.30 节讨论。

与过去进行时连用
used with the past continuous

5.45 如果用过去进行时谈及重复发生的动作，可在助动词之后加 'always' 或 'forever' 等频度附加状语，强调动作发生的频度或表达自己对该动作的厌烦情绪。

In the immense shed where we worked, something ***was always going wrong****.*
Ellen ***was always answering*** *the door, talking to the coalman.*
Her eyes squeezed up and ran with tears, so that she ***was forever wiping*** *them.*

☞ 使用过去进行时描述重复发生的动作的用法在 5.31 节讲解。

与现在完成时连用
used with the present perfect

5.46 使用现在完成时提及与现在有联系的事情时，可加频度附加状语表示该动作是重复发生的。

I've ***often*** *wondered why we didn't move years ago.*
Britain and other Western nations have ***frequently*** *told South Africa that they want Mandela released.*

☞ 使用现在完成时谈及与现在有联系的情况的用法，在5.33节讨论。

5.47 注意，若谈及现在依然存在或与现在有联系的属性、态度或拥有情况，现在完成时需要带持续附加状语。

*We****'ve had*** *it* ***for fifteen years****.*
*He****'s always liked*** *you, you know.*
I ***have known*** *him* ***for years****.*
My people ***have been*** *at war* ***since 1917****.*

5.48 若用现在完成时和现在完成进行时谈及始于过去，现在依然进行的持续性活动，可用持续附加状语表示该活动持续了多久。

For many years*, the TUC* ***has been advocating*** *child care facilities at work.*
They ***have been meeting*** *together weekly now* ***for two years****.*
He ***has looked*** *after me well* ***since his mother died****.*

☞ 使用现在完成时和现在完成进行时谈及始于过去的活动的用法在5.35节讨论。

与过去完成时连用
used with the past perfect

5.49 使用过去完成时描述在过去特定时间之前发生的重复性事件时，可加频度附加状语表示该事件重复的频度如何。

Posy ***had always sought*** *her out even then.*
The house keeper mentioned that the dog ***had attacked*** *its mistress* ***more than once****.*

☞ 使用过去完成时描述在过去特定时间之前发生的事件的用法在5.37节讨论。

5.50 如果用过去完成时谈及过去未曾改变过的情况，可用持续附加状语强调该情况存在时间的长短。

They weren't really our aunt and uncle, but we ***had always known them****.*
All through those many years *he* ***had*** *never ever* ***lost*** *track of my father.*
His parents ***had been married for twelve years*** *when he was born.*

5.51 若用过去完成进行时提及不久前发生的持续性活动，可用附加状语具体明确其起始时间。

The Home Office ***had until now been insisting*** *on giving the officers only ten days to reach a settlement.*
Since then*, the mother* ***had been living*** *with her daughter.*

频度或持续附加状语也可用于强调。

The drive increased the fatigue she ***had been feeling for hours****.*
The rain ***had been pouring all night****.*

☞ 使用过去完成进行时谈及不久前发生的持续性活动的用法，在5.38节讲解。

将来时间
The future

5.52 谈及将来事件不可能像谈及现在或过去事件那样肯定。因此，任何表示将来事件的表达式，通常只能说明说话人认为某事可能发生或他意欲让某事发生。

用 'will' 表示将来
Indicating the future using 'will'

5.53 如果要表示某事是计划中要发生的或表示说话人认为某事很可能发生，可在动词的原形前加情态动词 'will'。这叫**将来时态** (future tenses)。

Nancy ***will arrange*** *it.*
These ***will be*** *dealt with in chapter 7.*
'I ***will check****,' said Brody.*
When ***will*** *I* ***see*** *them?*
What do you think Sally ***will do****?*
You ***will come*** *back, won't you?*

若主语是 'I' 或 'we'， 情态动词 'shall' 有时可代替 'will' 谈及将来事件。

I shall do *everything I can to help you.*
You will stay at home and ***I shall go*** *to your office.*
*'****We shall give*** *him some tea,' Naomi said.*

☞ 'Will' 和 'shall' 还有几种作为情态动词的用法，详见第四章。

常理
general truths

5.54 若要谈及常理并且表示如果某特定情况出现，就可预期发生什么时，可用将来时态。

*When peace is available, people **will go** for it.*
*An attack of malaria can keep a man off work for three days. He **will earn** nothing and his family **will go** hungry.*

表示肯定发生
indicating certainty

5.55 如果由于已作安排，人们确信某事肯定会发生，可用**将来进行时态** (future continuous)。

*I**'ll be seeing** them when I've finished with you.*
*She**'ll be appearing** tomorrow and Sunday at the Royal Festival Hall.*
*I**'ll be waiting** for you outside.*
*Dear Professor Zapp, I gather you**'ll be using** my room while you're here.*
*They'll spoil our picnic. I**'ll be wondering** all the time what's happening.*
*Our people **will be going** to their country more.*

注意，使用将来进行时态时，通常需用时间或频度附加状语。

5.56 如果表示某事尚未发生，但将在某特定将来时间之前发生，可用**将来完成时态** (future perfect)。

*By the time he is twenty a countryman **will have killed** a considerable number of animals.*
*Maybe by the time we get to the dock he**'ll** already **have started**.*
*Maybe when you come up, you**'ll have heard** from your sister.*

注意，这里所指的将来时间必须用附加状语或另一个从句表示出来。

表示持续性
indicating duration

5.57 若要表示一件事件在某特定将来时间里的持续性，可用**将来完成进行时** (future perfect continuous)。

*By March 1990, he **will have been working** for this organization for twelve years.*
*The register **will have been running** for a year in May.*

注意，这种用法需用时间附加状语表示将来时间，用持续附加状语陈述事件持续的时间。

表示将来时间的其他方法
Other ways of indicating the future

'be going to'

5.58 如果人们认为所指事件很快就会发生或人们打算让它发生，可用 'be going to' 后接不定式。

*I'm **going to explore** the neighbourhood.*
*Evans knows lots of people. He**'s going to help** me. He**'s going to take** me there.*
*I think the Social Democrats **are going to have** some problems ahead of them.*
*We**'re going to see** a change in the law next year.*

业已计划的事件 planned events

5.59 'Be due to' 和 'be about to' 也可用来表示人们期望计划好的将来事件不久发生。它们后接不定式小句。

*He **is due to start** as a courier shortly.*
*It**'s due to be completed** in 1996.*
*Another 385 people **are about to lose** their jobs.*
***Are** we **about to be taken** over by the machine?*

与将来时态连用的附加状语
Adjuncts with future tenses

含糊的时间指称 vague time reference

5.60 泛指或含糊地指将来时间时，可用表示不定时间的附加状语。

*I'll drop by **sometime**.*
***Sooner or later** he'll ask you to join him there.*
***In future** she'll have to take sedentary work of some sort.*

下列不定时间附加状语主要与将来时态连用：

in future	one of these days	sometime
in the future	some day	sooner or later

'tomorrow'

5.61 含有 'tomorrow' 的附加状语主要与将来时态连用。

*We'll try somewhere else **tomorrow**.*
*Shall I come **tomorrow night**?*
*He'll be here **the day after tomorrow**.*
***This time tomorrow** I'll be in New York.*

'next'

5.62 含有 'next' 的时间表达式是另一些主要与将来时态连用的附加状语。如果使用特定日期或月份，如 'Saturday' 或 'October'，'next' 可置于此日期或月份之前或之后，否则 'next' 位于时间指称之前。

***Next week** Michael Hall will be talking about music.*
***Next summer** your crops will be very much better.*
*I think we'll definitely be going **next year**.*
*Will your accommodation be available **next October**?*

*The boots will be ready by **Wednesday next**.*
*A post mortem examination will be held on **Monday next**.*
*She won't be able to do it **the week after next**.*

时态的其他用法
Other uses of tenses

5.63 至此，我们在本章已讨论了各种时态的最常见和最简单用法，但时态还有一些不太常见的用法。

生动的叙事
Vivid narrative

现在时态
present tenses

5.64 讲故事一般用过去时态，但如果要使故事显得生动，好像正在发生一样，可用现在时态。**简单现在时** (simple present) 可指动作和状态，**现在进行时** (present continuous) 可表示情况。

*There's a loud explosion behind us. Then I **hear** Chris giggling. Sylvia is upset.*
*He **pulls** the van into the decrepit terrace. He **packs** and **hurries** indoors.*
*Chris **is crying** hard and others **look** over from the other tables.*
*He **sits down** at his desk chair, **reaches** for the telephone and **dials** a number.*

完全确定的将来计划
Firm plans for the future

现在时态
present tenses

5.65 **简单现在时** (simple present) 和**现在进行时** (present continuous) 都可用来陈述完全确定的将来计划。除非说话人或作者确知受话人或读者知道所谈及的是将来，一般都需用附加状语。

*My last train **leaves** Euston **at 11:30**.*
*The UN General Assembly **opens** in New York **later this month**.*
***Tomorrow night** we **exchange** packages.*
***I'm leaving** at the end of this week.*
*An expert on modern drama **is arriving** from Switzerland.*

从过去某一时间点看的将来计划
Forward planning from a time in the past

5.66 谈及从某特定过去时间点看是将来时间里发生的事件，或人们认为将要发生的事件的方法有几种。对此，下列几节分别加以阐述。

过去计划好的事件
events planned in the past

5.67 **过去进行时** (past continuous) 可用来表示过去计划好的事件，特别是常用动词 'come'、'go' 等可以这样用。

*Four of them **were coming** for Sunday lunch.*
*Her daughter **was going** to a summer camp tomorrow.*
*Allister Sparks, formerly of the Dispatch, **was leaving** a local London paper to join Reuters.*

5.68 'Be' 的**简单过去时** (simple past) 可用于 'be going to'、'be about to'、'be due to' 等表示将来事件的结构之中，其含义是所期望的事件尚未发生或不会发生。关于 'be going to'，详见 4.237 节。

*I thought for a moment that she **was going to cry**.*
*He **was about to raise** his voice at me but stopped himself.*
*The ship **was due to sail** the following morning.*

使用附加状语确定时间
Timing by adjuncts

5.69 在许多陈述句中，指明时间的是附加状语而不是动词的时态。由于这个原因，很多附加状语可与一组以上的时态连用。因为它们表示时间，不表示时态。

例如，使用现在时表示包括习惯性动作在内的将来动作时，一种常见用法是：现在时与通常表示将来的附加状语连用。表示将来的附加状语还可用于指过去将来。

*West Germany **celebrates** its fortieth birthday **tomorrow**.*
*After all, you**'re coming** back **next week**.*
*The farmer just laughed and rode away. So **the next week I tried** my luck at another farm.*
*We **arranged** to meet **in three week's time**.*

'Now'、'today'、'tonight' 以及含有 'this' 的附加状语表示包括现在时刻在内的一段时间。它们在各种时态里都较常用。这是因为事件可置于动词时态所限定的时间之前、之内或之后。

*I was **now** in a Scottish regiment.*
*Your boss will **now** have no alternative but to go to his superiors and explain the situation.*
*One of my children wrote to me **today**.*
*I will ski no more **today**.*
*It's dark **today**.*

*'I went to the doctor **this morning**,' she said.*
*He won't be able to fight **this Friday**.*
*I'm doing my ironing **this afternoon**.*

相对时间
relative time

5.70 若要表示一段时间与另一段时间或某件事件有联系，可用附加状语。例如，'soon'、'later' 等副词表示特定事件或时间段之后的时间；'beforehand'、'earlier' 等副词可表示某特定时间段或事件之前的时间。

*Sita was delighted with the house and **soon** began to look upon it as home.*
*It'll have to be replaced **soon**.*
*He **later** settled in Peddie, a small town near Grahamstown.*
*I'll explain **later**.*
*I was very nervous **beforehand**.*
*You'll be having a bath and going to the hairdresser's **beforehand**.*
*She had seen him only **five hours earlier**.*

这类指称时间的附加状语常与过去和将来时连用。不过，当它们表示过去、将来或习惯性动作时，有时则与现在时连用。

*We **don't clean out beforehand** because it only gets dirty again.*
*I **remember the next day** at school going round asking the boys if they'd ever seen a ghost.*
*But **afterwards**, as you **read** on, you **relate** back to it.*

下列附加状语用于表示相对时间：

afterwards	suddenly	the week after
at once	within minutes	the month after
before long	within the hour	the year after
eventually	~	~
finally	the next day	beforehand
immediately	the next week	early
in a moment	the next month	earlier
instantly	the next year	earlier on
later	the following day	in advance
later on	the following week	late
presently	the following month	one day
shortly	the following year	on time
soon	the day after	punctually

注意，在上表中，'presently' 的意思是 'soon'。'Early' 表示某事在预期的或计划中的时间之前发生；'late' 则表示这件事迟于预期的或计划中的时间。'On time' 和 'punctually' 表示某事按照计划中的时间发生。

这些副词既可置于动词之后，也可放在句末。

*Tired out, he had gone to bed **early**.*
*I arrived at Paddington **early** and had a first-class compartment to myself.*
*He had come to the political arena **late**, at the age of 62.*
*We went quite **late** in the afternoon.*
*If Atkinson phoned **on time**, he'd be out of the house in well under an hour.*
*He arrived **punctually**.*

'Early' 和 'late' 的比较级形式 'earlier' 和 'later' 也可这样用。

*I woke **earlier** than usual.*
***Later**, the dealer saw that it had been sold.*

注意，'early'、'late' 和 'on time' 还可作补足语。

*The door bell rang. Barbara was appalled. 'They're **early**.'*
*The Paris train was slightly **late**.*
What time is it now? This bus is usually **on time**.

☞ 关于补足语，详见 3.128 节。

5.71 将时间与事件联系起来，在时间表达式之后加后置表达式或关系从句也可确指时间。

*I didn't sleep well **the night before the prosecution**.*
*I called him **the day I got back**.*

5.72 某些介词也可将事件与事件，或事件与特定时间段联系起来。这些介词在 5.99 节列出，在 5.102 至 5.107 节详述。

***Over the Bank Holiday**, Mr Palumbo spent time relaxing at his estate.*
*A British paratrooper returns to a gloomy tower block in the East End **after active service** in the Falklands.*

必要时间 necessary time

5.73 如果要表示"必要时间"，而超过该时间，事件就不再相关，不再有用或不会成功，可用 'in time' 作附加状语或补足语。

*I would have to do some fast hiking over the hills to reach the rendezvous **in time**.*
*He leapt back, **in time** to dodge the lashing hooves.*

如果某事在必要时间之前发生，可用 'too early'，反之用 'too late'。'Too early' 和 'too late' 也可作附加状语和补足语。

*Today they hear too much about sex **too early**.*
*It's much **too early** to assess the community service scheme.*
*They arrived **too late** for the information to be any good.*
*It's **too late** to change that now.*

业已提及的时间
previously mentioned time

5.74 如果所指的过去或将来时间业已提及，可用副词 'then' 。

*We kept three monkeys **then**.*
*We were all so patriotic **then**.*
*It'll be too late **then**.*

为了更加具体起见，'that' 可与日期、月份、季节等的名称连用，也可与普通时间词连用。

*William didn't come in **that Tuesday**.*
*So many people will be pursuing other activities **that night**.*

强调意外性：继续、停止或未曾发生
Emphasizing the unexpected: continuing, stopping, or not happening

5.75 如果要评述过去、现在和将来情景之间存在的关系，可用下列附加状语中的一个：

already	as yet	still	yet
any longer	no longer	up till now	
any more	so far	up to now	

'still' 表示现存的情况
'still' for existing situations

5.76 如果要表示一种情况直到现在还依然存在，可用 'still' 。如果主要动词是 'be' 或动词词组含助动词，'still' 可置于 'be' 或助动词之后。如果主要动词是除 'be' 以外的其他简单动词，'still' 则可置于动词之前。'Still' 常常隐含着某情况的继续令人吃惊或很不可取。

*It's a marvel that I'm **still** alive to tell the tale.*
*Male prejudice **still** exists in certain quarters.*
*Years had passed and they were **still** paying them off.*

在使用缩约式 'n't' 的否定句中，'still' 位于 'be' 或助动词之前。

*We've been working on it for over two years now. And it **still isn't** finished.*
*We **still don't know** where we're going.*

'still' 用于预期的情况
'still' for expected situations

5.77 'Still' 也可用于 'to'- 不定式之前表示某事尚未发生，尽管人们预期这件事会发生或觉得这件事应该发生。

*The Government **had still to agree** on the provisions of the bill.*
*The problems **were still to come**.*
*There **are** many other questions **still to be answered**.*

在否定句中，'still' 不这样用。

☞ 关于 'yet' 的类似用法，参见 5.78 节。

'yet' 用于预期的情况
'yet' for expected situations

5.78 若要表示某事到目前为止尚未发生，但很可能在将来发生，'yet' 可与否定式连用。通常 'yet' 位于句末。

*We don't know the terms **yet**.*
*I haven't set any work **yet**. I suppose I shall some day.*
*They haven't heard **yet**.*

如果想使语气听上去显得更强一些，可将 'yet' 置于简单动词之前，助动词和否定词之后。

*No one **yet knows** exactly what it means.*
*Her style **had not yet matured**.*

'Yet' 也可用于疑问句中，通常位于句末。

*Has the Colonel waved his paper **yet?***
*Has Mr. Harris not come **yet?***

5.79 'Yet' 还可置于肯定句中，表示人们预期的事情到目前为止尚未发生。'Yet' 这样用时后接 'to'- 不定式小句。

*The true history of art in post-war America **is yet to be written**.*
*He **had yet to attempt** to put principles into practice.*

5.80 'Yet' 还可用于含有最高级的肯定句中，表示陈述到目前为止还是适用的，但将来有可能不再适用。'Yet' 通常位于句末。

*This is the **best** museum we've visited **yet**.*
*Mr. Fowler said that February had produced the **best** results **yet**.*
*This would be the **biggest** and **best** version **yet**.*

可能发生的变化
likely change

5.81 如果要表达到目前为止依然存在的情况将来有可能改变，可用 'as yet'、'so far'、'up to now' 或 'up till now'。通常它们可置于句首或句末，间或也可放在助动词之后。

***As yet**, there is little to suggest that the Prince is an exception in this.*
*Only Mother knows **as yet**.*
***So far**, the terms of the treaty have been carried out according to schedule.*
*You've done well **so far**, Mrs Rutland.*
***Up till now**, the most extraordinary remark I remember was made by you.*
*This troop had **up to now** succeeded in preventing the movement of any but light forces across the River Lippe.*
*You haven't once **up till now** come into real contact with our authorities.*

注意，这些表达式既可用于肯定句也可用于否定句。

过去而非现在
past not present

5.82 若要表示一种过去情况现在不再存在，可用 'no longer'，也可将 'any longer' 及 'any more' 与否定式连用。

*She was **no longer** content with a handful of coins.*
*They did**n't** know **any longer** what was funny and what was entertaining.*
*They do**n't** live together **any more**.*

'already' 用于强调已经发生的情况
'already' for emphasizing occurrence

5.83 'Already' 可用来强调一种情况已经存在，而不是没有发生。'Already' 一般位于除 'be' 以外的其他简单动词之前。如果 'be' 作主要动词或句子有助动词，那么，'already' 位于 'be' 或助动词之后。

*The energy **already exists** in the ground.*
*Senegal **already has** a well established film industry.*
*He was just a year younger than Rudolph, but **was already** as tall and much stockier.*
*My watch says nine o'clock. And it**'s already** too hot to sleep.*
*We **have already advertised** your post in the papers.*
*Britain **is already exporting** a little coal.*

'Already' 也可置于句首或句末，进行强调。

***Already**, European consumers pay over the odds for T.V. sets, video recorders, and other goods.*
*I was happy for her; she looked better **already**.*

除与动词 'be'、'have' 和 'know' 的简单过去时连用外，'already' 一般不常与简单过去时连用。

注意，'already' 通常也不用于否定句之中，但否定 'if'- 从句、否定疑问句和否定关系从句例外。

*Refer certain types of death to the coroner if this has not **already** been done.*
*What does it show us that we haven't **already** felt?*
*...all peers who did not **already** belong to the Privy Council.*

时间表达式和介词短语
Time expressions and prepositional phrases

特定时间
Specific times

5.84 陈述现在时间、日子或年份时，可用特定时间表达式作补足语。

*'Well what time is it now?' – 'It's **one o'clock**'.*
*It was **a perfect May morning**.*
*Six weeks isn't all that long ago, it's **January**.*

特定时间表达式还常用于介词短语之中，表示某事发生的时间或人们预期某事发生的时间。

*I got there **at about 8 o'clock**.*
*The submarine caught fire **on Friday morning**.*
*That train gets in **at 1800 hours**.*

钟表时间
clock times

5.85 钟表时间通常用小时和小时中的部分或分钟表示。例如，'one o'clock'、'five minutes past one'、'one twenty' 和 'half past one'。一天通常分为两个十二小时，因此，有时有必要加 'a.m.'、'p.m.' 或加 'in the morning'、'in the evening' 等介词短语明确所指是上午还是下午。

许多官方用语使用二十四小时制。若小时已经知道，可只指明分钟，例如，'five past、ten to、quarter to、half past'。'Midday' 和 'noon' 间或也可用。

一天中的时间
times of the day

5.86 'Morning'、'afternoon'、'evening' 和 'night' 是最常用来指一天中时间段的词。还有表示日出和日落的词，如 'dusk' 和 'sunset'，及一些进餐时间的词。

*On a warm, cloudy **evening**, Colin went down to the river.*
*They seem to be working from **dawn** to **dusk**.*
*Most of the trouble comes outside the classroom, at **break-time** and **dinner-time**.*

下列单词用于谈及一天中的时间段：

morning	daybreak	~	teatime
afternoon	first light	daytime	dinnertime
evening	sunrise	night-time	suppertime
night	dusk	breakfast-time	bedtime
~	sunset	break-time	
dawn	nightfall	lunchtime	

给某些日子名称
naming days

5.87 一周中的七天是**专有名词** (proper nouns)：

Monday	Wednesday	Friday	Sunday
Tuesday	Thursday	Saturday	

星期六和星期日常被称为 'the weekend'，其余几天被称为 'weekdays'。

一年中有少数日子有特殊名称，例如：

New Year's Day	Easter Monday	Christmas Day
St Valentine's Day	Halloween	Boxing Day
Good Friday	Christmas Eve	New Year's Eve

用**序数词** (ordinal numbers/ordinals) 表示日期也可指某一天。

*'When does your term end?' – '**First of July**'.*
*The Grand Prix is to be held here on the **18th July**.*
*Her season of films continues until **October the ninth**.*

如果从上下文能清楚地看出所指是哪个日子，月份可以省略。

*So Monday will be the **seventeenth**.*
*St Valentine's Day is on the **fourteenth**.*

序数词在附录**参考部分** R46 详述。

月份、季节和日期
months, seasons, and dates

5.88 一年中的十二个月也是**专有名词** (proper nouns)：

January	May	September
February	June	October
March	July	November
April	August	December

四季是：'spring'、'summer'、'autumn'（'fall' 为美式英语）和 'winter'。'Springtime'、'summertime' 和 'wintertime' 有时也用。

一年中的某些时间段也有特殊名称。例如，'Christmas'、'Easter'和'the New Year'。

年份、十年期和世纪
years, decades, and centuries

5.89 在英语中，年份用数词表示。

*...the eleventh of January, **1967**.*
*A second conference was held in February **1988**.*
*My mother died in **1945**.*

表示长于一年的时间段，可用十年期（10年）和世纪（100年）。十年期的起迄年份分别是'0'和'9'，如'the 1960s' (1960 to 1969)和'the 1820's' (1820 to 1829)。如果知道指哪个世纪，世纪一词可以省略，如'the 20s'、'the twenties'、'the Twenties'。

指历史上的年代，为了更准确起见，可在指耶稣降生以后的年份或世纪的数词之前或之后加'AD'。例如，'1650 AD'、'AD 1650'、'AD 1650 – 53'、'1650 – 1653 AD'。'BC'可加在指耶稣降生以前的年份或世纪的数词之后。例如，'1500 BC'、'1200 – 1500 BC'。

世纪的起迄年份分别是两个'0'和两个'9'。它们用序数词表示。公元一世纪从'0 AD'开始至'99 AD'结束；公元二世纪为'100 – 199 AD'，依次类推。据此，'1800 – 1899 AD'是公元十九世纪。我们目前正处于二十世纪 (1900 – 1999 AD)。世纪也可用数词书写：'the 20th century'。

'at' 指具体时间
'at' for specific times

5.90 若要表示某事何时发生，可将'at'与钟表时间、一年中的时间段及一天中的时间段连用。'Morning'、'evening'、'afternoon'和'daytime'几个表示一天中时间段的词属于例外。

*Our train went **at 2.25**.*
*It's on Radio Four **at ten to eight** tomorrow evening.*
*We were in Dunfermline **at twenty five past**.*
*You should go to church **at Easter** and **Christmas**.*
*I went down and fetched her back **at the weekend**.*
*On Tuesday evening, just **at dusk**, Brody had received an anonymous phone call.*
*He regarded it as his duty to come and read to me **at bedtime**.*
***At night** we kept them shut up in a wire enclosure.*
*Let the fire burn out now. Who would see smoke **at night-time** anyway?*

'At'也可与'time'及其类似的词，如'moment'和'juncture'连用；它还可与'hour'和'minute'等钟表时间单位连用。

*General de Gaulle duly attended the military ceremony **at the appointed time**.*
*It was **at this juncture** that his luck temporarily deserted him.*

*If I could have done it **at that minute** I would have killed him.*
*There were no lights **at this hour**, and roads, bungalows and gardens lay quiet.*

'at' 用于联系事件
'at' for relating events

5.91 'At' 也可用于将一件事件的时间与另一件事件联系起来。

*I had first met Kruger **at a party** at the British Embassy.*
*She represented the Association **at the annual meeting of the American Medical Association** in Chicago.*
*It is to be reopened **at the annual conference** in three weeks' time.*

5.92 'At' 还与年龄、发展阶段和较长时间段内的时间点连用。

***At the age of twenty**, she married another Spanish dancer.*
*He left school **at seventeen**.*
***At an early stage of the war** the British Government began recruiting a team of top mathematicians and electronics experts.*
*We were due to return to the United Kingdom **at the beginning of March**.*

'in' 用于时间段
'in' for periods of time

5.93 如果要表示某事在某时间段内发生，'in' 可与世纪、年份、季节、月份和一天中的时间段，如 'morning'、'afternoon' 和 'evening' 连用。'In' 也可与 'daytime' 和 'night-time' 连用。

***In the sixteenth century** there were three tennis courts.*
*It's true that we expected a great deal **in the sixties**.*
*Americans visiting Sweden **in the early 1950's** were astounded by its cleanliness.*
*If you were to go on holiday on the continent **in wintertime** what sport could you take part in?*
*To be in Cornwall at any time is a pleasure, to be here **in summer** is a bonus.*
*I get strange feelings **in the autumn**.*
*She will preside over the annual meeting of the Court **in December**.*
***In September** I travelled to California to see the finished film.*
*I'll ring the agent **in the morning**.*
*Well, she does come in to clean the rooms **in the daytime**.*

注意，如果 'morning'、'afternoon' 和 'evening' 有前置或后置修饰语，介词用 'on'，详见 5.95 节。

'in' 用于具体时间
'in' for specific time

5.94 确指一时间段、分钟、小时、日子等时，'in' 可与**序数词** (ordinal numbers/ordinals) 连用。

*Vehicle sales **in the first eight months** of the year have plunged by 24.4 per cent.*
*...**in the early hours** of the morning.*

'In' 还可与其他表示事件和时间段的名词连用。

*My father was killed **in the war**.*
*Everyone does unusual jobs **in wartime**.*
***In the holidays** older children can cook something simple for themselves when they deign to turn up.*
*Two people came to check my cabin **in my absence**.*

☞ 序数词在 2.249 至 2.256 节讨论。

'on' 用于短时间段
'on' for short periods of time

5.95 若要提及某事发生的日子，可用 'on' 后随具有名称的日子、序数词表示的日子及有特殊名称的日子，如 'birthday' 或 'anniversary'。

*I'll send the cheque round **on Monday**.*
*Everybody went to church **on Christmas Day**.*
*I hear you have bingo **on Wednesday**.*
*Pentonville Prison was set up **on Boxing Day**, 1842.*
*He was born **on 3 April 1925** at 40 Grosvenor Road.*
*...the grey suit Elsa had bought for him **on his birthday**.*
*Many of Eisenhower's most cautious commanders were even prepared to risk attack **on the eighth or ninth**.*
*...addressing Parliament **on the 36th anniversary** of his country's independence.*

具有名称的日子与 'the' 连用，可进行强调或对照；与 'a' 连用可指任何一个具有该名称的日子。

*He died **on the Friday** and was buried on the Sunday.*
*It is unlucky to cut your nails **on a Friday**.*

'Morning'、'afternoon'、'evening' 和 'night' 若有前置或后置修饰语，也可与 'on' 连用。

*...at 2.30 p.m. **on a calm afternoon**.*
*There was another important opening **on the same evening**.*
*When she arrived at the court **on the morning of the event**, her voice had vanished.*
*It's terribly good of you to turn out **on a night like this**.*

'on' 用于较长时间段
'on' for longer periods of time

5.96 'On' 还可与 'journey'、'trip'、'voyage'、'flight' 和 'way' 等表示旅行的词连用，表示某事发生的时间。

*But **on that journey**, for the first time, Luce's faith in the eventual outcome was shaken.*
*Eileen was accompanying her father to visit friends made **on a camping trip** the year before.*

'on' 用于随后发生的事件
'on' for subsequent events

5.97 在比较正式的语体中，'on' 可与表示动作或活动的名词和 '-ing' 形式连用，表示一件事件继另一件事件之后发生。

I shall bring the remaining seven hundred pounds ***on my return*** *in eleven days.*
On being called 'young lady'*, she laughed.*

时间表达式的次序安排
ordering of time expressions

5.98 在极少数必须准确指明时间和日期的情况下，如在法律英语或正式文件中，通常的次序是：钟表时间后随一天中的时间段、星期和日期。

...at eight o'clock on the morning of 29 October 1618.
...on the night of Thursday July 16.

非特定时间
Non-specific times

大致时间
approximate times

5.99 如果想大致指明某事的时间，可用表示"大致"概念的副词或表达式。也可用介词将事件与大致的时间点或时间段联系起来。例如，不清楚事件发生的准确时间或事件是渐进发生的、持续发生的、或是发生了好几次的，所以只能指明事件的大致时间。

At ***about*** *four o'clock in the morning, we were ambushed.*
The device that exploded at ***around*** *midnight on Wednesday severely damaged the fourth-floor bar.*
The supply of servants continued until ***about*** *1950, then abruptly dried up.*
He developed central chest pain ***during the night****.*
For, also ***over the summer****, his book had come out.*
One morning ***before dawn*** *Ark was beginning to wake me up as usual.*

下列副词和表达式表示"大致"概念：

about	just after	round about	soon after
almost	just before	shortly after	thereabouts
around	nearly	shortly before	

'About'、'almost'、'around'、'nearly' 和 'round about'，通常与钟表时间或年份连用。

在非正式语体中，与 'about'、'around' 和 'round about' 连用的介词 'at' 常常可以省略。

Then quite suddenly, ***round about*** *midday, my mood began to change.*
About *nine o'clock he went out to the kitchen.*

下列介词用于将事件与非特定时间联系起来：

after	by	following	prior to
before	during	over	

注意 Warning

5.100 'Almost' 或 'nearly' 只能用于 'be' 之后。

5.101 'Or thereabouts' 也可用于时间表达式之后。

Back in 1975 ***or thereabouts*** *someone lent me an article about education.*
...at four o'clock ***or thereabouts****.*

'during' 用于时间段
'during' for periods of time

5.102 'During' 可代替 'in' 与一天中的时间段、月份、季节、年份、十年期和世纪连用。

We try to keep people informed by post ***during September****.*
She heated the place ***during the winter*** *with a huge wood furnace.*
During 1973 *an Anti-Imperialist Alliance was formed.*
During the Sixties *various levies were imposed.*
During the seventh century *incendiary weapons were invented.*
They used to spend the whole Sunday at chapel but most of them behaved shockingly ***during the week****.*

5.103 'During' 可与大多数表示事件的名词连用，表示一件事件发生时另一件事件正在发生。

During his stay in prison*, he has written many essays and poems.*
...trying to boost police morale ***during a heated battle with rioters****.*
The water-holding frog appears above ground only ***during the brief and infrequent rain storms****.*
Some families live in the kitchen ***during a power cut****.*
During the journey *I came to like and respect them.*

注意 Warning

5.104 'During the week' 指周日，与周末相对。

'over' 用于事件
'over' for events

5.105 'Over' 可与 'winter'、'summer' 及一年中的某些特殊时间段连用，表示一件事在这段时间一直发生或在这段时间中的一段不定时间里发生。

...to help keep their families going ***over the winter****.*
My friends had a marvellous time ***over the New Year****.*

'Over' 也可用于表示一段时间。这段时间既可是说话时间之前的一段时间，也可是说话时间之后的一段时间，还可是所谈及的一段时间。

The number will increase considerably ***over the next decade****.*
They have been doing all they can ***over the past twenty-four hours****.*
We packed up the things I had accumulated ***over the last four years****.*

'Over' 还可与三餐、食品或饮料连用，表示某事在人们用餐或喝饮料时发生。

Davis said he wanted to read it ***over lunch****.*
Can we discuss it ***over a cup of coffee****?*

联系事件和时间
relating events and times

5.106 陈述事件与一个时间段或一个特定时间点的关系，可以较笼统地表示时间。

'Before'、'prior to' 和 'after' 可用于联系事件与时间。

She gets up ***before six****.*
If you're stuck come back and see me ***before Thursday****.*
...the construction of warships by the major powers ***prior to 1914****.*
City Music Hall is going to close down ***after Easter****.*
Clean up the kitchen ***after the weekend****.*

它们也可用于联系两个事件。

I was in a bank for a while ***before the war****.*
She gave me much helpful advice ***prior to my visit to Turkey****.*
Jack left ***after breakfast****.*
He was killed in a car accident four years ***after their marriage****.*
After much discussion*, they had decided to take the coin to a jeweller.*

'Following'、'previous to' 和 'subsequent to' 也可与事件连用。

These features increase the chances that we will be able to see and think clearly ***following a physical attack****.*
He suggests that Ross was prompted ***previous to the parade****.*
The testimony and description of one witness would be supplied prior to the interview; those of the other two ***subsequent to it****.*

事件的顺序
order of events

5.107 同一个人做两个动作或两个人做同一个动作时，可用 'before' 和 'after' 表示事件的顺序。

I should have talked about that ***before anything else****.*
He knew Nell would probably be home ***before him****.*
I do the floor ***after the washing-up****.*

有时，也可用 'earlier than' 或 'later than'。

*Smiling develops **earlier than laughing**.*

同时性事件
simultaneous events

5.108 副词 'together' 和 'simultaneously'，附加状语 'at the same time' 和 'at once' 可用来表示两个或两个以上的动作同时发生。

*Everything had happened **together**.*
*His fear and his hate grew **simultaneously**.*
*Can you love two women **at the same time**?*
*I can't be everywhere **at once**.*

联系副词
linking adverbs

5.109 使用 'first'、'next'、'finally' 等副词也可表示事件发生的顺序。'Simultaneously' 和 'at the same time' 可同样用来联系分句。参见 10.78 节。

'by' 用于特定时间
'by' for specific time

5.110 'By' 可用来强调一件事件在特定时间之前的某个时刻发生，但不迟于该时间。'By' 还可用来表示一个过程在特定时间之前已经完成或达到一个特定阶段。

***By eleven o'clock**, Brody was back in his office.*
*The theory was that **by Monday** their tempers would have cooled.*
***By 1985** there will be 5,000 robots on the job.*
*Do you think we'll get to the top of this canyon **by tomorrow**?*
***By now** the moon was up.*
*But **by then** he was bored with the project.*

时间从句
Subordinate time clauses

5.111 时间从句常常可替代介词短语表示事件发生的时间。

例如，代替 'He was killed in a car accident four years after their marriage' 可说 'He was killed in a car accident four years after they were married'；

又例如，代替 'During his stay in prison, he has written many essays and poems' 可说 'While he has been in prison, he has written many essays and poems'。

由 'before' 或 'after' 引导的从句表示几个事件的次序或同时性是可行的或可取的。

时间从句在 8.8 至 8.24 节讨论。

时间表达式的扩展用法
Extended uses of time expressions

5.112 时间表达式和介词短语可作后置修饰语，确指事件或时间段。

*I'm afraid the meeting **this afternoon** tired me badly.*
*The sudden death of his father **on 17 November 1960** did not find him unprepared.*
*...until I started to recall the years **after the Second World War**.*
*No admissions are permitted in the hour **before closing time**.*

钟表时间、一天中的时间段、周日、月份、日期、季节、一年中的特殊时间段、年份、十年期和世纪可作前置修饰语确指事物。

*Every morning he would set off right after the **eight o'clock** news.*
*Castle was usually able to catch the **six thirty-five** train from Euston.*
*But now the sun was already shredding away the **morning** mists.*
*He learned that he had missed the **Monday** flight.*
*I had **summer** clothes and **winter** clothes.*
*Ash had spent the **Christmas** holidays at Pelham Abbas.*

领属形式也可用作前置修饰语确指事物。

***Tuesday's paper** will be forced to carry an extra page to print all the corrections to statements in **Monday's paper**.*
*It was Jim Griffiths, who knew nothing of **the morning's happenings**.*
*The story will appear in **tomorrow's paper**.*
***This week's batch of government statistics** added to the general confusion over the state of the economy.*

☞ 关于前置修饰语和后置修饰语，详见第二章。

频度和持续时间
Frequency and duration

5.113 时间单位常用于表示某事发生的频度、持续时间或所费时间的长短：

moment	hour	week	year
second	day	fortnight	decade
minute	night	month	century

'Fortnight' 只用单数形式。'Moment' 不能与数词连用，因为它不表示精确的时间段。例如，不能说 'It took five moments'。表示一天中的时间段、周日、月份和季节的词，如 'morning'、'Friday'、'July' 和 'winter' 也可表示频度和持续时间。

钟表时间也可同样使用。

频度附加状语
Adjuncts of frequency

5.114 有些副词和状语表达式可表示某事发生的大致次数：

again and again	ever	never	repeatedly
a lot	frequently	normally	seldom
all the time	from time to time	occasionally	sometimes
always	hardly ever	often	sporadically
constantly	infrequently	periodically	usually
continually	intermittently	rarely	
continuously	much	regularly	

We ***often*** *swam in the surf in front of our seaside cottages.*
Sometimes *I wish I was back in Africa.*
We were ***always*** *being sent home.*
He blinked ***a lot****.*

'Never' 是否定副词。

She ***never*** *goes abroad.*

'Ever' 只用于疑问句、否定句和 'if'-从句之中。

Have you ***ever*** *been to a concert?*

'Much' 通常与 'not' 连用。

*The men did****n't*** *talk* ***much*** *to each other.*

'Often'、'frequently' 等频度副词还可用于比较级和最高级。

Disasters can be prevented ***more often*** *than in the past.*
I preached much ***more often*** *than that.*
They cried for their mothers ***less often*** *than might have been expected.*
...the mistakes which women make ***most frequently****.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

5.115 表示某事发生的次数，可用具体数词、'several' 或 'many' 后随 'times'。

*We had to ask **three times**.*
*It's an experience I've repeated **many times** since.*
*He carefully aimed his rifle and fired **several times**.*

如果所用数词是 'one'，在这种结构中则用 'once' (非 'one time')，如果所用数词是 'two'，则用 'twice'。

*I've been out with him **once**, that's all.*
*The car broke down **twice**.*

如果某事经常发生，可用 'a' 和指一个时间段的词，表示此事在一段时间内发生的次数。

*The group met **once a week**.*
*You only have a meal **three times a day**.*
*The committee meets **twice a year**.*

频度表达式，如 'once'，也可与前加 'every' 的时间单位连用，表示某事在该单位时间内有规律地发生了具体的次数。

*The average Briton moves house **once every seven and a half years**.*
*We meet **twice every Sunday**.*
***Three times every day**, he would come to the kiosk to see we were all right.*

若一件事件在一天中的特定时间段里有规律地发生，可用该时间段代替 'times'。

*I used to go in **three mornings a week**.*
*He was going out **four** and sometimes **five nights a week**.*

'A' 和普通时间词连用，也可表达经常的比率和数量。'Per' 可代替 'a' 使用，在技术类文章中尤其如此。

*They again ordered him to pay **ten shillings a month**.*
*I was only getting **three hours of sleep a night**.*
*...rising upwards at the rate of **300 feet per second**.*
*He hurtles through the air at **600 miles per hour**.*

估计频度 estimating frequency

5.116 如果要大致表示某事发生的频度，可用 'almost'、'about'、'nearly'、'or so'、'or less' 和 'or more' 等表示"大致"概念的副词或表达式。

'Almost' 和 'about' 可置于 'every' 之前。

*In the last month of her pregnancy, we took to going out **almost** every evening.*

'Almost' 还可用于由普通时间词加 '-ly' 变成的时间副词之前。

*Small scale confrontations occur **almost** daily in many states.*

'Or so'、'or less' 和 'or more' 可置于频度表达式之后，但不能置于频度副词之后。

*Every hour **or so**, my shoulders would tighten.*
*If you are studying part-time (21 hours **or less** a week) you can claim supplementary benefit.*

规律性间隔
regular intervals

5.117 若要表示某事每隔一段时间发生，可用 'every' 后随普通或特定时间单位。有时用 'each' 代替 'every'。

*We'll go hunting **every day**.*
*You get a lump sum and you get a pension **each week**.*
*Some people write out a new address book **every January**.*

'Every' 也可与数词和复数时间单位连用。

***Every five minutes** the phone would ring.*

'Every' 和 'each' 还可用来表达某事的经常或平均比率或数量。

*One fighter jet was shot down **every hour**.*
*Academy schools send about 200 to the kiln **every fortnight**.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

5.118 若某事在一个时间段内发生，间歇一段时间之后，再在另一个时间段内发生，并如此持续，可用 'every other' 后随时间单位或特定时间词。有时也可用 'every second' 代替 'every other'。

*We wrote **every other day**.*
*Their local committees are usually held **every other month**.*
*He used to come and take them out **every other Sunday**.*
*It seemed easier to shave only **every second day**.*

含有 'alternate' 和复数时间词的介词短语也可以用。

***On alternate Sunday nights**, I tell the younger children a story.*
*Just do some exercises **on alternate days** at first.*

事物发生的具体情况
particular occurrences of an event

5.119 副词 'first'、'next' 和 'last' 可用来表示事件发生的阶段。

副词 'first'、名词词组 'the first time' 和介词短语 'for the first time' 可表示首次发生的事件。

*He was, I think, in his early sixties when I **first** encountered him.*
*They had seen each other **first** a week before, outside this hotel.*

*...the tactical war games which were **first** fought in Ancient Greece.*
*It rained heavily twice while I was out. **The first time** I sheltered in a copse, but the second time I galloped through it.*
***For the first time** Anne Marie felt frightened.*

'For the first time' 与 'in' 和复数普通时间词连用，可表示很久未发生的事件或情况又重复发生了。

*Diesel is cheaper than petrol in Britain **for the first time in years**.*
*You're alone **for the first time in months**.*

将来发生的事件可用 'next time' 或 'the next time' 表示。

*Don't do it again. I mightn't forgive you **next time**.*
***The next time** I come here, I'm going to be better.*

'Next' 在陈述句中使用来表示将来，在 5.62 节阐述。

最近发生的一次事件可用副词 'last' 或名词词组 'last time' 或 'the last time' 表示。

*He seemed to have grown a lot since he **last** wore it.*
*He could not remember when he had **last** eaten.*
*When did you **last** see him?*
*You did so well **last time**.*

'For the last time' 表示最后一次发生的事件。

***For the last time** he waved to the three friends who watched from above.*

'Last' 在表示过去的陈述句中的用法在 5.41 节阐述。

'Before'、'again' 及含有**序数词** (ordinal numbers/ordinals) 和 'time' 的名词词组可表示一件事件是首次发生的还是以前曾发生过的。

'Before' 与完成时连用，可表示某事是首次发生还是一个重复出现的动作。

*I'v never been in a policeman's house **before**.*
*He's done it **before**.*

副词 'again' 可用于表示一件事件第二次发生或随后发生。在名词词组或更为正式一些的 'for' 短语中，序数词可与 'time' 连用确指一件重复事件某一次的发生。

*Someone rang the front door bell. He stood and listened and heard it ring **again** and then **a third time**.*
*'We have no reliable information about that yet,' he found himself saying **for the third time**.*

'-ly' 结尾的时间副词
'-ly' time adverbs

5.120 有些普通时间词加 '-ly' 可变成副词，用于表示一件事件的频度：

hourly	weekly	monthly	yearly
daily	fortnightly	quarterly	

注意，'daily' 的拼写。副词 'annually' 及形容词 'annual' 与 'yearly' 含义相同。

It was suggested that we give each child an allowance ***yearly*** *or* ***monthly*** *to cover all he or she spends.*
Scotland too has an Executive Committee which meets ***monthly****.*

这些词还可作形容词用。

To this, we add a ***yearly*** *allowance of £65.00 towards repairs.*
Mutual help is best done on an ***hourly*** *basis.*
They had a long-standing commitment to making a ***weekly*** *cash payment to mothers.*

介词短语
prepositional phrases

5.121 含有复数特定时间词的介词短语也可用于表示频率。例如 'on' 可与周日连用，'during' 和 'at' 可以与 'weekends' 连用。

We've had teaching practice ***on Tuesdays*** *and lectures* ***on Thursdays****.*
She does not need help with the children ***during weekends****.*
We see each other ***at weekends****.*

'In' 与一天中的时间段连用，'night' 除外。

I can't work full time. I only work ***in the afternoons****, I have lectures* ***in the mornings****.*
Harry Truman loved to sit in an old rocking chair ***in the evenings*** *and face the lawns behind the White House.*

进展和规律性的发生
development and regular occurrence

5.122 'By' 前后用一个相同的普通时间词，可表示某事渐进发展或每隔一段时间发生。

She was getting older ***year by year****, and lonelier, and more ridiculous.*
Millions of citizens follow, ***day by day****, the unfolding of the drama.*

渐进发展也可用副词 'increasingly' 和 'progressively' 表示。

...the computers and information banks upon which our world will ***increasingly*** *depend.*
His conduct became ***increasingly*** *eccentric.*
As disposable income rises, people become ***progressively*** *less concerned with price.*

持续附加状语
Adjuncts of duration

5.123 本部分讲解表示某事持续和所用时间长短的方法。

有些副词和状语表达式可用于表示一件事或状态持续的时间。

下列副词用来表示持续时间：

always	for ever	long	permanently
briefly	indefinitely	overnight	temporarily

*She glanced **briefly** at Lucas Simmonds.*
*You won't live **for ever**.*
*The flat had been let to them by one of Daisy's friends who was **temporarily** in America.*

'Briefly' 和 'permanently' 可用比较级。

*This new revelation had much the same outward effect, though **more briefly**.*
*Urging them reduces the appetite further and **more permanently**.*

副词 'long' 只用于否定句或疑问句之中。

*I haven't been in England **long**.*
*How **long** does it take on the train?*

在肯定句中，'long' 用于 'a long time' 等表达式和 'for a long time' 等介词短语中。但其比较级和最高级形式 'longer' 和 'longest' 则可用于肯定和否定句中。

*Then of course you'll go with Parry. She's been your friend **longer**.*
*I've been thinking about it a lot **longer** than you.*
*She remained **the longest**.*

'For long' 可用于肯定和否定 'if'- 从句之中。

*If she's away **for long** we won't be able to wait.*

介词短语
prepositional phrases

5.124 然而，介词短语更常用一些。下列介词用于持续附加状语中：

after	from	throughout
before	in	to
for	since	until

介词宾语是表示特定时间段的名词词组，它既可以是单数形式也可以是复数形式。单数形式置于限定词 'a'（或 'one' 用于强调）之后；复数形式置于数词或量词之后。

名词词组也可表示一个不确定时间段。例如，表达式 'a long time'、'a short while'、'a while' 或 'ages'，或复数时间词 'hours' 等。

'for' 表示时间的长短
'for' for length of time

5.125 介词 'for' 表示某事持续发生时间的长短。

Is he still thinking of going away to Italy ***for a month****?*
The initial battle continued ***for an hour****.*
This precious happy time lasted ***for a month or two****.*
The machine was completely immobilized ***for ten minutes****.*
We were married ***for fifteen years****.*
I didn't speak ***for a long time****.*
She would have liked to sit ***for a while*** *and think.*

如果该时间段已经知道，'the' 可代替 'a' 与季节、一天中的时间段及 'weekend'连用。限定含有'past'、'coming'、'following'、'next'、'last' 或**序数词** (ordinal numbers/ordinals) 的时间词时，也可用 'the' 代替 'a'。

Tell Aunt Elizabeth you're off ***for the day****.*
We've been living together ***for the past year****.*
For the first month or two *I was bullied constantly.*
For the next few days *he remained prone on his bed in his quarters.*
Put them in cold storage ***for the winter****.*
I said I'm off to Brighton ***for the weekend****.*

注意，限定词不能与一年中的特殊时间段连用。

At least come ***for Christmas****.*

5.126 'For' 还可与特定时间表达式连用，表示某物将被使用的时间，而不是某事所用时间或持续时间的长短。

Everything was placed exactly where I wanted it ***for the morning****.*

5.127 'For' 还可用于否定结构表示直到某特定时间段之后，某事才有必要发生或才会发生。该结构还常用 'yet'。

It won't be ready to sail ***for another three weeks****.*
I don't have to decide ***for a month yet****.*

'for' 用于强调
'for' for emphasis

5.128 'For' 与复数名词词组连用可强调某事持续时间的长短。

*Settlers have been coming here **for centuries**.*
*I don't think he's practised much **for years**.*
*I've been asking you about these doors **for months**.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

5.129 同一个普通时间词可用于 'after' 的前后，强调一种状态持续了很长时间，或一个动作持续重复了很久。

*A village sees the same hands **century after century**.*
*They can go on making losses, **year after year**, without fearing that they will go bust.*

'in' 和 'within' 表示一时间段的结束
'in' and 'within' for end of a period

5.130 'In' 可用来表示在某特定时间段结束之前，某事发生或将要发生。'Within' 用于比较正式的英语中。

*Can we get to the airport **in an hour**?*
*That coat must have cost you more than I make **in a year**.*
*The face of a city can change completely **in a year**.*
*Some may form the basis of a new anti-Aids drug **within a year or two**.*

5.131 'In' 和 'within' 还可表示某事只用了很短时间。

*The clouds evaporated **in seconds**.*
*What an expert can do **in minutes** may take you hours to accomplish.*
***Within a few months**, the barnyard had been abandoned.*

'for' 和 'in' 与泛指或特指时间连用
'for'and 'in' with general or specific time

5.132 'For' 和 'in' 可用于否定句之中，表示某事在一个时间段内未发生。在这种用法中，'for' 和 'in' 既可与特指的时间单位连用，也可与泛指的时间指称连用。

*He hadn't had a proper night's sleep **for a month**.*
*I haven't seen a chart **for forty years**!*
*The team had not heard from Stabler **in a month**.*
*He hasn't slept **in a month**.*
*I haven't seen him **for years**.*
*Let's have a dinner party. We haven't had one **in years**.*
*I haven't fired a gun **in years**.*

名词词组作附加状语
noun group adjuncts

5.133 注意，持续附加状语与含有持续时间概念的动词 'last'、'wait' 和 'stay' 连用时，可用名词词组代替由 'for' 引出的介词短语。

*The campaign **lasts four weeks** at most.*
*His speech **lasted for exactly 14 and a half minutes**.*

*'**Wait a minute**,' the voice said.*
*He **stayed a month, five weeks, six weeks**.*

动词 'take' 和 'spend' 也可表示持续时间，但与之连用的持续附加状语只能是名词词组。

*It **took** me **a month** to lose that feeling of being a spectator.*
*What once **took a century** now **took only ten months**.*
*He **spent five minutes** washing and shaving.*

大致性持续时间 approximate duration

5.134 若要大致表示某事持续时间的长短，可用下列表示"大致"概念的副词或表达式：'about'、'almost'、'nearly'、'around'、'more than'、'less than'等等。

*The family had controlled the time for **more than** a century.*
*They have not been allowed to form unions for **almost** a decade.*
*The three of us travelled around together for **about** a month that summer.*
*In **less than** a year, I learned enough Latin to pass the entrance exam.*
*He had been in command of HMS Churchill for **nearly** a year.*

泛指某事持续的时间，可用 'up to' 表示该事件将持续或花费的最长时间。

*Refresher training for **up to** one month each year was the rule for all.*

表达式 'or so'、'or more'、'or less'、'or thereabouts' 也可使持续时间不太确定。

*He has been writing about tennis and golf for forty years **or so**.*
*Our species probably practised it for a million years **or more**.*
*...hopes which have prevailed so strongly for a century **or more**.*

'Almost'、'about'、'nearly' 和 'thereabouts' 还可用于谈及事件发生的时间。详见 5.99 节。

表示整段时间
Indicating the whole of a period

5.135 若要强调某事在整段时间内持续发生，可将限定词 'all' 与许多普通时间词连用。

*'I've been wanting to do this **all day**,' she said.*
*I've been here **all night**.*
*They said you were out **all afternoon**.*
*We've not seen them **all summer**.*

也可将 'whole' 用作前置修饰语，置于普通时间词之前。

They forecast a fall in profits for ***the whole of 1989****.*
...scientists who are monitoring food safety ***the whole time****.*
...women who have stopped menstruating for ***a whole year***

还可将 'all through'、'right through' 和 'throughout' 与 'the' 及许多泛指时间词或特定的十年期、年份、月份或特殊时间段连起来使用。

Discussions and arguments continued ***all through the day****.*
Right through the summer months *they are rarely out of sight.*
Throughout the Sixties*, man's first voyage to other worlds came closer.*

指事件的词可代替时间词，强调说明某事在事件持续的整个过程中发生。

He wore an expression of angry contempt ***throughout the interrogation****.*
A patient reported a dream that had recurred ***throughout her life****.*
All through the cruelly long journey home*, he lay utterly motionless.*

5.136 若要强调某事一直发生，可列出一天中的时间段、季节、或提及相对的两个时间。

...people coming in ***morning, noon, and night****.*
I've worn the same suit ***summer, winter, autumn and spring****, for five years.*
Thousands of slave labourers worked ***night and day*** *to build the fortifications.*
Ten gardeners used to work this land, ***winter and summer****.*

表示一段时间的开始或结束
Indicating the start or end of a period

起始时间
start time

5.137 表示情况持续时间的长短可用介词短语指出其起始时间、终止时间或起讫时间。

若要谈及一种情况过去发生，现在仍在继续或只考虑该情况从某过去时间到现在这段时间，可用介词 'since' 加时间表达式或事件说明情况是何时开始的。动词用现在完成时。

I've been here ***since twelve o'clock****.*
I haven't had a new customer in here ***since Sunday****.*
Some 850 firemen have been laid off ***since April****.*
I haven't been out ***since Christmas****.*
He has not won a major championship ***since 1974****.*
There has been no word of my friend ***since the revolution****.*

'Since' 还可用于表示过去终止的情况的起点。动词用过去完成时。

I'd been working in London ***since January*** *at a firm called Kendalls.*
He hadn't prayed once ***since the morning****.*
I'd only had two sandwiches ***since breakfast****.*

'Since' 还可与其他表示一个时间点的介词短语连用。

I haven't seen you ***since before the summer****.*

'Since' 之后的名词词组有时可指人或物，而非时间或事件。与最高级词 'first'、'only' 或否定式连用时尤其如此。

The last government was the greatest tragedy in our history ***since Henry the Eighth****.*
I have never had another dog ***since Jonnie****.*

5.138 情景的起始时间也可用介词 'from' 加副词 'on' 或 'onwards' 表示。名词词组可以是日期、事件或时间段。动词可用简单过去时或完成时。

...the history of British industry ***from the mid sixties on****.*
From the eighteenth century on*, great private palaces went up.*
But ***from the mid-1960s onwards*** *the rate of public welfare spending has tended to accelerate.*
The family size starts to influence development ***from birth****.*
They never perceived that they themselves had forced women into this role ***from childhood****.*
...the guide who had been with us ***from the beginning****.*

5.139 介词 'after' 也可指明情况的起始时间。

They don't let anybody in ***after six o'clock****.*
After 1929 *I concentrated on canvas work.*
He'd have a number of boys to help him through the summer-time but ***after October*** *he'd just have the one.*

终止时间
end time

5.140 同样，若要表示一种情况持续一段时间之后终止，可用介词 'until' 加时间表达式或表示事件的名词说明终止时间。

The school was kept open ***until ten o'clock*** *five nights a week.*
They danced and laughed and talked ***until dawn****.*
She walked back again and sat in her room ***until dinner****.*
I've just discovered she's only here ***until Sunday****.*
He had been willing to wait ***until the following summer****.*
Until the third century A.D. *female slaves were below the law.*
Until that meeting*, most of us knew very little about him.*

'Until' 也可用于否定句，表示在特定时间之前，某事未发生或将不会发生。

*We **won't** get them **until September**.*
*My plane does **not** leave **until tomorrow morning**.*
***No one** I knew had cars **until the twenties**.*
*It won't happen for many good months to come–probably **not until the spring**.*

'Until' 还可与其他表示时间点的介词短语连用。

*The Count had resolved to wait **until after Christmas** to propose to Gertrude.*

有人用 'till' 代替 'until'，在非正式英语中尤其如此。

*Sometimes I lie in bed **till nine o'clock**.*

'Up to' 和 'up till' 有时也用，它们主要见于 'now' 和 'then' 之前。

***Up to now** the Warsaw pact had held the whole initiative.*
*It was something he had never even considered **up till now**.*
*I had a three-wheel bike **up to a few years ago** but it got harder and harder to push it along.*

5.141 介词 'before' 也可表示情况的终止时间。

***Before 1716** Cheltenham had been a small market town.*
***Before ten** and after six the area is empty.*

起讫时间
start and end times

5.142 情景或事件持续的时间可通过指出其起讫时间表示。'From' 可表示其起始时间，'to'、'till' 或 'until' 可表示其终止时间。

*The Blitz on London began with nightly bombings **from 7 September to 2 November**.*
*They are active in the line **from about January until October**.*
*...**from four** in the morning **until ten** at night.*
*They seem to be working **from dawn till dusk**.*

'Between' 和 'and' 可代替 'from' 和 'to'。

***Between 1966 and 1970** Mintech invested 8m in advanced machinery.*
*It's usually in the garage **between Sunday and Thursday** in winter.*
*...illuminated advertising **between midnight and dawn**.*

在美式英语中 'through' 常常置于两个时间点之间。

*The chat shows goes out **midnight through six a.m.***

如果用数字表示两个时间点或年份，代替 'from' 和 'to' 可用破折号将它们分开。

*...open **10–5** weekdays, **10–6** Saturdays and **2–6** Sundays.*

持续表达式作前置修饰语
Duration expressions as modifiers

5.143 含有基数词和普通时间词的时间表达式也可作名词的前置修饰语。注意，时间词上需加撇号。

*Four of those were sentenced to **15 days' detention**.*
*They want to take on staff with **two years' experience**.*

基数词的用法在 2.248 节阐述。

5.144 时间表达式还可用作**复合形容词** (compound adjectives)，作具数名词的前置修饰语。

*They all have to start off with a **six month course** in German.*
*I arrived at the University for a **three month stint** as a visiting lecturer.*

☞ 复合形容词 (compound adjectives) 在 2.98 至 2.107 节讲解。

第六章　表示方式和地点

6 表示方式和地点
Expressing Manner and Place

附加状语概述
Introduction to adjuncts

6.1 人们说及某一件事件或情景时，有时还想表达句子主语、动词、宾语或补足语未表达的内容。用**附加状语** (adjuncts) 就能表达这种内容。附加状语是附加于句子的一个词或词组，用以表达某一件事件或情景的有关情况，比如事件什么时侯发生、为何发生、程度如何或事件在什么地方发生。

*I was **soon** lost.*
*She laughed **quietly**.*
*She was **tremendously** impressed.*
*He fumbled **in his pocket**.*

在其他语法书里，附加状语有时称为**状语** (adverbials)、**副词短语**(adverb phrases) 或**状语性短语** (adverbial phrases)。

副词词组
adverbial groups

6.2 附加状语的两大类型为：**副词词组** (adverbial groups) 和**介词短语** (prepositional phrases)。副词词组一般由几个**副词** (adverbs) 构成。

*He acted **very clumsily**.*
*I cannot speak **too highly** of their courage and skill.*
*He takes his job **very seriously indeed**.*
*He did not play **well enough** throughout the week to deserve to win.*

不过，副词也常常单独作附加状语。

*I shook her **gently**.*
*He **greatly** admired Cezanne.*
*The production was **scarcely** noticed by the press.*
*The number will **probably** be higher than we expected.*

☞ 关于副词，详见从 6.16 节开始的部分。

介词短语
prepositional phrases

6.3 由介词 (prepositions) 和**名词词组** (noun groups) 构成的附加状语，如 ‘in a box’ 和 ‘to the station’，称为**介词短语** (prepositional phrases)。介词短语最基本用法是表示位置和方向。因此从 6.53 节开始的关于**地点** (place) 的几节将对介词短语进行详细讨论。

*Large cushions lay **on the floor**.*
*The voice was coming **from my apartment**.*

名词词组
noun groups

6.4 名词词组偶尔也用作附加状语。

*He was looking really ill **this time yesterday**.*
*'There's a massive market **that side of the water**,' he says, gesturing out of his window.*
*I'm going to handle this **my way**.*

名词词组用作附加状语时，多为时间附加状语，在第五章讨论。名词词组作地点附加状语在6.101节讨论，作方式附加状语在6.44节讨论，作程度附加状语在6.52节讨论。

☞ 有关名词词组的总述，详见第一、二两章。

增添动词词组意义
adding meaning to verb groups

6.5 在句子中给动词词组增添意义，是副词词组提供附加信息的最常见方式。

*He nodded and smiled **warmly**.*
*The report says that hospitals and rescue services coped **extremely well**.*
*Nevertheless, he does dramatize **pretty faithfully** this Joan of Arc period.*

介词短语比副词词组意义更广。

*It was estimated that at least 2,000 people were **on the two trains**.*
*Kenny Stuart came second, knocking two minutes **off his previous best time**.*
*Unemployment has fallen **below two million for the first time since 1980**.*

☞ 许多**不及物动词** (intransitive verbs) 都需要附加状语。详见3.11节。

*Ashton had behaved **abominably**.*
*She turned and rushed **out of the room**.*

☞ 有的**及物动词** (transitive verbs) 常常需要在其宾语之后用附加状语。详见3.20节。

*I put my hand **on the door**.*

增添句子的意义
adding meaning to clauses

6.6 附加状语也能给整个句子增添意义，如附加作者或说话人对句子表达内容的看法。详见从10.56节开始的有关**句子附加状语** (sentence adjuncts) 的部分。

***Obviously** crime is going to be squeezed in a variety of ways.*
***Fortunately**, the damage had been slight.*

Ideally *the dairy should have a concrete or tiled floor.*
No doubt *she loves Gertrude too.*

附加状语也能表示两个分句连接的方式。详见从 10.73 节开始的关于**连接附加状语** (linking adjuncts) 的部分。

Manufacturers are developing engines which use less fuel and ***therefore*** *pump out less toxic gas.*

附加状语的位置
Position of adjuncts

附加状语通常的位置：句末
normal position: end of clause

6.7 附加状语在句子里的位置比较灵活，以便表示强调和焦点的多种变化。

附加状语通常置于句末，在动词词组之后，如果句子有宾语或补足语，就置于宾语或补足语之后。

She packed ***carefully****.*
They would go on talking ***for hours****.*
I enjoyed the course ***immensely****.*
These employers were famous ***for their meanness****.*

为了强调而置于句首
beginning of clause for emphasis

6.8 把附加状语置于句首或放在主语之前，就可以对这一个状语进行强调。

Gently *Fanny leaned forward and wiped the old lady's tears away.*
In his excitement *Billy had forgotten the letter.*

常常用逗号把附加状语和句子的其他部分分开。

After much discussion*, they had decided to take the coin to the jeweller.*

在叙事文里，附加状语常常置于句首，以引起读者注意。详见 10.93 节。请注意程度副词很少位于句首，见 6.45 节。

置于主语与动词之间
between subject and verb

6.9 附加状语也可置于主语与主要动词之间，这比置于句末更具强调作用，但强调强度不如置于句首。然而与介词短语相比，副词置于主语与主要动词之间更为常见。

I ***quickly*** *became aware that she was looking at me.*
We ***often*** *swam in the surf.*
He ***carefully*** *wrapped each component in several layers of foam rubber.*
They ***happily*** *tolerated the existence of opinions contrary to their own.*

注意，动词词组含助动词时，附加状语仍置于主要动词之前。

I had ***almost*** *forgotten about the trip.*
We will ***never*** *have enough money to provide all the services that people want.*
It would not ***in any case*** *be for him.*

主语与主要动词之间的附加状语比较长时，通常用逗号把它和句子其他部分分开。

Fred, ***in his own way****, was a great actor.*

地点附加状语很少置于主语与主要动词之间，详见从6.53节开始的部分。

6.10 有些附加状语常常置于主要动词之前：

绝大多数不定频度副词，见5.114节。

always	ever	normally	regularly	usually
constantly	frequently	occasionally	repeatedly	
continually	hardly ever	often	seldom	
continuously	never	rarely	sometimes	

某些不定时间副词，见5.14节。

again	finally	last	since
already	first	previously	
earlier	just	recently	

某些程度副词，见6.45节，特别是起强调作用的程度副词，见6.49节。

absolutely	completely	greatly	quite	utterly
almost	deeply	largely	rather	virtually
altogether	entirely	nearly	really	well
badly	fairly	perfectly	somewhat	

前置修饰动词的焦点副词，参见10.90节。

even	merely	really
just	only	simply

注意，有的附加状语置于主要动词之前与置于句末时意义不一样。

*The Trade Unions have acted **foolishly**.*
*Baldwin had **foolishly** opened the door.*

第一句的意义是：工会愚蠢地采取行动。第二句的意义是：开门是愚蠢的行为，而不是愚蠢地开了门。

*In some areas, like Islington in London, the drivers are paid **generously**.*
*Cram **generously** admitted afterwards that 'he's still faster than me'.*

第一句告诉我们：给司机的酬劳如何丰厚。第二句表明 Cram 作出的那种承认是气量大的行为。

⚠ **注意 Warning**

6.11 如果动词是带 'to' 的不定式，那么附加状语就置于不定式之后，如果不定式后有宾语或补足语时，附加状语置于宾语或补足语之后。

*He tried to leave **quietly**.*
*Thomas made an appointment to see him **immediately**.*

事实上，确有人把附加状语置于 'to' 与不定式动词之间，但有些操英语的人认为这是不正确的。

*'My wife told me **to probably expect** you,' he said.*
*Vauxhall are attempting **to really break** into the market.*

有关附加状语位置的次要问题 minor positional points

6.12 如果句子有两个附加状语，其中一个为副词，另一个为介词短语时，一般说来，它们的先后次序关系不大。

*Miss Burns looked **calmly at Marianne**.*
*They were sitting **happily in the car**.*
*The women shouted **at me savagely**.*
*He got **into the car quickly** and drove off.*

然而，如果介词短语较长，副词通常紧随动词之后，在介词短语之前。

*He listened **calmly** to the report of his aides.*
*She would sit **crosslegged** in her red robes.*

同样，动词词组后有较长的宾语时，副词随动词之后，在宾语之前。

*He could picture **easily** the consequences of being found by the owners.*
*She sang **beautifully** a school song the children had taught her when they were little.*

行为、地点、时间 manner, place, then time

6.13 句子有一个以上的附加状语时，附加状语的意义也会对它们的位置产生影响。通常的顺序是方式附加状语排最前、地点附加状语次之、时间附加状语排最后。

*They knelt **quietly in the shadow of the rock**.*
*I tried to reach you **at home several times**.*
*He was imprisoned **in Cairo in January 1945**.*
*Parents may complain that their child eats **badly at meals**.*
*The youngsters repeat this **in unison at the beginning of each session**.*

不过，句子有方式副词又有 'down'、'out' 或 'home' 等方向副词时，通常方向副词先于方式副词。

*Lomax drove **home fast**.*
*I reached **down slowly**.*

同类附加状语 adjuncts of the same type

6.14 不同种类的附加状语可以放在一起，有时用逗号分开，但是，同一种类的附加状语，比如有两个方式附加状语，通常用 'and'、'but' 等连词或者用 'rather than' 等结构连接起来。

☞ 有关用连词连接附加状语的讨论，详见 8.176 和 8.180 节。

*She sang **clearly** and **beautifully**.*
*They help to combat the problem **at source**, rather than **superficially**.*

附加状语后的倒装 inversion after adjuncts

6.15 当句首有附加状语时，主语与动词词组的正常次序有时被倒装。例如，在地点附加状语后，动词词组常常先于主语。

☞ 关于地点附加状语，详见从 6.53 节开始的部分。

***Next to it** stood a pile of paper cups.*
***Beyond them** lay the fields.*

主语与动词词组的倒装也用于以**广义否定副词** (broad negative adverbs)，及其他用某些**否定词** (negative words)开头的句子，详见 4.43 至 4.49 节。

***Never** in history had technology made such spectacular advances.*
***Seldom** can there have been such a happy meeting.*

以上两种倒装在叙事文里尤为常见。在其他附加状语之后也有这种倒装，不过只限于诗歌或旧式英语。下面的例句摘自 1853 年写的圣诞颂歌。

***Brightly** shone the moon that night, though the frost was cruel.*

提供有关方式的信息：副词
Giving information about manner: adverbs

副词的种类
types of adverbs

6.16 副词有以下几类：

- **时间副词** (adverbs of time)，**频度副词** (adverbs of frequency) 和**持续副词** (adverbs of duration)，如 'soon'、'often'、'always'，这些副词与时间有关，在第五章进行详细讨论。

- **地点副词** (adverbs of place)，如'around'、'downstairs'、'underneath'。关于地点的论述见从 6.28 节开始的部分。

- **方式副词** (adverbs of manner)，如 'beautifully'、'carefully'、'silently'。详见从 6.36 节开始的部分。

- **程度副词** (adverbs of degree)，如 'almost'、'badly'、'terribly'、'well'。详见从 6.45 节开始的部分。

- **连接副词** (linking adverbs)，如 'consequently'、'furthermore'、'however'。在 10.73 至 10.81 节进行详细讨论。

- **句子副词** (sentence adverbs)，如 'alas'、'apparently'、'chiefly'、'interestingly'。详见从 10.56 节开始的部分。

- **广义否定副词** (broad negative adverbs)，如 'barely'、'hardly'、'rarely'、'scarcely'、'seldom'。这类副词在 4.83 至 4.90 节进行讨论。

- **焦点副词** (focusing adverbs)，如 'especially'、'only'。这类副词从 10.87 节开始的部分讨论。

形式上和意义上与形容词相关的副词
Adverb forms and meanings related to adjectives

以 '-ly' 结尾的副词
'-ly' adverbs

6.17 许多副词与形容词有关。现将其主要关系及构成规则解释如下。

许多副词的构成是在形容词之后加 '-ly'。例如，副词 'quietly' 和 'badly' 是在形容词 'quiet' 和 'bad' 之后加 '-ly' 构成的。

这样构成的副词大多数是**方式副词** (adverbs of manner)，因此有人称方式副词为 **'-ly' 副词** ('-ly' adverbs)。

*Sit there **quietly**, and listen to this music.*
*I didn't play **badly**.*

*He reported **accurately** what they said.*
*He nodded and smiled **warmly**.*

☞ 关于形容词，详见第二章。

拼写
spelling

6.18 有些 '-ly' 副词的拼写与其相应的形容词的拼写有微小的差异，如 'nastily'、'gently'、'terribly'、'academically'、'truly'、'fully'。

☞ 关于这类副词，详见附录**参考部分** R136 至 R149 。

6.19 以 '-ly' 结尾的副词并不都是方式副词。有的是程度副词，如 'extremely'、'slightly'，参见 6.45 节列出的程度副词词表。

*I enjoyed the course **immensely**.*
*Mansell narrowed the gap **slightly**, but soon Prost was edging away again.*

有些 '-ly' 结尾的副词是时间、持续或频度副词，如 'presently'、'briefly'、'weekly'，见第五章列出的这类副词词表。

*At 10.15 a.m. soldiers **briefly** opened fire again.*
*Mr Kinnock can **presently** be seen experiencing the same sort of trouble.*

还有一些 '-ly' 结尾的副词是地点副词，如 'locally'、'internationally'；或是连接副词，如 'consequently'；或是句子副词，如 'actually'。

☞ 关于地点副词，见从6.82节开始的部分的词表；关于句子副词，见第十章词表。

*The lady replied: 'Well, you live **locally** and have never caused any bother.'*
*These efforts have received little credit **internationally**.*
*They did not preach. **Consequently**, they reached a vastly wider audience.*
*There still remains something to say. Several things, **actually**.*

副词的意义
adverb meaning

6.20 绝大部分以形容词加 '-ly' 构成的副词与相应的形容词意义相似，如 'quietly'、'beautifully' 与形容词 'quiet'、'beautiful' 意义相似。

*She is thoughtful, **quiet** and controlled.*
*'I'm going to do it', I said **quietly**.*
*His costumes are **beautiful**, a big improvement on the previous ones.*
*The girls had dressed **more beautifully** than ever, for him.*

6.21 有些以 '-ly' 结尾的副词与其相应的形容词意义不同。例如，'hardly' 的意思是 'not very much' 或 'almost not at all'，不同于形容词 'hard' 的任何一个意义。

*This has been a long **hard** day.*
*Her bedroom was so small she could **hardly** move in it.*

常见的这类副词：

barely	lately	scarcely
hardly	presently	shortly

6.22 有些以 '-ly' 结尾的副词与形容词无关，如 'accordingly'。有些与名词有关，如 'bodily'、'purposely'、'daily'、'weekly'。

☞ 关于这类词，见附录**参考部分** R143、R145、R146、R148 的词表。

6.23 以下几类形容词很少以 '-ly' 构成副词：

• 绝大部分类别形容词，如 'racist'、'eastern'、'female'、'urban'、'foreign' 以及 'available'。

☞ 关于类别形容词，见第二章的词表。

• 绝大部分颜色形容词，虽然偶尔在文学作品中可见到这类形容词加 '-ly' 构成的副词。

*His face appeared, lit **redly**.*
*He lay still, staring **blackly** up at the ceiling.*

• 某些常见的表示基本属性的属性形容词：

big	old	tall	wet
fat	small	tiny	young

• 已经有 '-ly' 词尾的形容词，如 'friendly'、'lively'、'cowardly'、'ugly'、'silly'。

• 绝大多数以 '-ed' 结尾的形容词，如 'frightened'、'surprised'。关于由这类常用形容词加 '-ly' 构成的副词，如 'excitedly'、'hurriedly'，见附录**参考部分** R143 的词表。

与形容词同形的副词
same form as adjective

6.24 有时，副词与形容词同形，意义相似，如 'News travels fast' 一句中 'fast' 为副词，'She likes fast cars' 一句中 'fast' 为形容词。

*...a **fast** rail link from London to the Channel Tunnel.*
*The driver was driving too **fast** for the conditions.*

这样的副词通常紧跟在动词或宾语之后，极少置于动词之前，例如：

alike	far	long	overseas	through
downtown	fast	next	past	
extra	inside	outside	straight	

还有相当数量的以 '-ly' 结尾的词，既是形容词又是副词，如 'daily'、'monthly'、'yearly'。它们与频度有关，在 5.120 节进行讨论。

6.25 有些后位限定词，包括 'further'、'next'、'only'、'opposite'、'same'，与相应的副词同形，但意义上没有直接联系。注意，'well' 是副词又是形容词，它作形容词通常的含义是 'not ill'，作副词通常的含义是 'with skill or success'。

*He has done **well**.*

两种形式 two forms

6.26 有时，两个副词与同一个形容词相关，一个与相应的形容词同形，另一个加 '-ly' 构成。

*He closed his eyes **tight**.*
*He closed his eyes **tightly**.*
*They also instituted a legacy which will cost this country **dear**.*
*Holes in the road are a menace which costs this country **dearly** in lost man hours every year.*
*The German manufacturer was urging me to cut out the middle man and deal with him **direct**.*
*The trend in recent years has been to deal **directly** with the supplier.*

下列是有两种形式的常见副词：

clear	deep	fine	high	thick
clearly	deeply	finely	highly	thickly
close	direct	first	last	thin
closely	directly	firstly	lastly	thinly
dear	easy	hard	late	tight
dearly	easily	hardly	lately	tightly

注意，加 '-ly' 的副词和与相应的形容词同形的副词意义常常不同。

*The river was running **high** and swiftly.*
*I thought **highly** of the idea.*

*He has worked **hard**.*
*Border could **hardly** make himself heard above the din.*

*When the snake strikes, its mouth opens **wide**.*
*Closing dates for applications vary **widely**.*

注意，有的既可作副词又可作形容词的词加 '-ly' 后，又构成新的同形的副词和形容词，如 'dead' 构成 'deadly'；'low' 构成 'lowly'。

不能构成副词的形容词
no adverb from adjective

6.27 有的形容词根本不能构成副词，包括在6.23节列出的常见的属性形容词，如 'big' 和 'old'。

下列是另一些不能构成副词的形容词：

afraid	awake	foreign	little
alive	content	good	long
alone	difficult	hurt	sorry
asleep	drunk	ill	standard

注意，与 'content'、'drunk' 相关的副词是在 'contented'、'drunken' 后加 '-ly' 构成的，所以就有了 'contentedly' 和 'drunkenly'。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

6.28 如果形容词没有相应的副词，而人们又要对事件或情景补充信息，这时可采用介词短语。

有时介词短语里包含一个与形容词相应的名词。例如，形容词 'difficult' 没有相应的副词形式，那就把名词 'difficulty' 用在介词短语 'with difficulty' 里。

*He stood up slowly and **with difficulty**.*

在其他情况下，例如形容词以 '-ly' 结尾，可在介词短语里用 'way'、'manner' 或 'fashion' 等泛义名词。

*'Fishing?' she said **in a silly way**.*
*He greeted us **in his usual friendly fashion**.*

即使有与形容词相应的副词，仍然可以用介词短语，比如需要补充信息或进一步强调时。

*She comforted the bereaved relatives **in a dignified, compassionate and personalized manner**.*
*At these extreme velocities, materials behave **in a totally different manner from normal**.*

与形容词无关的副词
adverbs not related to adjectives

6.29 有些副词与形容词无关。时间副词和地点副词尤其如此。时间副词参见第五章，地点副词参见从 6.82 节开始的部分。

*It will **soon** be Christmas.*

还有其他副词与形容词无关。

与形容词无关的常用副词，见附录**参考部分** R145 词表。

比较级和最高级副词
Comparative and superlative adverbs

6.30 要对某事在一种场合与其在另一种场合发生和完成的方式进行比较，或与过去别人或事物完成该事的方式进行比较，可用副词的比较级 (comparatives) 或最高级 (superlatives)。

*He began to speak **more quickly**.*
*Red-legged partridges are **most commonly** seen in the eastern counties of England.*

绝大多数方式副词（见 6.36 节）都有比较级和最高级。

另外有几类副词也有比较级和最高级，包括某些时间副词如 'early'、'late'，见 5.70 节；频度副词如 'often'、'frequently'，见 5.114 节；持续时间副词如 'briefly'、'permanently'、'long'，见 5.123 节；和地点副词如 'near'、'close'、'deep'、'high'、'far'、'low'，见 6.68 和 6.89 节。

6.31 在形式和用法上，副词的比较级和最高级大体与形容词相似。关于形容词的比较级和最高级，详见 2.108 至 2.117 节。

但是，与形容词不同的是副词比较级常用 'more' 而不用 '-er'，最高级用 'most' 而不用 '-est' 构成。

*The people needed business skills so that they could manage themselves **more effectively**.*
*First she might have some useful information. **More importantly**, a damaging precedent could be set.*
*...the text which Professor Williams's volume **most closely** resembles.*
*For me, Haitink is the conductor who re-writes those maps, **most often** and **most convincingly**.*

不规则形式
irregular forms

6.32 有些极为常见的副词的比较级和最高级形式都是单个的词，而不用 'more' 和 'most' 构成。注意，副词比较级若不规则，最高级也不规则。'Well' 的比较级为 'better'，最高级为 'best'。

*She would ask him later, when she knew him **better**.*
*I have to find out what I can do **best**.*

'Badly' 的比较级为 'worse'，最高级为 'worst'。

*'I don't think the crowd helped her,' Gordon admitted. 'She played **worse**.'*
*The expedition from Mozambique fared **worst**.*

注意，不论 'ill' 是副词还是形容词，它的比较级和最高级形式分别是 'worse' 及 'worst'。

6.33 与形容词同形的副词，其比较级、最高级形式也与形容词相同。如 'fast' 的 'faster'、'fastest'；'hard' 的 'harder'、'hardest'。常见的与形容词同形的副词，见 6.24 节附表。

*This would enable claims to be dealt with **faster**.*
*They worked harder, they were more **honest**.*
*The winning blow is the one that strikes **hardest**.*
*The sugar should be preserving sugar as this dissolves **fastest**.*
*The tax burden increased **fastest** for the poor and for those with children.*

6.34 有些副词的比较级有 'more' 的形式又有加 '-er' 的形式，最高级有 'most' 的形式又有加 '-est' 的形式。

*They can be built **more quickly**.*
*You probably learn **quicker** by having lessons.*
*A child cools off **quickest** if the parents fade away and go about their business.*
*The American computer firm will be relying **more heavily** on its new Scottish plant.*
*South Africa's diamonds, gold, and uranium weigh **heavier** in the balance than Guinea's bananas.*
*The burden fell **most heavily** on Kanhai.*
*Illiteracy, like other forms of educational disadvantage, weighs **heaviest** on the groups who are already disadvantaged in other ways.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

6.35 用副词比较级、最高级与用形容词比较级、最高级的结构通常是相同的：

• 比较级与 'no'、'any' 连用，见 2.168 节。

*He fared **no better** on the other road.*
*Omoro didn't want to express it **any more strongly**.*

• 最高级副词前的 'the' 可以省略，见 2.122 节。

His shoulders hurt ***the worst****.*
Old people work ***hardest****.*

• 比较级、最高级与次前置修饰语连用，见从 2.162 节开始的部分。

The situation resolved itself ***much more easily*** *than I had expected.*
There the process progresses ***even more rapidly****.*

• 比较级后 'than' 的用法，见 2.111 节。

This class continues to grow ***more rapidly than any other group****.*
Prices have been rising ***faster than incomes****.*
You might know this ***better than me****.*
They managed to keep his circulation going ***more successfully than we did****.*

• 重复使用比较级说明程度上的变化，见 2.166 节。

It continues to function ***more and more effectively****.*

方式副词
Adverbs of manner

方式副词 adverbs of manner

6.36 要想说明某事件或情景发生的方式或发生时的环境，最常见的办法就是用**方式副词** (adverbs of manner)。方式副词为某事件或行为发生的方式提供信息。

He nodded and smiled ***warmly****.*
The young man struck his father and ***accidentally*** *killed him.*

方式 manner

6.37 绝大多数方式副词用以说明做事的方式。例如，在 'He did it carefully' 一句中，'carefully' 含义为 'in a careful way'。

They think, dress and live ***differently****.*
He acted very ***clumsily****.*
You must be able to speak ***fluently*** *and* ***correctly****.*

6.38 下列是描述做事方式的常见 '-ly' 副词：

abruptly	brightly	casually	comfortably
accurately	brilliantly	cheaply	consistently
awkwardly	briskly	clearly	conveniently
badly	carefully	closely	correctly
beautifully	carelessly	clumsily	dangerously

delicately	gracefully	rapidly	superbly
differently	hastily	readily	swiftly
discreetly	heavily	richly	systematically
distinctly	honestly	rigidly	tenderly
dramatically	hurriedly	roughly	thickly
easily	intently	ruthlessly	thinly
economically	meticulously	securely	thoroughly
effectively	neatly	sensibly	thoughtfully
efficiently	nicely	sharply	tightly
evenly	oddly	silently	truthfully
explicitly	patiently	simply	uncomfortably
faintly	peacefully	smoothly	urgently
faithfully	peculiarly	softly	vaguely
fiercely	perfectly	solidly	vigorously
finely	plainly	specifically	violently
firmly	pleasantly	splendidly	vividly
fluently	politely	steadily	voluntarily
formally	poorly	steeply	warmly
frankly	professionally	stiffly	widely
freely	properly	strangely	willingly
gently	quietly	subtly	wonderfully

心情及方式
feelings and manner

6.39 由说明人们心情的形容词构成的副词既表示做事的方式又表示做事人的心情，如 'happily' 和 'nervously'。'She laughed happily' 既表示她笑得快活又表示她心情愉快。

*We laughed and chatted **happily** together.*
*Gaskell got up **wearily** and headed for the stairs.*
*They looked **anxiously** at each other.*
*Rudolph coughed **miserably** in the rain as he turned into Vanderhoff Street.*

6.40 下列副词既说明做事的方式，又说明做事人的心情：

angrily	eagerly	hopefully	sadly
anxiously	excitedly	hopelessly	shyly
bitterly	furiously	impatiently	sincerely
boldly	gladly	miserably	uncomfortably
calmly	gloomily	nervously	uneasily
cheerfully	gratefully	passionately	unhappily
confidently	happily	proudly	wearily
desperately	helplessly	reluctantly	

情况
circumstances

6.41 方式副词也可说明做事时的情况，而不说明方式。如 'He spoke to me privately' 句中的 'privately' 的含义是“在没有他人在场”这一个情况，而不是“秘密地”。

After dinner she got hold of the President and spoke to him ***privately****.*
He had ***publicly*** *called for an investigation of the entire school system.*
Britain and France ***jointly*** *suggested a plan in 1954.*
Since then I have undertaken all the enquiries ***personally****.*

6.42 下列副词用以说明行为发生时的情况：

accidentally	first-class	legally	privately
alone	full-time	logically	publicly
artificially	illegally	mechanically	regardless
automatically	independently	naturally	retail
bodily	indirectly	officially	scientifically
collectively	individually	openly	secretly
commercially	innocently	overtly	solo
deliberately	instinctively	part-time	specially
directly	involuntarily	personally	symbolically
duly	jointly	politically	wholesale

形式
forms

6.43 绝大多数方式副词出自属性形容词，如 'stupidly' 出自 'stupid'、'angrily' 出自 'angry'。

☞ 关于副词形式，见 6.17 节。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

6.44 说明行为的方式或情况时，有时可用介词短语或名词词组代替方式副词。

'Come here,' he said ***in a low voice****.*
I know I have to do it ***this way****.*

☞ 有时候因为没有相应的副词，只能用介词短语或名词词组，见 6.23 节。

程度副词
Adverbs of degree

6.45 程度副词 (adverbs of degree) 常常用来对行为的范围或动作完成的程度提供更多的信息。

I enjoyed the course ***immensely****.*
I had ***almost*** *forgotten about the trip.*
A change of one word can ***radically*** *alter the meaning of a statement.*

6.46 下列为程度副词：

absolutely	extraordinarily	partly	somewhat
adequately	extremely	perfectly	soundly
almost	fairly	poorly	strongly
altogether	fantastically	positively	sufficiently
amazingly	fully	powerfully	supremely
awfully	greatly	practically	surprisingly
badly	half	pretty	suspiciously
completely	hard	profoundly	terribly
considerably	hugely	purely	totally
dearly	immensely	quite	tremendously
deeply	incredibly	radically	truly
drastically	intensely	rather	unbelievably
dreadfully	just	really	utterly
enormously	largely	reasonably	very
entirely	moderately	remarkably	virtually
exceedingly	nearly	significantly	well
excessively	noticeably	simply	wonderfully
extensively	outright	slightly	

出自形容词
from adjectives

6.47 程度副词通常由形容词加‘-ly’构成。有的由属性形容词构成，如‘deeply’、‘hugely’、‘strongly’；有的由类别形容词构成，如‘absolutely’、‘perfectly’、‘utterly’。有几个程度副词由后位限定词构成，如‘entirely’。

☞ 形容词种类，详见第二章。

在句子里的位置
position in clause

6.48 程度副词可用在附加状语通常出现的位置上。

*I admired him **greatly**.*
*I **greatly** enjoyed working with them.*
*Protesters say that tunnels could **greatly** reduce the environmental disturbance.*

不过，很少把程度副词置于句首。例如，人们不大会说‘Greatly I admired him’这样的句子。

☞ 副词置于句首的情况，详见 10.93 节。

有几个程度副词几乎总是置于主要动词之前：

almost	largely	nearly	really	virtually

例如，通常说‘He almost got there’，而不说‘He got there almost’。

*The president of the European Commission **largely** ignored the British conditions.*
*He **really** enjoyed talking about flying.*
*The result **virtually** ensures Scotland's place in the finals.*

有几个程度副词几乎总是用在主要动词之后：

altogether	hard	somewhat	well
enormously	outright	tremendously	

*This was a different level of communication **altogether**.*
*Mr Botha exaggerated **somewhat** in comparing the incursion with Hitler's invasion of Poland.*
*Spear says she admires Lloyd's **tremendously**.*

强调副词 emphasizing adverbs

6.49 有一类程度副词称作**强调副词** (emphasizing adverbs)。这类副词出自强调形容词，见 2.40 节。

absolutely	just	positively	really	truly
completely	outright	purely	simply	utterly
entirely	perfectly	quite	totally	

注意，强调副词 'outright' 与其相应的形容词、方式副词及程度副词同形。

6.50 强调副词，如 'absolutely'、'just'、'quite' 或 'simply'，用以对动词表示的行为进行强调，强调副词通常用在动词之前。

*I **quite** agree.*
*I **absolutely** agree.*
*I **just** know I'm going to be late.*
*I **simply** adore this flat.*

在动词词组里，强调副词位于助动词或情态动词之后，主要动词之前。

*Someone had **simply** appeared.*
*I was **absolutely** amazed.*

但是，'absolutely' 也可以位于动词之后。

*I **agree absolutely** with what Geoffrey has said.*

☞ 强调副词的其他用法，见 10.85 和 10.86 节。

次前置修饰语 submodifiers

6.51 有些程度副词可用于其他副词之前，称作**次前置修饰语**(submodifiers)。这样的程度副词也可以置于形容词前作次前置修饰语。对这种用法的解释，见 2.145 至 2.173 节中次前置修饰语的附表及其含义说明。

*He prepared his speech **very** carefully.*
*He was having to work **awfully** hard.*
*Things changed **really** dramatically.*
*We get on **extremely** well with our neighbours.*
*We were able to hear everything **pretty** clearly.*
*The paper disintegrated **fairly** easily.*
*He dressed **rather** formally.*
*Every child reacts **somewhat** differently.*

注意，'moderately'、'reasonably' 主要用在不以 '-ly' 结尾的副词前。

*He works **reasonably** hard.*

有几个程度副词可用作副词比较级的次前置修饰语，参见从 2.162 节开始的部分。

*This could all be done **very much more quickly**.*
*I thanked him again, **even more profusely** than before.*
*I hope you can see **slightly more clearly** what is going on.*

注意，也可把 'still' 置于副词比较级之后。

*They're doing better in some respects now. Of course they've got to do **better still**.*

其他程度副词 other adverbs of degree

6.52 某些程度副词用法特殊。其中有 'much'，它用在否定句里、在被转述疑问句的 'how' 之后，作程度副词。

*Programs and program efficiency have not developed **much**.*
*These definitions do not help **much**.*
*They told the farmer how **much** they wanted to get the harvest in.*
*She had observed how **much** they disliked her.*

'Very much' 的用法与 'much' 相似。

*She is charming. We like her **very much**.*

比较级副词 'better'、'worse' 以及最高级副词 'best'、'worst' 也能用作程度副词。

*You know him **better** than anyone else.*
*It is the land itself which suffers **worst**.*

'More'、'less' 可用作比较级程度副词。

Her tears frightened him ***more*** *than anything that had ever happened to him before.*
The ground heats up ***less*** *there.*

'Most'、'least' 可用作最高级程度副词。

She gave me the opportunity to do what I wanted to do ***most****.*
They staged some of his ***least*** *known operas.*

比较级、最高级副词的说明，参见 6.30 节开始的部分。

名词词组 'a bit'、'a great deal'、'a little'、'a lot' 也用作程度副词。

I don't like this ***a bit****.*
The situation's changed ***a great deal*** *since then.*

提供有关地点的信息：介词
Giving information about place: prepositions

6.53 这部分说明如何表示行为发生的地点、某人某物所在的地方、某人某物走向或者来自的地点、或者某人某物运动的方向。

通常是以**介词短语** (prepositional phrases) 作**附加状语** (adjuncts) 来说明地点。关于附加状语的概述，参见 6.1 至 6.15 节。

介词短语由**介词**及其**宾语**组成，这个宾语几乎总是名词词组。

绝大多数介词的最基本功能是表示位置和方向。

He fumbled ***in his pocket****.*
On your left *is the river.*
Why did he not drive ***to Valence****?*
The voice was coming ***from my apartment****.*
I ran inside and bounded ***up the stairs****.*

6.54 介词为进一步说明事物或行为提供了可能，因为人们可以选择一个恰当的名词词组作为介词的宾语。绝大多数介词都是单个词，但有些是几个单词构成的复合词，如 'out of'、'in between'。

下列是说明地点或目的地的常见单个介词：

about	before	down	opposite	towards
above	behind	from	outside	under
across	below	in	over	underneath
along	beneath	inside	past	up
alongside	beside	into	round	within
among	between	near	through	
around	beyond	off	throughout	
at	by	on	to	

下列是复合介词，也用来说明地点或目的地：

ahead of	close by	in front of	on top of
all over	close to	near to	out of
away from	in between	next to	

6.55 许多介词同时又是副词，也就是说，它们可以不带宾语单独使用。这类副词参见 6.83 节附表。

⚠ **注意 Warning**

6.56 英语里介词为数很多，因此其中有些在意义上非常接近，如 'beside'、'by'、'near' 和 'next to'。有些又有几种不同的意义，如 'at'、'in'。为确切了解介词的含义及用法，应尽可能查阅词典如 Collins Cobuild English Dictionary 或 Collins Cobuild Learner's Dictionary。

6.57 介词有**宾语**，位于其后。

*The switch is by **the door**.*
*Look behind **you**, Willie!*

注意，人称代词作介词宾语时，一定要用宾格形式，即 'me'、'you'、'him'、'her'、'it'、'us'、'them'。

介词也能与复合名词词组连用，对地点详加说明。有关 'of' 在名词词组里的用法，参见 2.297 节。

*I stood alone **in the middle of the yard**.*
*He was sitting **towards the rear end of the room**.*
*He went **to the back of the store**.*

介词短语的位置
Position of prepositional phrases

用于表示位置的动词之后
after verbs indicating position

6.58 介词短语最常见的位置是在动词之后。它们用于表示位置的动词之后，目的在于明确某物所处的地点。

*She **lives** in Newcastle.*
*An old piano **stood** in the corner of the room.*
*You ought to **stay** out of the sun.*

下列动词常常用以表示位置：

be	lie	sit	stay
belong	live	be situated	
hang	remain	stand	

用于表示运动的动词之后
after verbs indicating movement

6.59 介词短语用在表示运动的动词之后，具体说明运动的方向。

*I **went** into the kitchen and began to make the dinner.*
*Mrs Kaul **was leading** him to his seat.*
*The others **burst** from their tents.*
*The wire was too strong and **pulled** a hook out of the floor.*
*He **took** her to Edinburgh.*

用于表示动作的动词之后
after verbs indicating activities

6.60 介词短语用在表示动作的动词之后，具体说明动作发生的地点。

*...children **playing** in the street.*
*The meeting **was being held** at a community centre in Logan Heights.*
*He **was practising** high jumps in the garden.*

6.61 介词短语一般位于句末，在动词之后，如果动词有宾语，就在动词宾语之后。

*We landed **at a small airport**.*
*We put the children's toys **in a big box**.*

位于句首：表示强调或者对照
at beginning of clause: for emphasis or contrast

6.62 如果想把焦点集中在介词短语上表示强调或对照，可将它置于句首。这种词序主要用于描述性文章或报告。

***In the garden** everything was peaceful.*
***Through the glass of the frontage** she could see a waiter bending attentively over a woman of about her own age.*

位于句首：主语与动词倒装
at beginning of clause: inversion of subject and verb

6.63 用在不及物动词的句子里，如果说明某物位置的介词短语放在句首时，常常要改动句子的正常词序，将动词置于主语之前。

On the ceiling ***hung dustpans and brushes****.*
Inside the box ***lie the group's US mining assets****.*
Beyond them ***lay the fields****.*

主要动词是 'be' 时，总是将它置于主语之前，所以像 'Under her chin a colossal brooch was' 这样的句子是不能说的。

Under her chin ***was a colossal brooch****.*
Next to it ***is a different sign*** *which says simply 'Beware'.*
Alongside him on the rostrum ***will be Mr Mitchell Fromstein****.*

表示位置
Indicating position

6.64 下列各句中的介词短语表示行为发生的地点、或某人某物所在的地方。

The children shouted, waving leafy branches ***above their heads****.*
The whole play takes place ***at a beach club****.*
Two minutes later we were safely ***inside the taxi****.*
He stood ***near the door****.*
She kept his picture ***on her bedside table****.*

表示位置的介词
prepositions indicating position

6.65 下列为用以说明具体位置的介词：

aboard	among	between	near	through
about	around	beyond	near to	under
above	astride	by	next to	underneath
across	at	close by	off	up
against	away from	close to	on	upon
ahead of	before	down	on top of	with
all over	behind	in	opposite	within
along	below	in between	out of	
alongside	beneath	in front of	outside	
amidst	beside	inside	past	

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

6.66 有的介词只能与有限的名词连用。

比如说，与 'aboard' 连用的是表示运载方式的名词，如 'ship'、'plane'、'train' 或 'bus'，或是某一只船的名称、某航班编号等等。

There's something terribly wrong ***aboard this ship****, Dr Marlowe.*
He's not ***aboard the Morning Rose****.*
...getting ***aboard that flight to Rome****.*
He climbed ***aboard a truck****.*

下列名词可与 'aboard' 连用表示位置：

aircraft carrier	coach	rocket	train
bike	ferry	ship	trawler
boat	jet	sledge	truck
bus	plane	space shuttle	yacht

'Astride' 主要用来表示某人分腿坐在或骑在某物上。

He whipped out a chair and sat ***astride it****.*
I made it there ***astride one of these courageous little donkeys****.*

用 'before' 表示位置时，其宾语常为一个人或一些人。

Leading representatives were put firmly in their place ***before a live television audience****.*
He appeared ***before a disciplinary committee****.*

'All over' 的宾语一般表示范围很大或范围不定的区域。

Hundreds of Jews ***all over the world*** *are finding their way back to their ancestral traditions.*
There were pieces of ship ***all over the place****.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

6.67 有的介词具有多重意义。例如，可以用 'on' 表示某人某物处在某一个水平面上、或依附在某物上，或者表示某人的工作地点是农场或建筑工地之类的地方。

The phone was ***on*** *the floor in the hallway.*
I lowered myself into the ravine ***on*** *a rope tied to the trunk of a tree.*
My father worked ***on*** *a farm.*

有比较级形式的介词
prepositions with comparative forms

6.68 'Near'、'near to'、'close to' 有比较级形式，但仍能用作介词。

New lockers had been installed ***nearer their workplace****.*
Venus is much ***nearer to the Sun*** *than the Earth.*
The judge's bench was ***closer to me*** *than Ruchell's chair.*

更为具体的位置 more specific position

6.69 要更确切地叙述某物究竟离另一个物体的哪个部分最近，叙述它究竟在某个区域或空间的哪个位置，可从 'at'、'by'、'in'、'near'、'on'、'round' 几个介词中选用一个。通常用来说明方向的 'to' 和 'towards' 也能表示大致的位置。

这类介词的宾语为表示物体的某个部位、表示区域的某个位置的名词，如 'top'、'bottom'、'edge' 等。下表列出的就是这类名词：

back	side	south	graveside	roadside
bottom	top	south-east	hillside	seaside
edge	~	south-west	kerbside	waterside
end	east	west	lakeside	
front	east-west	~	mountainside	
left	north	bankside	poolside	
middle	north-east	bedside	quayside	
right	north-west	dockside	ringside	

所指地点显而易见或已经交代，用表示位置的名词单数加限定词 'the'。

I ran inside and bounded up the stairs. Wendy was standing ***at the top****.*
He was sitting ***towards the rear****.*
To the north *are the main gardens.*
We found him sitting ***by the fireside****.*

其他限定词，如 'this'、'each' 可与 'side'、'end'、'edge' 等名词连用，因为物体或处所都有自己的侧面、终端或者边缘。

Loosen the two screws ***at each end*** *of the fuse.*
Standing ***on either side*** *of him were two younger men.*

如果人或物已经提及或者显而易见，就可用物主限定词。

It was a very tall elm and there were thorn bushes ***round its base****.*
There was a gate ***on our left****.*

6.70 注意，含 'of' 的双词、三词复合介词所表示的位置更加确切，因为 'of' 后可跟任何名词性词组。

She turned and rushed ***out of the room****.*
There was a man standing ***in front of me****.*
My sister started piling the books ***on top of each other****.*

确切的距离 specific distances

6.71 动作发生的地点、某人某物所处地点，也可以通过指明他们与另一件物件或地点的距离加以表示。

确切的距离可在含 'from'、'away from' 的介词短语前交代。

*Here he sat on the terrace **a few feet from the roaring traffic**.*
*The ball swerved **two feet away from her** to lodge in the net.*

用路程所需时间也能表示距离。

*It is **half an hour from the Pinewood Studios and forty-five minutes from London**.*
*They lived only **two or three days away from Juffure**.*

指出行进手段可把距离表示得更加准确。

*It is less than **an hour's drive from here**.*
*It's about **five minutes' walk from the bus stop**.*

同时表示位置和距离
indicating position and distance

6.72 要同时表示某物的位置和它与另一个物体或地点的距离，可以在下列介词之前加以交代。

above	below	down	past
along	beneath	inside	under
behind	beyond	outside	up

*The fish was meandering **a few feet above the sandy bottom**.*

也可在含 'left'、'right' 或含 'north'、'south-east' 等方位词的介词短语前交代距离。

*We lived **forty miles to the east of Ottawa**.*

表示方向
Indicating direction

6.73 下列例句里的介词短语表示人或物到何处去、向何方走。

*I'm going with her **to Australia**.*
*They dived **into the water**.*
*He saw his mother running **towards him**.*
*He screwed the lid tightly **onto the top of the jar**.*
*She stuck her knitting needles **into a ball of wool**.*

可使用的介词
prepositions used

6.74 下列介词用以表示目的地和目标：

aboard	at	inside	out of	up
all over	away from	into	round	
along	beside	near	to	
alongside	down	off	toward	

注意，有时把 'onto' 写成两个词。

The bird hopped up ***on to*** *a higher branch.*

在美式英语及英式英语的某些变体中，可不用 'of'，只用 'out' 作介词表示方向。

Sewing baskets, pots, calabashes, stools, and clothes would be hurled ***out the door****.*

☞ 介词短语 'to the left'、'to the right'，也可以根据人们不同的视点表示方向，见 6.76 节。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

6.75 选用介词有某些限制。

通常不用 'at' 表示动词的主语到何处去、向何方走，而用它表示某人在注视的东西，或者某人使某物移向的目标。

They were staring ***at a garage roof****.*
Supporters threw petals ***at his car****.*

用 'after' 表示某人某物跟随行进中的另一个人或物，或者运动方向相同，但跟随其后。

He hurried ***after his men****.*
...dragging the sacks ***after us*** *along the ground.*

根据面向判定方向
direction relative to the front

6.76 当某人某物以其面向作为参照点定向时，可用介词短语 'to the left'、'to the right' 来表示其运动的方向。

When the light changed they turned ***to the left*** *and drove away.*

多向运动
several directions

6.77 介词 'about'、'round'、'around'、'all over' 用以表示在某个地点范围内的多向运动。

I wandered ***round the orchard****.*
The old woman jumped ***around the clearing*** *in front of the children as she acted out her story.*
The Rangers began climbing ***all over the ship****.*

运动起点
starting point

6.78 介词短语可用以表示作为运动开始的地点或物体。

下列介词：'away from'、'from'、'off'、'out of' 可加以使用。

The coffee was sent up by the caterer ***from the kitchens*** *below.*
She turned and rushed ***out of the room****.*
He took his hand ***off her arm****.*

介词、副词前的 'from'
'from' before prepositions and adverbs

6.79 也可将 'from' 置于另一个介词或某些副词前，表示运动的起点。

I had taken his drinking bowl ***from beneath the kitchen table****.*
...goods imported ***from abroad****.*
Thomas had stopped bringing his lunch ***from home****.*

'From' 可置于下列副词之前：

above	below	everywhere	next door	somewhere
abroad	beneath	here	nowhere	there
anywhere	downstairs	home	outside	underneath
behind	elsewhere	inside	overseas	upstairs

介词短语作后置修饰语
Prepositional phrases as qualifiers

6.80 介词短语除了作动词的附加状语外，还可作名词的后置修饰语，提供有关地点的信息。

The muscles ***below Peter's knees*** *were beginning to ache a little.*
The chestnut trees ***in the back garden*** *were a blazing orange.*
They stood and watched the boats ***on the river****.*
...the clock ***in her bedroom****.*
...the little white fence ***round the rockery****.*
...the black shapeless masses ***to the left and right of the road****.*

6.81 介词短语可用在表示道路、路线等名词之后，指出它们的终点或方向，起到详细说明这类名词的作用。

*...**the main road from Paris to Marseilles**.*
*...**the road between the camp and the hospital**.*
*...**the road through the canyon**.*

同样，也可在表示门、入口等名词后用介词短语，指出通向何处，起到详细说明这类名词的作用。

*He opened **the door to his room**.*
*...at **the entrance to the library**.*

介词短语还可用在名词之后，说明某人某物来自何处。

*...a veterinary officer **from Singapore**.*
*...an engineer **from Hertfordshire**.*

提供有关地点的信息的其他方式
Other ways of giving information about place

副词 adverbs

6.82 除介词短语外，也可用**副词** (adverbs) 作附加状语提供有关地点的信息。副词概述见从 6.16 节开始的部分。

*No birds or animals came **near**.*
*Seagulls were circling **overhead**.*

同一个词，在许多情况下，既可用作介词又可用作副词。

*The limb was severed **below the elbow**.*
*This information is summarized **below**.*

表示位置的副词 adverbs indicating position

6.83 下列是可以表示位置的副词。注意有些副词是由几个单词构成的复合词，如 'out of doors'，参见下表：

abroad	downstream	inland	out of doors	underwater
ahead	downtown	midway	overhead	upstairs
aloft	downwind	nearby	overseas	upstream
ashore	eastward	next door	southward	uptown
away	halfway	northward	there	upwind
close to	here	offshore	underfoot	westward
downstairs	indoors	outdoors	underground	

像 'in'、'up' 这类既用作副词又用作介词的地点副词，有时被称为**副词小品词** (adverb particles) 或**状语性小品词** (adverbial particles)。下表列出的是表示位置的副词，同时也可用作介词：

aboard	below	down	off	throughout
about	beneath	in	opposite	underneath
above	beside	in between	outside	up
alongside	beyond	inside	over	
behind	close by	near	round	

6.84 本身意义清楚表明所指地点或方向的副词，能作地点或方向附加状语。

The young men hated working ***underground****.*
The engine droned on as we flew ***northward****.*

上下文表明所指地点或方向时，也可将副词用作地点或方向附加状语。比如，上文已经提及该地点，或者副词指的是说话人所在位置或正在说及的人或物的所在位置。

We went to the bottom of the field where a wagon stood half-loaded. We crawled ***underneath****, between the wheels.*
She walked ***away*** *and my mother stood in the middle of the road, watching.*
They had spent the autumn of 1855 in the Seeoni hills. And it was ***here*** *that Hilary had written a report on the events that followed the annexation.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

6.85 少数位置副词用以表示某一种情况存在的范围：

globally	locally	universally	worldwide
internationally	nationally	widely	

Everything we used was bought ***locally****.*

这类副词和其他绝大多数位置副词不一样，不能用在 'be' 后表示某物的位置。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

6.86 还有少数副词用以表示两个或两个以上的人或物相互间所处的位置，例如 'together'、'apart'、'side by side'、'abreast'。

All the villagers and visitors would sit ***together*** *round the fire.*
...a little kneeling figure revealed by two angels holding the curtains ***apart****.*

后接附加状语的位置副词
adverbs of position with a following adjunct

6.87 有些位置副词后常跟另一个位置附加状语。当 'be' 用作主要动词时，这种现象尤为普遍。

Barbara's ***down at the cottage****.*
Adam was ***halfway up the stairs****.*
Out on the quiet surface of the river*, something moved.*
She is ***up in her own bedroom****.*

带附加状语、前置修饰语或后置修饰语的位置副词
adverbs of position with adjunct, modifier, or qualifier

6.88 副词 'deep'、'far'、'high'、'low' 既表示位置又表示距离，它们之后也常跟另一个位置附加状语，或者它们由前置或后置的修饰语修饰。

Many of the eggs remain buried ***deep among the sand grains****.*
One plane, flying ***very low****, swept back and forth.*

'Deep down'、'far away'、'high up'、'low down' 常用以代替 'down'、'away'、'up' 这几个单独使用的副词。

The window was ***high up****, miles above the rocks.*
Sita scraped a shallow cavity ***low down*** *in the wall.*

'Far'、'far away' 常用 'from' 引起的介词短语加以修饰。

I was standing ***far away from the ball****.*
We lived ***far from the nearest village****.*

位置副词：比较级和最高级
adverbs of position: comparatives and superlatives

6.89 有的副词有比较级和最高级形式。其最高级形式并非用来表示位置，而是用来指明谈论的几件事件中的某一件。

比较级形式 'deeper'、'further'(或 'farther')、'higher'、'lower' 后常跟有另一个位置附加状语。

Further along the beach*, a thin trickle of smoke was climbing into the sky.*
The beans are a bit ***higher on the stalk*** *this year.*

'Nearer' 除用作介词外，又可作副词，见 6.68 节。'Closer' 只能用作副词。

The hills were ***nearer*** *now.*
Thousands of tourists stood watching or milled around trying to get ***closer****.*

不定地点副词
indefinite place adverbs

6.90 不定地点副词有以下四个：'anywhere'、'everywhere'、'nowhere'、'somewhere'。它们用以说明不确定的位置或非常笼统的位置。

I dropped my cigar ***somewhere*** *round here.*
I thought I'd seen you ***somewhere****.*
There were bicycles ***everywhere****.*
No-one can find Howard or Barbara ***anywhere****.*

'Nowhere' 使句子成为否定句。

There was ***nowhere*** *to hide.*

如果 'nowhere' 位于句首，就必须将动词的主语置于助动词或 'be'、'have' 的某一种形式之后。

***Nowhere** have I seen any serious mention of this.*
***Nowhere** are they overwhelmingly numerous.*

增加信息
adding information

6.91 为了增加信息，可将不定地点副词与以下几种结构连用。可使用：

- 地点副词

*I would like to work **somewhere abroad**.*
*We're certainly **nowhere near**.*

- 形容词

*We could go to Majorca if you want **somewhere lively**.*
*Are you going **somewhere special**?*

- 介词短语

*There were no elms **anywhere in sight**.*
*In 1917, Kollontai was the only woman in any government **anywhere in the world**.*

- 不定式小句

*We mentioned that we were looking for **somewhere to live**.*
*I wanted to have **somewhere to put it**.*

也可用于关系从句。注意关系代词通常省略。

*Unreason is alive and well and living **anywhere you care to name**.*
***Everywhere I went**, people were angry or suspicious.*

不同的或另外的地点
different or additional places

6.92 在不定地点副词后用 'else'，可表示不同的或另外的地点。

*We could hold the meeting **somewhere else**.*
*More people die in bed than **anywhere else**.*

可用 'elsewhere' 替代 'somewhere else'。

*Gwen pulled down a folding seat and strapped herself in. The other girls had found seats **elsewhere**.*
***Elsewhere** in the tropics, rainfall is notoriously variable and unreliable.*

6.93 'Everywhere'、'anywhere' 也可用作动词的主语，尤其是动词 'be' 的主语。

*Sometimes I feel that **anywhere**, just **anywhere**, would be better than this.*
*I looked around for a shop where I could buy chocolate, but **everywhere** was closed.*

目的地和方向
Destinations and directions

表示目的地和目标的副词
adverbs indicating destinations and targets

6.94 副词可用以表示目的地和目标。

*'I have expected you,' she said, inviting him **inside**.*
*No birds or animals came **near**.*

下列副词可用以表示目的地或目标：

aboard	heavenward	inside	out of doors	upstairs
abroad	home	inward	outside	uptown
ashore	homeward	inwards	overseas	
close	in	near	skyward	
downstairs	indoors	next door	there	
downtown	inland	outdoors	underground	

比较级形式 'nearer' 和 'closer' 比 'near' 和 'close' 更加常用。

*Come **nearer**.*

'Deep'、'far'、'high'、'low' 也用作副词表示目的地或目标。不过，只有这些副词跟有另一个附加状语或以另外某种方式加以修饰时，才能起到这种作用。

*The dancers sprang **high into the air** brandishing their spears.*

比较级形式 'deeper'、'further' (或 'farther')、'higher'、'lower'，最高级形式 'furthest' (或 'farthest') 也可作副词，表示目的地或目标。在这些词后不一定要跟另一个附加状语或以另外某种方式加以修饰。

*We left the waterfall and climbed **higher**.*
*People have to trek **further and further** from the villages.*

相关的方向
relative direction

6.95 副词可用以表示与谈及的人或物的具体位置相关的方向。

*Go **north** from Leicester Square up Wardour Street.*
*Don't look **down**.*
*...the part of the engine that was spinning **around**.*
*Mrs James gave a little cry and hurried **on**.*

*The wave of hot air knocked her **backwards**.*
*He turned **left** and began strolling slowly down the street.*

这类副词也能以某人某物所在地的前方为参照点，指出此人此物面对的方向。

*The seats face **forward**.*

下列副词可用来表示这种方向：

ahead	right	eastward	south-east
along	sideways	eastwards	south-west
back	~	north	round
backward	anti-clockwise	northward	up
backwards	around	northwards	upward
forward	clockwise	north-east	upwards
forwards	down	north-west	west
left	downward	south	westward
on	downwards	southward	westwards
onward	east	southwards	

多方向的运动
movement in several directions

6.96 副词 'round'、'about'、'around' 能表示某一个地点范围内的几个方向的运动。

*...monkeys noisily rushing **about**.*
*They won't want anyone else trampling **around**.*

下列状语性短语表示朝不同方向的反复运动：

back and forth	hither and thither	to and fro
backwards and forwards	in and out	up and down
from side to side	round and round	

*At other times she would pace **up and down** outside the trailer.*
*Burke was walking **back and forth** as he spoke.*
*The Princess ran **hither and thither** in the orchard.*

外移运动
movement away

6.97 下列副词能用以表示离开某人某物的运动：

aside	away	off	out	outward

*The farmer just laughed and rode **away**.*
*It took just one tug to pull them **out**.*

副词 'apart' 表示两个或更多的东西彼此分开。

*I rushed in and tried to pull the dogs **apart**.*

沿着路径的运动 movement along a path

6.98 下列副词可用以表示沿着道路、路径或线路的运动：

alongside	downhill	uphill
beside	downstream	upstream

*The water was now racing **downhill** between its narrowed stony walls.*
*It wasn't the moving that kept me warm; it was the effort of pushing Daisy **uphill**.*

穿越或经过某物的运动 movement across or past something

6.99 下列副词可用以表示穿越或经过某物的运动：

across	over	past	through
by	overhead	round	

*There's an aircraft coming **over**.*
*'Where are you going?' demanded Miss Craig as Florrie rushed **by**.*

不确定的方向 indefinite direction

6.100 要使含义笼统、模糊，可用不定地点副词表示目的地或方向。

*He went off **somewhere** for a shooting weekend.*
*Dust blew **everywhere**, swirling over dry caked mountains.*
*There was hardly **anywhere** to go.*
*Soblen could have gone **elsewhere**.*

用 'nowhere' 时，主要用其比喻意义，表示没有任何进展。

*They were getting **nowhere** and had other things to do.*

☞ 有关这类不定地点副词，详见 6.90 节。

副词作后置修饰语 adverbs as qualifiers

6.101 副词同介词短语一样，也可用在名词后作修饰语，而不是在动词之后作附加状语。

*...the man who watched him from the terrace **above**.*
*The man **opposite** rises, and lifts down her case.*
*People **everywhere** are becoming more conscious of inequality.*
*...the road **south**.*

表示地点的名词词组：地名
Noun groups referring to place: place names

6.102 若干表示位置和运动的动词之后是接表示地点的名词，而不是接附加状语。3.22 节对此进行讨论。

*Peel approached **the building**.*

6.103 也可用地名代替表示地点的名词词组。

*This great block of land became **Antarctica**.*
*...a Baltic island roughly the size of **the Isle of Man**.*
*Outstanding examples of her work are included in an exhibition at the **National Museum of Film and Photography** in **Bradford**.*

地名后的动词 verbs after place names

6.104 虽然有些地名看上去像复数名词，如 'The Netherlands'，但绝大多数地名都是单数名词。有些地名，例如那些指群岛或山脉的地名，是复数名词。与地名连用的动词遵循常用的一致规则，单数名词接单数动词，复数名词接复数动词。

*Milan **is** the most interesting city in the world.*
*The Andes **split** the country down the middle.*

指人的地名 place names referring to people

6.105 地名可用以指生活在那儿的人。当地名是单数名词时，即使表示复数概念，动词仍然用单数形式。

***Europe** was sick of war.*

国家或国家首都的名称常常用以表示该国政府。

***Britain** and **France** jointly suggested a plan.*
***Washington** had put a great deal of pressure on **Tokyo**.*

指事件的地名 place names referring to events

6.106 地名也可用来指发生在该地的著名历史事件或最近事件，如战争、灾难、国际体育比赛或重要政治会议等。

*After **Waterloo**, trade and industry surged again.*
*...the effect of **Chernobyl** on British agriculture.*

作前置修饰语的地名 place names used as modifiers

6.107 许多地名都可用作前置修饰语，除了说明修饰对象的所在地外，还能说明其来源或具备该地的特色。在用地名作前置修饰语后，某些地名前原有的定冠词 'the' 就要省略。

*...a **London** hotel.*
*...**Arctic** explorers.*
*She has a **Midlands** accent.*
*...the **New Zealand** rugby team.*

注意，洲名及许多国名不能用作前置修饰语，而要用与这些名字相应的类别形容词，如 ‘African’、‘Italian’。

介词短语的其他用途
Other uses of prepositional phrases

6.108 介词常常用来表示除了地点以外的内容，如表示时间、手段或属性。6.109 至 6.116 节将简要说明介词的其他用途，同时为较充分的解释提供相互参照。下列介词只用来或主要用来表示地点以外的内容：

after	during	like	until
as	except	of	
despite	for	since	

表示时间 referring to time

6.109 尽管介词短语主要用来说明位置或方向，但也可用来表示时间。

*The women's lacrosse tournament is at Motspur Park **on Saturday**.*
*They are expecting to announce the sale **within the next few days**.*

☞ 介词短语说明时间的用法在 5.99 及 5.102 至 5.107 节里讨论。

表示方式 referring to manner

6.110 介词短语也用来对进行某个动作已采用的方式或应采用的方式进行附加说明。

*'Oh yes,' Etta sneered **in an offensive way**.*
*A bird can change direction **by dipping one wing and lifting the other**.*
*He brushed back his hair **with his hand**.*

‘On foot’、‘by bus’ 等介词短语可用以说明旅行的方式。

*My husband got fined in Germany for crossing a road **on foot**.*
*I travelled home **by bus**.*

副词说明方式的用法在从 6.36 节开始的部分讨论。

6.111 介词短语也可用来说明动作执行者的情绪。

*Fanny saw **with amazement** that the letter was addressed to herself.*

用以比较的 'like'、'as'
'like' and 'as' in comparison

6.112 'Like' 可用来表示某人、某物与另一个人、另一件物件的行为方式相似。

*He was panting **like a bloodhound**.*
*She shuffled **like an old lady**.*

有关比较的概述，详见从 2.108 节开始的部分。

6.113 'Like'、'as' 可用来说明对待某人某物的方式与对待另一个人另一件物件的方式相似。在 'like'、'as' 后的名词叙述承受动作的人或物，而不是执行动作的人或物。

*My parents dressed me **like a little doll**.*
*Their parents continue to treat them **as children**.*
*She treated her **more like a daughter than a companion**.*

'Like this'、'like that' 等短语可用以表示进行某一个动作的特有方式。

*If you're going to behave **like this**, the best thing you can do is to go back to bed.*
*How dare you speak to me **like that**?*

从句中 'like'、'as' 的用法在 8.78 至 8.80 节里讨论。

6.114 'As' 后跟副词，后再接 'as'，可说明做某事的一种方式与做某事的另一种方式具有的相同性质。第二个 'as' 后用名词词组、代词、附加状语或从句。

*The company has not grown **as quickly as many of its rivals**.*
*She wanted someone to talk to **as badly as I did**.*

行为的情况
circumstances of an action

6.115 介词短语可用来说明伴随动作的情况。

*'No,' she said **with a defiant look**.*
*...struggling to establish democracy **under adverse conditions**.*

理由、原因或意图
reason, cause or purpose

6.116 介词短语也可用来说明执行某种动作的理由、原因或意图。

*In 1923, the Prime Minister resigned **because of ill health**.*
*He was dying **of pneumonia** .*

'As' 可用来表示某事的作用或目的。

*He worked **as a truck driver**.*
*During the war they used the theatre **as a warehouse**.*

与动词连用的介词
Prepositions used with verbs

在短语动词中
in phrasal verbs

6.117 有些动词后总是伴随介词短语，并具有特别的含义。这种动词称为短语动词，有关这类动词，参见 3.84 至 3.117 节。

*She **sailed through** her exams.*
*What are you **getting at**?*

可带可不带介词短语的动词
verbs with optional prepositional phrases

6.118 有的动词后可用介词短语替代直接宾语。有关这类动词，见 3.11 节。

The Polish Army fought the Germans for nearly five weeks.
*She was fighting **against history**.*
We climbed the mountain.
*I climbed **up the tree**.*

双及物动词的间接宾语
indirect objects of ditransitive verbs

6.119 间接宾语在直接宾语之后时，介词短语可用作双及物动词 (ditransitive verbs) 的间接宾语。

☞ 有关双及物动词，参见 3.74 至 3.83 节。

当动词表示的动作需要使某物从一个人、一件物件转移给另一个人、另一件物件时，就需用介词 'to'。

*Woodward finished the second page and passed it **to the editor**.*
*The recovered animals will be given **to zoos**.*

当动词表示的动作需要某人为他人做某事时，就需用介词 'for'。

*She left a note **for her** on the table.*

与相互动词连用
with reciprocal verbs

6.120 当句子里有另一个名词词组时，在某些相互动词后 (reciprocal verbs) 就需要用介词短语。有关相互动词，见 3.69 至 3.73 节。

*Our return coincided **with the arrival of bad weather**.*
*Catholic youths clashed **with police** in Belfast.*

与被动形式动词连用
with passive verbs

6.121 介词短语可用在被动形式 (passive) 的动词之后。

90 men found themselves cut off ***by storms****.*
Moisture must be drawn out first ***with salt****.*

☞ 介词短语在被动形式动词后的用法，将在 10.14 至 10.16 节里讨论。

动词后的介词短语和副词的位置
position of prepositional phrases and adverbs after verbs

6.122 动词后有介词短语和副词时，较长的介词短语通常位于副词之后。

He listened calmly ***to the report of his aides****.*

较短的介词短语可放在副词之前或之后。

The women shouted ***at me*** *savagely.*
Miss Burns looked calmly ***at Marianne****.*

名词及形容词后的介词短语
Prepositional phrases after nouns and adjectives

6.123 有时用介词短语作后置修饰语，修饰句子的主语或宾语，而不说明动作的方式或情景。详见从 2.292 节开始的部分。

...a girl ***in a dark grey dress****.*
...a man ***with a quick temper****.*

名词及形容词后的特定介词
particular prepositions after nouns and adjectives

6.124 为补充信息，在某些名词及形容词之后用特定的介词。参见 2.49 至 2.54 节及 2.304 至 2.307 节。

My respect ***for her*** *is absolutely enormous.*
We welcome the Government's emphasis ***on voluntary codes of practice****.*
...the solicitor responsible ***for pursuing the claim****.*

用 'than'、'like' 进行比较
comparisons with 'than' and 'like'

6.125 含 'than' 的介词短语常常表示作为比较依据的人或物。

He was smarter ***than you****.*
She was more refined ***than her husband****.*

关于**比较** (comparisons)，详见从 2.108 节开始的部分。

介词 'like' 用来说明某人、某物与另一个人、另一件物件相似，并不就具体性质加以比较。

The British forces are ***like permanent tourists****.*
We need many more people ***like these****.*

'of' **6.126** 'Of' 可用在任何名词后的介词短语里，表示两个名词词组间的各种关系，尤其是所属，拥有及联系的关系，也可用以说明某物是什么、包含什么和由什么制成或数量有多少。

*He was a member **of the golf club**.*
*She's a friend **of Stephen's**.*
*...the Mayor **of Moscow**.*

介词的延伸意义
Extended meanings of prepositions

6.127 用介词短语作时间及方式附加状语，实际上是把介词的意义加以延伸，或者说，用介词的比喻意义。许多介词都有延伸意义，即比喻意义。这种用法是比喻法的一个部分，它对语言的其他许多方面也有影响。例如，说“在时间上向某一点接近”、说“短暂的一段时间”等时，其实就是在用表示空间的词来谈时间。

但是，有时延伸意义只适用于少数介词，或者，有时只适用于个别介词。

例如，介词 'in' 的基本意义是表示容器内的位置。

*The baby was found **in a carrier bag**.*
*It will end up **in the dustbin**.*

不过，'in' 也经常用来表示范围内的位置而不表示容器内的位置。

*Emma sat **in an armchair** with her legs crossed.*
*Then we were told what had happened **in Sheffield**.*

'In' 也用来表示相对位置。

*We had to do something **in the centre** of the town to attract visitors.*

但是，'in' 的使用有时在意义上可远离它表示的有形位置。例如，能用它说明某人处于某一种情景、群体或活动之中。

*They were **in no danger**.*
*The child was **in trouble** with the police.*
*I remember when the Colonels were **in power** in Greece.*
*Mr Emile Gumbs has remained **in office** but the island has no Parliament.*

它可较抽象地表示包容。

*Some of her early Hollywood experiences were used **in her 1923 film**, Mary of the Movies.*
***In any book**, you have a moral purpose.*

它也可表示某物已经达到某个阶段，或以某种特定方式出现。

The first primroses are ***in flower****.*
Her hair was ***in pigtails*** *over either shoulder.*

另外几个基本意义与容器相关的介词也有类似用法，如 'within'、'into' 和 'out of'。

The US ought to do everything ***within reason*** *to encourage General Noriega to leave.*
Those men, when we get them ***into the police force****, are going to be real heroes.*
Heroines considered attractive by earlier generations now seem hopelessly ***out of touch****.*

第七章　转述他人的言谈或思想

7 转述他人的言谈或思想
Reporting what people say or think

概述
Introduction

7.1 这一章就转述他人的言谈或思想的不同方法进行说明。

7.2 转述他人说过的话，方法之一是重述原话。

'I don't know much about music,' Judy said.

这样的句子称为**直引结构** (quote structures) 。转述人也可以说，'Judy said that she didn't know much about music' ，而不必重复 Judy 的原话。这样的句子叫做**间引结构** (report structures)。

直引结构和间引结构都由两个分句组成。主要分句叫**转述分句** (reporting clauses)，另一分句表示某人说的话或想法。直引结构的另一个分句叫**引语** (quotes)。

*'**Have you met him**?' I asked.*
*'**Of course we can get married**,' said Gertrude.*

间引结构的另一个分句叫**被转述分句** (reported clauses)。

*He mentioned **that he couldn't stand shouting**.*
*He asked **if you would be able to call and see him**.*
*He promised **to give me the money**.*

注意，被转述分句可能是一个以 'to'- 不定式引出的非限定小句。

7.3 在平常的对话中，间引结构比直引结构用得多。这是因为我们常常不知道或记不住某人的原话。直引结构主要用于叙事文。

转述某人的想法时，我们几乎都用间引结构，因为思想通常不以词语形式存在，难于确切地转述。间引结构可用来转述几乎任何一种想法。

7.4 以下各节讨论的内容：7.5 至 7.13 节：转述分句中的动词；7.14 至 7.23 节：直引结构；7.24 至 7.67 节：间引结构；7.68 至 7.77 节：如何指称直引结构和间引结构中的说话人和受话人；7.78 至 7.81 节：说明表示某人说的话、谈论的事的其他方法；7.82 至 7.94 节：使用被转述从句的其他方法。

表示转述：转述动词
Indicating that you are reporting: reporting verbs

7.5 用转述动词可表示直接引述或间接转述某人说过的话或表示过的想法。每个转述分句均含有一个转述动词。

*'I don't see what you are getting at,' Jeremy **said**.*
*He looked old, Harold **thought**, and sick.*
*They **were complaining** that Canton was hot and noisy.*

基本转述动词
basic reporting verbs

7.6 转述某人原话，但不想对转述内容附加信息时，用动词 'say'。

*She **said** that she didn't want to know.*

转述疑问句时，用动词 'ask'。

*'How's it all going?' Derek **asked**.*

表明说话目的
showing the purpose of speaking

7.7 'Answer'、'complain'、'explain' 等转述动词表明说话的目的。例如，'answer' 表明说话的目的是回答问题，'complain' 表明说话的目的是投诉。

*He **answered** that the price would be three pounds.*
*'He never told me, sir,' Watson **complained**.*
*'I have not forgotten, monsieur,' **replied** the Belgian quietly.*
*I **suggested** that it was time to leave.*

☞ 转述结构里用的某些转述动词表示说话的方式，见 7.17 节。

下表列出的转述动词可用以转述人们说的话：

acknowledge	chorus	describe	maintain	proclaim
add	claim	discuss	mention	promise
admit	command	direct	mumble	prophesy
advise	comment	dispute	murmur	propose
agree	complain	enquire	muse	reassure
allege	concede	explain	mutter	recall
announce	confess	forbid	note	recite
answer	confirm	grumble	notify	recommend
argue	contend	guarantee	object	record
ask	continue	hint	observe	refuse
assert	convince	imply	order	remark
assure	cry	inform	persuade	remind
beg	declare	inquire	plead	repeat
begin	decree	insist	pledge	reply
boast	demand	instruct	pray	report
call	deny	invite	predict	request

respond	scream	storm	threaten	warn
reveal	shout	suggest	thunder	whisper
rule	shriek	swear	urge	write
be rumoured	state	teach	vow	yell
say	stipulate	tell	wail	

⚠ **注意 Warning**

7.8 请留意 'address'、'converse'、'lecture'、'speak' 和 'talk' 等动词，虽然含"说话"的意思，却不能用作转述动词。

与思维和认知有关的动词
verbs of thinking and knowing

7.9 许多转述动词可用以表示人的思想，而不指人所说的话。转述动词可用以指各种不同的思想，包括信仰、意愿、希望、意图和决心，还能用来指记忆和忘却。

*We both **knew** that the town was cut off.*
*'I'll go to him in a minute,' she **thought**.*
*I **had** always **believed** that one day I would see him again.*

下列转述动词可用以转述人们的思想：

accept	expect	intend	prefer	think
agree	fear	judge	propose	understand
assume	feel	know	reason	vow
believe	figure	long	recall	want
consider	foresee	mean	reckon	wish
decide	forget	muse	reflect	wonder
determine	guess	note	regret	worry
doubt	hold	plan	remember	
dream	hope	ponder	resolve	
estimate	imagine	pray	suppose	

与了解和感知有关的动词
verbs of learning and perceiving

7.10 第三类转述动词指对事实情况的了解和感知。

*I have since **learned** that the writer of the letter is now dead.*
*Then she **saw** that he was sleeping.*

下列是表示了解和感知事实的转述动词：

conclude	gather	note	read
discover	hear	notice	realize
elicit	infer	observe	see
find	learn	perceive	sense

7.11 上表中有些动词，如 'tell' 和 'promise'，必须或可以接宾语，表示受话的人是谁。见 7.71 和 7.72 节。

注意有的动词在几个词表里出现，这是因为它们的意义不止一个。

表示说话的方式
indicating the way that something is said

7.12 使用直引结构或间引结构时，在转述动词后加上副词或介词短语，就可以说明说话的方式。

*'I've got the key!' he announced **triumphantly**.*
*His secretary explained **patiently** that this was the only time he could spare from his busy schedule.*
*He replied **with disgust**, 'Most of them were too young.'*

用介词短语可表示引语是如何纳入会话的。

*'They moved her to Rose Cottage,' Emily shouted **in explanation**.*

转述句中的否定词
negatives in reporting clauses

7.13 少量转述动词用在转述句中时，常常把否定词放在转述分句里，而不放在被转述从句里。'I don't think Mary is at home' 与 'I think Mary is not at home' 同义，'She doesn't want to see him' 与 'She wants not to see him' 同义。

*I **do not think** she suspects me.*
*She **didn't believe** she would ever see him again.*
*He **didn't want** to go.*
*We **don't intend** to put him on trial.*

下列转述动词常常与否定词连用：

believe	imagine	propose	think
expect	intend	reckon	want
feel	plan	suppose	wish

转述某人的原话：直引结构
Reporting someone's actual words: quote structures

7.14 要原原本本转述某人的话时，可使用直引结构。即使不知道或记不住原话，也可以用直引结构。使用直引结构转述他人说过的话，就好像是在借用他人的话。

直引结构有时称作**直接引语** (direct speech)。直引结构含两个分句，其中之一为**转述分句** (reporting clauses)，含转述动词。

*'I knew I'd seen you,' I **said**.*
*'Only one,' **replied the Englishman**.*

另一分句叫**引语** (quotes)。引语的内容是某人说的话或说过的话。

*'**Let's go and have a look at the swimming-pool**,' she suggested.*
*'**Leave me alone**,' I snarled.*

凡是人们说过的话都可以引述——陈述、提问、命令、建议及感叹都可引述。书写时，在引语的首尾用单引号(' ')或双引号(" ")。

'Thank you,' I said.
After a long silence he asked:'What is your name?'

注意，叙事文中，引谁的话已经明确或者说话人不想说明引语是什么样的话句时，转述分句可以省略。

'When do you leave?' – 'I should be gone now.' – 'Well, good-bye, Hamo.'

7.15 思维有时表现为自言自语。因此，在直引结构中可用某些表示思考的动词作为转述动词。

I must go and see Lynn, Marsha thought.

用直引结构转述某人的想法时，常常省略引语首尾的引号。

How much should he tell her? Not much, he decided.
Perhaps that's no accident, he reasoned.
Was Cynthia, he wondered, beginning to yield at last?

7.16 下列转述动词常常与直引结构连用：

add	begin	demand	proclaim	state
admit	boast	explain	promise	suggest
advise	claim	grumble	read	tell
agree	command	inquire	reason	think
announce	comment	insist	recite	urge
answer	complain	muse	reflect	vow
argue	conclude	observe	remark	warn
ask	confess	order	reply	wonder
assert	continue	plead	report	write
assure	decide	ponder	respond	
bed	declare	pray	say	

☞ 表中有几个动词必须或可以与表示受话人的宾语连用，见7.71至7.72节。

描述说话方式的动词
verbs which describe the manner of speaking

7.17 要想表示说话方式，可用 'shout'、'wail' 或 'scream' 等转述动词。这类动词通常只出现在叙事文里。

*'Jump!' **shouted** the oldest woman.*
*'Oh, poor little thing,' she **wailed**.*
*'Get out of there,' I **screamed**.*

下列动词表示说话的方式：

call	mumble	scream	storm	whisper
chorus	murmur	shout	thunder	yell
cry	mutter	shriek	wail	

产出性特征
productive feature

7.18 表示说话方式还可以使用描绘某种动物发声的动词。

*'Sorry to be late,' he **barked**.*

也可用 'smile'、'grin' 或 'frown'，这类动词表示说话人讲话时的面部表情。

*'I'm awfully sorry.' – 'Not at all,' I **smiled**.*
*'Hardly worth turning up for,' he **grinned**.*

为了获得某种特殊效果，尤其在书面语里，就把 'bark' 和 'smile' 这样的动词用在直引结构里。这是英语的**产出性特征**。关于**产出性特征**详见本书的**前言**。

转述动词的位置
position of reporting verb

7.19 转述分句对引语而言，可有几种不同的位置。转述分句通常位于引语之后，但也能置于引语之前或引语中间。

'You have to keep trying, Mabel,' he said.
He stepped back and said, 'Now look at that.'
'You see,' he said,'my father was a clergyman.'

7.20 如果转述分句在引语中间，则必须置于下列位置：

- 名词词组之后

'That man,' I said, 'never opened a window in his life.'

- 呼语之后

'Darling,' Max said to her, 'don't say it's not possible.'

- 句子副词之后

'Maybe,' he said hesitantly, 'maybe there is a beast.'

• 如果引语有不止一个分句，在一个分句之后。

'I rang the bell,' Rudolph said, 'and your friend let me in.'

7.21 绝大多数转述动词能置于引语之前。

She replied, 'My first thought was to protect him.'
One student commented:'He seems to know his material very well.'

然而，'agree'、'command'、'promise'和'wonder'等转述动词几乎从不用于引语之前。

主语与转述动词的倒置
inversion of subject and reporting verb

7.22 转述动词位于引语之后时，常常将主语置于转述动词之后。

'Perhaps he isn't a bad sort of chap after all,' ***remarked Dave****.*
'I see,' ***said John****.*
'I am aware of that,' ***replied the Englishman****.*

注意，主语是代词时，就不能这样倒置。

引语的标点符号
punctuation of quotes

7.23 以下几个例句表明如何给引语加标点。既能用单引号（' '）也能用双引号（" "），置于引语前的叫开端引号，置于引语之末的叫作终端引号。

'Let's go,' I whispered.
"We have to go home," she told him.
Mona's mother answered: 'Oh yes, she's in.'
He smiled and asked, 'Are you her grandson?'
'Margaret,' I said to her, 'I'm so glad you came.'
'What are you doing?' Sarah asked.
'Of course it's awful!' shouted Clarissa.
'What do they mean,' she demanded,'by a "population problem"?'

如果引语长度超过一个段落，那每个段落开头都要用开端引号，但终端引号只用在最后一段的末尾。

用转述人的话转述：间引结构
Reporting in your own words: report structures

7.24 用转述人的话而不引用原话转述时，采用**间引结构** (report structures)。

The woman said she had seen nothing.
I replied that I had not read it yet..

转述他人想法时，通常用间引结构。

He thought she was worried.

间引结构有时称为**间接引语** (indirect speech)。间引结构由两个部分组成，其中一个部分为**转述分句** (reporting clauses)，含转述动词。

I told him *that nothing was going to happen to me.*
I have agreed *that he should do it.*
I wanted *to be alone.*

另一个部分为**被转述从句** (reported clauses)。

I could have answered ***that my mind was open****.*
He felt ***that he had to do something****.*
He wondered ***where they could have come from****.*

为了表明转述人在转述而不是径自发表议论，转述分句常常置于句首。

Henry said *that he wanted to go home.*

Henry 的原话不大可能就是 'I want to go home'。他很可能说过 'I think I should be going now' 这样的话。因此，转述出的更可能是他的意思，而不是他的原话。

不引用某人的原话的理由很多。通常是记不住原话，或者原话并不重要，或者原话在那个说话场合不适宜于转述。

被转述从句的种类
types of reported clause

7.25 被转述从句 (reported clauses) 有好几种。采用何种取决于被转述的是陈述、提问、命令还是建议。

绝大多数被转述从句不是 'that'- 从句就是以 'to'- 不定式引出。被转述的为问句时，从句以 'if'、'whether' 或 'wh'- 词引出。'That'- 从句作被转述从句的用法见 7.26 至 7.28 节。被转述问句在 7.29 至 7.35 节讨论。'To'- 不定式小句在间引结构中的用法在 7.36 至 7.45 节讨论。

转述陈述和想法
Reporting statements and thoughts

7.26 若要转述某人的陈述或想法，可以用连词 'that' 引出的被转述从句。

He said ***that the police had directed him to the wrong room****.*
He wrote me a letter saying ***that he understood what I was doing****.*
Mrs Kaul announced ***that the lecture would now begin****.*

连词 'that' 在非正式的讲话和非正式的笔语中通常省略。

*They said **I had to see a doctor first**.*
*She says **she wants to see you this afternoon**.*
*He knew **the attempt was hopeless**.*
*I think **there's something wrong**.*

以上各句里，省略的 'that' 也可以加上。例如，可以说 'They said I had to see a doctor first'，也可以说 'They said that I had to see a doctor first'。

使用只表示说话或思考行为的转述动词时，常常省略 'that'。使用像 'complain' 或 'explain' 这样的动词，因其提供的信息较丰富，常常要求在其后面用连词 'that'。

*His brother **complained that** the office was not businesslike.*
*I **explained that** she would have to stay in bed.*

虽然这类被转述从句常常不用 'that'，但仍被称做 'that'-从句。

☞ 注意，有的关系从句也由 'that' 引出。关系从句中的 'that' 是关系代词，不是连词。关系从句见 8.83 至 8.116 节。

与 'that'-从句连用的动词
verbs used with 'that'-clauses

7.27 下表列出的动词常常用作转述动词，与 'that'-从句连用：

accept	contend	guess	pledge	say
acknowledge	convince	hear	pray	see
add	decide	hold	predict	sense
admit	deny	hope	promise	state
agree	determine	imagine	prophesy	suggest
allege	discover	imply	read	suppose
announce	dispute	inform	realize	swear
answer	doubt	insist	reason	teach
argue	dream	judge	reassure	tell
assert	elicit	know	recall	think
assume	estimate	learn	reckon	threaten
assure	expect	maintain	record	understand
believe	explain	mean	reflect	vow
boast	fear	mention	remark	warn
claim	feel	note	remember	wish
comment	figure	notice	repeat	worry
complain	find	notify	reply	write
concede	foresee	object	report	
conclude	forget	observe	resolve	
confirm	gather	perceive	reveal	
consider	guarantee	persuade	be rumoured	

注意，上表有些动词用于某些意义时才能作转述动词。例如，说 'He accepted a present' 时，'accept' 用作普通的及物动词。

上表有些动词可以或必须与表示受话人的宾语连用，见 7.71 至 7.72 节。

上表的某些动词，如 'decide' 和 'promise' 也能与 'to'- 不定式小句连用，见 7.36 至 7.42 节。

上表列出的另外一些动词，如 'advise'、'order' 只有在 'that'- 从句里含有情态动词或表示虚拟语气时，才能用作转述动词，与 'that'- 从句连用。这类 'that'- 从句在 7.40 节讨论。

被转述从句的位置
position of reported clauses

7.28 转述分句通常置于 'that'- 从句前，以表明说话人在转述别人的话，而不是径自在说话。

I said that I would rather work in the forest.
Georgina said she was going to bed.

但是，如果想强调被转述部分，次序可以更改，先说被转述部分，再用逗号，不用 'that' 引出从句。

All these things were trivial, he said.
She was worried, he thought.

如被转述从句较长，那就将转述分句置于间引结构中间。

Ten years ago, Moumoni explained, some government people had come to inspect the village.

转述问句
Reporting questions

7.29 除了转述某人所说所想外，也可转述他人提出或感到困惑的问题。间引结构中的问句有时被称为**被转述问句** (reported questions) 或**间接问句** (indirect questions)。

转述动词
the reporting verb

7.30 转述问句中最常用的转述动词是 'ask'。比较正式的转述问句可以用 'enquire' 或 'inquire'。

*I **asked** if I could stay with them.*
*He **asked** me where I was going.*
*She **inquired** how Ibrahim was getting on.*

⚠ 注意 warning

7.31 转述问句时：

• 不视其为问句、不用问句词序。

• 不用问号。

因此 'Did you enjoy it?' 这一种问句也可以转述为 'I asked her if she had enjoyed it'。

疑问句在 4.10 至 4.30 节里进行解释。

'yes'/'no' 问句
'yes/no' questions

7.32 疑问句有两大类，因而就有两大类转述问句的间引结构。

一类疑问句叫是非疑问句。这类疑问句只用 'yes' 或 'no' 回答。

转述是非疑问句时，用连词 'if' 引出 'if'- 从句或者用连词 'whether' 引出 'whether'- 从句。说话人的提问若含有一种真实的可能性时，则用 'if'。'Do you know my name?' 可转述为 'A woman asked if I knew her name'。

She asked him ***if his parents spoke French****.*
Someone asked me ***if the work was going well****.*
He inquired ***if her hair had always been that colour****.*

说话人的提问含有一种可能，但又不排除其他可能性时，则用 'whether'。在 'whether' 之后可以提出另一种可能性，也可以不提。

I was asked ***whether I wanted to stay at a hotel or at his home****.*
She asked ***whether the servants were still there****.*
I asked Professor Fred Bailey ***whether he agreed****.*
A policeman asked me ***whether he could be of help****.*

有时，这另一种可能性由 'or not' 体现。

The barman didn't ask ***whether or not*** *they were over eighteen.*
They asked ***whether*** *Britain was* ***or*** *was* ***not*** *a Christian country.*

☞ 有关 'yes/no' 问句，详见 4.12 至 4.16 节。

7.33 有些动词，因其所指的是对事实不能肯定或者对事物尚待了解，所以用于 'if'- 从句之前，或者用于 'whether'- 从句之前。

I didn't know ***whether to believe him or not****.*
Simon wondered ***if he should make conversation****.*
She didn't say ***whether he was still alive****.*

下列动词既能用在 'if'- 从句前，又能用在 'whether'- 从句前：

discover	remember	see
know	say	wonder

注意，'know'、'remember'、'say' 和 'see' 通常用在否定或疑问转述分句、或有情态动词的转述分句里。

除 'wonder' 一词外，上表列出的所有动词也可与 'that'- 从句连用，见 7.27 节。它们也可与 'wh'- 引出的从句连用，见 7.35 节。

'wh' - 问句
'wh' - questions

7.34 另一大类疑问句叫 'wh'- 疑问句。这类问句都表示某人询问某一件事件或某种情况。不能用 'yes' 或 'no' 回答 'wh'- 疑问句。

转述 'wh'- 疑问句时，用 'wh'- 词引出被转述从句。

He asked ***where I was going****.*
She enquired ***why I was so late****.*
She leaned over the stairs and called down to ask ***what had happened****.*
I asked ***how they liked the film****.*
It never occurred to me to ask ***who put it there****.*

问句的详细内容在上下文里已明白时，常可把问句其余部分省去，只留下 'wh'- 词。这主要用在口语里，尤其是用 'why' 时。

I asked ***why****.*
They enquired ***how****.*

关于 'wh'- 疑问句，详见 4.17 至 4.30 节。

7.35 有些动词，因为表示对事件、境况某方面的认识、了解或叙述，所以可用在 'wh'- 词引出的从句前。

She doesn't know ***what we were talking about****.*
They couldn't see ***how they would manage without her****.*
I wonder ***what's happened****.*

下表列出的动词能用在 'wh'- 词引出的从句前：

decide	forget	realize	suggest	wonder
described	guess	remember	teach	
discover	imagine	reveal	tell	
discuss	know	say	think	
explain	learn	see	understand	

注意，'imagine'、'say'、'see'、'suggest' 和 'think' 通常用在否定或疑问转述分句、或有情态动词的转述分句里。

除 'describe'、'discuss' 和 'wonder' 外，上表列出的动词都可与 'that'- 从句连用，见 7.27 节。

转述命令、请求、劝告及意图
Reporting orders, requests, advice, and intentions

转述对受话人提出的请求
reporting requests made to the hearer

7.36 某人命令、请求或劝告他人做某事时，可在 'tell' 等转述动词后加 'to'- 不定式小句进行转述。受话人即动作的执行者，成了转述动词的宾语。

Johnson told her to wake him up.
He commanded me to stay there.
He ordered me to fetch the books.
My doctor advised me to see a neurologist.

这是级阶结构 (phase structures) 的一种类型，见 3.203 和 3.207 节。

下表列出的转述动词可用人作为宾语，后接 'to'- 不定式小句：

advise	command	invite	remind	urge
ask	forbid	order	teach	warn
beg	instruct	persuade	tell	

7.37 当介词短语里提到受话人时，有些动词可与 'to'- 不定式小句连用，表示请求。

An officer shouted ***to us*** *to stop all the noise.*
I pleaded ***with him*** *to tell me.*

这类动词及与其连用的介词列表如下：

appeal to	shout at	whisper to
plead with	shout to	yell at

7.38 日常对话里，请求常以问句形式出现。例如：可用 'Will you help me?' 来替代 'Help me'。同样，转述的请求往往看上去像被转述问句。

People ask me if I can lend them fifty dollars.

转述类似这样的请求，可以把接受请求和提出请求的人都说出来。

He *asked* ***me*** *whether I would help him.*

或者，也可以只说提出请求的人。

He *asked if I would answer some questions.*

7.39 转述某人请求做某事，可在 'ask' 或 'demand' 之后接 'to'- 不定式小句。

I asked to see the manager.

转述建议
reporting suggestions

7.40 当某人建议他人而不是受话人做某事时，用 'that'- 从句转述。从句常常含有情态动词，通常是 'should'。

He proposes ***that the Government should hold an inquiry****.*
It was definite enough for a doctor to advise ***that she should have treatment****.*

注意，这种结构也能用来转述向受话人提出的建议，例如 'Her father had suggested that she ought to see a doctor'。她的父亲可能是直接向她提出这个建议。

如果不用情态动词，句子语气显得更加正式。

Someone suggested ***that they break into small groups****.*

注意，不用情态动词时，被转述从句中的动词形式与有情态动词时的形式一样，即用原形动词，有人称这种原形为虚拟语气。

It was his doctor who advised that he ***change*** *his job.*
I suggested that he ***bring*** *them all up to the house.*
He urges that the restrictions ***be lifted****.*

下表列出的转述动词后能跟含有情态动词或虚拟语气动词的 'that'- 从句：

advise	decree	order	recommend	urge
agree	demand	plead	request	
ask	direct	pray	rule	
beg	insist	prefer	stipulate	
command	intend	propose	suggest	

注意，动词 'advise'、'ask'、'beg'、'command'、'order' 和 'urge' 也能与宾语加 'to'- 不定式连用；'agree'、'pray'、'suggest' 也能与不含情态动词的 'that'- 从句连用。

7.41 某人建议他人做某事，或自己同别人做某事时，用 'suggest'、'advise'、'propose' 和 'recommend' 中任何一个转述动词，再加上以现在分词引出的非限定小句，就能实现对这种建议的转述。

Barbara suggested ***going to another coffee-house****.*
Deirdre proposed ***moving to New York****.*

转述意图和希望 reporting intentions and hopes

7.42 在转述说话人（转述动词的主语）打算做什么时，可用两种方式转述：要么用 'to'- 不定式小句，把它作为一种行为加以转述；要么用 'that'- 从句，把它作为一个事实加以转述。譬如说，"许诺"指行为时，可用 'He promised to phone her' 转述；但是，把"许诺"看作事实，也可用 'He promised that he would phone her' 转述。

'That'- 从句里的动词词组都含有情态动词。

I promised ***to come back****.*
She promised ***that she would not leave hospital until she was better****.*
I decided ***to withhold the information till later****.*
She decided ***that she would leave her money to him****.*
I had vowed ***to fight for their freedom****.*
He vowed ***that he would ride at my side into Mexico****.*

下表列出的动词，能与 'to'- 不定式小句连用，也能与含情态动词的 'that' - 从句连用：

decide	hope	propose	threaten
expect	pledge	resolve	vow
guarantee	promise	swear	

7.43 在表示某人"声称"或"假装"的情况时，也能把动词 'claim' 和 'pretend' 与上述两种结构连用。例如，'He claimed to be a genius' 与 'He claimed that he was a genius' 同义。

He claimed ***to have witnessed the accident****.*
He claimed ***that he had found the money in the forest****.*

注意，'to'- 不定式小句的不定式动词可为完成时态，指过去的某一件事件或情况。

7.44 注意，有几个表示个人意图的动词只能与 'to'- 不定式小句连用。

I intend to say nothing for the present.
They are planning to move to the country.
I don't want to die yet.

这类动词列表如下：

intend	mean	refuse
long	plan	want

转述不确定的事情
reporting uncertain things

7.45 转述某人对进行某一个活动犹豫不决，可用 'whether' 引出的 'to'-不定式小句。

*I've been wondering **whether to retire**.*
*He didn't know **whether to feel glad or sorry at his dismissal**.*

下表所列动词能与 'whether' 加 'to'- 不定式小句连用：

choose	debate	decide	know	wonder

注意，动词 'choose'、'decide' 和 'know' 通常用于否定分句或疑问分句，或用于含情态动词的分句。

提到与行为有关的信息时，可用 'wh'- 词加 'to'- 不定式小句作为被转述从句。

*I asked him **what to do**.*
*I shall teach you **how to cook**.*

下表列出的动词可与 'wh'- 词加 'to'-不定式小句连用：

describe	forget	learn	say	tell
discover	guess	realize	see	think
discuss	imagine	remember	suggest	understand
explain	know	reveal	teach	wonder

含有 'should' 的分句能替代上述两类 'to'- 不定式小句。

*I wondered **whether I should call for help**.*
*He began to wonder **what he should do now**.*

除 'choose' 和 'debate' 外，上表列出的所有动词也可与以 'whether' 或 'wh'- 词引出的普通从句连用。见 7.32 至 7.35 节。

间引结构里的时间参照
Time reference in report structures

7.46 以下几节说明间引结构里如何表示时间参照。

两个动词都是过去时
past tense for both verbs

7.47 使用间引结构时，通常是在转述过去所说或所想的事。因此，转述动词和被转述从句的动词都是过去时形式。

*She **said** you **threw** away her sweets.*
*Brody **asked** what **happened**.*
*In the Middle Ages, people **thought** the world **was** flat.*

其他时态的转述动词 reporting verb in other tenses

7.48 转述某人在你说话时的所说所想，用转述动词的现在时形式。

*Experts **say** that you should be precise in your accounting.*
*I **think** it's going to rain.*

但是，在转述过去所说的事，尤其是转述某人经常所说的，或现在仍然真实的事时，转述动词也可用现在时形式。

*She **says** she wants to see you this afternoon.*
*My doctor **says** it's nothing to worry about.*

如果预计他人将会说什么或想什么，就用转述动词的将来时态。

*No doubt he **will claim** that his car broke down.*
*They **will think** we are making a fuss.*

被转述从句中动词的时态 tense of verb in reported clause

7.49 无论转述动词为何种时态，被转述从句中必须使用与转述人说话时间相适宜的动词时态。

如果被转述从句所述的事件或情景发生在说话时间的过去，在被转述从句里用简单过去时、过去进行时或现在完成时动词形式：'She said she enjoyed the course'、'She said she was enjoying the course' 或 'She said she has enjoyed the course'。

何时使用这些时态，见第五章。

*Dad explained that he **had** no money.*
*She added that she **was smoking** too much.*
*He says he **has** never **seen** a live shark in his life.*

但是，如转述动词是过去时，即使被转述的情况仍然存在，被转述从句的动词往往也用过去时。例如，可以说 'I told him I was eighteen'。这样说是把注意力集中在所谈论的过去时间的情况上。

*He said he **was** English.*

要强调过去的情况到现在仍然存在，有时也在被转述从句里用现在时动词。

*I told him that I **don't drink** more than anyone else.*

转述人在过去一个时间点上进行转述，而被转述事件或情景发生在这之前或一直持续到这一个时间点，那在被转述从句中就用过去完成时：'She said she had enjoyed the course'。

*He knew he **had behaved** badly.*
*Mr Benn said that he **had been** in hospital at the time.*

如果事件或情景到现在还在持续，转述动词用的是现在时，那么被转述从句的动词就用现在时：'She says she's enjoying the course'。

*Don't assume I'**m** a complete fool.*
*He knows he'**s being watched**.*

转述时，如果被转述事件或情景在过去将来发生，或在现在将来发生，则在被转述从句用情态动词。见 7.50 至 7.53 节。

被转述分句里的情态动词
modals in reported clauses

7.50 被转述从句使用情态动词的基本规则如下。

转述分句的动词是过去时或含情态动词 'could' 或 'would' 时，被转述从句里通常用 'could'、'might' 或 'would'。

如果转述分句的动词是现在时或含 'can' 或 'will' 情态动词（这种情况并不常见），通常要在被转述从句里用 'can'、'may' 或 'will'。

7.51 要对肯定或怀疑某人做事的能力进行转述，通常在被转述从句用 'could'。

*They believed that war **could** be avoided.*
*Nell would not admit that she **could** not cope.*

要表示可能性进行转述，一般情况下用 'might'。

*They told me it **might** flood here.*
*He said you **might** need money.*

如果对这种可能性很大进行转述，就用 'must'。

*I told her she **must** be out of her mind.*

要转述给予允诺或请求，通常用 'could'。比较正式的英语里用 'might'。

*I told him he **couldn't** have it.*
*Madeleine asked if she **might** borrow a pen and some paper.*

要对将来的预测、前途、期望或怀疑进行转述，通常用 'would'。

*She said they **would** all miss us.*
*He insisted that reforms **would** save the system, not destroy it.*

7.52 如果被转述事件或情景现在仍然存在或还将存在，转述动词用的是现在时，在被转述从句中就用 'can' 而不用 'could'，用 'may' 而不用 'might'、用 'will' 或 'shall' 而不用 'would'。

*Helen says I **can** share her flat.*
*I think some of the sheep **may** die this year.*
*I don't believe he **will** come.*

注意，不能用'can have'替代'could have'；'will have'替代'would have'。'Might have' 像 'could have' 一样，用来谈论过去发生的事时，不能用 'may have' 替代。如果强调现在存在或仍将存在的情景，转述动词虽用过去时，在被转述从句中也可用 'can'、'may'、'will' 和 'shall'。

*He claimed that a child's early experiences of being separated from his mother **may** cause psychological distress in later life.*

如用现在时转述动词，又要表明被转述的事件或情景是假设的或可能性不大的，可用情态动词 'could'、'might' 或 'would'。

*I believe that I **could** live very comfortably here.*

7.53 要对义务进行转述，容许用 'must'，但是用 'had to' 更为常见。参见 4.248 节。

*He said he really **had to** go back inside.*
*Sita told him that he **must** be especially kind to the little girl.*

被转述的情景仍然存在或将来还存在，用 'have to'、'has to' 或 'must'。

要对禁止做某事进行转述，一般用 'mustn't'。

*He said they **mustn't** get us into trouble.*

转述强烈意向可用 'ought to'，也可用 'should'。

*He knew he **ought to** be helping Harold.*
*I felt I **should** consult my family.*

7.54 转述过去的习惯动作或经常性的情况可用半情态动词 'used to'。

*I wish I knew what his favourite dishes **used to** be.*

7.55 被转述从句里情态动词的用法可与情态动词的普通用法相比较，见 4.95 至 4.262 节。在这两种情况下，尽管情态动词有许多功能相似，但它们的某些功能在被转述从句里却很少或根本不起作用。

转述条件陈述句
reporting conditional statements

7.56 转述条件陈述句时，动词时态在大多数情况下保留原有时态形式。但是，在转述动词是简单过去时的时候，转述像 'If there is no water in the radiator, the engine will overheat' 这样的条件陈述句时，被转述从句的动词时态就不同了。这时，在被转述的条件陈述句里，要用简单过去时代替简单现在时，用 'would' 代替 'will'：'She said that if there was no water in the radiator, the engine would overheat'。关于条件陈述句，见 8.25 至 8.92 节。

使指称得当
Making your reference appropriate

7.57 人、物、时间及地点可用不同的方式指称，这取决于说话人是谁、在何时、何地说话。例如，同样一个人可说成 'I'、'you' 或 'she'，同样的地点可说成 'over there' 或 'just here'。

如果用转述结构来叙述某人说的话，措词必须与转述人的身份、说话的时间、地点相称。措词可与原话大不相同，但原话从说话人当时所处的情境来看，还是恰当的。

人、物方面的指称
referring to people and things

7.58 例如，一位男士对别人谈起一位叫 Jenny 的女士，并说 'I saw her in the High Street' 时，就能用几种方式对这句话加以转述。如果这位男士重述自己的原话，可能会说 'I said I saw her in the High Street'，'I' 和 'her' 两个代词都未更改，因为指的是同样两个人。

如果原受话人转述，可能就会说，'He said he saw her in the High Street'，'I' 变为 'he'，因被转述的话是从第三者的立场而不是从原说话人的立场来转述的。

如果原受话人向 Jenny 转述这句话，'her' 变成 'you'：'He said he saw you in the High Street'。

原受话人也许会把这句话向原说话人讲，这时，'I' 必须改成 'you'：'You said you saw her in the High Street'。

***You**'re crazy.*
*I told him **he** was crazy.*

物主限定词和物主代词像人称代词那样，作相应的更改以达到指称一致的目的。因此，下列各句都能转述同一个问句：'She asked if he was my brother'、'She asked if you were my brother'、'I asked if he was her brother'。原句可能是 'Is he your brother?' 这样的问句。

时间指称
referring to time

7.59 转述时可能需要更改 'today'、'yesterday' 或 'next week' 这样的时间附加状语。

例如，有位名叫 Jill 的人说 'I will come tomorrow'，你在第二天转述时，可以说成 'Jill said she would come today'。再后些时候，你可以把同样一句转述成 'Jill said she would come the next day'，或 'Jill said she would come the following day'。

We decided to leave the city ***the next day****.*
I was afraid people might think I'd been asleep during ***the previous twenty-four hours****.*

地点指称
referring to places

7.60 与位置或地点相关的词也许需要更改。例如，要是你同一位男士在谈论一家餐馆，他可能说 'I go there every day'。当你在这家餐馆转述他的话时，可说成 'He said he comes here every day'。

用转述动词表示礼貌
Using reporting verbs for politeness

7.61 常常用转述动词来把话说得有礼貌些。

7.62 要是你不同意他人的话，或想说出他人不易接受的话，可以用 'think' 或 'believe' 这样的转述动词，避免说出的话听起来无礼。

I think it's time we stopped.
I don't think that will be necessary.
I believe you ought to leave now.

或者可以把转述分句变成否定句。

Don't you think we'd better wait and see?
Don't you think you'd better slow down?

用转述动词使陈述句的语气委婉，详见第十章（10.102 至 10.105 节）行为动词部分。

'suppose' 和 'wonder'
'suppose' and 'wonder'

7.63 可用 'suppose'、'wonder' 来引出有礼貌的请求。用 'suppose' 时，可以把转述分句或被转述从句变成否定句。

I wonder if you've got any books on linguistics?
I suppose you couldn't just stay an hour or two longer?
I don't suppose you'd be prepared to stay in Edinburgh?

避免提及是谁说的话或是谁的想法
Avoiding mention of the person speaking or thinking

7.64 若要避免提及转述的是谁的想法、谁说的话，有多种间引结构可以采用。

用被动结构表示普遍的信念
use of passives to express general beliefs

7.65 要表明或暗示某种看法、说法是一些身份未加点明的人们的见解，可用非人称代词 'it' 作主语加转述动词的被动语态。

It is assumed that the government will remain in power.
In former times it was believed that all enlarged tonsils should be removed.
It is now believed that foreign languages are most easily taught to young children.
It was said that he could speak their language.

下列转述动词用被动语态，以 'it' 作主语：

accept	concede	find	observe	rule
acknowledge	conclude	foresee	predict	rumour
admit	confirm	forget	propose	say
agree	consider	guarantee	realize	state
allege	decide	hold	recall	stipulate
announce	decree	hope	reckon	suggest
argue	discover	imply	recommend	suppose
assert	estimate	know	record	think
assume	expect	mention	remember	understand
believe	explain	note	report	
claim	fear	notice	request	
comment	feel	object	reveal	

这种结构与转述动词的被动语态形式加 'to'- 不定式小句的级阶结构有许多的相同之处。在级阶结构里，引述到的主要的人或物用作转述动词的主语。

Intelligence is assumed to be important.
He is said to have died a natural death.
He is believed to have fled to France.

注意，'to'- 不定式小句里最常见的动词是 'be'、'have' 或不定式的完成形式。下列转述动词选自上表，也可用于级阶结构：

agree	consider	find	predict	think
allege	discover	guarantee	reckon	understand
assume	estimate	hold	report	
believe	expect	know	rumour	
claim	feel	observe	say	

'seem' 和 'appear'
'seem' and 'appear'

7.66 若要说明事物貌似如此，可将 'seem' 或 'appear' 作转述动词，其后跟 'that'- 从句或者跟 'to'- 不定式小句。这时的说话人是在表达他本人或者别人的看法。

若要说及一个貌似真实的事实，可用 'seem' 或 'appear' ，后跟 'that'- 从句。'Seem' 或 'appear' 的主语是 'it' ，用作非人称代词。

It seemed that she had not been careful enough.
It seemed that he had lost his chance to win.
It appears that he followed my advice.

或者用含有 'seem' 或 'appear' 的级阶结构，加上 'to'- 不定式小句，与貌似真实的情况有关的主要的人或物用作转述动词的主语。

She seemed to like me.
He appears to have been an interesting man.
The system appears to work impartially.

如果要说明是谁的看法，可在 'seem' 或 'appear' 后插入以 'to' 引出的介词短语。

It seemed ***to him*** *that I was not yet suitable.*
It seems ***to me*** *to be a remarkable pronouncement.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

7.67 有几种含非人称代词 'it' 的表达式可用在 'that'- 从句前作转述分句，表示某人突然想起某事：'It occurred to me'、'It struck me' 及 'It crossed my mind'。

It occurred to him *that he hadn't eaten anything since the night before his capture.*
It crossed my mind *that somebody must have been keeping things secret.*

说话人与受话人的指称
Referring to the speaker and hearer

说话人的指称
referring to the speaker

7.68 通常用转述动词来转述某个人的讲话或想法，因此转述动词的主语一般都是单数名词。

Henry *said that he wanted to go home.*
He *claimed his health had been checked several times at a clinic.*

转述一些人的讲话、见解、命令或提问时，用复数名词或集体名词作转述动词主语。

The judges *demanded that the race be run again.*
The committee *also noted that this was not the first case of its kind.*

转述电视、电台、报纸或文件上的信息时，可用信息来源或传播方式作转述动词的主语。

The newspaper *said Scotland Yard was investigating the crime.*
The letter *argued that civil defence was an indispensable element of deterrence.*

注意，也可以把 'sign'、'notice'、'clock' 及 'map' 等名词作主语，与动词 'say' 连用。

...a notice saying that on no account should the attendants be tipped.
A sign over the door said 'Dreamland Cafe'.
The road map said it was 210 kilometres to the French frontier.

被动语态的使用
use of the passive

7.69 如 7.65 节所述，要避免提及说话人时，可用转述动词的被动语态。

It was said that some of them had become insane.
He was said to be the oldest man in the firm.

要避免提及发出命令或提出忠告的人时，用转述动词的被动语态，并把接受命令或忠告的人作为转述分句的主语。

Harriet was ordered to keep away from my room.

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

7.70 如果要使自己置身于陈述之外，可用 'according to' 引出的短语而不用间引结构来说明你是在转述他人的话。

According to Dime*, he had strangled Jed in the course of a struggle.*

受话人的指称
referring to the hearer

7.71 在有些与说话有关的转述动词后，必须提及作直接宾语的受话人。这类动词中最常见的是 'tell'。

I told ***them*** *you were at the dentist.*
I informed ***her*** *that I was unwell and could not come.*
Smith persuaded ***them*** *that they must support the strike.*

也可用这类动词的被动语态，受话人作主语。

She had been told *she could leave hospital.*
Members had been informed *that the purpose of the meeting was to elect a new chairman.*
She was persuaded *to look again.*

下列转述动词与 'that'- 从句连用时，必须以受话人作直接宾语：

assure	inform	persuade	remind
convince	notify	reassure	tell

下列转述动词与 'to'- 不定式小句连用时，必须以受话人作直接宾语：

advise	forbid	order	teach	warn
beg	instruct	persuade	tell	
command	invite	remind	urge	

带或不带受话人作宾语的动词
verbs with or without the hearer as object

7.72 在有些与说话有关的转述动词之后，可提也可不提受话人。

I promised that I would try to phone her.
*I promised **Myra** I'd be home at seven.*
The physicians warned that, without the operation, the child would die.
*Thomas warned **her** that his mother was slightly deaf.*

下列转述动词与 'that'- 从句连用时，可带也可不带作宾语的受话人：

ask	promise	teach	warn

'Promise' 与 'to'- 不定式小句连用时，可带也可不带宾语。'Ask' 与 'to'- 不定式小句连用，对受话人提出做某事的要求时，必须带宾语，但是表示请求允许做某事时，就不需带宾语，见 7.36 和 7.39 节。

介词短语里的受话人
the hearer in prepositional phrases

7.73 对其他许多转述动词来说，如果要提受话人，就要用以 'to' 引出的介词短语。

*I explained **to her** that I had to go home.*
*'Margaret,' I said **to her**, 'I'm so glad you came.'*

下列转述动词与 'that'- 从句或直接引语连用，在提受话人时，需用介词 'to'：

admit	confess	insist	report	suggest
announce	declare	mention	reveal	swear
boast	explain	murmur	say	whisper
complain	hint	propose	shout	

'Propose' 和 'swear' 也可与 'to'- 不定式小句连用，但如果提及受话人，就不能与 'to'- 不定式连用。

I swore to uphold the Constitution of the United States.

7.74 在描述说话人气势汹汹地对受话人讲话时，可在 'at' 引出的介词短语里提及受话人。

*The tall boy shouted **at them**,'Choir! Stand still!'*
*'Where the devil have you come from?' he growled **at her**.*

下列转述动词用来描述气势汹汹地讲话。如要提及受话人，用 'at' 引出的介词短语：

bark	grumble	scream	snap	wail
bellow	howl	shout	storm	yell
growl	roar	shriek	thunder	

7.75 有些动词说明讲话人和受话人参与讲话活动，可在 'with' 引出的介词短语提及受话人。

*He agreed **with us** that it would be better to have no break.*
*I argued **with Rick** that he was involved in a form of blackmail.*

下列转述动词在要提及受话人时，带介词 'with'：

agree	argue	confirm	plead	reason

7.76 有些动词对某人从别人、别处得到消息的情况进行描述，必须用 'from' 引出的介词短语来提及消息来源。

*I discovered **from her** that a woman prisoner had killed herself.*

下列转述动词用介词 'from' 提及消息来源：

discover	gather	infer	see
elicit	hear	learn	

反身代词 reflexive pronouns

7.77 反身代词可用作转述动词的宾语或介词宾语，说明某人思考的内容。例如，'to say something to yourself' 只表示在思考而不是出声说话。

I told myself that he was crazy.
I'll never possess anything, I said to myself.

表示说话内容的其他方式
Other ways of indicating what is said

与转述动词连用的宾语
objects with reporting verbs

7.78 有时用 'question'、'story' 或 'apology' 等名词表示某人说过或写过的内容。可使用转述动词加上一个这类名词作宾语，替代被转述从句。

He asked ***a number of questions****.*
Simon whispered ***his answer****.*
He told ***funny stories*** *and made everyone laugh.*
Philip repeated ***his invitation****.*

下列转述动词常常与表示某人说过的或写过的内容的名词连用：

accept	deny	know	refuse	tell
acknowledge	expect	learn	remember	understand
ask	explain	mention	repeat	whisper
begin	forget	mutter	report	write
believe	guess	note	shout	
continue	hear	notice	state	
demand	imagine	promise	suggest	

7.79 有些转述动词以指事件或事实的名词作为宾语。这类名词常常与相应的动词有关。例如，'loss' 与 'lose' 密切相关，可以不说 'He admitted that he had lost his passport'，而说 'He admitted the loss of his passport' 替代。

British Airways announce the ***arrival*** *of flight BA 5531 from Glasgow.*
The company reported a 45 per cent ***drop*** *in profits.*

下列转述动词常与指事件或事实的名词连用：

accept	discuss	imagine	prefer	sense
acknowledge	doubt	mean	promise	suggest
admit	expect	mention	recommend	urge
announce	explain	note	record	
demand	fear	notice	remember	
describe	foresee	observe	report	
discover	forget	predict	see	

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

7.80 注意，'say' 通常只带一个宾语，不过这个宾语须是 'something'、'anything' 或 'nothing' 这类意义非常笼统的词。

I must have said something wrong.
The man nodded but said nothing.

介词短语与转述动词连用 prepositional phrases with reporting verbs

7.81 有些动词指说话行为或思维活动，为了表示说话或思考的大致内容，这些动词更多的是与介词短语而不是与被转述从句连用。

Thomas explained ***about the request from Paris****.*

下列三个词表列出的动词可与表示事实或话题的介词短语连用。

每个词表的第一组动词不用宾语，但第二组与指受话人的宾语连用。

注意，'ask'、'warn' 可带也可不带宾语。

下列动词与 'about' 连用：

agree	dream	inquire	wonder	teach
ask	explain	know	worry	tell
boast	forget	learn	write	warn
complain	grumble	mutter	~	
decide	hear	read	ask	

No one knew ***about my interest in mathematics****.*
I asked him ***about the horses****.*

下列动词与 'of' 连用：

complain	learn	write	inform	remind
dream	read	~	notify	warn
hear	think	assure	persuade	
know	warn	convince	reassure	

They never complained ***of the incessant rain****.*
Mr Beltrami had informed My Murray ***of these developments****.*

下列动词与 'on' 连用：

agree	decide	insist	report
comment	determine	remark	write

上表列出的动词都不带指受话人的宾语。

He had already decided ***on his story****.*
She remarked ***on the excellence of his English****.*

注意，'speak' 和 'talk' 只与介词 'about' 和 'of' 连用，不与被转述从句连用。

使用被转述从句的其他方式
Other ways of using reported clauses

与被转述从句连用的其他动词
other verbs used with reported clauses

7.82 有些动词虽不涉及说话、思考、了解等行为，但后面却跟有 'that'- 从句。因为这些动词指的是与事实有关的行为。例如，对事实加以核对或加以证明。

He checked that both rear doors were safely shut.
Research with animals shows that males will mother an infant as well as any female.

下列动词并不表示说话、思考等行为，但却带 'that'- 从句：

arrange	determine	pretend	reveal
check	ensure	prove	show
demonstrate	indicate	require	

☞ 注意，'determine' 可用作表示思考的动词，'reveal' 可用作表示说话的动词。参见 7.27 节，7.35 和 7.45 节。

'Arrange' 和 'require' 与含情态动词或虚拟语气词的 'that'- 从句连用。'Arrange' 还能与 'to'- 不定式小句连用。

*The King arranged **that I should have the Order of Merit**.*
*They'd arranged **to leave at four o'clock**.*

'Demonstrate'、'prove'、'reveal' 和 'show' 后也可跟以 'wh'- 词引出的从句，这个从句指与事实有关的环境。

*The woman took the gun and showed **how the cylinder slotted into the barrel**.*

'Prove'、'require' 和 'show' 可用被动语态，后跟 'to'- 不定式小句。

*No place on earth can **be shown to be safe**.*

如要提及行为中的另一个人时，可在 'show' 后用宾语，在 'demonstrate'、'indicate'、'prove' 和 'reveal' 后用介词 'to' 以及在 'arrange' 和 'check' 后用介词 'with'。

*This attitude of the children **showed me** that watching violence can lower a child's standards of behaviour.*
*The way my eyelids had closed **proved to me** that I was almost as suggestible as Patricia.*
*She **arranged with the principal of her school** to take the necessary time off.*

7.83 如果要表示某事已经发生、某物确是如此或某事已为人所知，可在 'happen'、'transpire' 或 'emerge' 后用 'that'- 从句。转述分句的主语为人称代词 'it'。

It often happens that a mother asks for advice and does not get it.
It just happened that he had a client who rather liked that sort of thing.
It transpired that there was not a word of truth in the letter.
It emerged that, during the afternoon, she had gone home unwell.

注意，这样 'that'- 从句里的 'that' 不能省略。

与被转述从句连用的名词
nouns used with reported clauses

7.84 有许多名词指某人说话的或想的事，如 'statement'、'advice' 和 'opinion' 等。这些名词大都与转述动词有关。例如，'information' 与 'inform' 相关；'decision' 与 'decide' 相关。这些名词在转述结构里的用法与转述动词用法相似，后面通常用 'that' 引出的被转述从句。

*He referred to **Copernicus' statement that the earth moves around the sun**.*
*He expressed **the opinion that Kitchener should be made War Minister**.*
*There was **little hope that he would survive**.*

下列名词与相应的转述动词有关，同 'that'- 从句连用：

admission	claim	information	sense
advice	conclusion	knowledge	statement
agreement	decision	promise	thought
announcement	dream	reply	threat
answer	expectation	report	understanding
argument	explanation	response	warning
assertion	feeling	rule	wish
assumption	guess	rumour	
belief	hope	saying	

下列名词之后也可用 'to'- 不定式小句：

agreement	decision	promise	warning
claim	hope	threat	wish

***The decision to go** had not been an easy one to make.*
*Barnaby's father had fulfilled **his promise to buy his son a horse**.*

注意，有些名词虽与转述动词无关，也可与 'that'- 从句连用，因为这些名词表示事实或信仰。

下表列出了一些这种名词：

advantage	effect	idea	principle	view
benefit	evidence	impression	risk	vision
confidence	experience	news	sign	word
danger	fact	opinion	story	
disadvantage	faith	possibility	tradition	

He didn't want her to get ***the idea that he was rich****.*
I had ***no evidence that Jed was the killer****.*
Eventually, a distraught McCoo turned up with ***the news that his house had just burned down****.*

形容词与被转述从句连用 adjectives with reported clauses

7.85 当形容词作系动词的补足语时，例如 'be'，很多形容词都可置于转述分句之后。

说明某种情感的起因 mentioning the cause of a feeling

7.86 如果表示引起某人产生某种情感的理由，可在描绘情感的形容词之后用 'that'- 从句来说明情感产生的原因。

Everybody was sad ***that she had to return to America****.*
I am confident ***that I shall be able to persuade them to go****.*
I was worried ***that she'd say no****.*

下表列出表示情感的形容词：

afraid	confident	happy	sad	upset
angry	frightened	pleased	sorry	worried
anxious	glad	proud	surprised	

说明某人知道某事 saying what someone knows

7.87 如果要说明某人知道某事，可在 'aware' 或 'conscious' 这样的形容词之后用 'that'- 从句。

He was aware ***that he had drunk too much whisky****.*
I am conscious ***that I have provided no answer in this book****.*

下表列出的形容词表示认知：

aware	conscious	positive	unaware
certain	convinced	sure	

偶尔把 'aware' 与 'wh'- 词引出的从句连用。

I am well aware ***how busy you are at this season of the year****.*

评论某事实
commenting on a fact

7.88 如要对某一项事实加以评论，可用转述事实的形容词加 'that'- 从句。系动词的主语是非人称代词 'it'。

It was sad ***that people had reacted in the way they did.***
It is true ***that the authority of parliament has declined.***
It is extraordinary ***that we should ever have met!***
It seems probable ***that the world can go on producing enough food for everyone.***

下列是用来评论事实的形容词：

apparent	essential	good	lucky	probable
appropriate	evident	important	natural	sad
awful	extraordinary	inevitable	obvious	true
bad	fair	interesting	plain	unlikely
clear	funny	likely	possible	

有的形容词之后可用 'wh'- 词引出的从句。

It's funny ***how they don't get on.***
It was never clear ***why she worked all her life as a domestic servant.***

☞ 关于形容词后接 'wh'- 词开头的从句，详见 10.43 节。

'That' - 从句的名词性用法
nominal use of 'that' - clauses

7.89 'That'- 从句可用在动词 'be' 之后作补足语，说明某一项事实或想法。主语通常是 7.84 节词表中的一个名词。

The fact is ***that a happy person makes a better worker.***
The answer is simply ***that they are interested in doing it.***
The most favoured explanation was ***that he was finally getting tired.***
Our hope is ***that this time all parties will cooperate.***

7.90 在正式英语里，当人们要评论某一项事实时，有时把 'that'- 从句用作动词的主语。

That I write with a bias *is natural.*
That man can aspire to and achieve goodness *is evident through all of history.*

在不太正式的英语里，常常将 'the fact' 与 'that'- 从句连用代替 'that'- 从句作主语。

The fact that what they are doing is illegal *is a trivial irrelevance.*
The fact that your boss is actually offering to do your job for you *should certainly prompt you to question his motives.*

表示评论事实的常用办法是用非人称代词 'it' 结构，参见 7.88 节。

7.91 'The fact' 加 'that'-从句结构可用作介词宾语，也可用作不能直接跟 'that'-从句的动词的宾语。

...acknowledgement of ***the fact that we have no intrinsic right to receive answers to all our questions****.*
We overlooked ***the fact that the children's emotional development had been retarded****.*

'wh' -从句的名词性用法
nominal use of 'wh' - clauses

7.92 要表示无把握或不明确的事情或需要作出抉择的事情，可用像被转述问句那样由 'wh'- 词或 'whether' 引出的从句。这类从句可用在介词之后，也可用作 'be'、'depend' 和 'matter' 这类动词的主语。

...the question of ***who should be President of the Board of Trade****.*
The State is desperately uncertain about ***what it wants artists to do****.*
What you get *depends on how badly you were injured.*
Whether I went twice or not *doesn't matter.*
Whether you think they are any good or not *is irrelevant.*

7.93 由 'wh'- 词加 'to'- 不定式小句组成的结构，可表示拟采取的行动步骤，用在介词之后，但是通常不用作主语。

...the problem of ***what to tell the adopted child****.*
...a book on ***how to avoid having a heart attack****.*
People are very worried about ***how to fill their increased leisure time****.*

7.94 要当心表示被转述问句的 'if'- 从句不能用在介词之后，也不能作动词的主语。

第八章　信息的结合

8 信息的结合
Combining messages

概述
Introduction

8.1 有时我们要陈述的内容过于复杂或过于详细，难于用一个单句表达出来，就将两个或多个分句组合成的句子来表达这种内容。

构成这种句子有两种办法。一种是以一个分句作主句，加上其他表示从属意义的分句。

I came because I want you to help me.
I didn't like the man who did the gardening for them.
You have no right to keep people off your land unless they are doing damage.
When he had gone, Valentina sighed.

另一种就是把几个分句连接起来。

I'm an old man and I'm sick.
My son has a car but he doesn't take me for a drive.

提问和命令也可能含有一个以上的分句。

What will I do if he doesn't come?
If she is ambitious, don't try to hold her back.

☞ 关于分句，参见第三章和第四章。

连词
conjunctions

8.2 连词将两个分句连成一个句子并表示两个分句间的关系。

***When** he stopped, no one said anything.*
*They were going by car **because** it was more comfortable.*
*The telephone rang **and** Judy picked it up.*
*Manfred behaved perfectly, **but** Gertrude had little idea of what he was thinking.*

8.3 连词有两种，它们用来说明构成句子的分句之间的不同关系。

从属连词
subordinating conjunctions

8.4 从属连词 (subordinating conjunctions) 可用来引出一个从句以进一步说明所述内容的某个方面。

The cat jumped onto my father's lap ***while*** *he was reading his letters.*
The wound was healing ***although*** *he would never be able to speak again.*
When *the jar was full, he turned the water off.*

从属连词引出的分句叫**从句** (subordinate clauses)。

When an atom is split*, it releases neutrons.*
If he had had a gun*, he would have killed the man.*
The house was called Elm View, ***although there were no elms anywhere in sight****.*

也可给疑问句和祈使句增添从句。

How long is it ***since you've actually taught****?*
Know what fibre you are dyeing ***before you start****.*

含一个主句和一个或更多从句的句子通常称为**复合句** (complex sentences)。

从句主要有三种：

状语从句 (adverbial clauses)，见 8.6 至 8.82 节。

关系从句 (relative clauses)，见 8.83 至 8.116 节。

被转述从句 (reported clauses)，见第七章。

并列连词
coordinating conjunctions

8.5 **并列连词** (coordinating conjunctions) 用来把几个分句连接起来。

Her son lives at home ***and*** *has a steady job.*
He's a shy man, ***but*** *he's not scared of anything or anyone.*

并列连词也可用来连接两个疑问句或两个祈使句。

Do people drive their own cars ***or*** *are they all called for by the bus?*
Visit your local dealer ***or*** *phone for a brochure.*

以并列连词连接的分句叫**并列分句** (coordinate clauses)。

She turned *and* ***left the room****.*

含有并列分句的句子有时称为**并列句** (compound sentences)。

并列句详见 8.137 至 8.151 节。并列连词的其他用法，参见 8.152 至 8.189 节。

状语从句
Adverbial clauses

8.6 状语从句有八种类型：

分句类型	常用连词	章节
时间从句	when, before, after, since, while, as, until	8.8 – 8.24
条件从句	if, unless	8.25 – 8.42
目的从句	in order to, so that	8.43 – 8.48
原因从句	because, since, as	8.49 – 8.53
结果从句	so that	8.54 – 8.64
让步从句	although, though, while	8.65 – 8.72
地点从句	where, wherever	8.73 – 8.77
方式从句	as, like, the way	8.78 – 8.82

以从属连词引出的**非限定小句** (non-finite clauses) 在状语从句部分讨论。不以从属连词引出的非限定小句分别在第 8.117 至 8.133 节讨论。作用相当于非限定小句的其他结构在第 8.134 至 8.136 节叙述。

状语从句的位置
position of adverbial clause

8.7 状语从句通常位于主句之后。

I couldn't think of a single thing to say ***after he'd replied like that****.*
The performances were cancelled ***because the leading man was ill****.*

但是绝大多数类型的状语从句都可置于主句之前。

When the city is dark*, we can move around easily.*
Although crocodiles are inactive for long periods*, on occasion they can run very fast indeed.*

状语从句也偶尔置于另一个从句之中，但较少见。

They make allegations which, ***when you analyse them****, do not have too many facts behind them.*

某些种类的状语从句总是位于主句之后，而有些总是位于主句之前。参见从句的不同类型部分。

时间从句
Time clauses

8.8 **时间从句** (time clauses) 通过指出用以参照一段时间或另一件事件说明某事发生的时间。

*Her father died **when she was young**.*
*Stocks of food cannot be brought in **before the rains start**.*
*He was detained last Monday **after he returned from a business trip overseas**.*
***When I first saw the wreckage** I just didn't expect there to be so many survivors.*

时间从句可用于**时间附加状语** (adjuncts of time) 之后。

*He mentioned his plans to her **early one morning, before he left for the paddy fields**.*
*I want to see you for a few minutes **at twelve o'clock, when you go to lunch**.*

☞ 时间附加状语，参见第五章。

时间从句的时态
tenses in time clauses

8.9 说及过去或现在情况时，时间从句的动词时态与主句或简单句的动词时态相同。

*I was standing by the window when I **heard** her speak.*
*I haven't given him a thing to eat since he **arrived**.*
*I look after the children while she **goes** to London.*

但时间从句涉及将来发生或存在的某事时，它的动词用简单现在时，而不用将来时。

例如，要说 'When he comes, I will show him the book'，而不能说 'When he will come, I will show him the book'。

*As soon as we **get** the tickets, we'll send them to you.*
*He wants to see you before he **dies**.*
*Let me stay here till Jeannie **comes** to bed.*

时间从句的动作发生在主句现在时的动作之前时，时间从句用现在完成时而不用将来完成时。

例如，要说 'When you have had your supper, come and see me'，而不能说 'When you will have had your supper, come and see me'。

*We won't be getting married until we**'ve saved** enough money.*
*Tell the DHSS as soon as you **have retired**.*

8.10 时间从句中最常见的连词是 'when'。'When' 可用于说明过去、现在或将来某时刻发生的事。

***When** the telegram came and I read of his death, I couldn't believe it.*
*He didn't know how to behave **when** they next met.*

8.11 可用 'when'、'while'、'as' 来说明现在和过去所发生事件的环境。

*The train has automatic doors that only open **when** the train is stationary.*
***While** he was still in the stable, there was a loud knock at the front door.*
*He would swim beside me **as** I rowed in the little dinghy.*

'Whilst' 是 'while' 的更为正式的形式。

*Two were mere lodgers whom we looked after **whilst** their mistress was away.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

8.12 若要强调事件发生的特定时间，可用 'It was' 后接 'six o'clock' 或 'three hours later' 等表达式，再接 'when'- 从句。

例如，可用 'It was six o'clock when I left' 替代 'I left at six o'clock'。

*It was about half past eight **when** he arrived at Sutwick.*
*It was late **when** he returned.*

这是**断裂结构** (cleft structures) 的例子。断裂结构在 10.25 至 10.30 节讨论。

反复发生的事件
repeated events

8.13 可用 'when'、'whenever'、'every time' 或 'each time' 来说明过去或现在某特定环境中经常发生的事件。

***When** he talks about the Church, he does sound like an outsider.*
***Whenever** she had a cold, she ate only fruit.*
***Every time** I go to that class I panic.*
*He flinched **each time** she spoke to him.*

8.14 可用 'the first time'、'the next time' 或 'the third time' 等表达式说明某事发生在另一件事件某一次发生的过程中。

***The last time** we talked he said he needed another two days.*
***The next time** I come here, I'm going to be better.*

先后发生的事件
events in sequence

8.15 也可用 'when'、'after' 或 'once' 来说明一件事件发生后随之又有一件事件发生。

***When** old Thrussel died, his widow came to me and said that he wished to be buried in the churchyard.*

*Stop me **when** you've had enough.*
*The turtle returns to the sea **after** it has laid its eggs.*
***Once** environmental damage is done, it takes many years for the system to recover.*

要说明一件事件发生后经过多久另一件事件才发生，可在 'after' 之前加 'two days' 或 'three years' 这类名词词组。

***Exactly six weeks after** she had arrived, she sent a cable to her husband and caught the plane back to New York.*

'As soon as'、'directly'、'immediately'、'the moment'、'the minute' 和 'the instant' 可用来说明两件事件发生的时间相隔很短。

*They heard voices **as soon as** they pushed open the door.*
***The moment** Stagg had finished, he and the other two scientists were subjected to a barrage of questions.*
***Immediately** the meal was over, it was time for prayer.*

8.16 'Before' 可用于表示某事在过去、现在或将来发生于另一件事件之前。

*It was necessary for them to find a roof to live under **before** the cold weather set in.*
*They had not even bothered to bury their comrades **before** they fled.*
***Before** man exterminated the rabbits they were the staple food both of the foxes and the wildcats.*

要表示一件事件的发生比另一件事件早多久，可在 'before' 之前加 'three weeks' 或 'a short time' 这类名词词组。

*He had a review with the second organiser, **about a month** before the report was written.*
***Long before** you return she will have forgotten you.*

8.17 讲故事时，有时要表达一件事件发生时，某事正发生，要先讲正在发生的事，然后加上一个以 'when' 引导的从句来提及这一件事件的发生。

*I had just started back for the house to change my clothes **when** I heard voices.*
*He was having his Christmas dinner **when** the telephone rang.*

要说明一件事件紧接另一件事件发生，一个分句用过去完成时，时间从句用简单过去时，前一个分句的 'had' 之后跟 'no sooner' 或 'hardly'。

用 'no sooner' 时，时间从句以 'than' 引出。

*I had **no sooner** checked into the hotel **than** he arrived with the appropriate documents.*

用 'hardly' 时，时间从句以 'when' 或 'before' 引出。

*He had **hardly** got his eyes open **before** she told him that they were leaving.*

'No sooner' 或 'hardly' 常置于第一个分句句首，然后接 'had' 加主语。

***No sooner** had he asked the question **than** the answer came to him.*
***Hardly** had the din faded behind them **when** they came upon another shouting crowd.*
***Hardly** had Lamin wolfed down his meal **before** he flopped back onto the soft moss.*

8.18 主句说明某事由于新情况引起的状况，用从句对新情况予以说明。从句用 'now' 或 'now that' 引出。

*I feel better **now** I've talked to you.*
*He soon discovered how much faster he could travel **now that** he was alone.*

说明情况出现的时间
saying when a situation began

8.19 说明某情况在过去某特定时间出现并延续到现在时，用 'since' 或 'ever since'。时间从句用简单过去时。

*I've been in politics **since** I **was** at university.*
*It's been making money **ever since** it **opened**.*

也可用 'since' 或 'ever since' 说明某情况在过去某特定时间出现，后来还存在。时间从句用简单过去时或过去完成时。

*He slept alone, as he had done **ever since** he **left** Didcot.*
*Back in Caen, Janine had been busy **ever since** she **had heard** the news.*

要在某情况出现时说及某人的年龄，常用简单过去时。

*I was seven years older than Wendy and had known her **since** she **was** twelve.*

☞ 'Since' 也用于原因从句中，参见 8.50 节。

说明情况结束的时间
saying when a situation ends

8.20 说明某事发生时，一种情况结束，可用 'until' 或 'till'。

*I stayed there talking to them **until** I saw Sam Ward leave the building.*
*He grabbed me and shook me **till** my teeth rattled.*

也可以用 'until' 或 'till' 说明某事将要发生时，某情况将结束。时间从句用简单现在时或现在完成时。

*Stay with me **until I go**.*
*We'll support them **till** they **find** work.*
*Tell him I won't discuss anything **until I've spoken** to my wife.*

8.21 'By which time'、'at which point'、'after which'、'whereupon' 和 'upon which' 也可用于时间从句之前。

'By which time' 可用于说明在刚提到的事件之前某事已经发生或将要发生。

*He came back eight months later, **by which time** the Japanese had decided to say yes.*

'At which point' 可用于说明在刚提到的事件之后，某事立即发生。

*Later, service trades such as toolmaking and blacksmithing appeared, **at which point** the simple swapping of produce was no longer feasible.*

'After which' 可用于说明在刚提到的事件之后，某情况已开始存在或将要出现。

*The clothes were sent away for chemical analysis, **after which** they were never seen again.*

'Whereupon' 或 'upon which' 可用于说明在刚提到的事之后某事立即发生，而且此事是前事的结果。

*His department was shut down, **whereupon** he returned to Calcutta.*
*Sally more or less implied that we did, **upon which** Howard flew into a great rage.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

8.22 'Why' 引出的问句之后可跟 'when' 引出的从句。例如，可说 'Why should I help her when she never helps me?' 但这并非时间从句，问句所表达的是对所说某事感到诧异或反对，而 'when' 引出的从句表达的是引起诧异或反对的原因。

*Why should he do me an injury **when** he has already saved my life?*
*Why worry her **when** it's all over?*

非限定小句的使用
using non-finite clauses

8.23 非限定小句常可用以替代限定性时间从句。

例如，可以说 'I often read a book when travelling by train'，其含义为 'I often read a book when I am travelling by train'；还可以说 'When finished, the building will be opened by the Prince of Wales'，其含义为 'When it is finished, the building will be opened by the Prince of Wales'。

Adults sometimes do not realize their own strength ***when dealing with children****.*
Mark watched us ***while pretending not to****.*
I deliberately didn't read the book ***before going to see the film****.*
After evicting the inhabitants*, he declared the houses derelict.*
They had not spoken a word ***since leaving the party****.*
Michael used to look hurt and surprised ***when scolded****.*
Once convinced of the necessity of a move *he worked with persistence and diplomacy until the college found a new home.*

注意，非限定小句只能在不需要新的主语时使用，也就是说，非限定小句与主句主语一致。

介词短语和形容词的使用
using prepositional phrases and adjectives

8.24 对某些时间的叙述，可用含 'when'、'while'、'once'、'until' 或 'till' 的短语，其后跟介词短语或形容词。

例如，可以说 'When in Paris, you should visit the Louvre' 其含义为 'When you are in Paris, you should visit the Louvre'。

He had read of her elopement ***while at Oxford****.*
Man acquires great technological mastery of this world but, ***when under threat****, reverts with terrifying ease to his primitive past.*
Steam or boil them ***until just tender****.*

也可以用 'when'、'whenever'、'where' 或 'wherever' 加上 'necessary' 或 'possible' 等形容词组成的短语。

例如，可以说 'You should take exercise whenever possible'，其含义为 'You should take exercise whenever it is possible'。

She had previously spoken seldom and then only ***when necessary****.*
It paid to speak the truth ***whenever possible****.*
Help must be given ***where necessary****.*
All experts agree that, ***wherever possible****, children should learn to read in their own way.*

条件从句
Conditional clauses

8.25 谈论可能产生的情况及其后果时可用**条件从句** (conditional clauses)。

条件从句用于：

- 谈论现在或过去有时存在的情况

***If they lose weight during an illness**, they soon regain it afterwards.*
*Government cannot operate effectively **unless it is free from such interference**.*
***If I saw him in the street**, he'd just say 'Good morning.'*

• 谈论已经知道不存在的情况

***If England had a hot climate**, the attitude would be different.*
***If I could afford it** I would buy a boat.*

• 谈论不知是否存在的情况

***If he is right** it would be possible once more to manage the economy in the old way.*
*There's no reason why she should have come here **unless it was to cadge free drinks**.*

• 谈论将来可能存在的情况

***If I marry Celia** we shall need the money to live on.*
***If I went back on the train** it'd be cheaper.*
*Don't bring her **unless she's sober**.*

含条件从句的句子有时称**条件句** (conditional sentences)。

8.26 条件从句通常以 'if' 或 'unless' 引出。用 'if' 说明产生某事就会导致另一件事件，或有某种情况就会产生另一种情况。

***If** you do that I shall be very pleased.*
***If** I asked for something I got it.*
*They will even clean your car **if** they're in the mood.*

当 'if'- 从句前置时，主句之首有时可加 'then'。

***If** this is what was happening in the Sixties, **then** I'm glad I wasn't around then.*

'Unless' 含义为 'if...not'，例如，'You will fail your exams unless you work harder'，含义为 'If you do not work harder, you will fail your exams'。

*There can be no new growth **unless** the ground is cleared.*
*Nobody gets anything **unless** they ask for it.*

'Unless' 引出的从句通常置于主句之后。

情态动词和祈使句 modals and imperatives

8.27 使用条件句时，主句常用情态动词。

谈论不存在的情况时，主句常用情态动词。

*If you weren't here, she **would** get rid of me in no time.*
*If anybody had asked me, I **could** have told them what happened.*

☞ 情态动词在 4.95 至 4.262 节讨论。

条件句常与祈使结构连用。

If you dry your washing outdoors, wipe the line first.
If it's four o'clock in the morning, don't expect them to be pleased to see you.

☞ 祈使结构在 4.4 和 4.31 至 4.35 节讨论。

条件句的时态 tenses in conditional clauses

8.28 条件句中时态使用的特殊规则。

教外国人学英语时，常把条件句分为三类：

- 第一类条件句，主句动词为 'will' 或 'shall'，条件从句中动词用简单现在时；
- 第二类条件句，主句动词为 'would' 或 'should'，条件从句中动词用简单过去时；
- 第三类条件句，主句动词为 'would have' 或 'should have'，条件从句中动词用过去完成时。

这种分法大致正确，但没能充分描述以下几节所说明的条件句的常用时态形式。

经常发生的事件 common occurrences

8.29 谈论经常发生的事件时，主句及条件从句用简单现在时或现在进行时。

*If a man **looks** at me, I **am** flattered.*
*He never **says** a word unless he **feels** he's being threatened in some way.*
*If a tap **is dripping**, it **needs** a new washer.*
*If an advertisement **conveys** information which is false or misleading, the advertiser **is committing** an offence.*

过去发生的事件 occurrences in the past

8.30 谈论过去发生的事件时，条件从句用简单过去时或过去进行时，主句用简单过去时或情态动词。

*They **sat** on the grass if it **was** fine.*
*If it **was raining**, we usually **stayed** indoors.*
*If anyone **came**, they'**d** say 'How are you?'*
*If they **wanted** to go out, they **could** always count on me to stay with the baby.*
*Often I **could** not fall asleep unless I **exercised** to the point of exhaustion.*

可能的情况
possible situations

8.31 谈论现在可能的情况时，条件从句通常用简单现在时或现在完成时，主句常用情态动词。

If anyone ***doubts*** *the truth of this, they* ***should*** *look at the two most successful post-war economies, Germany and Japan.*
Unless you've ***tried*** *it, you* ***can't*** *imagine how pleasant it is.*

此类 'if'- 从句可用于主动提出做某事或允许别人做某事。主句用情态动词，从句由 'if'、代词加 'want'、'like' 或 'wish' 构成。

I'll teach you, ***if you want****.*
You can leave ***if you like****.*

将来可能发生的事件
possible future occurrences

8.32 谈论将来可能发生的事件时，条件从句用简单现在时，主句用简单将来时。

If I ever ***get*** *out of this alive,* ***I'll*** *never* ***leave*** *you again.*
If nuclear weapons ***are employed*** *in a world war, the world* ***will be destroyed****.*
Willie ***will be*** *a failure in life unless he* ***is pushed****.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

8.33 谈论将来可能出现的情况，较为正式的用法是在条件从句中用 'should'。例如，'If anything happens, I will return immediately' 可为 'If anything should happen, I will return immediately' 代替。主句用情态动词，通常是 'will' 或 'would'。

If anyone ***should*** *come this way, we* ***would*** *be caught like rats in a trap.*

除此之外，还有一种方法：在条件从句中用 'were' 及带 'to'- 的不定式。例如，可以用 'If he were to go, I would go too' 代替 'If he goes, I will go too'。主句用 'would'、'should' 或 'might'。

If we ***were to move*** *north, we* ***would*** *be able to buy a bigger house.*

不太可能出现的情况
unlikely situations

8.34 谈论不太可能出现的情形时，条件从句用简单过去时，主句用 'would'、'should' 或 'might'。

The older men ***would*** *find it difficult to get a job if they* ***left*** *the farm.*
I ***should*** *be surprised if it* ***was*** *less than five pounds.*
If I ***frightened*** *them, they* ***might*** *take off and I* ***would*** *never see them again.*

条件从句中，尤其是在 'I' 之后，有时用 'were' 替代 'was'。

If I ***were*** *as big as you, I* ***would*** *kill you.*
If I ***were asked*** *to define my condition,* ***I'd*** *say 'bored'.*

过去本可发生的事 what might have been

8.35 谈论过去可能发生却没有发生的事时，条件从句用过去完成时，主句用 'would have'、'could have'、'should have' 或 'might have'。

*Perhaps if he **had realized** that, he **would have** run away while there was still time.*
*If she **had not married**, she **would** probably **have** become something special in her field.*

动词前置 putting the verb first

8.36 正式英语或文学语体中，'if' 从句的第一个动词若为 'should'、'were' 或 'had'，可将此动词置于句首，而省略 'if'。例如，可说 'Should any visitors come, I will say you are not here' 来替代 'If any visitors should come, I will say you are not here'。

***Should** ministers decide to instigate an inquiry, we would welcome it.*
***Were** it all true, it would still not excuse their actions.*
***Were** they to cease advertising, prices would be significantly reduced.*
***Had** I known that there was never to be another opportunity, I would have filmed the occasion.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

8.37 有时可用后跟形容词或介词短语的 'if' 短语替代含有动词 'be' 的条件从句。例如，可用 'We will sell the car, if necessary' 替代 'We will sell the car, if it is necessary'。

*This unfortunate situation is to be avoided **if possible**.*
*If I were innocent, I'd rather be tried here; **if guilty**, in America.*
***If in doubt**, ask at your local library.*

必要条件 necessary conditions

8.38 要说明某情况对另一种情况是必要的，可用 'provided'、'providing'、'as long as'、'so long as' 或 'only if'。'Provided' 和 'providing' 后常跟 'that'。

*A child will learn what is right and what is wrong in good time — **provided** he is not pressured.*
*Lady Sackville was prepared to come, **provided that** she might bring her daughter.*
*The oven bakes magnificent bread **providing** there is a hot enough fire in the furnace.*
*They are content for the world to stay as it is, poverty, pain and everything, **as long as** they are comfortable.*
*These activities can flourish **only if** agriculture and rural industry are flourishing.*

用 'only if' 时，可置 'only' 于主句中，与 'if' 分开。例如，可用 'I will only come if he wants me' 替代 'I will come only if he wants me'。

*He told them that disarmament was **only** possible **if** Britain changed her foreign policy.*

说明某情况对另一种情况是必要的另一种方法是在 'if' 之后加上主语和 'be' 的某一种形式，再加上 'to'-不定式来构成条件从句。主句中用 'must' 表示必要。

*It's late, and **if I am to get any sleep** I **must** go.*
***If you are to escape**, you **must** leave me and go on alone.*

8.39 说明一种情况不影响另一种情况时，可以用 'even if'。

*I would have married her **even if** she had been penniless.*
***Even if** you've never been taught to mend a fuse, you don't have to sit in the dark.*
***Even if** we do not resort to such dramatic measures, it seems likely that there will be many exciting opportunities in the future.*

☞ 'Even if' 也可用于**让步从句** (concessive clauses)，参见 8.67 节。

8.40 说明一种情形不受任何两个或更多事态影响时，用 'whether'，将 'or' 置于两个不同的可能性之间。

*If the lawyer made a long, oratorical speech, the client was happy **whether** he won **or** lost.*
*Catching a frog can be a difficult business, **whether** you're a human **or** a bird **or** a reptile.*
***Whether** you go to a launderette **or** do your washing at home, the routine is the same.*

说明发生的事不受两个相反情况中任何一个影响时，用以 'whether or not' 引出的从句。

***Whether or not** people have religious faith, they can believe in the power of love.*
*I get an electrician to check all my electrical appliances every autumn, **whether or not** they are giving trouble.*

'Or not' 可置于从句末尾。

***Whether** I agreed **or not**, the search would take place.*

8.41 在 'whether'-从句中，动词为 'be' 时，有时用虚拟语气。动词用原形，不用第三人称单数形式。这种用法相当正式。

*Always immediately report such behaviour to the nearest person in authority, whether it **be** a school teacher or a policeman or anyone else.*

'Whether'- 从句中，动词为 'be'，主语为 'they' 或 'it' 等人称代词时，可省略 'be' 和代词。例如，可用 'All the villagers, whether young or old, help with the harvest' 替代 'All the villagers, whether they are young or old, help with the harvest'。

*A fresh pepper, **whether** red **or** green, lasts about three weeks.*
*They help people, **whether** chance visitors **or** students of medieval history, to learn more of our past.*

8.42 要说明无论是谁、哪个地方、什么原因、什么方式和什么东西对某事的状况来讲都无关紧要，则用 'whoever'、'wherever'、'however'、'whatever' 或 'whichever'。

***Whoever** wins this civil war there will be little rejoicing at the victory.*
***Wherever** it is, you aren't going.*
***However** it began, the battle was bound to develop into a large-scale conflict.*

'Whatever' 和 'whichever' 既作限定词，又可作代词。

***Whatever brand** you use, you will need four times as many teaspoonfuls as before.*
*That is why the deficit remains of key importance this year, **whatever** the Chancellor might say.*
***Whichever way** you look at it, neutrality is folly.*
*You can either sow wheat in rows or broadcast it. **Whichever** you do, it is a good thing to break up the soil after seeding.*

表示不管是谁、是什么都无关紧要的另一种方法，是用 'no matter' 后跟 'who'、'where'、'how'、'what' 或 'which'。

*Most people, **no matter who** they are, seem to have at least one.*
*Our aim is to recruit the best person for the job, **no matter where** they are from.*
***No matter how** I'm playing, I always get that special feeling.*

目的从句
Purpose clauses

8.43 要说明行为目的可用**目的从句** (purpose clauses)。

下列是目的从句里常用的连词：

in order that	so	so that
in order to	so as to	to

目的从句的种类
types of purpose clause

8.44 目的从句有两种。

最常用的是非限定目的小句，句中含有 'to'-不定式。

They had to take some of his land ***in order to extend the churchyard.***
Farmers have put up barricades ***to prevent hippies moving on to their land.***

非限定目的小句的主语总是与主句的主语一致。

☞ 非限定小句，参见 8.45 至 8.46 节。

限定从句通常含有 'that'-从句。

Be as clear and factual as possible ***in order that there may be no misunderstanding.***

☞ 限定目的小句，参见 8.47 至 8.48 节。

非限定小句
non-finite clauses

8.45 非限定目的小句通常以 'in order to' 或 'so as to' 引出。

They were shoving each other out of the way ***in order to*** *get to the front.*
They have tried to limit such imports ***in order to*** *protect their members' jobs.*
The best thing to do is to fix up a screen ***so as to*** *let in the fresh air and keep out the flies.*

要将非限定目的小句变为否定句时，'to' 前加 'not'。

Rose trod with care ***in order not to*** *spread the dirt.*
When removing a stain, work from the edge inwards ***so as not to*** *enlarge the area affected.*

8.46 非限定目的小句也可以是只带 'to'-不定式小句。

People would stroll down the path ***to*** *admire the garden.*
The children sleep together ***to*** *keep warm.*
To *understand what is happening now, we need to reflect on what has been achieved in the last decade.*

但是，此种结构不能用于否定式，例如，不可以说 'We keep the window shut not to let the flies in'，应该说 'We keep the window shut in order not to let the flies in'。

限定从句
finite clauses

8.47 限定从句通常以 'in order that'、'so that' 或 'so' 引出，并往往含有情态动词。

主句中的动词若为简单现在时或现在完成时，目的从句中则通常要用情态动词 'can'、'may'、'will' 或 'shall'。

*It's best to be as short, clear and factual as possible, **in order that** there **may** be no misunderstanding.*
*...people who are learning English **in order that** they **can** study a particular subject.*

主句中的动词若为简单过去时，目的从句中通常要用情态动词 'could'、'might'、'should' 或 'would'。

*A stranger in the crowd had hoisted Philip up on his shoulder **so that** he **might** see the procession depart.*
*I bought six cows **so that** we **should** have some milk to sell.*
*She said she wanted tea ready at six **so** she **could** be out by eight.*

偶尔也可用普通动词替代情态动词，尤其是目的从句为否定句时。

*Brian would like to increase his son David's wage, **so that** David **doesn't** get disillusioned because his contemporaries in less skilled jobs are earning more.*

☞ 'So that' 也用于**结果从句** (result clauses)，参见 8.55 和 8.56 节。

8.48 在正式英语或旧式英语中，'lest' 有时用在限定从句之首，表示要避免某种情况的发生。

例如 'They built a statue of him lest people should forget what he had done'，其含义为 'They built a statue of him so that people would not forget what he had done'。

*He was put in a cell with no clothes and shoes **lest** he injure himself.*
*He spoke in whispers **lest** the servants should hear him.*

以 'lest' 引出的从句中可以用虚拟语气或情态动词。

原因从句
Reason clauses

8.49 说明某事的原因时，用**原因从句** (reason clauses)。

下列是用于原因从句的主要连词：

as	because	in case	just in case	since

8.50 只为说明某事的原因，可以用 'because'、'since' 或 'as'。

I couldn't feel anger against him ***because*** *I liked him too much.*
I didn't know that she had been married, ***since*** *she seldom talked about herself.*
As *Celia had gone to school, it seemed a good time for Lady Ravenscroft to invite her sister to stay.*

8.51 提及将来可能出现的情况将成为某人做某事的理由时用 'in case' 或 'just in case'。原因从句中用简单现在时。

Mr Woods, I am here ***just in case*** *anything out of the ordinary* ***happens****.*

提及某人过去做某事的理由时，原因从句中用简单过去时。

Sam had consented to take an overcoat ***in case*** *the wind* ***rose****.*

8.52 'In that'、'inasmuch as'、'insofar as' 和 'to the extent that' 用于说明为什么刚刚进行的陈述是确实的。这些都属正式表达法。

I'm in a difficult situation ***in that*** *I have been offered two jobs and they both sound interesting.*
Censorship is feeble ***inasmuch as*** *it does not protect anyone.*
We are traditional ***insofar as*** *we do traditional sketches, but we try and do them about original ideas.*
He feels himself to be dependent ***to the extent that*** *he is not free to question decisions affecting his daily life.*

8.53 原因从句有时以 'for' 或 'seeing that' 引出。'For' 与 'because' 同义，'for' 用于原因从句现在被视为旧式用法。

We never see Henry these days, ***for*** *Henry has grown fat and lazy.*

'Seeing that' 与 'since' 同义，但仅限于非正式口语中使用。

Seeing that *you're the guest on this little trip, I won't tell you what I think of your behaviour last night.*

'Now' 和 'now that' 用以说明新的情况是促成某事的原因。'Now' 和 'now that' 引出的从句可作时间从句，参见 8.18 节。

结果从句
Result clauses

8.54 说明某事的结果时，用**结果从句** (result clauses)。

结果从句总是位于主句之后。

8.55 结果从句通常以 'so that' 引出。

可用 'so that' 来说明某事件或某情况产生的结果。

My suitcase had become damaged on the journey home, ***so that*** *the lid would not stay closed.*
A great storm had brought the sea right into the house, ***so that*** *they had been forced to make their escape by a window at the back.*
Many wives shoulder the prime responsibility for running the home, ***so that*** *in most families the loss of the wife is more devastating than the loss of the husband.*

也可用 'so'、'and so' 和 'and'。

The young do not have the money to save and the old are consuming their savings, ***so*** *it is mainly the middle-aged who are saving.*
She was having great difficulty getting her car out, ***and so*** *I had to move my car to let her out.*
Her boy friend was shot in the chest ***and*** *died.*

使用这种结果从句时，主句后通常加逗号。

8.56 也可用 'so that' 说明现在或过去，以特有方式完成某事所取得的预期的结果。

比如，'He fixed the bell so that it would ring when anyone came in'的含义是 'He fixed the bell in such a way that it would ring when anyone came in'。

Explain it ***so that*** *a 10-year-old could understand it.*
They arranged things ***so that*** *they never met.*

使用这种结果从句时，主句后通常不加逗号。

8.57 'So that' 也可用于限定性目的从句。参见 8.47 节。

8.58 'So' 和 'that' 也用在特殊结构里表示结果。这种结果的产生是由于某物具有的属性达到了特定的程度或某事发生的方式非同一般。

这类结构的 'so' 用在副词和形容词之前，作前置修饰语，然后再加上 'that'- 从句作后置修饰语。关于前置修饰语和后置修饰语，参见第二章。类似本节讨论的结构，参见 2.309 节。

The crowd was ***so*** *large* ***that it overflowed the auditorium.***
They were ***so*** *surprised* ***they didn't try to stop him.***

He dressed ***so*** *quickly* ***that he put his boots on the wrong feet****.*
She had fallen down ***so*** *often* ***that she was covered in mud****.*

有时用 'as' 替代 'that' ，其后跟带 'to'- 不定式小句。

...small beaches of sand ***so*** *white* ***as to dazzle the eye****.*
I hope that nobody was ***so*** *stupid* ***as to go around saying those things****.*

8.59 同样，'so' 和 'that' 也可与 'many'、'few'、'much' 和 'little' 连用。

We found ***so much*** *to talk about* ***that it was late at night when we remembered the time****.*
There were ***so many children you could hardly squeeze in the room****.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

8.60 主句中的动词为 'be' 或含助动词时，往往改变句子正常词序表示进一步强调。'So' 位于句首，后跟形容词、副词或名词词组，'be' 或助动词置于主语之前。

例如，可用 'So tiny was the room that you could not get a bed into it' 替代 'The room was so tiny that you could not get a bed into it'。

So *successful have they been* ***that they are moving to Bond Street****.*
So *rapid is the rate of progress* ***that advance seems to be following advance on almost a monthly basis****.*

8.61 'Such' 和 'that' 也用来说明结果。结果的产生是因某物的属性达到了特定的程度，将 'such' 置于名词词组之前，然后加上 'that'- 从句。

名词词组中的名词若为可数名词单数，则在名词之前加 'a' 或 'an'。

I slapped her hand and she got ***such*** *a shock* ***that she dropped the bag****.*
If you tell them I'm prepared to give evidence they'll get ***such*** *a scare* ***they'll drop the whole thing****.*
They obeyed him with ***such*** *willingness* ***that the strike went on for over a year****.*
These birds have ***such*** *small wings* ***that they cannot get into the air even if they try****.*

8.62 'Such' 也可在相同结构中作形容词，意为 'so great'，其后紧接 'that'- 从句。

The extent of the disaster was ***such that the local authorities were quite unable to cope****.*

有时 'such' 位于句首，后跟 'be' 加名词短语和 'that'- 从句。例如，可用 'Such was her beauty that they could only stare' 替代 'Her beauty was such that they could only stare'。

Such *is the power of suggestion* ***that within a very few minutes she fell asleep****.*

8.63 也可用 'such' 作形容词，表示结果的产生是由于某事特别。'Such' 后跟 'that'- 从句，或 'as'，然后再接 'to'- 不定式小句。

The machine's design should be ***such that its internal parts could be employed in a variety of ways****.*
The improvements to our defence had been ***such as to put invasion right out of the question****.*

短语 'in such a way' 用于说明以某种独特方式做某事所产生的结果。它后面跟 'that'- 从句，或 'as' 加 'to'- 不定式小句。

She had been taught to behave ***in such a way that her parents would have as quiet a life as possible****.*
Is it right that this high tax should be spent ***in such a way as to give benefit mainly to the motorist****?*

8.64 用 'otherwise'、'else' 或 'or else' 说明不出现某事就会发生另一事，或没有某种情况就会发生另一种情况。

例如，'Give me back my money, otherwise I'll ring the police' 意指 'If you don't give me back my money, I'll ring the police'。

I'm not used to living on my own so I want a house I'll like, ***otherwise*** *I'll get depressed.*
I must have done something wrong, ***or else*** *they wouldn't have kept me here.*

让步从句
Concessive clauses

8.65 有时要对两种情况进行陈述，使前后两种情况形成对照或一种情况使另一种情况变得令人感到意外。这时就可用**让步从句** (concessive clauses)。用让步从句可使两个陈述合在一个句子里。

下列连词用在让步从句中：

although	even though	much as	whereas
despite	except that	not that	while
even if	in spite of	though	whilst

对照
contrast

8.66 仅将两个陈述进行对照，可用 'although'、'though'、'even though' 或 'while'。

*I used to read a lot **although** I don't get much time for books now.*
***Though** he has lived for years in London, he writes in German.*
*I used to love listening to her, **even though** I could only understand about half of what she said.*
***While** I did well in class, I was a poor performer at games.*

也可用 'whilst' 和 'whereas'。这两个连词较为正式。

*Raspberries have a matt, spongy surface **whilst** blackberries have a taut, shiny skin.*
*To every child adult approval means love, **whereas** disapproval means hate.*

8.67 要说明某件或许属实的事不影响另一件事件的真实性，可用 'even if'。

*All this is part of modern commercial life (**even if** it is not as essential an activity as most participants care to believe).*
*From the minute he does these things he begins to be a different person, **even if** he doesn't realize it.*

☞ 'Even if' 也可用于**条件从句**(conditional clauses)，见 8.39 节。

8.68 可用 'not that' 替代 'although' 加否定语词。

例如，可用 'I have decided to leave – not that anyone will miss me' 替代 'I have decided to leave, although no one will miss me'。

由 'not that' 引出的从句总是位于主句之后。

*I wouldn't want to give away any secrets at this stage – **not that** we've got any answers yet.*
*Kunta continued sleeping in Omoro's hut for the next seven nights – **not that** anyone seemed to notice or care.*

例外 exceptions

8.69 表示某一个陈述具有例外情况时，可用 'except that'。

She treats her daughter the same as her younger boy ***except that*** *she takes her several times a week to a special clinic.*
Nobody said a thing ***except that*** *one or two asked me if I was better.*

这类从句有时称作**例外从句** (exception clauses)。

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

8.70 用 'though' 引出的从句以补足语结尾时，可把补足语提前，置于从句之首。例如，可用 'Tired though he was, he insisted on coming to the meeting' 替代 'Though he was tired, he insisted on coming to the meeting'。

Tempting though it may be to follow this point through*, it is not really relevant and we had better move on.*
I had to accept the fact, ***improbable though it was****.*
Astute business man though he was*, Philip was capable at times of extreme recklessness.*

当补足语为形容词时，可用 'as' 替代 'though'。

Stupid as it sounds*, I was so in love with her that I believed her.*

当 'though' 引出的从句以副词结尾时，往往可把这个副词置于从句句首。

Some members of the staff couldn't handle Murray's condition, ***hard though they tried****.*

当谈论强烈的感情和欲望时，可用 'much as' 替代 'although' 及其附加状语。例如，可用 'Much as I like Venice, I couldn't live there' 替代 'Although I like Venice very much, I couldn't live there'。

Much as they admired her looks and her manners*, they had no wish to marry her.*

非限定小句 non-finite clauses

8.71 'Although'、'though'、'while' 和 'whilst' 有时也用于非限定让步从句，例如 'Whilst he liked cats, he never let them come into his house'，可用 'Whilst liking cats, he never let them come into his house' 代替。

While *conceding the importance of freedom of speech, I believe it must be exercised with sensitivity and responsibility.*

'Despite' 和 'in spite of' 也可用于非限定让步从句之首。'Despite working hard, I failed my exams' 意指 'Although I worked hard, I failed my exams'。

Sensible, interested mothers still play a big part in their children's lives, ***despite*** *working and having a full-time nanny.*
We had two more years of profit ***in spite of*** *paying higher wages than the previous owner.*

8.72 'Although'、'though'、'while' 和 'whilst' 也可用于名词词组，形容词词组和附加状语之前。例如，'Although she was fond of Gregory, she did not love him'，可用 'Although fond of Gregory, she did not love him' 代替。同样，'They agreed to his proposal, though they had many reservations'，可用 'They agreed to his proposal, though with many reservations' 代替。

It was an unequal marriage, ***although*** *a stable and long-lasting one.*
Though *not very attractive physically, she possessed a sense of humour.*
They had followed her suggestion, ***though*** *without much enthusiasm.*

'Even if'、'if' 和 'albeit' 也可这样使用。'Albeit' 是一个正式连词。

By 1977 things were beginning to improve, ***even if****, in the view of the Royal Air Force, not quickly enough.*
...some pleasant, ***if*** *unexciting, tunes.*
Like mercury, lead affects the brain, ***albeit*** *in different ways.*

地点从句
Place clauses

8.73 有时谈论某物的位置和地点需要用从句，而不用简单的附加状语。这类从句称为**地点从句** (place clauses)。

8.74 地点从句通常以 'where' 引出。

He said he was happy ***where*** *he was.*
He left it ***where*** *it lay.*
...an official policy which encouraged people to stay ***where*** *they were.*

☞ 'Where' 也可用于关系从句。参见 8.104 至 8.106 节。

8.75 正式英语或文学语体的英语中，'where'- 从句有时用于主句之前。

Where *Kate had stood last night, Maureen now stood.*
Where *the pink cliffs rose out of the ground there were often narrow tracks winding upwards.*

8.76 说明某事物发生或将发生在另一件事物发生的任何地方时，可用 'wherever'。

Soft-stemmed herbs and ferns spread across the ground ***wherever*** *there was enough light.*
In Bali, ***wherever*** *you go, you come across ceremonies.*
Wherever *I looked, I found patterns.*

'Everywhere' 可以用来代替 'wherever'。

Everywhere *I went, people were angry or suspicious.*

8.77 'Where' 与 'wherever' 有时可位于 'possible' 和 'necessary' 等形容词之前。此时，其含义为 'when' 或 'whenever'，而不是 'where'。这一用法详见 8.24 节。

方式从句
Clauses of manner

8.78 要表示某人的行为或做事的方式时，用**方式从句** (clauses of manner)。

下列连词用于方式从句中：

as	as though	like
as if	just as	much as

'The way'、'in a way' 和 'in the way' 也用于方式从句中，其用法与连词相同，后面常带 'that'。

说明做某事的方式
saying how something is done

8.79 仅说明某人的行为或做某事的方式时，用 'like'、'as'、'the way'、'in a way' 或 'in the way'。

Is she often rude and cross ***like*** *she's been this last month?*
I don't understand why he behaves ***as*** *he does.*
I was never allowed to do things ***the way*** *I wanted to do them.*
He was looking at her ***in a way*** *she did not recognise.*
We have to make it work ***in the way*** *that we want it to.*

进行比较
making comparisons

8.80 上述表达式也可用来将某人某物做某事的方式，与他人他物做同一件事的方式进行比较。

*Surely you don't intend to live by yourself **like** she does?*
*Joyce looked at her **the way** a lot of girls did.*

比较程度较强时，用 'just as'。

*It swims above the sea floor **just as** its ancestors did.*

比较程度较弱时，用 'much as'。

*They are endeavouring to disguise this fact **much as** Jasper Johns did in the late 1950s.*

8.81 有时，说明在假定情况下做某事，可用 'as if' 或 'as though'。在方式从句中用过去时。

*He holds his head forward **as if** he **has hit** it too often on low doorways.*
*Presidents can't dispose of companies **as if** people **didn't exist**.*
*She treats him **as though** he **was** her own son.*
*He behaved **as though** it **was** nothing to be ashamed of.*

在连系动词 'feel' 或 'look' 之后用 'as if' 或 'as though'，表示把某人的感觉或外貌，与在假设情况下某人会有的感觉或外貌作比较。

*She felt **as if** she **had** a fever.*
*His hair looked **as if** it **had been combed** with his fingers.*
*Her pink dress and her frilly umbrella made her look **as though** she **had come** to a garden party.*

正式英语中，在由 'as if' 或 'as though' 引出的从句里，可用 'were' 来代替 'was'。

*She shook as if she **were** crying, but she made no sound.*
*I felt as if I **were** the centre of the universe.*
*You talk as though he **were** already condemned.*

'Just' 可置于 'as if' 或 'as though' 之前表示强调。

*He had no right to run off and leave her alone, **just as if** she was someone of no importance at all.*

8.82 'As if' 和 'as though' 也可用于以 'to'-不定式或分词引出的非限定小句中。

***As if** to remind him, the church clock struck eleven.*
*He ran off to the house **as if** escaping.*
*He shook his head **as though** dazzled by his own vision.*

'As if' 和 'as though' 也可用在形容词和介词短语之前。

*One must row steadily onwards **as if** intent on one's own business.*
*He shivered **as though** with cold.*

关系从句
Relative clauses

8.83 在句中提及某人或某物时，往往还要对他们提供进一步的信息。方法之一是用**关系从句** (relative clauses)。

关系从句直接用在表示所谈的人、物或群体的名词之后。

*The man **who came into the room** was small and slender.*
*Opposite is St. Paul's Church, **where you can hear some lovely music**.*

关系从句的功能与形容词相似。有时也称**形容词性从句** (adjectival clauses)。

名词性关系从句 (nominal relative clauses) 的功能与名词词组相似，参见 8.112 至 8.116 节。

关系代词
relative pronouns

8.84 多数关系从句用关系代词 (relative pronouns) 引出，关系代词常在关系从句中作主语或动词的宾语。

*He is the only person **who** might be able to help.*
*Most of the mothers have a job, **which** they take both for the money and the company.*

下列是最常用的关系代词：

that	which	who	whom	whose

关系代词无阳性、阴性或复数形式，同一个代词可用来指代男人、女人或一群人。

*She didn't recognize the man **who** had spoken.*
*I met a girl **who** knew Mrs Townsend.*
*There are many people **who** find this intolerable.*

有些关系从句不含关系代词。

*Nearly all the people **I used to know** have gone.*

参见 8.90 、 8.91 和 8.96 节。

关系从句的种类
kinds of relative clause

8.85 关系从句有两种。

限制性关系从句 (defining relative clauses) 表示所谈的是哪个人及哪件事。比如说 'I met the woman' 所指何人不清楚，因此要说 'I met the woman who lives next door'。句中 'who lives next door' 是限制性关系从句。

*Shortly after the shooting, the man **who had done** it was arrested.*
*Mooresville is the town **that John Dillinger came from**.*

☞ 限制性关系从句是一种后置修饰语，参见 2.289 至 2.320 节。

非限制性关系从句 (non-defining relative clauses) 对所谈的人、物或群体只提供进一步的信息，无需对他们加以确定。如说 'I saw Kylie Minogue' 时，很清楚指的是谁。但若要进一步说明 Kylie Minogue，则可说，比如 'I saw Kylie Minogue, who was staying at the hotel opposite'。句中 'who was staying at the hotel opposite' 是非限制性关系从句。

*He was waving to the girl, **who was running along the platform**.*
*He walked down to Broadway, the main street of the town, **which ran parallel to the river**.*

非限制性关系从句主要用于书面语而不是口语。

标点符号
punctuation

8.86 在句子中间，非限制性关系从句的前、后通常都用逗号，但在主句后时，在从句句末用句号。破折号有时也可替代逗号。

*Sir Denis, **who is 78**, has let it be known that much of his collection is to be left to the nation.*

限制性关系从句前绝不用逗号或破折号。

*The woman **who owns this cabin** will come back in the autumn.*

用于代词之后
use after pronouns

8.87 限制性关系从句可置于某些代词之后。

用于 'someone'、'anyone' 和 'everything' 等不定代词 (indefinite pronouns) 之后。

*This is **something I'm very proud of**.*
*In theory **anyone who lives or works in the area** may be at risk.*
*Karen Blixen was being feted by **everyone who knew her work**.*

有时也用于 'some'、'many'、'much'、'several'、'all' 或 'those' 之后。

Like ***many who met him in those days*** *I was soon charmed.*
...the feelings of ***those who have suffered from the effects of crime****.*

还可用于**人称代词** (personal pronouns) 之后。但仅限于正式英语和旧式英语中使用。

He who is not for reform *is against it.*
*...****we who are supposed to be so good at talking and writing****.*

非限制性关系从句从不用于代词之后。

非限定小句 non-finite clauses

8.88 关系从句有时也可缩略为**非限定小句** (non-finite clauses)。

例如，可用 'Give it to the man wearing the bowler hat' 来替代 'Give it to the man who is wearing the bowler hat'。同样，可用 'The bride, smiling happily, chatted to the guests' 来替代 'The bride, who was smiling happily, chatted to the guests'。

此类用法参见 8.117 至 8.133 节以及讨论后置修饰语部分的 2.317 和 2.318 节。

限制性从句中关系代词的使用
Using relative pronouns in defining clauses

8.89 以下各节说明在限制性关系从句中代词的使用。

指人 referring to people

8.90 指一个人或一群人时，用 'who' 或 'that' 作限制性关系从句的主语。'Who' 比 'that' 更为常用。

The man ***who*** *employed me would transport anything anywhere.*
...the people ***who*** *live in the cottage.*
...somebody ***who*** *is really ill.*
...the man ***that*** *made it.*

可用 'who'、'that' 或 'whom' 作限制性关系从句的宾语，或根本不用这类代词。

...someone ***who*** *I haven't seen for a long time.*
...a woman ***that*** *I dislike.*
...distant relatives ***whom*** *he had never seen.*
...a man I know.

可用 'that' 作限制性关系从句的补足语，或根本不用这类代词。

*...the distinguished actress **that** she later became.*
That was the kind of person she was.

最高级后面通常不用关系代词。

He was the cleverest man I ever knew.
...the best boy we ever had.

关于**最高级**(superlatives)，详见2.117至2.127节。

指物
referring to things

8.91 指一个或者数个事物时，用 'which' 或 'that' 作限制性关系从句的主语。

*...pasta **which** came from Milan.*
*In fact there are strategies **which** are much more reliable.*
*There are a lot of things **that** are wrong.*

可用 'which' 或 'that' 作限制性关系从句的宾语，或根本不用这类代词。

*...shells **which** my sister had collected.*
*...the oxygen **that** it needs.*
...one of the things I'll never forget.

在 'much' 或 'all' 后用 'that'，不用 'which'。

*There was not much **that** the military men could do.*
*Happiness is all **that** matters.*

非限制性从句中关系代词的使用
Using relative pronouns in non-defining clauses

8.92 以下各节说明在非限制性关系从句中代词的使用。

与限制性关系从句不同，在非限制性关系从句中不可没有关系代词。

指人
referring to people

8.93 指一个人或一群人时，可用 'who' 作非限制性关系从句的主语。

*Heath Robinson, **who** died in 1944, was a graphic artist and cartoonist.*
*The horse's rider, **who** has not been named, was too distressed to talk to police.*

可用 'who' 或 'whom' 作非限制性关系从句的宾语。

*That's one of the things which Heath, **who** I do not like, had a clear idea about.*
*He then became involved in a row with the party chairman, **whom** he accused of lying.*

指物 referring to things

8.94 指一个或数个事物时，可用 'which' 作非限制性关系从句的主语或宾语。

*The treatment, **which** is being tried by researchers at four hospitals, has helped patients who have failed to respond to other remedies.*
*British Rail, **which** has launched an enquiry, said one coach was badly damaged.*
*He was a man of considerable inherited wealth, **which** he ultimately spent on his experiments.*
*...this offer, **which** few can resist.*

关系代词与介词连用
Using relative pronouns with prepositions

8.95 关系代词可作介词的宾语。介词通常置于从句句末，而不在代词之前。

*...the job which I'd been training **for**.*
*...the universe that we live **in**.*
*...the woman who Muller left his money **to**.*

无代词 no pronoun

8.96 日常口语中一般不用关系代词。

*Angela was the only person I could talk **to**.*
*...that place I used to go **to** last term.*
*That's all we have time **for** this week.*

间接宾语 indirect objects

8.97 关系代词作动词的间接宾语时，用 'to' 或 'for'。例如，可说 'the man that she wrote the letter to'，而不能说 'the man that she wrote the letter'。

*...pieces of work that we give a mark **to**.*

无关系代词时，也要用 'to' 或 'for'。

*...the girl I sang the song **for**.*

正式用法 formal use

8.98 正式英语中，介词可置于从句之首，'whom' 或 'which' 之前。

*These are the people **to whom** Catherine was referring.*
*...a woman friend **with whom** Rose used to go for walks.*
*...questions **to which** there were no answers.*

注意，介词不可置于 'who' 或 'that' 之前。

短语动词
phrasal verbs

8.99 关系从句中的动词，如果是以介词结尾的**短语动词** (phrasal verbs)，则不可把介词移至从句之首。

*...all the things I've had to put up **with**.*
*...the kind of life he was looking forward **to**.*
*There are other problems, which I don't propose to go **into** at the moment.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

8.100 'Some'、'many' 和 'most' 等词可置于由 'of whom' 或 'of which' 引出的非限制性关系从句之前。

*At the school we were greeted by the teachers, **most of whom** were middle-aged.*
*It is a language shared by several quite diverse cultures, **each of which** uses it differently.*

数词置于 'of whom' 的前后均可。

*They act mostly on suggestions from present members (**four of whom** are women).*
*Altogether 1,888 people were prosecuted, **of whom 1,628** were convicted.*

'Whose' 的使用
Using 'whose'

8.101 说明某事与提及的人、事物有关时，可用 'whose' 和名词词组引出的关系从句。

例如，可用 'I am writing a letter to Nigel, whose father is ill' 替代 'I am writing a letter to Nigel. His father is ill'。

'Whose' 可用于限制性或非限制性关系从句中。

*...workers **whose bargaining power** is weak.*
*...anyone **whose credit card** is stolen.*
*She asked friends **whose opinion** she respected.*
*...a country **whose population** was growing.*
*According to Cook, **whose book** is published on Thursday, most disasters are avoidable.*

'Whose' 后的名词可在从句中作动词的主语或宾语，或介词宾语。作介词宾语时，介词置于从句句首句尾均可。

*...the governments in **whose territories** they operate.*
*...some strange fragment of thought **whose origin** I have no idea of.*

8.102 书面英语中，'of which' 与 'of whom' 有时可替代 'whose'。这种表达方式可放在以 'the' 开头的名词词组之后。例如，可用 'a town the inhabitants of which speak French' 来替代 'a town whose inhabitants speak French'。

*...circumstances **the continuance of which** was prejudicial to the safety of the public.*
*I travelled in a lorry **the back of which** the owner had loaded with yams.*

其他关系代词的使用
Using other relative pronouns

8.103 另外有些词和表达式也可用作关系代词。

非限制性关系从句 non-defining clauses

8.104 'When' 和 'where' 可用于非限制性关系从句中。

*I want to see you at 12 o'clock, **when** you go to your lunch.*
*Dan's fondest memory is of last year, **when** the club gave a tea party for the Queen Mother.*
*He came from Herne Bay, **where** Lally had once spent a holiday.*
*She carried them up the stairs to the art room, **where** the brushes and paints had been set out.*

限制性关系从句 defining clauses

8.105 'When' 和 'where' 也可用于限制性关系从句中，但仅用于从句前有特定的名词时。

'When'- 从句之前须有 'time' 或表示一段时间的名称，如 'day' 或 'year' 等。

*There had been **a time when** she thought they were wonderful.*
*This is **the year when** the profits should start.*

'Where'- 从句前须有 'place' 或表示地点的名称，如 'room' 或 'street' 等。

*...**the place where** they work.*
*...**the room where** I did my homework.*
*...**the street where** my grandmother had lived.*

注意，像 'London' 这样的地名属**专有名词** (proper nouns)，后面不跟限制性关系从句。

8.106 'Where' 还可用于限制性从句中，置于 'situation' 和 'stage' 等词之后。

*Increasing poverty has led to **a situation where** the poorest openly admit that they cannot afford to have children.*
*In time we reached **a stage where** we had more black readers than white ones.*

8.107 'Why' 可用于限制性关系从句中，置于 'reason' 之后。

*That is **a major reason why** they were such poor countries.*

'Whereby' 也可用于限制性关系从句中，置于 'arrangement' 和 'system' 等词之后。

*I had worked out **a rotating arrangement whereby** every person would have a different roommate in each city.*
*They made **a deal whereby** he would sail for America and be commissioned in the revolutionary army.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

8.108 在限制性关系从句中，另外还有些表达式可替代 'when'、'where'、'why' 和 'whereby'。

'Time' 之后可用 'at which' 替代 'when'。

*...**the time at which** the original mineral was formed.*

'Place' 以及 'room'、'street'、'year'、'month' 等词之后可用 'in which' 替代 'where' 或 'when'。

*...**the place in which** they found themselves.*
*...**the room in which** the meeting would be held.*
*...**the year in which** Lloyd George lost power.*

'Day' 之后可用 'on which' 替代 'when'。

*Sunday was **the day on which** we were expected to spend some time with my father.*

'Reason' 之后可用 'that' 替代 'why'，或不用代词。

*...**the reason that** non-violence is considered to be a virtue.*
*That's **the reason** I'm checking it now.*

'Situation'、'stage'、'arrangement' 或 'system' 等词之后，可用 'in which' 替代 'where' 或 'whereby'。

*...**a state of affairs in which** the bonds between parents and children have been loosed.*

非限制性关系从句的附加说明
Additional points about non-defining relative clauses

8.109 书面英语中，非限制性关系从句可用于说明某事发生之后另一件事件又发生。

例如，可说 'I gave the book to George, who gave it to Mary'，替代 'I gave the book to George. George then gave it to Mary'。

Lord Thomson had bought the paper in the Fifties from Lord Kemsley, ***who had thereupon retired into obscurity****.*
The molten metal ran out on to the flagstones, ***which promptly exploded****.*
Later he went to New Zealand, ***where he did all sorts of jobs****.*

评论事实
commenting on a fact

8.110 用 'which' 引出的非限制性关系从句，可用以说明整个的主句的内容，而不是说明主句提及的某人或某事。

Minute computers need only minute amounts of power, ***which means that they will run on small batteries****.*
I never met Brando again, ***which was a pity****.*
Prior to speaking she was a little tense, ***which was understandable****.*

说明时间或场所
commenting on a time or situation

8.111 要对所说的事进行补充时，往往可用由介词加 'which' 再加名词引出的非限制性关系从句，名词常为 'time' 或 'point' 等词，或 'case'、'event' 等泛义名词。

They remain in the pouch for some seven weeks, ***by which time*** *they are about 10cm long.*
I was told my work was unsatisfactory, ***at which point*** *I submitted my resignation.*
Sometimes you may feel too frail to cope with things, ***in which case*** *do them as soon as it is convenient.*

名词性关系从句
Nominal relative clauses

8.112 难以用名词词组说明某事时，往往用一种特殊的关系从句，叫**名词性关系从句** (nominal relative clauses)。

What he really needs *is a nice cup of tea.*
Whatever she does *will determine the future of her administration.*

8.113 以 'what' 引出的名词性关系从句可用作主语、宾语或补足语。'What' 意指 'the thing which' 或 'the things which'。

__What he said__ was perfectly true.
They did not like __what he wrote__.
I believe that is a very good account of __what happened__.
I'm __what's generally called a traitor__.

常将 'what'- 从句置于 'is' 或 'was' 之前，说明要谈的是什么事。

__What I need__ is a lawyer.
__What you have to do__ is to choose five companies to invest in.

此种结构在 10.28 至 10.30 节讨论。

☞ 名词性关系从句中 'what' 的另一种用法参见 8.116 节。

8.114 以 'where' 引出的名词性关系从句通常置于介词或 'be' 动词之后。'Where' 意指 'the place where'。

I threw down my book and crossed the room to __where she was sitting__.
The god would return from __where the sun rises__ and lay waste to the Aztec civilisation.
Stroud, I think, is __where I want to die__.

8.115 以 'whatever'、'whoever' 或 'whichever' 引出的名词性关系从句用以指未知或不确定的人或物。

'Whatever' 只用于指物、'whoever' 指人、'whichever' 则指人或指物。

'Whatever'、'whoever' 和 'whichever' 可用作代词。'Whichever' 之后常跟 'of'。

I'll do __whatever you want__.
These wild flowers are so rare I want to do __whatever I can__ to save them.
...a person with written authority from __whoever is dealing with the will__.
People will choose __whichever of these regimes they find suits them best__.

'Whatever' 和 'whichever' 也可用作限定词。

She had had to rely on __whatever books were lying around there__.
Choose __whichever one of the three methods you fancy__.

'Whatever'、'whoever' 和 'whichever' 的用法，详见 8.42 节。

8.116 'What' 和 'whatever' 意义相同，既可作代词，又可作限定词。

Do __what you like__.
People survived by sharing out __what money they could get from cattlework__.

'What' 在名词性关系从句中的主要用法，参见 8.113 节。

非限定小句
Non-finite clauses

8.117 非限定小句是指含分词或不定式，但不含限定动词的从句。非限定小句有两种。一种用**从属连词** (subordinating conjunctions) 引出。

*Quite often **while talking to you** they'd stand on one foot.*
*You've got to do something **in depth in order to understand it**.*

此类分句参见状语从句部分（8.8至8.82节）。

另一种不用从属连词引出。

*He pranced about, **feeling very important indeed**.*
*I wanted **to talk to her**.*

此类分句有时只是一个分词，而没有带其他成分。

*Ellen shook her head, **smiling**.*
*Bet, **grumbling**, had departed to her harp lesson.*

含分词而不用从属连词引出的小句在以下各节论述。

非限定小句的种类
kinds of non-finite clause

8.118 以下各节讨论的非限定小句的功能与关系从句相似；与关系从句一样，非限定小句具有限制性和非限制性两种功能。

非限制性分句，参见8.120至8.131节，这种小句常用于书面语，一般不用于口语。

限制性小句，参见8.132和8.133节。这种分句偶尔也用于英语书面语和口语中。

非限定小句的位置
position of non-finite clauses

8.119 非限定小句可位于主句之前、之后、或中间。通常用逗号将它与句子其他部分分开。

限制性小句总是位于名词词组之后，小句前面从不加逗号。

非限制性小句的使用
Using non-defining clauses

8.120 非限制性小句提供附加信息，对所谈论的一个、数个人或物无需加以确定。

在 8.121 至 8.126 节里，对这类小句在与主句的主语有关时的用法加以说明。在非限制性小句中，不提主语。

现在分词：同步事件
present participle: simultaneous events

8.121 说明某人同时做或经历两件事时，可在主句中提及一件，在含现在分词的小句中提及另一件事件。

__Laughing and shrieking__, the crowd rushed under the nearest trees.
Jane watched, __weeping__, from the doorway.
__Feeling a little foolish__, Pluskat hung up.
__Walking about__, you notice something is different.
People stared at her. __Seeing herself in a shop window__, she could understand why.

现在分词：先后行为
present participle: one action after another

8.122 说明某人做一件事后，立即做另一件时，可在含现在分词的小句中提及第一个行为，在主句中提及第二个行为。

__Leaping out of bed__, he dressed so quickly that he put his boots on the wrong feet.

现在分词：原因
present participle: reasons

8.123 说明某人做某事的理由或某事发生的原因，可在主句中说明所发生的事，在含现在分词的小句中说明原因。

At one point I made up my mind to go and talk to Uncle Sam. Then I changed my mind, __realising that he could do nothing to help__.
The baby would probably not live to grow up, __being a scrawny little thing, unlikely to survive the normal ailments of childhood__.

8.124 现在分词也可在句子中直接用于动词之后，如 'I stood shivering at the roadside'。参见 3.190 至 3.203 节。

'having' 加过去分词：结果
'having' and past participle: results

8.125 说明某人做或经历先后两件事时，可在含 'having' 及过去分词的小句中提及第一件事。这类结构常用于说明第二件事是第一件事产生的结果。

I did not feel terribly shocked, __having expected him to take the easiest way out__.
__Having married very late__, he was only a year short of fifty when I was born.

过去分词：先前发生的事件
past participle: earlier events

8.126 说明在主句所述情况或事件之前某人或某物如何时，可在含过去分词的小句中说明先前发生的事。

The novels of Mary Webb, __praised by Stanley Baldwin__ and so popular in the 30s, were great favourites of mine.

Angered by the policies of the union, *she wrote a letter to the General Secretary.*

提及主语
mentioning the subject

8.127 有时，需用主语不同于主句的非限制性小句，这类小句在 8.128 至 8.131 节进行讨论。

8.128 这类非限制性小句中，通常需要提及主语。

Ashton being dead, *the whole affair must now be laid before Colonel Browne.*

但是，非限制性小句若位于主句之后，而且从上下文看很明显与主句的宾语有关，那就不必再提宾语。

They picked me up, ***kicking and bawling***, *and carried me up to the road.*

现在分词
present participle

8.129 在以下场合用含主语及现在分词的非限制性小句：

- 谈及与主句所述的情况或事件同时发生的事时

Her eyes glistening with tears, *she stood up and asked the Council:'What am I to do?'*

- 谈及与主句所述事实有关的事实时

Bats are surprisingly long-lived creatures, ***some having a life-expectancy of around twenty years***.

'With' 有时候加在这种非限定性小句之前。

The old man stood up ***with tears running down his face***.

过去分词
past participle

8.130 用 'having' 加过去分词，说明分句叙述的事比主句叙述的事先发生。

About twice a month, ***enough evidence having accumulated***, *the police would feel obliged to stage a raid.*
The Border having become more settled, *they had selected a site near the Kalpani River.*
George having been carried to his cabin, *Ash had gone up to the deserted deck.*
The subject having been opened, *he had to go on with it.*

只用过去分词，说明分句叙述的事在主句叙述的事之前已经完成。

He proceeded to light his pipe. ***That done***, *he put on his woollen scarf and went out.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

8.131 否定式非限制性小句中，'not' 置于分词之前，或 'having' 之前。

*He paused, **not wishing to boast**.*
*He failed to recognize her at first, **not having seen her for fifteen years or so**.*
*He began hitting them with his stick, **their reply not having come as quickly as he wanted**.*

限制性小句的使用
Using defining clauses

8.132 限制性非限定小句说明所谈的是何人、何物。这类小句总是位于名词词组的名词之后。

*The old lady **driving the horse** was all in black.*
*The bus **carrying the freedom riders** arrived just before noon.*

用于代词之后 use after pronouns

8.133 限制性小句可用在不定代词 'anyone' 之后。

*Anyone **following this advice** could find himself in trouble.*
*Ask anybody **nearing the age of retirement** what they think.*

与非限定小句用法类似的其他结构
Other structures used like non-finite clauses

8.134 不含动词但用法与非限定小句类似的短语有时用于书面语中。

8.135 书面语中，可在句子里加上含有一个或更多形容词的短语。这是在一个句子里表示两个陈述的另一种方法。

例如，可在书面语中用 'Tired and hungry, we reached the farm' 替代 'We were tired and hungry. We reached the farm'。

***Surprised at my reaction**, she tried to console me.*
***Much discouraged**, I moved on to Philadelphia.*
*The boy nodded, **pale and scared**.*
*He knocked at the door, **sick with fear and embarrassment**.*
*'Of course,' said Ash, **astonished**.*

8.136 同样，可用一个短语说明与句子主语有关的事物。这种短语由名词词组后跟形容词、或跟附加状语或跟另一个名词词组构成。例如，可用 'He came into the room, his hat in his hand' 替代 'He came into the room. His hat was in his hand'。

'What do you mean by that?' said Hugh, ***his face pale****.*
She stood very erect, ***her body absolutely stiff with fury****.*
He was waiting, drumming with his fingers, ***his eyes on his napkin****.*

这种短语之前有时可加 'with'。

She walked on, ***with her eyes straight ahead****.*
It was a hot, calm day, ***with every object at the sea's surface visible for miles****.*

并列关系
Coordination

8.137 说话或写文章时，往往要把同等重要的两个或更多的分句组合在一起。此时，需要用**并列连词** (coordinating conjunctions)。

Anna had to go into town ***and*** *she wanted to go to Bride Street.*
I asked if I could borrow her bicycle ***but*** *she refused.*
He had been only a baby then, ***yet*** *he had not been afraid.*

下列为最常见的并列连词：

and	nor	then
but	or	yet

并列连词也用以连接词与词，或词组与词组。

The boys shouted ***and*** *rushed forward.*
...domestic animals such as dogs ***and*** *cats.*
Her manner was hurried ***yet*** *painstakingly courteous.*
He toppled slowly ***but*** *inexorably off the fence.*

有时，两个并列连词可一起使用。

It is a simple game ***and yet*** *interesting enough to be played with skill.*
Eric moaned something ***and then*** *lay still.*

用并列连词连接句子、词或词组，叫做**并列** (coordination)。并列连词有时称为**并列词语** (coordinators)。

8.138 并列连词的不同用法在下表列出的各节予以说明：

分句	8.139 至 8.151 节
动词	8.152 至 8.158 节
名词词组	8.159 至 8.167 节
形容词和副词	8.168 至 8.177 节
其他词组	8.178 至 8.181 节

对并列连词加以强调的方式，参见 8.182 至 8.187 节。

两个以上分句、词或词组的连接，参见 8.188 至 8.189 节。

连接分句
Linking clauses

8.139 并列连词可用于连接主语相同或不相同的分句。

第二分句中词语的省略
omitting words in the second clause

8.140 连接主语相同的分句时，第二个分句不必重复主语。

连词为 'and'、'or' 或 'then' 时，一般不必重复主语。

He took her hands from her eyes ***and led her towards the house****.*
It's a long time since you've bought them a drink ***or talked to them****.*
When she recognized Morris she went pale, ***then blushed****.*

连词为 'but'、'so' 或 'yet' 时，一般需要重复主语。

I try and see it their way, ***but I can't****.*
I had no car, ***so I hired one for the journey****.*
He lost the fight, ***yet somehow he emerged with his dignity enhanced****.*

当连接的分句主语不同，而分句里含有其他相同成分时，相同成分在第二分句中可不必重复。

例如，可用'Some of them went to one pub and some to the other' 替代 'Some of them went to one pub and some of them went to the other pub'。

One soldier was killed ***and another wounded****.*
One of its sides was painted black ***and the other white****.*

并列连词的作用
functions of coordinating conjunctions

8.141 并列连词可用来连接分句，也可用来补充说明所连接的分句间的关系。这些用法在以下各节讨论。

相关事实 related facts

8.142 只谈两个相关的事实时，用 'and'。

*He has been successful in Hollywood **and** has worked with such directors as Norman Jewison and Richard Attenborough.*
*The company will not be split up **and** will continue to operate from Belfast.*
*He gained a B in English **and** now plans to study Spanish.*

'And' 也用于说明两件事曾经同时或正在同时发生。

*I sat **and** watched him.*

'And' 的其他用法在以下各节讨论。

序列 sequence

8.143 用 'and' 连接两个叙述事件的分句时，说明第一个分句中的事件发生在第二个分句中的事件之前。

*She was born in Budapest **and** raised in Manhattan.*
*He opened the car door **and** got out.*

'Then' 也可这样用，但不如 'and' 常见。

*He held his hand to direct the water in a spray across his face, **then** dipped his head and drank.*

两个否定的事实 two negative facts

8.144 连接两个否定分句时，一般用 'and'。

*When his appointment ceased he did not return to his home country **and** he has not been there since 1979.*

但当分句主语及助动词相同时，可用 'or' 连接。第二个分句中可省略主语、助动词和 'not'。

例如，可用 'She doesn't drink or smoke' 替代 'She doesn't drink and she doesn't smoke'。

*We will not pay ransom **or** do deals for hostages.*
*He didn't yell **or** scream.*

还可用 'and neither'、'and nor' 或 'nor' 连接两个否定分句。可置 'be' 或助动词于第二个分句之首，主语之前。

例如，可用 'My sister doesn't like him, and neither do I' 替代 'My sister doesn't like him, and I don't like him'。

*I was not happy **and neither were they**.*
*I could not afford to eat in restaurants **and nor could anyone else I knew**.*
*Clearly these people are not insane, **nor are they fools**.*

也可用 'but neither' 和 'but nor'。

*This isn't a dazzling record, **but neither is it rubbish**.*
*Institutions of learning are not taxed **but nor are they much respected**.*

用 'and' 连接两个否定陈述时，可置 'either' 于第二个陈述分句的末尾。

*I hadn't been to a pop festival before and Mike hadn't **either**.*
*Electricity didn't come into Blackhall Farm until recently and they hadn't any water **either**.*

强调时，可用 'neither' 和 'nor' 连接两个否定分句，这一种用法在 8.186 节讨论。

对比 contrast

8.145 当加上构成对比的事实时，一般用 'but'。

*I'm only 63, **but** I feel a hundred.*
*It costs quite a lot **but** it's worth it.*
*I've had a very pleasant two years, **but** I can't wait to get back to the City.*
*Yes, we will be using motor racing to promote our products, **but** we will also be using it to promote good, safe and sober driving.*

要增加一个与刚说过的事实形成强烈对照的事实时，可用 'yet' 或 'and yet'。

*Everything around him was blown to pieces, **yet** the minister escaped without a scratch.*
*I want to leave, **and yet** I feel obliged to stay.*

通常在 'but'、'yet' 或 'and yet' 之前用逗号。

选择 alternatives

8.146 提到两种选择时，用 'or'。

*I could kill a rabbit with my bare hands **or** shoot a bullock without the least bother.*
*We can try to increase the intelligence of our domestic animals **or** evolve wholly new ones with much higher intelligence.*
*Was the mine laid in the harbour **or** did it drift in from the Gulf of Mexico?*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

8.147 对受话人提出忠告，有时是告诉他做了某件事会出现的后果。可用祈使分句提出忠告，分句后跟 'and' 再加一个含有将来时动词的分句。

例如，可用 'Go by train and you'll get there quicker'，替代 'If you go by train, you'll get there quicker'。

*Do as you are told **and** you'll be alright.*
*You put me out here **and** you'll lose your job tomorrow.*

提出忠告、警告或发出命令时，往往是要告诉某人若不按照所说去做就会发生什么事，可用祈使句，其后跟 'or' 和一个含有将来时动词的分句。

例如，可用 'Go away, or I'll scream' 替代 'Go away! If you don't go away, I'll scream.'。

*Hurry up, **or** you'll be late for school.*
*So don't go prying into my affairs **or** you'll get hurt.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

8.148 书面语中，有时句子可以由并列连词引出，这样可使句子显得更生动有力。但也有人认为此种用法不正确。

*The villagers had become accustomed to minor earth tremors. **But** everyone knew that something unusual had woken them on Monday.*
*Do you think there is something wrong with her? **Or** do you just not like her?*
*Send him ahead to warn Eric. **And** close that door.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

8.149 书面语中，有时不用并列连词连接两个分句，而用分号或破折号。当没有适当的并列连词时，可用这种方法将两个陈述合并成一句。

The neighbours drove by; they couldn't bear to look.
When we embraced I couldn't say thank you – those words were far too small for someone who had risked her life to save mine.

非限定小句 non-finite clauses

8.150 并列连词可用于连接非限定小句。

不定式小句可以用 'and' 或 'or' 连接。

*We need to persuade more drivers to leave their cars at home **and** to use the train instead.*
*She may decide to remarry **or** to live with one of her sisters.*

有时可省略第二个 'to'。

*Soldiers tried to clear road obstructions **and** remove flags and graffiti.*

第二个分句为否定句时，可用 'not' 替代 'and not'。

*I am paid to treat people, **not** to interrogate them.*

'And' 或 'or' 可用于连接用分词引出的分句。

The mother lay on the bed gazing at the child ***and*** *smiling at him.*
You may be more comfortable wearing a cotton dress or shirt ***or*** *sleeping under a cotton blanket.*

但是，第一个小句若用 'standing'、'sitting' 或 'lying' 引出，两个小句之间通常不加 'and'。

Inside were two lines of old people sitting facing each other.

8.151 两个以上分句的连接，参见 8.188 节。

连接动词
Linking verbs

8.152 说明同一个人、物或群体所进行的两个动作时，可用并列连词连接两个动词。

不及物动词 intransitive verbs

8.153 并列连词可用于连接不及物动词。

Mostly, they just ***sat*** *and* ***chatted****.*
We both ***shrugged*** *and* ***laughed****.*

及物动词 transitive verbs

8.154 叙述有相同主语和宾语的两个动作时，用并列连词连接两个及物动词，宾语置于第二个动词之后。

例如，可用 'He swept and polished the floor'，替代 'He swept the floor and polished the floor'。

Wash *and* ***trim*** *the leeks.*

同样，可用 'They walk or cycle to work'，替代 'They walk to work or cycle to work'。

I ***shouted*** *and* ***hooted*** *at them.*

省略助动词 omitting the auxiliary

8.155 连接含相同助动词的动词词组时，第二个分句可不必重复助动词。

Someone ***may be killed*** *or* ***seriously injured****.*
...a solid form of the drug that is ***smoked****, not* ***inhaled****.*
We are blessed by ***having known*** *and* ***loved*** *a man of such goodness and wisdom.*

强调重复或延续
emphasizing repetition or duration

8.156 说明某人反复做某事或长时间做事时，可用 'and' 连接两个相同的动词。

*They **laughed** and **laughed**.*
*Isaacs didn't give up. He **tried** and **tried**, but he kept getting unhelpful replies.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

8.157 在非正式口语中，'and' 常用于 'try' 与另一个动词之间。如某人说 'I'll try and get a newspaper'。但这句话的含义却与 'I'll try to get a newspaper' 相同。它指的是一个动作而不是两个。

'And' 的这种用法，详见 3.201 节。

8.158 连接两个以上的动词，参见 8.188 节。

连接名词词组
Linking noun groups

8.159 说及两个人或物时，可用并列连词连接两个名词词组。

8.160 关于两个人或两个物的简单陈述，可用 'and' 连接。

*There were men **and** women working in the fields.*
*I'll give you a nice cup of tea **and** a ginger biscuit.*
*...a friendship between a boy **and** a girl.*

在 'not' 前用逗号替代 'and not'。

*Each finger ends with a sharp claw, **not** a flat blunt nail.*

否定句中两个人或物都是动词的宾语时，用 'or' 连接。

*We didn't play cricket **or** football.*

选择
alternatives

8.161 提供选择时，用 'or' 连接。

*Serve fruit **or** cheese afterwards.*
*...a letter saying that a brother **or** sister has a new bike.*

省略限定词
omitting determiners

8.162 用 'and' 或 'or' 指两个人或两个物时，一般需要重复限定词。

*He was holding **a suitcase and a birdcage**.*

但两个人或两个物以某种方式紧密相连时，则不必重复限定词。

My mother and father *worked hard.*
The jacket and skirt *were skilfully designed.*
...a boy in ***a jacket and tie****.*

有时两个限定词都可省略。

Mother and daughter *stared at each other.*
All this had of course been discussed between ***husband and wife****.*
The legal position for both ***worker and employer*** *is now as fair as the law can make it.*

指同一人或同一物 referring to one person or thing

8.163 有时用 'and' 连接的名词词组指同一个人或同一个物。

He's a racist ***and*** *a sexist.*
...the novelist ***and*** *playwright, Somerset Maugham.*

省略形容词 omitting adjectives

8.164 连接两个名词时，第一个名词前的形容词通常被视为同时修饰两个名词。

...the ***young men and women*** *of England.*
...a house crammed with ***beautiful furniture and china****.*

动词一致 verb agreement

8.165 主语含由 'and' 连接的两个或更多个名词时，动词用复数形式。

My mother and father ***are*** *ill.*
Time, money and effort ***were*** *needed.*

但是，如这些名词指同一个人或物时，则不用动词复数形式。

The writer and filmmaker Masanori Hata ***disagrees****.*

前面有 'all' 的不具数名词，或前面有 'each' 或 'every' 的具数名词单数，也不用动词复数形式。

All this effort and sacrifice ***has*** *not helped to alleviate poverty.*
It became necessary to involve every man, woman and child who ***was*** *willing to help.*

用 'or' 连接两个或更多个名词时，在复数名词后用动词复数形式，在单数名词或不具数名词后用动词单数形式。

One generation's problems or successes ***are*** *passed to the next.*
Can you say 'No' to a friend or relative who ***wants*** *to insist?*

连接代词 linking pronouns

8.166 可把 'and'、'or' 或 'not' 用在代词与名词词组之间或两个代词之间。

*Howard **and** I are planning a party.*
*She **and** I have a very good relationship,*
*If you **or** your husband have paid enough contributions, you are entitled to a grant.*
*I felt that the new plant should bear his name, for he, **not** I, had done the work.*

谈有关自己与别人的事时，常先说指别人的代词或名词词组，再说指自己的代词。

*My sister **and** I lived totally different kinds of lives.*
*You **and** I must have a talk together.*
*...a difference of opinion between John **and** me.*
*The first people to hear were the Foreign Secretary **and** myself.*

8.167 并列连接两个以上的名词词组，参见 8.188 节。

连接形容词、连接副词
Linking adjectives and adverbs

8.168 用两个形容词描述某人或某物时，有时在其中间需用连词，这在 8.169 至 8.175 节讨论。连词有时也置于副词之间，这在 8.176 节讨论。

属性形容词
qualitative adjectives

8.169 名词前有两个**属性形容词** (qualitative adjectives) 时，可在它们中间用 'and' 或逗号。

*...an **intelligent and ambitious** woman.*
*...an **intelligent, generous** man.*

颜色形容词
colour adjectives

8.170 名词前有两个**颜色形容词** (colour adjectives) 时，可在他们中间用 'and'。

*...a **black and white** swimming suit.*

类别形容词
classifying adjectives

8.171 名词前有两个**类别形容词** (classifying adjectives) 时，须确定这两个形容词是属同一种类别还是属不同类别。

例如，'geographical' 和 'geological' 属同一种类别；'British' 和 'industrial' 属不同类别。

名词前有两个属同一种类别的形容词时，中间用 'and'。

*...a **social and educational** dilemma.*

名词前有两个属不同类别的形容词时，中间不用 'and'，也不用逗号。

*...the **French classical** pianists Katia and Marielle Labeque.*
*...**medieval Muslim** philosophers.*
*...a **square wooden** table.*
*...**American agricultural** exports.*

不同种类的形容词
different kinds of adjectives

8.172 名词前有两个属不同种类的形容词时，如一个为属性形容词，另一个为类别形容词时，在它们中间不用 'and'，也不用逗号。

*...a **large circular** pool of water.*
*...a **beautiful pink** suit.*
*...**rapid technological** advance.*

形容词与名词复数连用
adjectives with plural nouns

8.173 名词复数前用两个形容词说明属性相同或属性相反的两类事物，可在形容词中间用 'and'。

*Both **large and small** firms deal with each other regularly.*
*...**European and American** traditions.*

动词后的形容词
adjectives after verbs

8.174 两个形容词位于系动词之后时，它们中间用 'and'。

*Mrs Scott's house was **large and imposing**.*
*The room was **large and square**.*
*On this point we can be **clear and categorical**.*

用其他连词
using other conjunctions

8.175 两个形容词之间也可用 'but'、'yet' 或 'or'。

两个表示对照的形容词之间用 'but' 或 'yet'。

*...a **small but comfortable** hotel.*
*We are **poor but happy**.*
*...a **firm yet gentle** hand.*

说明两个形容词都适用，或询问哪个适用时，用 'or'。

*You can use **red or black** paint.*
*Call me if you feel **lonely or depressed**.*
*Is this **good or bad**?*

说明两个形容词都不适用时，在否定句中用 'or'。

*He was **not exciting or good-looking**.*

说明两个形容词都不适用的另一个方法是，在第一个形容词前加 'neither'，第二个形容词前加 'nor'。

*The Englishman was **neither gratified nor displeased**.*
*The older men were careful to be **neither too soft nor too loud** in their reciting.*

连接副词
linking adverbs

8.176 两个副词之间可用 'and'。

*Mary was breathing **quietly and evenly**.*
*We have to keep airports running **smoothly and efficiently**.*
*They walk **up and down**, smiling.*

连接两个构成对照的副词，可用 'but' 或 'yet'。

***Quickly but silently** she darted out of the cell.*

说明两个副词都不适用时，可在否定句的两个副词中间用 'or'。也可在第一个副词前加 'neither'，第二个副词前加 'nor'。

*They will **not** come down **very quickly or very far**.*
*The story ends **neither happily nor unhappily**.*

8.177 并列连接两个以上的形容词，详见 8.189 节。

连接其他词组
Linking other word groups

8.178 并列连词也用于连接介词、介词短语、前置修饰语和限定词。

连接介词
linking prepositions

8.179 可用 'and' 连接适用于同一个名词词组的两个介词。

*We see them on their way **to and from** school.*
*The group has called on the Government to investigate whether human rights were violated **during and after** the riots.*

连接介词短语
linking prepositional phrases

8.180 说明类似的动作、情况或事物时，可用 'and' 连接两个介词短语。

*They walked **across the gravel and down the drive**.*
*They had crumbs **around their mouths and under their chins**.*

但是，说明同一个动作、情况或事物的介词短语之间，不能用 'and'。

*Her husband was hit **over the head with a mallet**.*
*They walked **down the drive between the chestnut trees**.*
*...a man **of about forty with glaring defiant eyes**.*

连接前置修饰语和限定词
linking modifiers and determiners

8.181 'And' 或 'or' 可用于连接前置修饰语。

*...the largest **electrical equipment and electronics** manufacturer in Germany.*
*This would not apply to a **coal or oil** supplier.*

'Or' 可用于连接限定词 'his' 和 'her'。

*Your child's school will play an important part in shaping the rest of **his or her** life.*

对并列连词加以强调
Emphasizing coordinating conjunctions

8.182 使用并列连词时，往往还要强调所述内容对被连接的两个词组都适用。这时，通常是在第一个词组前加 'both' 或 'neither' 一类的词。

8.183 用 'and' 时，强调所述内容对被连接的两个词组都适用的最常用方法是在第一个词组前加 'both'。

*By that time **both** Robin **and** Drew were overseas.*
*They feel **both** anxiety **and** joy.*
*These headlines **both** mystified **and** infuriated him.*
*Investment continues **both** at home **and** abroad.*
*Because the medicine is **both** expensive **and** in great demand, huge profits can be made.*

另一种方法是用 'and also' 替代 'and'。

*Wilkins drove racing cars himself **and also** raced powerboats.*
*The job of the library is to get books to people **and also** to get information to them.*

8.184 为进一步强调，可在第一个词组前用 'not only' 或 'not just'，在第二个词组前用 'but' 或 'but also'。

*The effortless freshness and spontaneity of his singing put him into the front rank of popular singers, **not only** of the present time **but** of any time.*
*Employers have got to think more seriously **not only** of attracting staff, **but** of keeping them.*
*Professor Kleber suggests that law enforcement activities should be directed **not just** at drug importers and main suppliers, **but also** at local dealers.*

8.185 用 'or' 时，要强调所述内容对被连接的前后两个词组都适用，最常用的方法是在第一个词组用 'either'。

*Sentences can be **either** true **or** false.*
*You can **either** buy a special insecticide **or** get help from an expert.*
***Either** Margaret **or** John should certainly have come to see me by now.*
***Either** we raise money from outside **or** we face unpalatable options such as closing part of the museum.*

以这种方式连接分句时，可用 'or else' 替代 'or'。

*If you can't iron them at once, **either** roll up the sheets while they are damp **or else** damp them before you iron them.*

8.186 要强调否定陈述适用于两个词组时，可在第一个词组前用 'neither'，在第二个词组前用 'nor'。

例如，可用 'The girl neither spoke nor looked up' 替代 'The girl did not speak or look up'。

*The thought **neither** distressed **nor** delighted her.*
*She had **neither** received **nor** read the letter.*
***Neither** Margaret **nor** John was there.*

注意，接 'nor' 的单数名词词组之后用动词单数形式；复数名词词组后用动词复数形式。

*Neither Binta nor anyone else **was** going to speak.*
*Neither city councils nor wealthy manufacturers **have** much need of painters or sculptors.*

8.187 有时可用与其他不同事物对照的方法引起人们对某从句或词组的注意。一种办法是用 'but' 连接两个并列成分，并在第一成分前加上 'not'。

*We wept, **not** because we were frightened **but** because we were so dirty.*
*I felt **not** jubilation **but** sadness.*
*The upright chairs were **not** polished **but** painted.*

连接两个以上分句或词组
Linking more than two clauses or word groups

8.188 两个以上的分句，单词或词组可用 'and' 或 'or' 连接。连词通常只用一次，置于最后两个分句、单词或词组中间。其余的每个分句、单词或词组之后只用逗号。

*Haggarty marched him to the door, literally threw him out **and** returned.*
*...courses in accountancy, science, maths **or** engineering.*

有人在连词前加逗号。为了明白起见，本书就采用这种做法。

*Mrs Roberts cooked, cleaned, mended, **and** went to meetings of the sewing club.*

在非正式场合，人们有时候在每两个分句、单词或词组中间加 'and' 或 'or'。这种做法偶尔也用于书面语，以强调所说的一切都是真的。

*Mrs Barnett has a gate **and** it's not locked **and** that's how they get out.*

连接形容词
linking adjectives

8.189 两个以上形容词的连接有些特殊规则。

名词前有两个以上表示属性的形容词时，在它们中间用逗号，而不用连词。

...a large, airy, comfortable room.

名词前有两个以上类别形容词时，要分清这些形容词是属同一种类别还是属不同类别。（这点在 8.171 节说明。）属同一种类别时，在最后两形容词中间用 'and'，其余的形容词后面加逗号。

*...the country's social, economic **and** political crisis.*

属不同类别时，形容词之间不用连词，也不用逗号。

...an unknown medieval French poet.

在名词前面分别有表示属性及表示类别的两个形容词时，在它们之间不用连词，也不用逗号。

...a little white wooden house.

连系动词后有两个以上形容词时，则在最后两个形容词中间用 'and'，其余的形容词后面加逗号。

*He was big, dark **and** morose.*
*We felt hot, tired **and** thirsty.*

第九章　篇章构成

9 篇章构成
Making texts

概述
Introduction

9.1 人们讲话或写文章时，常常要把前后讲的或写的内容加以联系。联系的方式有几类，它们为语言的运用提供**粘合** (cohesion)。

取得粘合最常用的方式是返指已经提及的事项。不同的返指方法，参见 9.2 至 9.40 节。

取得粘合的另一类方式就是预指将要说及的事项。不同的预指方法，参见 9.41 至 9.48 节。

返指往往可以避免用词重复。这叫省略。参见 9.49 至 9.69 节。

取得粘合的其他方式就是用各种粘合词和短语，如 'firstly' 和 'in conclusion'。这类词语和**句子附加状语** (sentence adjuncts) 的用法，参见第十章（10.73 至 10.81 节）。

返指
Referring back

9.2 人们讲话或写文章时，经常要返指或联系到自己在前面刚刚提到的内容。

代词
pronouns

9.3 最常见的返指方法是用 'she'、'it' 或 'them' 等**人称代词** (personal pronouns)，或 'mine' 和 'hers' 等**物主代词** (possessive pronouns)。

*Davis opened a door. 'Here's your room. I'm afraid **it**'s a bit untidy.' **He** picked a dirty handkerchief off the floor and stuffed **it** in a drawer.*
*The keeper came loping softly up the lane with the dog padding at his heels, and we watched **them** through the hedge as **they** went by.*
*I held **her** very close. My cheek was against **hers**.*

☞ 人称代词，参见 1.96 至 1.109 节，物主代词，参见 1.110 至 1.114 节。

其他还有些代词可用于返指，包括与泛指限定词同形的 'another' 和 'many'。参见 1.153 节。

*...programmes which tell the computer to do one thing rather than **another**.*

也可用**数量词** (quantifiers) 或**基数词** (cardinal numbers) 返指。

*The women were asked to leave. **Some** of them refused.*
*These soldiers had no doubt that the invasion was upon them. **Many** of them had already been involved in fighting.*
...the Guatemalan earthquake which killed 24,000 people and injured 77,000.

☞ 数量词参见 2.193 至 2.210 节，数词参见 2.230 至 2.248 节。

限定词 determiners

9.4 另一种常见的返指方法是在名词前用 'the' 或 'its' 等**特指限定词** (specific determiners)。

*A man and a woman were struggling up **the** dune. **The** man wore shorts, a T-shirt, and basketball sneakers. **The** woman wore a print dress.*
*'Thanks,' said Brody. He hung up, turned out the light in **his** office, and walked out to **his** car.*

☞ 特指限定词，参见 1.162 至 1.207 节。

一些**泛指限定词** (general determiners)也可用来返指。

*A dog was running around in the yard. Soon **another** dog appeared.*

下列泛指限定词用来作返指：

another	each	every	other
both	either	neither	

☞ 泛指限定词详见 1.221 至 1.235 节。

9.5 如上述内容所示，用以返指的代词和限定词已经在论述其他代词和限定词的第一章作了说明。**指示词** (demonstratives) 'this' 和 'that' 除返指事物外，还可以返指语篇中的所有句子或段落；在 9.7 至 9.17 节将列出指示词的各种粘合用法，同时也将说明用于特定返指的其他词语。

返指的其他方法 other ways of referring back

9.6 还有一些其他的返指方法，包括：

- 用某些名词返指语篇的所有段落。参见 9.18 至 9.23 节。
- 用 'so' 和 'not' 替代可以避免重复的一些词语或结构。

'So' 和 'not' 的这种用法见 9.24 至 9.27 节。

- 用 'such' 加形容词加附加状语与上文提及的事物作比较。

☞ 有关这种比较的说明见 9.28 至 9.40 节。

特定返指
Referring back in a specific way

指物用的指示词 demonstratives referring to things

9.7 用 'this' 和 'that' 与复数形式 'these' 和 'those' 清楚地返指上文提到的事物或事实。

指示词既用作代词又可用作限定词。

More and more money is being pumped into the educational system, and it is reasonable to assume ***this*** *will continue.*
In 1973 he went on a caravan holiday. At the beginning of ***this*** *holiday he began to experience pain in his chest.*

注意，除非在 'be' 动词之前，'this' 和 'that' 不常用来指人。

*'It was here that one young prisoner was sold for a bag of corn.' said the old woman. '****That*** *was me.'*

9.8 'This' 和 'these' 用来指与说话人接近的事物。

The concert began with his Second Piano Sonata. ***This*** *is a work that has usually been considered as fundamentally negative.*
After you've set your goals, remember them by using a list. Anything that is worth doing should go on ***this*** *list.*
Only small pines are left. Many of ***these*** *have twisted and stunted shapes.*
There were great quantities of cattle at Camusfearna that year. The majority of ***these*** *beasts were black.*

相比之下 'that' 和 'those' 用来指与说话人有一定距离的事物。

There's a lot of material there. You can use some of ***that****.*
There's one boss and ***that*** *boss is in France.*
There were only strangers around to observe him, and not many of ***those****.*
The rooms are inhabited by boys from twelve to sixteen years of age. The majority of ***those*** *boys have reached the stage of caring for comfort and decorations.*

9.9 虽然指示词 'this' 和 'that' 是单数，却可用来返指上文提及的若干事物和事实，而不必用复数。

Later, computer systems were brought into play to draw up attack strategies; later yet, they found themselves riding along in aircraft, submarines, and tanks. All ***this*** *had its beneficial aspects.*
He had played rugby at school, had been in the army and had briefly been a professional footballer. ***That*** *was thought to be to his favour when the job came up later.*

指句子的指示词
demonstratives referring to sentences

9.10 指示词可用作代词或限定词，返指一个或数个句子。

*'You're the new doctor, aren't you?' — '**That**'s right.'*
*'Were you worried about the disrespect for the law exhibited by your two heroes?' —'**That**'s a hard question to answer.'*
*'I'll think about it, Mother.' **That** statement was the end of most of their discussions.*
*I accept neither of **these** arguments.*

注意，当 'these' 和 'those' 用来指代前面整个陈述时，只能置于动词 'be' 之前。

*It was hard for me to believe **these** were his real reasons for wanting to get rid of me.*
*I put my arms around her. 'Thanks. Ollie.' **Those** were her last words.*

'previous'

9.11 也可以用形容词 'previous' 做定语，返指语篇的某个部分。

*As explained in the **previous** chapter, the bottle needs only to be washed in cold water.*
*I think we can now answer the question posed at the end of the **previous** chapter.*

'above'

9.12 在书面英语中，也可以用 'above' 作前置修饰语指代前面所提到的事物。

*I have not been able to validate the **above** statement.*

'The above' 之后也可不用名词词组。

*Keep supplies of rice and spaghetti. Also, to go with **the above**, Parmesan cheese and tins of tomatoes.*

'former' 和 'latter'
'former' and 'latter'

9.13 分别表示两个或两组事物时，前者用 'the former' 表示，后者用 'the latter' 表示。这两个词主要用于正式英语。

*It used to be said that the oil exporting countries depended on the oil importing countries just as much as **the latter** depended on **the former**.*
*I could do one of two things – wobey him or get my own protection. I chose **the latter**.*

'Former' 和 'latter' 也可起形容词作用作为定语。

*The Gallery must be given a full chapter or just a brief paragraph, and space forbids the **former** alternative.*
*Guy had studied classics and philosophy at Oxford and always felt a sort of lingering interest in the **latter** subject.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

9.14 泛指刚提及的某类事物时，可用 'things of this kind' 或 'things of that kind'。或者也可使用 'this kind of thing' 或 'that kind of thing'。

We'll need a special new terminal to incorporate customs facilities, immigration facilities, and things ***of that kind****.*
Most of us would attach a great deal of importance to considerations ***of this kind****.*
I don't see many advantages in ***that kind of*** *education.*
All arts theatres have ***that type of*** *problem.*

表示两种或两种以上的事物时，将 'these' 和 'those' 置于 'kinds'、'sorts' 或 'types' 之前，然后接 'of' 和名词。

'Such' 也可用来返指刚提及的一类事物。参见 9.28 至 9.32 节。

时间 time

9.15 副词 'then' 可用来指代前面刚提到或讨论过的时间。

In ancient times poetry was a real force in the world. Of course the world was different ***then****.*

地点 place

9.16 副词 'there' 可用来指代前面刚提到过的地点。

I decided to try Newmarket. I soon found a job ***there****.*
I hurried back into the kitchen. There was nothing ***there****.*

方式 manner

9.17 副词 'thus' 用来返指做事方式或事情发生的方式。'Thus' 为正式用语。

Eventually with a groan of good nature he gave in. There was, as a matter of fact, even something pleasing to him in ***thus*** *giving in.*
It not only pleased him to work with them, but the few pence ***thus*** *earned gave him an enormous sense of importance.*

注意，'in this way' 或 'in that way' 常用来替代 'thus'。

More and more people will turn to cheques and credit cards for the majority of their purchases. Many people in the Western world already do the bulk of their purchasing ***in this way****.*

一般返指
Referring back in a general way

9.18 有许多名词词组用作一般返指前面说话的内容。这些名词词组返指口头语篇或书面语篇的所有段落。

指口头或书面语篇 referring to spoken or written texts

9.19 名词往往可用返指语篇的内容。这类名词将返指的内容归类为承认、建议或提问等言语行为。

*'Martin, what are you going to do? — 'That's a good **question**, Larry.'*
*'You **claim** to know this man's identity?' —'I do.' — 'You can substantiate this claim?'*

这样的名词不仅返指语篇的内容，而且能表示对内容的态度。例如，要是用 'response' 返指某人的答话，则表示对回答持中立态度，不带感情；但如果用 'retort' 返指，则表示情绪较为强烈。

下列为表示言语行为的名词，用来返指语篇：

account	defence	prophecy
accusation	definition	proposal
acknowledgement	demand	proposition
admission	denial	protest
advice	denunciation	question
allegation	description	reference
announcement	digression	refusal
answer	disclosure	remark
apology	discussion	reminder
appeal	endorsement	reply
argument	excuse	report
assertion	explanation	request
assurance	exposition	response
boast	gossip	retort
charge	information	revelation
claim	judgement	rumour
comment	lie	statement
complaint	message	stipulation
compliment	narrative	story
concession	objection	suggestion
condemnation	observation	summary
confession	plea	tale
contention	point	threat
correction	prediction	verdict
criticism	promise	warning
declaration	pronouncement	

注意，这些名词中有许多与转述动词相关。有关转述动词，参见第七章。

*People will feel the need to be **informed** and they will go wherever they can to get this **information**.*
*'I don't know what we should do about that.' This **remark** had the effect of totally dumbfounding the audience.*
*The Chancellor **remarked** that he had no inferiority complex about the Soviet Union.*

指想法
referring to ideas

9.20 同样，也可以用名词返指你知道或你认为别人有的想法，以及你对这些想法的态度。例如，用名词 'view' 返指某人的想法，则表明对这种想法持中立态度，并不带感情色彩。而用 'delusion' 则表明情绪较为强烈。

*The unemployment in the rural areas is often thought to be due entirely to population growth, and no doubt this is an important factor. But those who hold this **view** still have to explain why additional people cannot do additional work.*
*'There is nothing to cry for. They cannot keep me there against my will.' Secure in this **belief**, he hugged her reassuringly and followed the servants out.*

下列名词用来返指想法，同时又表示对这些想法的态度：

analysis	diagnosis	illusion	reasoning
assessment	doctrine	inference	supposition
assumption	doubt	insight	theory
attitude	estimate	interpretation	thinking
belief	evaluation	misinterpretation	view
conclusion	fear	notion	viewpoint
conjecture	finding	opinion	vision
concept	guess	picture	wish
deduction	hope	plan	
delusion	idea	position	

指已经提及的事情
referring to what is mentioned

9.21 也可以用表示态度的名词返指动作或事件。如将名词 'incident' 用于核电站的事故，就是作一般的叙述，而用名词 'disaster'，则表达出人们对事故的反应。

*There might be an uncomfortable moment or two when Gwen learned of his intention, but she was not the kind to make a fuss. In any event, he could handle the **situation**, which would not be a new one.*
*I believed the press would cooperate on this **issue**.*
*Parents may complain that their child eats badly at meals but is always begging for food between meals. This **problem** doesn't arise because the parents have been lenient about food between meals.*
*He entered his name for the Boxing Day race, which to Belinda's delight he subsequently won. She seemed for some reason to regard the **exploit** as reflecting credit on herself.*

下列为返指事件并且表示对事件持中立态度的名词：

act	case	effect	fact
action	circumstances	episode	factor
affair	context	event	feature
aspect	development	experience	incident

issue	position	respect	subject
matter	possibility	result	system
method	practice	situation	thing
move	process	state	topic
phenomenon	reason	state of affairs	way

下列为返指事件并且对事件表明看法的名词：

achievement	crisis	disaster	nightmare	problem
advantage	difficulty	exploit	plight	solution
answer	disadvantage	feat	predicament	tragedy

产出性特征
productive feature

9.22 几乎任何一个指语篇、想法、事件、甚至人的名词都可用来返指已述内容。这个名词可准确表达对已述内容的反应。例如，可用 'tragedy' 或 'farce' 指足球赛失败，用 'wrangle' 和 'battle' 指争吵。这就是在**前言**中讲过的**产出性特征**。

指文章
referring to pieces of writing

9.23 可以不带感情色彩地指已经提及的文章。

*As explained in the previous **paragraph**, the bottle needs only to be washed clean.*
*We have seen in this **chapter** how the tax burden has increased fastest for households with children.*

下列为指书面语篇的名词：

chapter	instalment	passage	sentence	text
example	item	phrase	statement	words
excerpt	letter	quotation	summary	
extract	paragraph	section	table	

替代已提及事物：用 'so' 和 'not'
Substituting for something already mentioned: using 'so' and 'not'

'so' 替代补足语
'so' as substitute complement

9.24 在正式英语中，'so' 常用来替代已提到的或隐含的补足语。

*They are wildly inefficient and will remain **so** for some time to come.*
*Undaunted by his first setbacks, perhaps stubbornly **so**, he lashed his mechanics to greater efforts.*
*Its impact was enormous everywhere but nowhere more **so** than in the Soviet Union.*

'if' 后的 'so' 和 'not'
'so' and 'not' after 'if'

9.25 所谈的行为或情况在前面已经提到时，可以将 'so' 替代 'if' 之后的从句。

*Will that be enough? **If so**, do not ask for more.*

'Not' 用来替代 'if' 之后的否定从句，意思与已提到的情况相反。

*You will probably have one of the two documents mentioned below. **If not**, you will have to buy one.*

'so' 和 'not' 与转述动词连用
'so' and 'not' with reporting verbs

9.26 在一些常用的转述动词之后，可用 'so' 和 'not' 来替代从句。'So' 和 'not' 也可用在 'I'm afraid' 之后，用以表示一个不受欢迎的事实。

*'Are you all right?' — 'I think **so**.'*
*You're a sensible woman — I've always said **so**.*
*'You think he's dead, don't you?' — 'I'm afraid **so**, Sally.'*
*'It doesn't often happen.' — 'No, I suppose **not**.'*
*'You haven't lost the ticket, have you?' — 'I hope **not**.'*

下列转述动词之后可用 'not' 和 'so'：

believe	hope	suppose	think
expect	say	tell	

注意，作替代用的 'not' 与 'think'、'expect' 和 'believe' 连用是罕见的或正式的用语。'Not' 也不与 'tell' 连用。偶尔和 'say' 连用，'say' 之前需用一个情态动词。

'So' 偶尔用在分句之首。这样常常会使人对有关事实的真实性产生怀疑。

*Everybody in the world, **so** they say, has a double.*

'So' 也可位于句首表示强调。参见第 10.85 节。

'do so'

9.27 'Do so' 用来表示"进行刚提及的动作"。动词 'do' 的各种形式都可使用。这种结构相当正式。

*A signal which should have turned to red failed to **do so**.*
*Most of those who signed the letter **did so** because of her involvement.*
*She asked him to wait while she considered. He **did so**.*
*British governments are perfectly capable of improving drinking water quality, and perhaps they should voluntarily **have done so** before now.*

与已提及的事物作比较
Comparing with something already mentioned

9.28 ‘Such’ 可用来以几种方式提供粘合。要表示某事物与已提及的事物同类可用 ‘such’。它的语法类型独特，可作限定词、前位限定词和形容词。

‘such’ 作限定词
‘such’ as a determiner

9.29 ‘Such’ 可用作限定词返指刚提及的事项。

*Some 60% of the state's electricity comes from burning imported oil, the highest use of **such fuel** in the country.*
*New business on a small scale has been found to provide the great majority of new jobs. By their nature **such businesses** take risks.*

‘such’ 作前位限定词
‘such’ as a predeterminer

9.30 ‘Such’ 可位于限定词 ‘a’ 或 ‘an’ 之前作前位限定词（这类词参见1.236节），指代已经提及的事物。

*They lasted for hundreds of years. On a human time scale, **such a period** seems an eternity.*
*On one occasion the school parliament discussed the dismissal of a teacher. But **such an event** is rare.*

‘such’ 作形容词
‘such’ as an adjective

9.31 ‘Such’ 可作形容词，指已经提及的事物。

*To meet the demand there are now many new agencies providing mainly female cooks to cater for the boardrooms. **One such agency**, M and N, has about a hundred upper class girls on its books.*
*Not only did he fail to admit the impropriety of his behaviour, he actually pretended that he hadn't done **any such thing**.*
*Mr Bell's clubs were privately owned. Like **most such clubs** everywhere, they were organizations of congenial people who shared a certain interest.*
*I hated the big formal dances and felt very awkward and out of place at the **one or two such** events I attended.*

9.32 在正式用法中，‘such’ 有时也可置于 ‘one’ 和 ‘many’ 之后，作名词词组的中心词。

*So many advocates of freedom have not got their feet on the ground. **One such** protested to me recently because I shouted sternly at a problem boy of seven.*
*It is not surprising that people are prepared to envisage radical alternatives. **Many** such have been proposed in the last few years.*

形容词 adjectives

9.33 有些形容词可用来与已提及的事物作比较对照，或与已提及的事物联系起来。

'same'

9.34 形容词 'same' 用作定语，强调指出返指事物就是刚提及的事物。

We accept that thought is a common property of the human race. But we cannot make the ***same*** *assumption about machines.*
The door opened and a man popped his head into the room and said 'Next please'. About ten minutes later, the ***same*** *man returned.*
He watched her climb into a compartment of the train and he chose the ***same*** *one so as to watch her more closely.*

注意，'same' 用作定语用时总是置于 'the' 之后，但偶尔也置于其他特指限定词之后。

These same *smells may produce depression in others.*

9.35 当要表示某事物在各方面与刚提及过的事物相似时，可用 'same' 作系动词的补足语。此时，'same' 总是位于 'the' 之后。

The Queen treated us very well. The Princess Royal was just ***the same****.*
My brothers and myself were very poor, but so happy. I think other families were ***the same****.*

9.36 不带名词的 'the same' 可用作句子的主语或宾语，指刚提及的事物。

The conversion process is inefficient and about two-thirds of the energy is wasted. ***The same*** *is true of nuclear power stations.*
'I've never heard of him.' — 'I wish I could say ***the same****.'*

'The same thing' 与 'the same' 的用法相同，作主语和宾语。

He was stopped and sent back to get a ticket. On the return journey ***the same thing*** *happened.*
I learnt how to kill people with my bare hands. And I'm not proud of the fact that I taught a number of other people to do ***the same thing****.*

'opposite' 和 'reverse' 'opposite' and 'reverse'

9.37 形容词 'opposite' 和 'reverse' 用来表示某事物与已提及的事物完全不同。这两个形容词通常位于 'the' 之后。

It was designed to impress, but probably had ***the opposite*** *effect.*
I don't do a lot of reading but my brother is just ***the opposite****.*
In the past ten years I think we've seen ***the reverse*** *process.*
This time the position is ***the reverse****.*

当 'opposite' 用作定语时，偶尔用在 'an' 之后。

*Others of the same period took **an opposite** view.*

有时可以用不带名词的 'the opposite' 和 'the reverse' 返指。

*I once heard a police commissioner say that we would have to learn to live with crime. **The opposite is true**; we have to learn not to live with crime.*
*He has an excellent record of saying one thing and doing **the opposite**.*
*We have gained better health by exchanging fat for more efficient muscles. **The reverse** is also true.*
*It hasn't happened. **The reverse** has happened.*

其他形容词 other adjectives

9.38 也可用其他形容词表示某事物与已经提及的事物相同、不同或有联系。其中有些只能作定语，有些也可作系动词的补足语。

*It's really fabulous. Do you think that there are any other **comparable** tombs left at all?*
*She wore a red dress with a red **matching** straw hat.*
*West Germany, Denmark and Italy face declines in young people. Ireland is confronted with a **contrasting** problem.*
*That's what I would say. But his attitude was **different** altogether.*

下列形容词只作定语，可用来返指：

adjacent	contrary	equal	opposing
conflicting	contrasting	equivalent	parallel
contradictory	corresponding	matching	

下列形容词既作定语又作补足语，可用来返指：

analogous	different	separate
comparable	identical	similar
compatible	related	unrelated

附加状语 adjuncts

9.39 要说明某个动作或行为方式与已提及的动作或行为方式相似，可用附加状语 'in the same way'、'in a similar way'、'similarly' 或者 'likewise'。

*She spoke of Jim and Karl tolerantly but with frowns and sighs. And presumably she spoke to them of me **in the same way**.*
*As the children surged silently around them, the soldiers glanced along the line to see their colleagues **similarly** surrounded.*

9.40 要说明某个动作或行为方式与已经提及的动作或行为方式不同，可用附加状语 'otherwise' 和 'differently'。

I thought life was simply splendid. I had no reason to think ***otherwise****.*
She had been ashamed of her actions but she had been totally incapable of doing ***otherwise****.*
The British have been slow off the mark. They do things ***differently*** *in America.*

预指
Referring forward

9.41 有多种方法可用来指代将要提及的事物。这涉及使用 9.18 至 9.23 节列出的用以返指的常用名词。

'this' 和 'these'
'this' and 'these'

9.42 'This' 用于返指已在 9.7 至 9.10 节说明。'This' 和 'these' 也可用以指代将要说的话。可以作代词和限定词。注意，'these' 只在作主语时才是代词。

Well, you might not believe ***this*** *but I don't drink very much.*
Perhaps I shouldn't confess ***this****, but I did on one occasion break the law.*
This *chapter will follow the same pattern as the previous one.*
These *were the facts: on a warm February afternoon, Gregory Clark and a friend were cruising down Washington Boulevard in a Mustang.*
On the blackboard ***these*** *words were written: Reading. Writing. Arithmetic.*

9.43 当 'this' 和 'these' 用作限定词预指将要提及的事物时，与表示文章的名词连用最为常见，参见 9.23 节；与表示说话的名词连用时，参见 9.19 节；与表示想法的名词连用时，参见 9.20 节；与表示动作或事件的名词连用偶尔可见，参见 9.21 节。

'following'

9.44 形容词 'following' 用作定语可指代将要提到的内容。此时，要与表示语篇、想法和文章的名词连用，见 9.19、9.20 和 9.23 节；偶尔也可与表示动作和事件的名词连用，见 9.21 节。

After a while he received the ***following*** *letter: 'Dear Sir, The Undersecretary of State regrets that he is unable to reconsider your case.'*
The ***following*** *account is based on notes and jottings from that period.*
I draw the ***following*** *conclusions: that natural childbirth and rooming-in should be available for all who want them.*

也可单独使用 'the following' ，后面不跟名词词组。

*...a box containing **the following**: a packet of tissues, two small sponges, two old handkerchiefs, and a clothes brush.*

'next' **9.45** 形容词 'next' 和表示文章的名词连用可用来预指。

*In the **next** chapter, we will examine this theory in detail.*

'below' **9.46** 'Below' 与表示语篇和文章的名词连用（参见 9.19 和 9.23 节），预指即将提及的事物。

*...the coming together of the Japanese and Chinese economic miracles (see the Ex-secretary's report **below**).*
*The overlap can be seen in the table **below**.*

'Below' 用以预指偶尔也和表示动作和事物的名词在过去分词小句里连用。

*The report **given below** appeared in the Daily Mail on 8 August 1985.*

'such' **9.47** 'Such' 可用作前位限定词，指代紧接在后的由 'as' 引出的短语或从句里具体说明的某类事物。

*I thought he had invited you for just **such** a purpose **as this**.*

'Such' 有时用作名词后置修饰语，随后跟一个由 'as' 引出的说明性短语或从句。

*...a general prolonged rise in prices **such as occurred in the late 1960s**.*
*Then try redistributing the items under headings **such as I've suggested**.*

其他方法 other ways **9.48** 还可用其他一些方法预指，这还涉及强调已提及的事物。这些方法中有断裂句，参见 10.28 至 10.30 节的论述，有 'there' 引出的句子，参见 10.46 至 10.55 节的讨论。

略词：省略
Leaving out words: ellipsis

9.49 英语里，宁可省略词语而不去重复，这就是**省略** (ellipsis)。有些省略只出现在并列句和并列词组中。

关于省略出现在并列句和并列词组，见 8.140 至 8.164 节。

这一部分论述出现在从句、单句和复合句中的省略。说或写第二个从句、句子的人可能就是使用第一个从句、句子的人；或者是另一个人进行的回答或评论的一部分。对话中的省略，参见 9.63 至 9.69 节。

对比主语
contrasting subjects

9.50 当对某个动作或状态已经进行了叙述而又只想引出新的主语时，就不需要重复句子的其余部分，只用助动词即可。

*There were nineteen- and twenty-year-olds on the paper who were earning more than I **was**.*
*They can distinguish finer detail than we **can**.*

对比时态或情态
contrasting tense or modality

9.51 在主语指同一个人或物时，若只想改变动词时态或情态，则用另外一个助动词。

*They would stop it if they **could**.*
*How does the Department of the Environment ensure, as it says it **must**, that the quality of the operation remains high?*
*Very few of us have that tremendous enthusiasm, although we know we **ought to**.*
*I never did go to Stratford, although I probably **should have**.*
*...a topic which should have attracted far more attention from philosophers than it **has**.*

'do'

9.52 若不选用其他助动词，通常应该用 'do'、'does' 或 'did'。

*Do farmers still warrant a ministry all to themselves? I think they **do**.*
*I think we want it more than they **do**.*

'be' 作主要动词
'be' as a main verb

9.53 然而，系动词 'be' 则常常要以适当形式加以重复。例如，'I was scared and the children were too'。

*'I think you're right.' — 'I'm sure I **am**.'*

若第二个动词词组含有情态动词，通常置 'be' 于情态动词之后。

*'Bit of an unfair question to ask me, because I'm biased.' — 'Thought you **might be**.'*
*'He thought that it was hereditary in his case.' — 'Well, it **might be**.'*

若第一个动词词组也含有情态动词，那就不用重复动词 'be'。

*'I'll be back as soon as I **can**.'*

在第二个句子的情态动词之后往往用 'be'，以便与另一个系动词 'seem'、'look' 或 'sound' 形成对比。

*'It **looks** like tea to me.' — 'Yes, it **could be**.'*

以 'have' 作主要动词
'have' as a main verb

9.54 如果第一个动词是主要动词 'have'，有时可用 'have' 的适当形式替代 'do'。

*She probably has a temperature — she certainly looks as if she **has**.*

带 'not' 的省略
ellipsis with 'not'

9.55 在助动词后加 'not'，可使第二个动词词组变为否定式。非正式的口语和书面语中，两个词可合并缩写成 'don't'、'hasn't'、'isn't'、'mustn't' 等（参见 4.55 节的缩略式表）。对问句作否定回答时可用此形式。

*Some managed to vote but most of them **didn't**.*
*'You're staying here!' — 'But Gertrude, I **can't**, I **mustn't**!'*
*'And did it work?' — 'No, I'm afraid it **didn't**.'*
*Widows receive state benefit; widowers **do not**.*
*He could have listened to the radio. He **did not**.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

9.56 被动语态中 'be' 往往保留在情态动词之后，但并不是经常如此。

*He argued that if tissues could be marketed, then anything **could be**.*

但是，若有被动语态的完成时，只需用助动词 'have' 或 'has'。例如，可以说：'Have you been interviewed yet? I have'。

注意，在表示被动语态或进行时态的动词词组里有情态动词和 'have' 时，'been' 不可省略。

*I'm sure it was repeated in the media. It **must have been**.*
*Priller noticed that they were not flying in tight formation as they **should have been**.*

9.57 若第二个动词词组含有助动词 'have' 的某一种形式时，可加上 'done'。例如，不说 'He says he didn't see it but he must have'，而要说 'He says he didn't see it but he must have done'。

*When these questions are satisfactorily answered I might perhaps view their infantile behaviour more charitably than I **have done** to date.*
*It would have been nice to have won, and I **might have done** if my concentration hadn't lapsed.*

同样，在情态动词之后也可用动词 'do'。

*It makes a click like the lid of a tin **may do**.*

注意，当第一次提到表示动作或状态的动词是主要动词 'have'，在第二次提到时，情态动词之后常用 'have'，而不用 'do'。

*'Do you think that academics **have** an appreciation of the administrative difficulties of running a University?'— 'No, and I don't think they should have.'*

9.58 省略通常出现在已用主要动词提及动作或状态的从句之后的另一个从句里。

不过，为了蓄意获得某种效果，也可将有省略的分句置于明确表示出动作或状态的从句之前。

*If, as they **should be**, directors are themselves scholars, they will appreciate the language that scholars use.*

重复主要动词 repeating the main verb

9.59 若要强调，可在第二个从句中重复使用主要动词。

*It was the largest swarm of locusts that had ever been seen or that ever would be **seen**.*

宾语的对比以及附加状语的对比 contrasting objects and adjuncts

9.60 注意，要对比受一个动作影响的两个事物，或者对比两个不同的因素或环境时，可在有助动词或 'be' 的某一种形式的第二个从句中，另用一个宾语或附加状语。

*Cook **nettles** exactly as you **would spinach**.*
*You don't get as much bickering **on a farm** as you **do in most jobs**.*
*People are not nearly so keen on the exhibiting side of things **in Suffolk** as they **are in Yorkshire**.*
*No one liked being young **then** as they **do now**.*

但是，有时也可重复主要动词。

*Can't you at least treat me the way you **treat** regular clients?*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

9.61 在 'dare' 和 'need' 半情态动词之后可以省略动词，但这只适用于否定句。

*'I don't mind telling you what I know.'— 'You **needn't**. I'm not asking you for it.'*
*'You must tell her the truth.' — 'But, Neill, I **daren't**.'*

同样，'had rather'、'would rather' 这些表示情态的短语用在否定句中时，他们后面的动词也可省略。表示情态的 'had better' 后的动词，即使用在肯定句里，也可省略。

*'Will she be happy there?' — 'She'**d better**.'*
*It's just that I'**d rather** not.*

9.62 省略也可在 'to'- 不定式小句中出现。如果一个动作或状态已被提到过，在动词之后只用 'to'，而不用完整的不定式小句。

*Don't tell me if you don't want **to**.*
*At last he agreed to do what I asked him **to**.*

这种省略也可用于对话中。

*'Do you ever visit a doctor?' I asked her. — 'No. We can't afford **to**.'*

注意，有些动词，如 'try' 和 'ask'，常单独使用而不加 'to'。

*They couldn't help each other, and it was ridiculous to **try**.*
*Some water boards will replace washers free of charge, if you **ask**.*

对话中的省略
Ellipsis in conversation

9.63 省略常出现在对话中的提问和应答里，对话中的省略可包括上述讨论过的主要动词的省略（这种省略见 9.49 至 9.62 节）。当疑问句使受话人对谈话感兴趣或感到意外，或不赞成这些提问时，省略会常常出现。这种疑问句总是用代词作主语。

*'He gets free meals.' — '**Does he**?'*
*'They're starting up a new arts centre there.' — '**Are they**?'*
*'I've checked everyone.' — '**Have you now**?'*

问句中的省略
ellipsis in questions

9.64 当谈话内容在上下文里很清楚时，可用省略的疑问句。这种省略疑问句可以是只包含一个 'wh'- 疑问词的问句。

*'There's someone coming.' — '**Who**?' — 'I don't know. It's too dark and there's snow falling.'*
*'But I'm afraid there's more.' — '**What**?'*
*'Can I speak to you?' I asked, undaunted.— '**Why**?' — 'It's important.'*
*'It's opening on the 31st of this month.' — '**Where**?' — 'At the Railway Hotel.'*

注意，也可以用 'why not'。

*'Maria! We won't discuss that here.' — '**Why not**?'*

注意，也可以在转述动词之后用 'wh'- 疑问词，尤其是用 'why'。

*I asked **why**.*
*They enquired **how**.*

9.65 当谈话内容在上下文中清楚时，有些问句只用很少几个单词即可。这类短小的问句常常表示提问人的惊讶或主动提出助人的意向。

*'Could you please come to Ira's right away and help me out?' — '**Now**? **Tonight**?' — 'It's incredibly important.'*
*'Does she drink? Heavily, I mean.' — '**Drink**? No, she never touches the stuff.'*
*'He's going to die, you see.' — '**Die**?'*
*'**Cup of coffee**?' Lionel asked, kindly.*
*He drank the water and handed me the glass. '**More**?' 'No, that's just fine, thank you.'*

答话中的省略
ellipsis in replies

9.66 回答 'wh'- 疑问句时，常可用一个词或一组词来代替全句以避免重复问话中的词语。例如，有人问 'What is your favourite colour?' 一般只用一个词回答，例如，'blue'，而不用完整句 'My favourite colour is blue'。

*'What's your name?' — '**Peter**.'*
*'How do you feel?' — '**Strange**.'*
*'Where do you come from?' — '**Cardiff**.'*
*'Where are we going?' — '**Up the coast**.'*
*'How long have you been out of this country?' - '**About three months**.'*
*'How much money is there in that case?' — '**Six hundred pounds**.'*
*'Why should they want me to know?' — '**To scare you**, perhaps. Who can tell?'*

☞ 'Wh'- 疑问句的说明参见 4.17 至 4.30 节。

9.67 回答 'yes/no' 问句时，常用句子附加状语或程度副词，而不用整句。

*'Do you think you could keep your mouth shut if I was to tell you something?' — '**Definitely**.'*
*'Do you think they're very important?' — '**Maybe**.'*
*'Do you enjoy life at the university' — 'Oh yes, **very much**.'*
*'Are you interested?' — '**Very**.'*
*'Are you ready, Matthew?' — '**Not quite**.'*
*'Is she sick?' — '**Not exactly**.'*

☞ 是非疑问句的说明，参见 4.12 至 4.16 节。

句子附加状语词表，参见第十章（10.57 至 10.72 节）。程度副词词表，参见第二章（2.145 至 2.173 节）和第六章（6.45 至 6.52 节）。

表示赞成的句子中的省略
ellipsis in agreement

9.68 当表示赞成已提到的事，或说明该事对其他人或物也适用时，经常用省略句。一种方法就是在助动词或 'be' 的适当形式后加 'too'。

*'I like baked beans.' — 'Yes, I do **too**.'*
*'I've already talked to Santos.' — 'I did **too**.'*

另一种方法是用 'so'，后跟助动词或 'be' 的适当形式，再加主语。

*'I find that amazing.' — '**So do I.**'*

注意，也可将这种省略结构用在同一个句子里，表示某人或某物的情况也是这样。

*He does half the cooking and **so do I**.*

9.69 当表示赞成已提到的否定事物，或这一个否定事物对某人某物也适用时，可以用省略句。一种方法是用助动词或 'be' 的适当形式加 'not' 或 'either'。

*'I don't know.' — '**I don't either**.'*
*'I can't see how she thinks it's to be done.' — '**I can't either**.'*

另一种方法是用 'nor' 或 'neither'，其后用助动词或 'be' 的适当形式，再加主语。

*'I don't like him.' — '**Nor do I**.'*
*'The demands will not disappear.' — '**Nor should they**.'*
*'I'm not joking, Philip.' — '**Neither am I**.'*

注意，也可将这种省略结构用在同一个句子里。

*I don't know what you're talking about, Miss Haynes, and I'm pretty sure **you don't either**.*
*I will never know all that was in his head at the time, **nor will anyone else**.*
*I can't do anything about this and **neither can you**.*

第十章　信息结构

10 信息结构
The structure of information

概述
Introduction

10.1 陈述句句子成分的位置一般按主语、动词、宾语、补足语、附加状语的顺序排列。主语是谈论的对象，位于句首。进行正常陈述又不强调句子任何成分时，陈述句成分按上述顺序排列。

Donald was lying on the bed.
She has brought the tape with her.
He wiped the glass dry with a tea-towel.

以上例句都属**陈述语气**(declarative mood)，第四章阐释英语语气体系并说明如何用疑问语气和祈使语气 (interrogative and imperative moods) 表达其他意义。这些语气要求句子成分的排列顺序作符合规则的变动。

Is he ill?
Put it on the table.

10.2 然而，为了对句子或句子的某个部分进行特别强调或赋予特别意义，还可采用其他方法改变句子成分的顺序。

In his enthusiasm*, Captain Cheshire had hoped to raise the money this year.*
The third sheet *he folded and placed in his pocket.*

这主要适用于**主句** (main clauses)。本章说明为了强调整个主句或其某个成分，如何改变主句成分的顺序。

绝大多数**从句** (subordinate clauses) 的成分的顺序无法变动，参见第八章。

被动语态 passive voice

10.3 改变句子成分顺序的办法之一，就是用被动语态。被动语态从承受动作的人或物的观点来谈一件事，甚至可以不提执行动作的人或物。

Betty Williams and Mairead Corrigan ***were awarded*** *the Nobel Peace Prize.*

☞ 关于被动语态，详见 10.8 至 10.24 节。

断裂结构 cleft structures

10.4 改变句子成分顺序的另一个办法就是用**断裂结构**(cleft sentences)。该结构分三类。

第一类是把焦点集中在所谈论的人或物上，例如，‘It was Jason who told them’。

第二类是把焦点集中在动作上，例如，‘What they did was break a window and get in that way’ 或 ‘All I could do was cry’。

第三类是把焦点集中在动作的环境上，例如，像动作的时间或地点，如 ‘It was in Paris that they met for the first time’ 或 ‘It was one o’clock when they left’。

关于断裂结构的论述，参见 10.25 节开始的部分。

非人称代词 ‘it’
impersonal ‘it’

10.5 要说及某一项事实、某个动作或特定的状况时，可用 ‘it’ 引出的结构。

例如 ‘It’s strange that he didn’t call’、‘It’s easy to laugh’ 和 ‘It’s no fun being stupid’。

‘It’ 结构也可以用来表示天气或时间，如 ‘It’s raining’、‘It’s a nice day’ 和 ‘It’s two o’clock’。

‘It’ 结构在 10.31 节开始的部分进行讨论。

‘there’ 加 ‘be’
‘there’ with ‘be’

10.6 用 ‘there’ 加 ‘be’、再加上名词词组，以说明某物的存在或出现。该结构使名词词组成为句子焦点表示新信息。有关这种结构，详见 10.46 至 10.55 节。

There is someone in the bushes.

附加状语
adjuncts

10.7 此外，还有几种附加状语可用来把焦点集中在整个句子或不同的句子成分上。这类附加状语包括句子附加状语（参见 10.56 节开始的部分），连接附加状语（参见 10.73 至 10.81 节），以及焦点副词（参见 10.87 至 10.91 节）。

*He never writes, **of course**.*
*This can be done reasonably easily. **Still**, it's not a nice idea.*
*As a child she was **particularly** close to her elder sister.*

集焦点于受事者：被动语态
Focusing on the thing affected: the passive voice

10.8 许多动作都涉及到两个人或物——一个为施事者，另一个受事者。这些动作通常用及物动词表示。第三章对及物动词已作了充分讨论。

要谈论的人或物在英语里通常在句首，作句子的主语。所以，谈论执行动作的人或物（施行者）时，就把他们作动词的主语，并用动词的主动语态形式，而让另外一个人或另一件物件作动词的宾语。

然而，说话人也许想把焦点集中在承受动作的人或物上，即本来是主动语态动词的宾语上，这时，承受动作的人或物就成了被动语态动词的主语。

例如，同一件事件可用动词的主动语态，如 'The dog's eaten our dinner'，或用动词的被动语态，如 'Our dinner's been eaten by the dog' 来叙述，用哪种形式取决于想谈的是狗还是正餐的食物。

含主动动词的句子处于**主动语态** (active voice)，含被动动词的句子处于**被动语态** (passive voice)。

被动时态的构成
formation of passive tenses

10.9 被动语态形式由动词 'be' 的适当时态形式加动词过去分词构成。例如，简单现在时 'eat' 的被动式是 'be' 的简单现在时加 'eaten'，例如 'It is eaten'。

*She escaped uninjured but her boyfriend **was shot** in the chest and died.*
*He **was being treated** for a stomach ulcer.*
*He thinks such events **could have been avoided**.*

☞ 动词被动形式，详见**参考部分** R110 至 R119。

不提施行者
not mentioning the agent

10.10 使用被动语态可使说话人不提进行动作的人或物，即通常说的施行者。使用被动语态的原因是：

• 不知道施行者是何人、何物

*He**'s** almost certainly **been murdered**.*
*The fence between the two properties **had been removed**.*

• 施行者是何人、何物并不重要

*I **had been told** that it would be perfectly quiet.*
*Such items **should be** carefully **packed** in tea chests.*

• 施行者显而易见

*She found that she **wasn't being paid** the same wage as him.*
*More people **have been treated** in hospital this year than at any time since the start of the Health Service.*

• 施行者已经提及

His pictures of dogs ***were executed*** *with tremendous humour.*
The government responded quickly, and new measures ***were passed*** *which strengthened their powers.*

• 施行者泛指人们

Both of these books ***can be obtained*** *from the public library.*
It is very strange and ***has*** *never* ***been*** *adequately* ***explained****.*

• 说话人不希望透露施行者身份，或者表示说话人想淡化与动作的关系

The original ***has been destroyed****.*
She ***had been given*** *instructions to moderate her tone.*
The government was forced to say that the report ***would be implemented****.*

10.11 叙述过程和科学实验时，因焦点集中在发生的事情上而不在使事情发生的人或物上，所以用被动语态，不提及施行者。

The principle of bottling is very simple. Food ***is put*** *in jars, the jars and their contents* ***are heated*** *to a temperature which* ***is maintained*** *long enough to ensure that all bacteria, moulds and viruses* ***are destroyed****.*

10.12 已经知道所叙述的是何人的话或想法、或叙述的是泛指的人的话或想法时，在非人称代词 'it' 结构里，通常用转述动词的被动形式。参见 10.45 节论述非人称代词结构部分。

It was agreed *that he would come and see us again the next day.*
It was rumoured *that he had been sentenced to life imprisonment, but had escaped.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

10.13 当泛指的人们为施行者时，常用主动语态动词，代词 'you' 或 'they' 作主语。正式讲话及书面语里用 'one' 作主语。

You *can't buy iron now, only steel.*
They *say she's very bright.*
It is a matter of personal belief, like the colour of socks ***one*** *prefers to wear or the television programmes* ***one*** *chooses to watch.*

有关人称代词的说明，详见 1.96 节开始的部分。

不定代词 'someone' 或 'something' 也可作主语。这样既说出了施行者，又不提及具体的人或物。不定代词详见 1.127 至 1.140 节。

I think ***someone****'s calling you.*
Something *has upset him.*

使用双向动词 (ergative verbs) 可避免说出施行者。例如，可说 'The door opened'，来代替 'She opened the door'。有关双向动词，参见 3.60 至 3.68 节。

用 'by' 提及施动者
mentioning the agent with 'by'

10.14 用被动语态时，可以在句末用 'by' 引出施行者。由于句末是重要的位置，这就使施行者成为焦点，因此，要在从句再提及施行者时，常常在主句的句末用 'by' 引出施行者。

His best friend was killed ***by a grenade, which exploded under his car****.*
The defending champion, John Pritchard, was beaten ***by Chris Boardman****.*
This view has been challenged ***by a number of workers****.*

说明施行者借以施动的工具或方式
mentioning things or methods used

10.15 像主动句那样，被动句里也可在介词 'with' 后说明施行者，借以施行的工具或方式。

A circle was drawn in the dirt ***with a stick****.*
Moisture must be drawn out first ***with salt****.*

在 'by' 后加动词的 '-ing' 形式也能表示施行方式。

Much of their strong taste can be removed ***by changing the cooking water****.*

状态动词的被动语态
passive of verbs referring to states

10.16 有的及物动词表示状态而不表示动作。这类动词用于被动语态时，施行者置于介词 'with' 之后。

The room ***was filled with*** *pleasant furniture.*
The railings ***were decorated with*** *thousands of bouquets.*

下列表示状态的及物动词，在被动句里与 'with' 连用：

cram	decorate	ornament
crowd	fill	throng

然而，有几个说明状态的动词却与 'by' 连用。

The Melbourne meeting is likely to ***be overshadowed*** *by the implications of the recent Ottawa economic summit.*

下列表示状态的及物动词，在被动句里与 'by' 连用：

conceal	illuminate	occupy
exceed	inhabit	overshadow

像 'adorn' 和 'surround' 这样的动词可与 'with' 或 'by' 连用。

Her right hand ***was covered with*** *blood.*
One entire wall ***was covered by*** *a gigantic chart of the English Channel.*
The house ***was surrounded with*** *tanks and policemen with dogs.*
The building ***was surrounded by*** *a deep green lawn.*

下列及物动词在被动句里，既可与 'with' 又可与 'by' 连用：

adorn	cover	overrun
besiege	encircle	surround

还有几个动词与 'in' 连用：

Douglas Hamilton's recommendations ***are contained in*** *the report of a survey of African elephants carried out under his direction.*
Free transport ***was not included in*** *the contract.*
The walls of her flat ***are covered in*** *dirt.*

下列及物动词在被动句里，与 'in' 连用：

contain	embody	involve
cover	include	subsume

注意，动词 'cover' 能与 'in'、'by'、或 'with' 连用。

短语动词
phrasal verbs

10.17 及物动词加副词或介词、及物动词加副词和介词构成的短语动词可用于被动句。关于短语动词，参见 3.84 至 3.117 节的附表。

Two totally opposing views ***have been put forward*** *to explain this phenomenon.*
Millions of tons of good earth ***are being washed away*** *each year.*
I was talked into *meeting Norman Granz at a posh London restaurant.*
Such expectations ***are drummed into*** *every growing child.*

通常用被动态的动词
verbs usually used in the passive

10.18 有的及物动词因词义关系，一般用在被动句里。在这种句子里，通常认为施行者没有提及的必要或无人知道。

He ***was deemed*** *to be the guardian of the child.*
The meeting ***is scheduled*** *for February 14.*
Drunken airmen ***were alleged*** *to have rampaged through the hotel.*

下列及物动词通常用于被动句：

be acclaimed	be disconcerted	be misdirected	be scheduled
be alleged	be dubbed	be overcome	be shipped
be annihilated	be dwarfed	be paralysed	be shipwrecked
be baffled	be earmarked	be penalized	be short-listed
be born	be empowered	be perpetrated	be shrouded
be compressed	be fined	be pilloried	be staffed
be conditioned	be gutted	be populated	be stranded
be construed	be headed	be prized	be strewn
be couched	be horrified	be punctuated	be subsumed
be cremated	be hospitalized	be rationed	be suspended
be dazed	be indicted	be reconciled	be swamped
be deafened	be inundated	be reprieved	be wounded
be debased	be jailed	be reunited	
be deemed	be mesmerized	be rumoured	

下列短语动词通常用于被动句：

be bowled over	be pensioned off	be scaled down	be taken aback
be caught up	be ploughed up	be struck off	be written into
be handed down	be rained off	be sworn in	

They ***were bowled over*** *by the number of visitors who came to the show.*
The journalists ***were taken aback*** *by the ferocity of the language.*

很少用被动态的动词
verbs rarely used in the passive

10.19 有些及物动词因动作承受者几乎引不起人们兴趣，很少用于被动句。

下列及物动词很少用于被动句：

elude	get	like	suit
escape	have	race	survive
flee	let	resemble	

下列含及物动词的短语动词很少用于被动句：

band together	cry out	have on	let through	stand off
bite back	ease off	have out	pace out	tide over
boom out	eke out	heave up	phone back	wait out
brush up	flick over	hunt up	ring back	walk off
call down on	get back	jab at	ring out	while away
cast back	get down	jack in	sit out	
chuck in	give over	jerk out	sob out	

双及物动词
ditransitive verbs

10.20 像 'give'、'teach' 和 'show' 等双及物动词，用于主动句时，除了有直接宾语外还有间接宾语。这两个宾语的任何一个都可作被动句的主语。

例如，'He gave the receptionist the key' 这句话可以为 'The receptionist was given the key' 替代，主动句的间接宾语成了被动句的主语。注意，直接宾语仍位于动词之后。

*They **were given a pint of water** every day.*
*She **had been taught logic** by an uncle.*

但也可说 'The key was given to the receptionist'，主动句的直接宾语成了被动句的主语。间接宾语可位于 'to' 或 'for' 之后。

*The building **had been given to the town** in the late 1920s by an investment banker.*
*Shelter **had been found for most of those still wandering the streets**.*

有时，根本没有必要提及间接宾语。

*The vaccine **can be given** at the same time as injections against diphtheria and tetanus.*
*Interest **is charged** at 2 per cent a month.*

☞ 双及物动词词表及说明，见 3.162 至 3.172 节。

带宾语补足语的及物动词
transitive verbs with object complement

10.21 有些及物动词的宾语后带补足语。这类及物动词详见 3.162 至 3.172 节的附表。用于被动句时，补足语位于动词之后。

*In August he **was elected Vice President of the Senate**.*
*If a person today talks about ghosts, he **is considered ignorant or nutty**.*

反身动词
reflexive verbs

10.22 反身动词的宾语跟动词主语有关，不能用于被动语态。

☞ 反身代词详见从 3.27 节开始的部分。

不及物短语动词
intransitive phrasal verbs

10.23 许多不及物短语动词可用于被动句。这类动词后用介词和与动作承受者有关的名词词组。介词宾语成为被动句的主语，介词仍然位于动词之后，不带宾语。

*In some households, the man **was referred to** as 'the master'.*
*Two people at the head of the line **were being dealt with** by a couple of clerks.*
*The performance **had been paid for** by a local cultural society.*
*Sanders asked if such men **could be relied on** to keep their mouths shut.*

下列不及物短语动词经常用于被动句：

accede to	deal with	jump on	pick on	see to
account for	decide on	keep to	plan for	seize on
act on	despair of	laugh at	plan on	send for
adhere to	dictate to	lean on	play with	set on
aim at	dispense with	leap on	plot against	settle on
allow for	dispose of	light upon	point to	shoot at
allude to	enter into	listen to	pore over	skate over
approve of	frown upon	long for	pounce on	stamp on
ask for	fuss over	look after	preside over	stare at
aspire to	get at	look at	prevail on	subscribe to
attend to	get round	look into	prey on	talk about
bargain for	gloss over	look through	provide for	talk to
bite into	guess at	look to	put upon	tamper with
break into	hear of	meddle with	puzzle over	tinker with
budget for	hint at	minister to	reason with	touch on
build on	hope of	mourn for	refer to	trample on
call for	impose on	object to	rely on	trifle with
call on	improve on	operate on	remark on	wait on
care for	indulge in	pander to	resort to	watch over
cater for	inquire into	paper over	rush into	wonder at
count on	insist on	pay for	see through	work on

有些由不及物动词加副词和介词构成的短语动词也用于被动句。

The farm labourer used to ***be looked down on****.*
I was afraid of ***being done away with****.*

下列由三个词组成的短语动词用于被动句：

do away with	look down on	look out for	play around with
live up to	look forward to	look up to	talk down to

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

10.84 注意，非正式英语中有时用 'get' 替代 'be' 构成被动语态，这时，常常不提施行者。

Our car ***gets cleaned*** *about once every two months.*
My husband ***got fined*** *in Germany for crossing a road.*

选择焦点：断裂句
Selecting focus: cleft sentences

10.85 把焦点集中在句子某个部分的方法之一，是用断裂结构。该结构含动词 'be'，不是用 'it' 作非人称主语，就是用从句、小句，如关系从句、或用 'to'- 不定式小句作主语或补足语。含这种结构的句子叫断裂句。

'It' 作主语
'it' as the subject

10.26 要强调名词词组并使它成为句子其他部分叙述的对象，可用该词组作为非人称 'It' 结构的补足语，词组后跟关系从句，表示信息的其他的内容。补足语可指关系从句的主语式宾语。例如，不说 'George found the right answer'，而说 'It was George who found the right answer'，用这种结构来强调 George 找到了正确答案这一项事实。

*It was **Ted** who broke the news to me.*
*It is usually **the other vehicle** that suffers most.*

同样，可用 'It's clocks that Henry makes' 替代 'Henry makes clocks'。

*It's **money** that they want.*
*It was **me** Dookie wanted.*

集焦点于其他成分
other kinds of focus

10.27 断裂结构通常把焦点集中在名词词组上。但也可把焦点集中在句子其他成分或整个从句及小句上。这时可用 'that' 引出的关系从句。

附加状语可成为断裂句的焦点。例如，为了强调事件的环境，可把焦点集中在表示时间、地点的介词短语或副词上。

*It was **from Francis** that she first heard the news.*
*It was **then** that I recalled that I had left my wristwatch up in the saloon.*
*It was **in Elliotdale** that I first saw these films.*

如要强调动作，也可把非限定小句作为焦点。

*It was **meeting Peter** that really started me off on this new line of work.*

要强调原因，可把 'because' 引出的从句作为焦点。

*Perhaps it's **because he's a misfit** that I get along with him.*

用 'what' 或 'all' 集焦点于动作
'what' or 'all' to focus on an action

10.28 强调某人进行的动作，可用 'what' 加主语和动词 'do'，再用动词 'be' 和带或不带 'to'- 的不定式小句组成断裂句。

例如，可用 'What I did was to write to George immediately' 替代 'I wrote to George immediately'。

What Stephen did was to interview a lot of old people.
What you have to do is to choose five companies to invest in.
What it does is draw out all the vitamins from the body.
What he did was get Christopher followed by a private detective.

可用 'all' 替代 'what'，强调只做了一件事而没有做其他的事。

All he did was shake hands and wish me good luck.
All she ever does is make jam.

集焦点于主题
focusing on the topic

10.29 作主语的 'what'-从句可用来把焦点集中在谈论的事上。这种句子可置于动词 'be' 之前或之后。例如，除了可说 'What appealed to me was its originality'，还可说 'Its originality was what appealed to me'。

What impressed me most was their sincerity.
These six factors are what constitutes intelligence.

集焦点于某人想要或需要的东西上
focusing on what someone wants or needs

10.30 要想把焦点集中在某人想要、需要或喜欢的东西上时，可用断裂句。断裂句开头部分是 'what' 带主语再加 'want' 或 'need' 等动词组成的从句，在从句后用动词 'be' 及表示想要、需要或喜欢的东西的名词词组。

下列动词在这种结构里与 'what' 连用：

adore	hate	love	want
dislike	like	need	
enjoy	loathe	prefer	

例如，可用 'What we need is a bigger garden' 来替代 'We need a bigger garden'。

What we as a nation want is not words but deeds.
What you need is a doctor.
What he needed was an excuse to talk.

强调某人只想要或需要某物，用 'all' 替代 'what'，与动词 'want' 或 'need' 连用。

All they want is a holiday.
All a prisoner needed was a pass.

不拟在上述结构提及施行者时，可在 'what' 或 'all that' 后用动词的被动形式。

What was needed was an organized struggle.
All that was needed was to place strips of the paper in a thin rubber tube.

不将焦点放在主语上：用非人称代词 'it'
Taking the focus off the subject: using impersonal 'it'

10.31 说话人只想在句子里提及一件事或一项事实。例如，常把焦点集中在一般由形容词提供的信息上。但是，形容词不能独立作句子主语。常用的方法是以 'it' 作主语，以形容词作 'be' 的补足语。

不拟选定句子中的任何一个成分作谈论对象时，就用以 'it' 作主语的几种结构。

'It' 可用于：

- 叙述地点或情景

It'*s lonely here.*

- 叙述天气或时间

It *had been raining all day.*
It *is seven o'clock.*

这些用法通常称作 'it' 的非人称用法。

10.32 在以上几种用法里，'it' 并未返指口头或书面语里已提及的事情。所以，这种 'it' 不同于人称代词，因为人称代词 'it' 通常指已经提过的名词词组。

The sun *kept changing everything as* ***it*** *moved across the sky.*
Paris *is special, isn't* ***it****?*

☞ 人称代词详见 1.96 节开始的部分。

注意，代词 'it' 也可用来指已经叙述或隐含的整个情况或事实。

He's never come to see his son. ***It***'*s most peculiar, isn't it?*
It *doesn't matter.*
It'*s my fault.*

10.33 也可用 'it' 引出对行为、活动或经历的评论，主语 'it' 指后面的 'to'- 不定式小句或限定从句。

It *costs so much* ***to get there****.*
It *was amazing* ***that audiences came to the theatre at all****.*

这种结构可避免主语过长，以便把谈论的内容放在句末这一个较为显著的位置上。

叙述地点或情景
Describing a place or situation

10.34 可用 'it' 加 'be' 这样的系动词，再加形容词和地点附加状语，叙述说话人在某地的经历。

It was very pleasant at the Hochstadts.
It was terribly cold in the trucks.
It's nice down there.

☞ 地点附加状语详见 6.53 节开始的部分。

同样，由 'it' 加 'be' 和形容词再加 'when' 或 'if' 引出的从句可表示对情况的看法。

It's so nice when it's hot, isn't it?
Won't it seem odd if I have no luggage?

用 'it' 作宾语 using 'it' as an object

10.35 也可用 'it' 作 'like' 和 'hate' 等动词的宾语，表示对地点或对情况的情绪。

*I like **it** here.*
*He knew that he would hate **it** if they said no.*

下列是具有这种用法的常见动词：

adore	enjoy	like	love
dislike	hate	loathe	prefer

表示天气和时间
Talking about the weather and the time

表示天气 describing the weather

10.36 用 'it' 作动词的主语表示天气。

It's still raining.
It was pouring with rain.
It snowed steadily throughout the night.

下列动词用在 'it' 之后叙述天气：

drizzle	pour	sleet	thunder
hail	rain	snow	

'It' 后用 'be' 和补足语也能描述天气。补足语可能是单独的形容词，也可能是形容词加表示一段时间的名词。

'Can I go swimming?' — 'No, it's too cold.'
It was very windy.
It was a warm, sunny evening.
It's a lovely day, isn't it?

下列是常见的用来描述天气的形容词：

bitter	cold	freezing	misty	warm
blowy	cool	frosty	muggy	wet
blustery	damp	hot	rainy	windy
boiling	dark	humid	showery	
breezy	dry	icy	stormy	
chilly	fine	light	sunny	
cloudy	foggy	lovely	thundery	

注意，表示天气变化或昼夜变化，可用 'it' 后接 'get' 加形容词补足语。

He put the top up because it was getting cold.
It's getting dark.

表示时间和日期
giving times and dates

10.37 用 'it' 后接 'be' 和补足语可以表示几点几分、星期几或年、月、日。

It's eight o'clock.
It's Saturday afternoon and all my friends are out.
It was July, but freezing cold.

强调时间
emphasizing time

10.38 用 'it' 加 'be' 再加表示时间的名词词组可构成许多有用的时间表达式，这种结构强调事件发生的时间。

可用 'when' 说明某事发生的时间。

It was 11 o'clock at night ***when*** *16 armed men came to my house.*
It was nearly midnight ***when*** *Kunta finally slept.*

可用 'since' 说明某事发生在多久以前。

It's two weeks now ***since*** *I wrote to you.*
It was forty years ***since*** *the war.*

可用 'before' 说明一件事件与另一件事件的时间间隔。

It was ninety days ***before*** *Rodin's search was over.*
It was four minutes ***before*** *half-time.*

可用 'to' 说明过多久后某事将发生。

It's two days ***to*** *D-day.*

评论行为、活动或经历
Commenting on an action, activity, or experience

用系动词
using link verbs

10.39 评论正在进行或经历着的事，通常用 'it' 后跟系动词加补足语。补足语之后可用现在分词小句或 'to'- 不定式小句。

It's fun working for him.
It was difficult trying to talk to her.
It's nice to see you with your books for a change.
It will be a stimulating experience to see Mrs Oliver.

要提及进行或经历动作的人，可在补足语后用 'for' 引出的介词短语加 'to'- 不定式小句。

It becomes hard for a child to develop a sense of identity.

向别人指出应该怎样做或指出做的必要性，也可用带 'to'- 的不定式小句。

It's important to know your own limitations.
It's good idea to have a little notebook handy.
It is necessary to examine this claim before we proceed any further.

用其他动词
using other verbs

10.40 类似上述的结构也能与除系动词以外的动词连用。

说明某种经历对某人的影响，可把 'it' 与 'please'、'surprise' 或 'shock' 等动词连用，再加上名词词组和 'to'- 不定式小句。这类动词见 10.44 节附表。

It always pleased him to think of his father.
It surprised him to realize that he hadn't thought about them until now.
It interests him to hear what you've been buying.

'It' 可与 'take' 和 'to'- 不定式小句连用，表示完成某种行动所需要的条件，如需要多少时间或需要哪种人。

It takes an hour to get to Idlewild.
It takes an exceptional parent to cope with a child like that.
It took many wounds to kill them.

如句中有间接宾语，可将它直接置于动词之后。

*It took **me** a year to save up for a new hat.*

如间接宾语是由介词短语表达，通常是由 'for' 引出，可置于直接宾语之后。

*It took some time **for him** to realize what was required.*
*It takes a lot more guts **for a woman** to resign than for a man.*

叙述某种活动所需某物的数量，通常指金额，在这类结构中可用 'cost'。

It costs about £150 a week to keep someone in prison.

动词是 'find' 和 'think' 时，可用 'it' 作宾语，随后用宾语补足语加 'to'-不定式小句或 'that'- 从句。

*He found **it** hard to make friends.*
*He thought **it** right to resign immediately.*

叙述行为的其他方法
other ways of talking about actions

10.41 要把焦点集中在非限定小句上，可把这一个小句作为主句的主语替代 'it'。例如，可用 'Working for him is fun' 来替代 'It's fun working for him'。

***Measuring the water correctly** is most important.*

正式英语中有时用 'to'- 不定式小句作主语。

***To lose a son in the games** was as honourable as losing him on a foreign battlefield.*

评论即将提及的事实
Commenting on a fact that you are about to mention

10.42 要评论事实、事件或情况时，可用 'it'，后接系动词、补足语加说明事实的 'that'- 从句。

It is strange that it hasn't been noticed before.
It's a shame he didn't come.
From the photographs it seems clear my mother was no beauty.

下列形容词在上述结构中作补足语：

amazing	essential	inevitable	plain	true
apparent	evident	interesting	possible	unlikely
appropriate	extraordinary	likely	probable	wonderful
awful	fair	lucky	queer	
bad	funny	natural	sad	
clear	good	obvious	strange	
doubtful	important	odd	surprising	

下列名词在上述结构中作补足语：

disgrace	nuisance	shame	wonder
marvel	pity	surprise	

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

10.43 在 'funny'、'odd' 和 'strange' 等形容词之后，有时用 'how' 引出的从句替代 'that'- 从句，两种从句的意义相同。

It's funny how they don't get on.
It is really wonderful how the time has gone.
It's queer how you dig things up.

评论动作对象时，可把 'what'- 从句用在类似的形容词之后。

It's surprising what you can dig up.
It's amazing what some of them would do for a little publicity.

要说明有充分的理由做某事时，可把 'why'- 从句用在 'obvious' 和 'clear' 这类形容词之后。

Looking back on these cases, it is clear why the unions distrust the law.

要评论某事是否真实时，可以把 'whether'- 从句用在 'doubtful' 和 'irrelevant' 这类形容词之后。

It is doubtful whether supply could ever have kept up with consumption.

其他动词 other verbs

10.44 要说明某人对某一项事实的看法，可用 'it' 后接 'please' 或 'surprise' 等动词。动词之后是名词词组和 'that'- 从句。

It won't surprise you that I stuck it in my pocket.
It grieved her that Ashok could not sleep there.

下列动词用于这种结构：

amaze	astonish	delight	horrify	surprise
amuse	astound	disgust	interest	upset
annoy	bewilder	distress	please	worry
appal	bother	grieve	shock	

转述动词的被动形式 passives of reporting verbs

10.45 要说明一些人所说、所想或所发现的事，可用 'it' 作转述动词的被动句的主语，后接 'that'- 从句。

It was agreed that the transaction should be kept secret.
It was felt that there had been some duplication of effort.
It was found that no cases of hypothermia had been recorded.

这类用法的动词，参见 7.65 节附表。

引出新的信息：'there' 作主语
Introducing something new: 'there' as subject

说明某物的存在
saying that something exists

10.46 要表示某物的存在或提及某物的出现时，可用 'there'，后接 'be' 加名词词组。

英语有这种结构是因为限定动词必须有主语。但是新的信息只能在引出之后才可加以谈论。因此，用 'there' 作句子主语，然后在 'be' 之后引出新的信息。

这种 'there' 的用法不同于地点副词 'there'，与地点无关。口语中，这两种 'there' 的差异更明显，前者一般不带重音，读作 /ðə/，而后者几乎总是重读作 /ðɛə/。

此种结构里的 'there' 本身没有多少词汇意义。例如，'There is a good reason for this' 与 'A good reason for this exists' 两个句子意义完全相同。

10.47 这种结构中的名词词组后，通常是附加状语或用 'wh'-词开首的从句或用 'available'、'present' 或 'free' 等形容词中的一个。

There were thirty boys in the class.
There are three reasons why we should support this action.
There were no other jobs available.

地点附加状语可置于 'there' 之前，也可置于名词词组之后。

On a marble-topped table *there was a big white china mug.*
There was a long field ***on one side of the filling station***.

说明某事曾发生
saying that something happened

10.48 也可用 'there' 加 'be' 和表示事件的名词词组，说明发生过某事或将发生某事。

There was a knock at his door.
There were two general elections that year.
There will be bloodshed tonight.

叙述某事正在发生
describing something that is happening

10.49 描述某种场景或情况时，可用 'there' 加 'be'，加名词词组以及现在分词的结构。

例如，'Flames were coming out of it' 这个句子可为 'There were flames coming out of it' 替代。

There was a monsoon raging outside.
There were men and women working in the fields with horses.
There was a revolver lying there.

动词与名词词组一致
verb agreement

10.50 这种结构中的名词词组是复数时，动词 'be' 也相应用复数形式。

There were two men in the room.

一系列事物的第一项是单数或是不具数名词时，用 'be' 的单数形式。

There was a sofa and two chairs.
There is grief in his face and reproach at the injustice of it all.

注意，表示复数的数量词，如 'a number of'、'a lot of' 和 'a few of'，尽管前面有 'a'，却要用 'be' 的复数形式。

There were a lot of people camped there.

表示数目的词语，如 'a hundred'、'a thousand' 和 'a dozen'，尽管前面有 'a'，也要用 'be' 的复数形式。

There were a dozen reasons why a man might hurry from a bar.

与 'there' 连用的缩略式
contractions with 'there'

10.51 在口语及非正式书面语中，'there is'、'there has' 常常缩略为 'there's'；'there had'、'there would' 为 'there'd'；'there will' 为 'there'll'。

***There's** no danger.*
*I didn't even know **there'd** been a murder.*

与形容词连用的 'there'
'there' with adjectives

10.52 'There' 也可与形容词 'likely'、'unlikely'、'sure'、'certain' 等连用，表示某事发生的可能性。

*There are **unlikely** to be any problems with the timetable.*

'There' 与其他动词连用
'there' with other verbs

10.53 另外，有些动词也可置于 'there' 之后，其用法与 'be' 相似。说明某事似乎是这种情况或似乎已经发生过时，'there' 可与 'seem' 或 'appear' 连用，随后用 'to be' 或 'to have been'。

*There **seems to have been** some carelessness recently.*
*There **appears to be** a vast amount of confusion on this point.*

有时，尤其在不具数名词之前，'to be' 可以省略。

*There **seems** little doubt that he was insane.*

有时，'there' 后跟被动语态转述动词加不定式 'to be'，表示某人口头表示或心里想有某事存在。转述动词详见从 7.5 节开始的部分。

*There **is expected to be** an announcement about the proposed building next month.*
*There **is understood to be** no suggestion of either doctor being involved in financial gain from the transaction.*

'Happen' 也用在这种结构中，表示某事的偶然存在。

*There **happened to be** a roll of nylon tubing lying on the desk.*

'Tend' 也可用于这种结构中，表示某事大概会发生或存在。

*There **tend to be** overlapping networks of Mums who have each other's children round to play.*

正式和文学语体中的用法
formal and literary uses

10.54 'Exist'、'remain'、'arise'、'follow'、'come' 可用于 'there' 之后，说明某事的发生或存在。这种结构仅出现在正式英语或文学作品中。

*There **remained** the matter of Cranston.*
*There **followed** a great flood of indignation in the newspapers.*
*There **comes** a time when you have to make a choice.*

10.55 文学作品中常用的另一种结构以地点附加状语为先导，后接 'there' 加表示位置或运动的动词。例如，作者可能写出 'At the top of the hill there stands the old church'，用这个句子取代 'The old church stands at the top of the hill'。

*From his hands **there dangles** a shiny new briefcase.*
*Beside them **there curls up** a twist of blue smoke.*

用附加状语集焦点于句子或句子成分
Focusing on clauses or clause elements using adjuncts

评论陈述：句子附加状语
Commenting on your statement: sentence adjuncts

10.56 许多附加状语可用来表示说话人对自己的话的态度或者要使受话人对说话人的话持某种态度。有关论述参见 10.57 至 10.72 节。

还有些附加状语表示句与句的某种联系。有关论述参见 10.73 至 10.81 节。

另外的附加状语用来缩小陈述范围或把焦点集中在与陈述有关的某个方面。有关论述参见 10.87 至 10.91 节。

这些状语统称为**句子附加状语** (sentence adjuncts)，理由是它们与其所在的整个句子有关。在别的语法书里，有时称它们为**句子状语**(sentence adverbials) 或**评注状语** (disjuncts)。

句子附加状语通常位于句首。有的也用于其他位置。如以下例句所示，一般用语调或用逗号把它们和前后的词语分开，表示它们说明的是整个句子。

有关附加状语详见第六章。

表示说话人对自己的话的态度
Indicating your attitude to what you are saying

表示自己的看法
indicating your opinion

10.57 有一类句子附加状语用来表示说话人对自己所讲的事实或事件的反应或意见。

Surprisingly, *most of my help came from the technicians.*
Luckily, *I had seen the play before so I knew what it was about.*
It is ***fortunately*** *not a bad bump, and Henry is only slightly hurt.*
Interestingly, *the solution adopted in these two countries was the same.*

下列附加状语常常表示这种反应和意见：

absurdly	fortunately	oddly	true
admittedly	happily	of course	typically
alas	incredibly	paradoxically	unbelievably
anyway	interestingly	please	understandably
astonishingly	ironically	predictably	unexpectedly
at least	luckily	remarkably	unfortunately
characteristically	mercifully	sadly	unhappily
coincidentally	miraculously	significantly	unnecessarily
conveniently	mysteriously	strangely	
curiously	naturally	surprisingly	

附加状语 'at least'、'anyway' 的用法之一，是表示说话人对自己叙述的事实感到高兴，尽管另外还存在不尽人意的事实。

***At least** we're agreed on something.*
*He fell back with a look of surprise – dead. It's quick, **anyway**, I thought.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

10.58 下列少数副词后常用 'enough'，表示说话人对谈论的事实的意见：

curiously	funnily	interestingly	oddly	strangely

***Interestingly enough**, this proportion has not increased.*
***Funnily enough**, old people seem to love bingo.*
*I find myself **strangely enough** in agreement with John for a change.*

避免充分肯定和有所保留 distancing and qualifying

10.59 有些句子附加状语能产生这样的效果，即表示说话人对自己陈述的真实不予完全肯定。

*Rats eat **practically** anything.*
*It was **almost** a relief when the race was over.*
*They are, **in effect**, still trapped in a history which they do not understand.*
***In a way** I liked her better than Mark.*

使用下列附加状语能产生这种效果：

almost	so to speak
in a manner of speaking	to all intents and purposes
in a way	to some extent
in effect	up to a point
more or less	virtually
practically	

注意，'almost'、'practically'、'virtually' 不用在句首。'I think'、'I believe'、'I suppose' 等表达式也用来表示说话人对自己说的话的真实性不给予充分肯定。

表示观点 indicating viewpoint

10.60 在 'luckily'、'fortunately'、'happily'、'unfortunately' 等副词之后，用 'for' 和表示人的名词词组来说明说话人叙述的是何人的观点。

*'Does he do his fair share of the household chores?' – 'Oh yes, **fortunately** for me.'*
***Luckily for me and them**, love did eventually grow and flourish.*

表示施行者的品质 indicating quality of the agent

10.61 另一类句子附加状语用来说明说话人认为某人做某事时表现出的品质。这类附加状语由描述人的形容词转化而成，并常常位于主语之后、动词之前。

*The League of Friends **generously** provided about five thousand pounds.*
*Paul Gayner is **rightly** famed for his menu for vegetarians.*
*She **very kindly** arranged a beautiful lunch.*
***Foolishly**, we had said we would do the decorating.*

下列副词可这样使用：

bravely	correctly	kindly	wrongly
carelessly	foolishly	rightly	
cleverly	generously	wisely	

表示陈述的理由 indicating your justification for a statement

10.62 如果把陈述建立在说话人目睹、耳闻或阅读的基础上，则可用句子副词加以说明。例如，看到用手工制作的某物时，则可说 'It is obviously made by hand'。

*His friend was **obviously** impressed.*
*Higgins **evidently** knew nothing about their efforts.*
***Apparently** they had a row.*

下列是经常这样用的副词：

apparently	evidently	obviously	unmistakably
clearly	manifestly	plainly	visibly

假定会得到受话人同意 assuming hearer's agreement

10.63 句子附加状语常用来说服他人同意说话人的看法。通过这种附加状语的使用，说话人假定自己在说的话是显而易见的。

Obviously *I can't do the whole lot myself.*
Price, ***of course****, is a critical factor.*

下列附加状语常可这样使用：

clearly	naturally	obviously	of course	plainly

表示真实性或可能性
indicating reality or possibility

10.64 有些附加状语用来说明某情况是否真实存在或似乎存在或可能存在。

Even sympathetic observers have said that what he's ***really*** *doing is protecting his own interests.*
Germs were ***allegedly*** *scattered from airplanes.*
Extra cash is ***probably*** *the best present.*

下列附加状语可这样使用：

actually	in fact	officially	unofficially	potentially
certainly	in practice	perhaps	~	seemingly
conceivably	in reality	possibly	allegedly	supposedly
definitely	in theory	presumably	apparently	theoretically
doubtless	maybe	probably	nominally	undoubtedly
hopefully	no doubt	really	ostensibly	

上表的第二组副词常常位于形容词之前。

We drove along ***apparently empty*** *streets.*
They pointed out that it would be ***theoretically possible*** *to lay a cable from a satellite to earth.*

表示说话人态度
indicating your attitude

10.65 要明确表示说话人对自己所说内容的态度，可用句子附加状语。

Frankly*, the more I hear about him, the less I like him.*
In my opinion *it was probably a mistake.*
In fairness *it should be said that he cannot be accused of a lack of objectivity.*

下列是可这样使用的常见附加状语：

frankly	in fairness	in retrospect	seriously
honestly	in my opinion	on reflection	to my mind
in all honesty	in my view	personally	

使用不定式小句
using infinitive clauses

10.66 表示说话人作了何种陈述的另一种方法就是用 'to be' 后接形容词，或用 'to put it' 后接副词。

I don't really know, ***to be honest****.*
To put it crudely*, all unions have got the responsibility of looking after their members.*

表示礼貌 politeness

10.67 当提出请求的人希望表现得有礼貌时，可以用句子副词 'please'。

May I have a word with you, ***please****?*
Would you ***please*** *remove your glasses?*
Please *be careful.*

交代参照领域
Stating your field of reference

具体说明 specification

10.68 要把叙述事情的某个方面表示清楚时，用由类别形容词构成的句子副词。例如，说明某事在政治领域内或从政治观点来看是重要的，可说 'politically important'。这类副词常常位于形容词之前，或者位于句首或句末。

It would have been ***politically*** *damaging for him to retreat.*
Technically*, marriage has a legally enshrined status.*
We had a very bad year last year ***financially****.*

下列副词可指某事的特定方面：

aesthetically	ethically	numerically	spiritually
biologically	financially	outwardly	statistically
chemically	geographically	physically	superficially
commercially	ideologically	politically	technically
culturally	intellectually	psychologically	technologically
ecologically	logically	racially	visually
economically	mechanically	scientifically	
emotionally	mentally	sexually	
environmentally	morally	socially	

产出性特征 PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

10.69 有时把 'speaking' 加在这类副词之后。例如，'technically speaking' 可用来表示 'from a technical point of view' 的含义。

He's not a doctor ***technically speaking****.*
He and Malcolm decided that, ***racially speaking****, anyway, they were in complete agreement.*

这体现了英语**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**部分进行了论述。

概括说明 generalization

10.70 由于意识到事实与所说的不那么相符，所以就要避免作出肯定的、有力的陈述。

实现这一个目的的方法之一，就是用句子附加状语，进行概括的、基本的或大致的陈述。

Basically, *the more craters a surface has, the older it is.*
By and large *the broadcasters were free to treat this material very much as they wished.*
I think ***on the whole*** *we don't do too badly.*

下列附加状语可这样使用：

all in all	by and large	on average
all things considered	essentially	on balance
altogether	for the most part	on the whole
as a rule	fundamentally	overall
at a rough estimate	generally	ultimately
basically	in essence	
broadly	in general	

注意，也可用 'broadly speaking'、'generally speaking' 和 'roughly speaking' 等表达式表示**概括说明**。

We are all, ***broadly speaking***, *middle class.*
Roughly speaking, *the problem appears to be confined to the tropics.*

产出性特征 PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

10.71 句子附加状语也可用带类别形容词的介词短语，如 'in financial terms' 或 'from a political point of view'。用与这类形容词有关的名词也能构成类似的介词短语，例如用名词 'money' 代替形容词 'financial' 构成 'in money terms'、'in terms of money'、'with regard to money'、'from the money point of view'。

Life is going to be a little easier ***in economic terms***.
That is the beginning of a very big step forward ***in educational terms***.
This state was a late developer ***in terms of commerce***.

这表现出英语**产出性特征**。**产出性特征**在**前言**部分论述。

产出性特征 PRODUCTIVE FEATURE

10.72 表示类似 'with regard to money' 的另一个方法，是用 'money-wise'。把后缀 '-wise' 加在表示所指方向的名词之后，通常是为了避免短语过长。

Not to have visited the company's plant in Frankfurt or the American subsidiary will put you at a disadvantage ***status-wise***.

*We are mostly Socialists **vote-wise**.*

这种用法是美国英语的一种**产出性特征**，但在英国英语里并不普遍。**产出性特征**在前言部分论述。

表示连接：连接性附加状语
Showing connections: linking adjuncts

10.73 以下各节讨论各类**连接性附加状语** (linking adjuncts) 的功能。这种附加状语用来表示一个句子与另一个句子之间有何种联系。

表示增加
indicating an addition

10.74 讲话或书写过程中，可用下列任何一个附加状语引出相关的评论或附加的加强性信息。

also	at the same time	furthermore	on top of that
as well	besides	moreover	too

*Kuwait's oil will last for more than 200 years at current production levels. **Moreover**, new reserves continue to be discovered.*
*His first book was published in 1932, and it was followed by a series of novels. He **also** wrote a book on British pubs.*
*The demands of work can cause gaps in regular attendance. **On top of that**, many students are offered no extra lessons during the vacations.*

注意，'too' 通常不置于句首。

*They had arrived in style, carnations in their buttonholes; they went out in style **too**.*

表示可比拟的事物
indicating a parallel

10.75 要强调后述的事实与刚提到的事实可说明同一个论点，或者强调后提的建议，与刚提及的建议具有同样的基础，可用下列附加状语：

again	equally	likewise
by the same token	in the same way	similarly

*Every baby's face is different from every other's. **In the same way**, every baby's pattern of development is different.*
*There seem to be fewer men around to whom I feel I ought to defer. **By the same token**, there are more and more men who come to me for advice.*
*Never feed your rabbit raw potatoes that have gone green – they contain a poison. **Similarly**, never feed it rhubarb leaves.*

对照与选择
contrasts and alternatives

10.76 要附加与前句形成对比或与前句观点不同的句子时，可用下列附加状语：

all the same	even so	nonetheless	still
alternatively	however	on the contrary	then again
by contrast	instead	on the other hand	though
conversely	nevertheless	rather	yet

*He had forgotten that there was a rainy season in the winter months. It was, **however**, a fine, soft rain and the air was warm.*
*Her aim is to punish the criminal. **Nevertheless**, she is not convinced that imprisonment is always the answer.*
*The visitors got into their stride towards the end of the match. At no point, **though**, was the result seriously in doubt.*

表示有另一种选择时，可用 'instead'、'alternatively' 或 'conversely'。

*People who normally consulted her began to ask other people's advice **instead**.*
*The company is now considering an appeal. **Alternatively**, they may submit a new application.*

因果
causes

10.77 表示所叙述的事实的存在是因为有前面的事实。这种因果关系可用下列附加状语连接句子：

accordingly	consequently	so	therefore
as a result	hence	thereby	thus

*Oxford and Cambridge have a large income of their own. **So** they are not in quite the same position as other universities.*
*It isn't giving any detailed information. **Therefore** it isn't necessary.*
*We want a diverse press and we haven't got it. I think **as a result** a lot of options are denied us.*

表示时间顺序
indicating sequence in time

10.78 许多时间附加状语可用来表示某事的发生在时间上先于或后于已经提及的事情或与其同时发生，见下列时间附加状语：

afterwards	first	presently	subsequently
at the same time	in the meantime	previously	suddenly
beforehand	last	simultaneously	then
earlier	later	since	throughout
ever since	meanwhile	soon	
finally	next	soon after	

*Go and see Terry Brown about it. Come back to me **afterwards**.*
*Published in 1983, the book has **since** gone through six reprints.*
*One day they got married without telling anyone **beforehand**.*
*We look forward to the Commission studying this agreement. **In the meantime** we are pressing ahead with our plans.*

内容要点的先后安排
ordering points

10.79 人们在正式的书面语及讲话中，常常想表示他们写到了或讲到了什么阶段，这可用下列附加状语表示：

first	secondly	finally	then
firstly	third	in conclusion	to sum up
second	thirdly	lastly	

*What are the advantages of geo-thermal energy? **Firstly**, there's no fuel required, the energy already exists. **Secondly**, there's plenty of it.*
***Finally**, I want to say something about the heat pump.*

连接词
conjunctions

10.80 在非正式谈话或书面语中，常常用连词 'and'、'but'、'yet'、'or'、'nor' 引出新句子以补充附加信息。

*We stayed fifteen miles from Bonar Bridge. **And** we went up the coast too.*
*I think it's motor cycling. **But** I'm not sure.*
*It's not improving their character. **Nor** their home life.*

连词后的连接性附加状语
linking adjuncts after conjunctions

10.81 连接性附加状语常常位于引出分句或句子的连词 'and' 或 'but' 之后。

*That will take a long time **and besides** you'd get it wrong.*
*They were familiar **and therefore** all right.*
*Her accent is not perfect. **But still**, it's a marvellous performance.*

如连接两个否定句或否定分句，可置 'either' 于第二个句子或分句句末。

*I can't use it, but I can't bear not to use it **either**.*

表示会话中话题的转变
Indicating a change in a conversation

10.82 在对话进行过程中，从一个话题转到另一个话题、从同一个话题的一个方面转到另一方面，都会使人感到突然。为了避免这种情况，可在对话进行中用某些句子附加状语。但是，这类附加状语很少用来开始对话。

下列附加状语常常起这种作用：

actually	incidentally	okay	well
anyhow	look	right	well now
anyway	now	so	well then
by the way	now then	then	you know

一般说来，这类附加状语位于分句之首，但是，说话中停顿或者想引起对新话题注意时，其中有几个附加状语可用在分句的其他位置上。'Actually'、'anyhow'、'anyway'、'by the way'、'incidentally'、'you know' 可用在句末。'By the way'、'incidentally'、'you know' 却可用在主语之后或者用在动词词组的第一个词之后。

以下例句中出现的附加状语用来改变会话中的话题：

***Actually**, Dan, before I forget, she asked me to tell you about my new job.*
***Well now**, we've got a very big task ahead of us.*

以下例句中的附加状语用来把同一个话题的一个方面转到另一方面：

*What do you sell there **anyway**?*
*This approach, **incidentally**, also has the advantage of being cheap.*

'Then' 不同于其它附加状语，不用于句首，只用于句末。

*That's all right **then**.*
*Are you fond of her, **then**?*

10.83 有些附加状语用在句首引出某种事实，而且常常用它对刚陈述的事实进行纠正。这类附加状语也可以用在句末或者别的位置上，对事实进行强调。

actually	as it happens	indeed
as a matter of fact	I mean	in fact

注意，这里 'actually' 用来补充同一个话题的内容，而上一节里却用来改变话题。

***Actually**, I do know why he made the solicitors write that letter.*
*He rather envies you **actually**.*
*I'm sure you're right. **In fact**, I know you're right.*
*There's no reason to be disappointed. **As a matter of fact**, this could be rather amusing.*
*They cannot hop or jump. **Indeed**, they can barely manage even to run.*

'You see' 用来引导或提示要作出的解释。

*'You don't want to come with me, then?' – 'No. **You see**, it's not often that I get the chance to be absolutely free.'*
*Some ran away to Canada and were never heard of again. They couldn't write, **you see**.*

'After all' 用来引导或提示刚才说话的原因或理由。

*She did not regret accepting his offer. He was, **after all**, about the right age.*

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

10.84 有时可用介词短语引出新的话题或同一个话题的另一方面。'As to' 或 'as for' 可用于句首引出与原话题稍有不同的话题。

***As to** what actually transpired at the headquarters, there are many differing accounts.*
*We will continue to expand our economy. **As for** the US, we will ask that they take steps to reduce their budget deficit.*

'With'、'in the case of' 可用来提出与先前谈到过的某种情况有关的另一件事情。

***With goats**, for example, mother and infant form a close bond in the first five minutes of a kid's life.*
*The changes will be even more striking and effective **in the case of teaching** than in medicine.*

强调
Emphasizing

10.85 若要强调陈述的真实性或所述情况的严重性，用下列句子附加状语即可：

above all	even	simply	truly
actually	for heaven's sake	so	without exception
at all	indeed	surely	
believe me	positively	to put it mildly	
by all means	really	to say the least	

*Sometimes we **actually** dared to penetrate their territory.*
***Above all**, do not be too proud to ask for advice.*
*Eight years was **indeed** a short span of time.*
*I **really** am sorry.*
***Believe me**, if you get robbed, the best thing to do is forget about it.*

注意，'indeed' 常常置于含 'very' 的补足语之后。

*I think she is a **very** stupid person **indeed**.*

'At all' 用于否定句表示强调，通常位于句末。

*I didn't like it **at all**.*
*I would not be **at all** surprised if they turned out to be the same person.*

请求他人赞同时，用 'surely'。

***Surely** it is better to know the truth than to be deluded.*
*Here, **surely**, is a case for treating people as individuals.*

'Even' 置于单词、词组之前，使人注意话语中令人吃惊的那部分。

***Even** at mid-day the air was sharp and chilly.*
*Some men were **even** singing.*
*There was no one in the cafe, not **even** a waiter.*

表示同意或评述则用 'so' 引出作为强调句。

*'Derek! It's raining!' – '**So** it is.'*
*'He's very grateful!' – '**So** he ought to be.'*

'By all means' 用来强调允许。

*If your baby likes water, **by all means** give it to him.*

提出请求或问题时，用 'for heaven's sake' 加强语气。

***For heaven's sake**, don't pull, Chris.*
*What are you staring at, **for heaven's sake**?*

强调确切性 emphasizing exactness

10.86 要强调自己的陈述不仅总体上而且各个细节上都正确，可用副词 'exactly'、'just'、'precisely'。

*They'd always treated her **exactly** as if she were their own daughter.*
*Their decor was **exactly** right.*
*I know **just** how you feel.*
*The peasants are weak **precisely** because they are poor.*

指出最有关联的事项：焦点副词
Indicating the most relevant thing: focusing adverbs

10.87 要指出所讲内容中最有关联的事项，如做某事的主要理由或某事物具有的主要性质，可用**焦点副词** (focusing adverbs)。

*I'm **particularly** interested in classical music.*
*They have been used in certain countries, **notably** in South America.*
*We want **especially** to thank the numerous friends who encouraged us.*

下列副词可这样使用：

chiefly	mostly	predominantly	specially
especially	notably	primarily	specifically
mainly	particularly	principally	

限制 restricting

10.88 有些焦点副词可用来强调只有一个特定事项与说话内容有关联。

*The existence of that balcony was a secret shared **only** by Kairi.*
*This is **solely** a matter of money.*
*It's a large canvas covered with **just** one colour.*

下列副词可这样使用：

alone	just	purely	solely
exclusively	only	simply	

选择 selecting

10.89 焦点副词可用来补充某些人或物是从一组人或物里挑选出来的这一个附加信息。这种副词可与名词词组、介词短语、形容词和从句连用。

*I enjoy the company of young people, **especially** my grandchildren.*
*But many employers, **notably** in the engineering industry, are more than happy with the new system.*
*They were **mostly** professional people.*
*You'll enjoy it down in London, **especially** if you get a job.*

焦点副词的位置 position of focusing adverbs

10.90 在审慎的书面语里，通常把焦点副词直接置于与其说明的单词或句子成分之前，避免产生歧义。但在口语里，根据说话人的语调，就能分清焦点副词说明什么。

不过在许多场合，焦点副词并不一定把焦点集中在后接的单词或成分上。例如，'He mainly reads articles about mechanical things' 这个句子里，几乎可以完全肯定 'mainly' 说明 'about mechanical things' 而不是 'reads'。

在通常情况下，不把焦点副词置于句首。但是，当焦点集中在 'only' 后的成分上时，却可置它于句首引出句子。

Only *thirty-five per cent of four-year-olds get nursery education.*
Only *in science fiction is the topic touched on.*

要对指令性语句进行说明时，可将 'just'、'simply' 置于句首。

Just *add boiling water.*
Simply *remove one cube at a time.*

'Alone' 总是置于它所强调的成分之后。有时，'only' 也用在这个位置上。

It had always been felt that foster parents should make no profit – the job should be done for love ***alone****.*
They were identified by their first names ***only****.*

在非正式讲话和书面语中，有时把某些焦点副词置于它所强调的成分之后。例如，可用 'We talked about me mostly' 来替代 'We talked mostly about me.'。

We have talked about France ***mainly****.*
Chocolate, ***particularly****, is suspected of causing decay of the teeth.*
In the early years, ***especially****, a child may be afraid of many things.*

补充信息时，也置焦点副词于被强调成分之后。

He liked America, New York ***particularly****.*
She was busy writing, poetry ***mostly****.*

用法提示 USAGE NOTE

10.91 另外，有的附加状语可用来集焦点于附加信息上。程度副词 'largely'、'partly'、'entirely' 及频度副词 'usually'、'often' 等就可这样使用。

The situation had been created ***largely*** *by lurid newspaper tales.*
The house was cheap ***partly*** *because it was falling down and* ***partly*** *because Seyer Street was a slum.*
The females care for their young ***entirely*** *by themselves.*
They often fought each other, ***usually*** *as a result of arguments over money.*
Men from both divisions fought side by side, ***often*** *for objectives they had never heard of.*

意义与 'particularly' 相同的附加状语 'in particular' 可用于以下面例句所示的位置上。

Wednesday ***in particular*** *is very busy.*
Next week we shall be taking a look at education and ***in particular*** *comprehensive schools.*
He swore at life in general and Otto ***in particular****.*
In particular*, I'm going to concentrate on hydro-electricity.*

其他信息结构
Other information structures

置句于首位：前置
Putting something first: fronting

10.92 英语陈述句的第一个成分通常是动词的主语。但是，要强调另一个成分时，可将它置于句首。

置词语于句首以示强调叫**前置** (fronting)。出现前置这种情况，有时就要变动主语及动词的正常位置。这样的位置变更叫**倒装** (inversion)。

附加状语 adjuncts

10.93 附加状语常常可置于句首。这是句子附加状语的常见位置（见10.56 节），因此并未受到特别强调。其他附加状语有时置于句首，通常是为了增加叙事及报导的生动性。

At eight o'clock *I went down for my breakfast.*
For years *I'd had to hide what I was thinking.*

地点附加状语及否定附加状语位于句首时，句子要倒装。

She rang the bell for Sylvia. ***In came a girl she had not seen before****.*
On no account ***must they be let in****.*

当这种句子的主语是代词时，就不用倒装。

With a sigh, ***he*** *rose and walked away.*

有关附加状语的概述，参见第六章。否定附加状语的论述，参见第四章。

被转述问句 reported questions

10.94 说明不知道某种情况时，可置被转述问句(reported questions)于句首。

What I'm going to do next *I don't quite know.*
How he escaped a fractured skull *I can't imagine.*

有关被转述问句，详见 7.29 至 7.35 节。

其他句子成分 other clause elements

10.95 补足语偶尔可置于句首，但这并不普遍。

Noreen*, she was called. She came from the village.*
Rare *indeed is the individual who does not belong to one of these groups.*

动词宾语有时置于句首，这通常是正式场合或文学作品中的用法，注意句子主语仍旧要表示出来。

One of the copies *he folded into an envelope and sent to the Commissioner.*
When they scented my fear, they would attack. ***This*** *I knew.*

引出陈述：引导结构
Introducing your statement: prefacing structures

10.96 某些结构经常用来预示将说的话，并对它加以归类或给予标记，起这种作用的结构叫**引导结构** (prefacing structures) 或**导语** (prefaces)。

一般说来，导语引出的是它所在的句子的第二部分，这部分通常为 'that'- 从句或 'wh'- 从句，有时为非限定小句或名词词组。不过，也可用一个完整的句子作另一个句子的导语（见 10.101 节）。

句子第二个部分的导语
prefaces to second part of sentence

10.97 常见引导结构由 'the' 和名词组成，后接 'is'。有时这个名词有前置或后置的修饰语。最常用于引导结构的名词有：

answer	point	rule	tragedy	wonder
conclusion	problem	solution	trouble	
fact	question	thing	truth	

'The fact is'、'the point is'、'the thing is' 用来表示将说出的话很重要。

The simple fact is *that if you get ill, you may be unable to take the examination.*
The point is *to find out who was responsible.*
The thing is*, how are we to get her out?*

归类
classifying

10.98 这些名词中有的用在导语里，指出将说出的事项的类别。

The rule is*: if in doubt, dry clean.*
Is medicine an art or a science? ***The answer is*** *that it is both.*
The inevitable conclusion is *that man is not responsible for what he does.*

标记
labelling

10.99 有的名词用在导语里，使即将谈及的事项带上标记。

The problem is *that the demand for health care is unlimited.*
The only solution is *to approach each culture with an open mind.*
The answer is *planning, timing, and, above all, practical experience.*

标记的其他方式 other ways of labelling

10.100 断裂结构可用来标记（参见 10.25 至 10.30 节）。

What we need *is law and order.*

非人称 'it' 加形容词加 'that'- 从句是强调程度较弱的**引导结构**(cleft structures)，见 10.42 节。

It is interesting *that the impact of the computer revolution will be greatest in those areas.*

对前述内容稍加更正时，可把句子附加状语 'at any rate'、'at least'、'rather' 用作导语。这类附加状语通常位于 'or' 之后。

This had saved her life; or ***at any rate*** *her sanity.*

也可用 'anyway' 作导语，但通常置于更正内容之后。

It is, for most of its length ***anyway****, a painful romantic comedy.*

用句子作导语 using sentences as prefaces

10.101 完整的句子也可用作它后面的一个或更多个句子的导语。例如含有形容词 'interesting'、'remarkable'、'funny' 的句子，或者含有普通抽象名词 'reason' 或 'factor' 等的句子（见 9.19 至 9.23 节），也常常用作导语。

It was rather ***funny****. There were two gentlemen that were standing – one was terribly elegant – and we were sitting there, a couple of interlopers.*
This has had very ***interesting*** *effects on different people.*
There were other ***factors****, of course: I too was tired of London.*
But there were ***problems****. How could the eggs be prevented from drying out and how could tadpoles develop out of water?*

用说话做事：行为动词
Doing by saying: performative verbs

10.102 有时人们明确指出自己的陈述所起的作用。他们用 'I' 加上简单现在时的转述动词，如 'admit' 或 'promise' 等，表示用说话完成一件事情。比如说，'I'll be there' 可为 'I promise I'll be there' 替代。后一句话使陈述更为有力。

I ***suggest*** *we draw up a document.*
I'll be back at one, I ***promise****.*
I was somewhat shocked, I ***admit****, by these events.*

下列动词表示用说话做事：

acknowledge	contend	pledge	say	vow
admit	demand	predict	submit	warn
assure	deny	promise	suggest	
claim	guarantee	prophesy	swear	
concede	maintain	propose	tell	

有关转述动词详见第七章。

10.103 其他一些表示用说话做事的动词后不用 'that'- 从句。这时，简单现在时动词与 'I' 起到用说话做事的作用，而不是对另一项陈述进行评论。

I apologize for any delay.
I congratulate you with all my heart.
I forgive you.

下列动词通常可以这样使用：

absolve	baptize	dedicate	object	resign
accept	challenge	defy	order	second
accuse	confess	forbid	pronounce	sentence
advise	congratulate	forgive	protest	
agree	consent	name	refuse	
authorize	declare	nominate	renounce	

10.104 以上两个附表列出的动词有时叫**行为动词** (performative verbs) **或行为语** (performatives)，因为它们施行的是它们所指的动作。

用法提示
USAGE NOTE

10.105 要加强语气、有礼貌或以试探性口气谈话时，则把某些行为动词与情态动词连用。

*I **must** apologize for Mayfield.*
*I **would** suggest these are about five in number.*
*She was very thoroughly checked, I **can** assure you.*
***May** I congratulate you again on your excellent performance.*

感叹语
Exclamations

10.106 感叹语是加强语气用的词语和结构。讲话中用语调表示，书面语中在句末用感叹号表示，也常用句号表示。如果感叹语只是句子的一个部分，则用逗号把它与句子的其余部分分开。

表示反应
showing your reactions

10.107 有多种方法可表示对所经历、所看见，或者所听到的事情作出反应。方法之一是用感叹语 'bother'、'good heavens'、'oh dear' 或 'ouch' 等。

***Ow**! That hurt.*
*'Margaret Ravenscroft may have been responsible for her sister's death.' – '**Good heavens**!' said Dr Willoughby.*
*'She died last autumn.' – '**Oh dear**, I'm so sorry.'*

下列是常见的表示反应的感叹语：

aha	damn	gosh	oops	what
blast	good gracious	honestly	ouch	whoops
blimey	good grief	hurray	ow	wow
bother	good heavens	oh	really	yippee
bravo	good lord	oh dear	ugh	you're joking
crikey	goodness me	ooh	well I never	yuk

其他句子成分
other clause elements

10.108 其他句子成分或句子也可用作感叹语。

名词词组可用来表示对事物的反应。有些名词，如 'rubbish'、'nonsense'，可单独使用，表示极不赞成。

*'Love's got to be built on trust.' – '**Nonsense**. Love grows where it grows.'*

前位限定词，尤其是 'what'，常常用于名词之前。

What a pleasant surprise!
Such an intelligent family!
Quite a show!

属性形容词可单独使用，或前面加 'how'，经常表示对某一项陈述的肯定反应。

*'Do you think we could meet? Can you get free?' – 'I might be able to.' – '**Lovely**!'*
*Oh! Look! **How sweet**!*

带 'of' 的介词短语用来明确指人，而 'to'- 不定式指动作。

How nice of you to come!
How nice to see you.

'How' 加形容词或副词，或者 'what' 加名词词组也可用作感叹语。虽然形容词或名词词组前置，但仍为句子补足语或动词宾语。

How nice you look!
How cleverly you hid your feelings!
What an idiot I am.
What morbid thoughts we're having.

'How' 置于一般句子之前增加感情或行为的强调程度。

How I hate posters.
How he talked!

修辞性问句
rhetorical questions

10.109 人们常用疑问句表示评论或感叹。这些无需回答的问句，叫**修辞疑问句** (rhetorical questions)。

要促使别人同意你的意见，可用否定式 'yes/no' 疑问句。

Oh Albert, isn't she lovely?
Wouldn't it be awful with no Christmas!

非正式英语可用肯定式疑问句。

*'How much?' – 'A hundred million.' – '**Are you crazy**?'*
***Have you no shame**!*

'Wh'- 疑问句，尤其是含有情态动词的疑问句，也可这样使用。

How the hell should I know?
Why must she be so nasty to me?
Why bother?

有关疑问句，详见第四章。

变陈述句为疑问句：附加疑问
Making a statement into a question: question tags

10.110 这个部分论述**附加成分** (tags)、即**附加疑问** (question tags)。附加疑问结构短小，附加在陈述句后，使之成为疑问句。其作用是指望受话人同意说话人意见或肯定他的陈述。附加疑问主要用于口语。这种由陈述部分和附加疑问部分构成的句子叫**附加疑问句** (tag questions)。

构成附加疑问
forming tags

10.111 附加疑问由助动词或 'be' 或 'do' 动词的某一种形式加表示句子主语的人称代词构成。

陈述部分为肯定式时，用否定附加疑问。否定式附加疑问总是用缩略形式，但旧式英语和非常正式英语除外。

It is *quite warm,* ***isn't it****?*

陈述部分为否定式时，用肯定附加疑问。

You didn't *know I was an artist,* ***did you****?*

陈述部分有助动词时，附加语部分用相同的助动词。

You will *stay in touch,* ***won't you****?*

陈述部分的主要动词是 'be' 的简单过去或现在时形式时，附加疑问助动词用 'be' 的相应形式。

They are, aren't they*?*

陈述部分既无助动词又无 'be' 的某一种形式时，在附加疑问部分加 'do'、'does' 或 'did'。

After a couple of years ***the heat gets*** *too much,* ***doesn't it****?*
He played *for Ireland,* ***didn't he****?*

注意，陈述部分的助动词是 'am' 或主要动词是 'am' 时，带 'I' 的否定式附加疑问为 'aren't I ?'。

I'm *controlling it,* ***aren't I****?*

检验陈述 checking statements

10.118 对某事有一定见解或信念并且又想检验其正确性或了解别人是否同意，可用陈述句，然后再接附加疑问，使整个句子成为疑问句。

如果作肯定陈述又想验证陈述是真实的，则用否定式附加疑问。

You like *Ralph a lot,* ***don't you****?*
They are *beautiful places,* ***aren't they****?*

如果作否定陈述又想验证陈述是真实的，则用肯定附加疑问。

It doesn't *work,* ***does it****?*
You won't *tell anyone else all this,* ***will you****?*

如果陈述部分有广义否定词、否定副词或否定代词，也可用肯定式附加疑问。

That ***hardly*** *counts,* ***does it****?*
You've ***never*** *been to Benidorm,* ***have you****?*
Nobody *had bothered to plant new ones,* ***had they****?*

回答附加疑问
replying to tags

10.113 受话人回答问句的陈述内容而不回答附加疑问时，用 'yes' 确认肯定陈述；用 'no' 确认否定陈述。

*'**It became stronger**, didn't it?' – '**Yes it did**.'*
*'**You didn't know that**, did you?' – '**No**.'*

附加疑问的其他用法
other uses of tags

10.114 要是对本人情况进行陈述并且想了解受话人是否持有相同的见解或感觉，则在陈述部分用含 'you' 的附加疑问。

***I think** this is the best thing, **don't you**?*
***I love** tea, **don't you**?*

附加疑问也用来表示对某人刚说过或暗示过的事的反应，例如，表示对它的兴趣、吃惊或愤怒。注意，在肯定陈述之后用肯定式附加疑问。

***You fell** on your back, **did you**?*
***You've** been to North America before, **have you**?*
*Oh, **he wants** us to make films as well, **does he**?*

用 'let's' 表示建议做某事，可用 'shall we?' 作附加疑问来核实受话人是否同意说话人的意见。

***Let's** forget it, **shall we**?*

提出说话人要做某事的建议并核实受话人是否同意，则用 'shall I?' 作附加疑问。

***I'll** tell you roughly, **shall I**?*

要求某人做某事并使这种要求听起来口气比较缓和，可用附加疑问，这种附加疑问通常是 'will you?'，但也可用 'won't you?'、'can't you?'。

***Come** into the kitchen, **will you**?*
***Look** at that, **will you**?*
***See** that she gets safely back, **won't you**?*

用否定祈使句时，只能用 'will you?' 作附加疑问。

***Don't** tell Howard, **will you**?*

称呼：呼语
Addressing people: vocatives

10.115 对人讲话时，有时用他们的名字或头衔、或者用 'darling'、'idiot' 这些词语称呼他们，起这种作用的词语叫**呼语** (vocatives)。

呼语在英国英语中使用得不如其他有些语言普遍，甚至也不如美国英语普遍。有的呼语只用于正式场合，而有的只用于非正式场合。有关情况，查阅 Cobuild 词典如 Collins Cobuild English Dictionary 和 Collins Cobuild Learner's Dictionary。

呼语的位置 position of voctives

10.116 呼语通常用在句子或分句句末。书写时，呼语前一般标上逗号。

*Where are you staying, **Mr Swallow**?*
*Thanks, **love**.*

为了引起受话人的注意，可先用呼语，将它置于句首。

***John**, how long have you been at the university?*
***Dad**, why have you got that suit on?*

头衔 titles

10.117 用比较正式的方式称呼他人时，可使用他们的头衔或姓。有关头衔参见 1.56 至 1.58 节。

*Goodbye. **Dr Kirk**.*
*Thank you. **Mr Jones**.*
*How old are you, **Miss Flewin**?*

表示专门资格、身份或职业的头衔可单独作呼语。

*What's wrong. **Doctor**?*
*Well, **professor**?*

⚠ 注意 Warning

10.118 'Mr'、'Mrs'、'Miss'、'Ms' 这些头衔只与姓连用。不用他人姓又要正式称呼他人时，用 'sir' 和 'madam'，雇员称呼顾客或当事人时尤其这样。

*Yes, **sir**.*
*What is that, **madam**?*

其他呼语 other vocatives

10.119 名词词组可用来表示对人的看法。表示讨厌或蔑视的名词词组之前常常用 'you'。

*No, **you fool**, the other way.*
*Shut your big mouth, **you stupid idiot**.*

表示感情的名词词组一般单独使用，但在旧式英语或诙谐的场合，可加 'my'。

*Goodbye, **darling**.*
*We've got to go, **my dear**.*

表示家庭成员或社会关系的名词可用作呼语。

*Someone's got to do it, **mum**.*
*Sorry, **Grandma**.*
*She'll be all right, **mate**.*
*Trust me, **kid**.*

呼语偶尔也用复数。

*Sit down, **kids**.*
*Come on, you know what I mean, **you idiots**.*

注意，'ladies'、'gentlemen'、'children' 只用复数形式。

***Ladies** and **gentlemen**, thank you for coming.*

参考部分

参考部分
Reference Section

读音指南
Pronunciation guide

R1 以下是英语音标表：

元音音素

ɑː	heart, start, calm.
æ	act, mass, lap.
aɪ	dive, cry, mind.
aɪə	fire, tyre, buyer.
aʊ	out, down, loud.
aʊə	flour, tower, sour.
ɛ	met, lend, pen.
ɛɪ	say, main, weight.
ɛə	fair, care, wear.
ɪ	fit, win, list.
iː	feed, me, beat.
ɪə	near, beard, clear.
ɒ	lot, lost, spot.
əʊ	note, phone, coat.
ɔː	more, cord, claw.
ɔɪ	boy, coin, joint.
ʊ	could, stood, hood.
uː	you, use, choose.
ʊə	sure, poor, cure.
ɜː	turn, third, word.
ʌ	but, fund, must.
ə	the weak vowel in butter, about, forgotten.

辅音音素

b	bed	t	talk
d	done	v	van
f	fit	w	win
g	good	x	loch
h	hat	z	zoo
j	yellow	ʃ	ship
k	king	ʒ	measure
l	lip	ŋ	sing
m	mat	tʃ	cheap
n	nine	θ	thin
p	pay	ð	then
r	run	dʒ	joy
s	soon		

元音字母：

a e i o u

辅音字母：

b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z

具数名词复数的构成
Forming plurals of count nouns

R2 有复数的名词见第一章 1.14 至 1.93 节。

R3 多数情况下，复数要加 ‘s’。

hat ⟶ hats
tree ⟶ trees

R4 在 ‘sh’、‘ss’、‘x’ 或 ‘s’ 等字母后，复数要加 ‘es’，读作 /ɪz/。

bush ⟶ bushes
glass ⟶ glasses
box ⟶ boxes
bus ⟶ buses

字母 ‘ch’ 读作 /tʃ/ 时，复数也加 ‘es’，读作 /ɪz/。

church ⟶ churches
match ⟶ matches
speech ⟶ speeches

R5 字母 ‘s’ 在 /f/、/k/、/p/、/t/ 或 /θ/ 几个音之后读作 /s/。

belief ⟶ beliefs
week ⟶ weeks
cap ⟶ caps
pet ⟶ pets
moth ⟶ moths

R6 字母 ‘s’ 在 /s/、/z/ 或 /dʒ/ 几个音之后读作 /ɪz/。

service ⟶ services
prize ⟶ prizes
age ⟶ ages

R7 某些词尾发音为 /θ/ 的名词，如 ‘mouth’，复数词尾读作 /ðz/。另一些名词，如 ‘bath’、‘path’ 的复数词尾可读作 /θs/ 或 /ðz/。查对这种词的发音可用 Cobuild 词典如 *Collins Cobuild English Dictionary* 或 *Collins Cobuild Learner's Dictionary*。

R8 其余大多数场合，复数形式 ‘s’ 均读作 /z/。

bottle ⟶ bottles

degree ⟶ degrees
doctor ⟶ doctors
idea ⟶ ideas
leg ⟶ legs
system ⟶ systems
tab ⟶ tabs

R9 以辅音字母加 'y' 结尾的名词，用 'ies' 代替 'y' 构成复数。

country ⟶ countries
lady ⟶ ladies
opportunity ⟶ opportunities

以元音字母加 'y' 结尾的名词，构成复数时只加 's'。

boy ⟶ boys
day ⟶ days
valley ⟶ valleys

R10 以 'f' 或 'fe' 结尾的名词，数量不多，构成复数时，用 'ves' 替代 'f' 或 'fe'。

calf ⟶ calves
elf ⟶ elves
half ⟶ halves
knife ⟶ knives
leaf ⟶ leaves
life ⟶ lives
loaf ⟶ loaves
scarf ⟶ scarves
sheaf ⟶ sheaves
shelf ⟶ shelves
thief ⟶ thieves
turf ⟶ turves
wife ⟶ wives
wolf ⟶ wolves

R11 多数以 'o' 结尾的名词，可只加 's' 构成复数。

photo ⟶ photos
radio ⟶ radios

但下列以 'o' 结尾的名词的复数词尾是 'es'：

domino	embargo	negro	tomato
echo	hero	potato	veto

下列以 'o' 结尾的名词的复数词尾用 's' 或 'es' 均可：

buffalo	ghetto	memento	stiletto
cargo	innuendo	mosquito	tornado
flamingo	mango	motto	torpedo
fresco	manifesto	salvo	volcano

R12 英语下列名词有特殊复数形式，通常是含有不同于单数形式的元音音素。

child ⟶ children
foot ⟶ feet
goose ⟶ geese
louse ⟶ lice
man ⟶ men
mouse ⟶ mice
ox ⟶ oxen
tooth ⟶ teeth
woman ⟶ women

R13 大多数指称人、并以 'man'、'woman' 或 'child' 为词尾的名词复数以 'men'、'women' 或 'children' 为词尾。

postman ——→ postmen
Englishwoman ——→ Englishwomen
grandchild ——→ grandchildren

R14 除了上述名词之外，还有一些外来词，尤其是拉丁词，它们仍以原来语言的规则构成复数。这些词大都是专业术语或用于正式场合。若不用作专业术语，或在非正式场合，其中某些词以 's' 或 'es' 构成复数。有关信息查 Cobuild 词典如 *Collins Cobuild English Dictionary* 或 *Collins Cobuild Learner's Dictionary*。

R15 某些以 'us' 结尾的名词，复数词尾是 'i'。

focus ——→ foci
nucleus ——→ nuclei
radius ——→ radii
stimulus ——→ stimuli

R16 某些以 'um' 结尾的名词，复数词尾是 'a'。

aquarium ——→ aquaria
memorandum ——→ memoranda
referendum ——→ referenda
spectrum ——→ spectra
stratum ——→ strata

R17 大多数以 'is' 结尾的名词，构成复数用 'es' 代替 'is'。

analysis ——→ analyses
axis ——→ axes
basis ——→ bases
crisis ——→ crises
diagnosis ——→ diagnoses
hypothesis ——→ hypotheses
neurosis ——→ neuroses
parenthesis ——→ parentheses

R18 某些以 'a' 结尾的名词，构成复数时词尾加 'e'。

larva ——→ larvae
vertebra ——→ vertebrae

但是有些以 'a' 结尾的，如 'antenna'、'formula'、'amoeba'、'nebula' 还可加 's' 构成不很正式的复数形式。

R19 其他名词以别的方式构成复数。其中一些有两种复数形式，一种加 's' 构成，另一种以别的方式构成。一般来说，以 's' 结尾的形式用于不很正式的场合。

appendix ⟶ appendices or appendixes
automaton ⟶ automata or automatons
corpus ⟶ corpora
criterion ⟶ criteria
genus ⟶ genera
index ⟶ indices or indexes
matrix ⟶ matrices
phenomenon ⟶ phenomena
tempo ⟶ tempi or tempos
virtuoso ⟶ virtuosi or virtuosos
vortex ⟶ vortices

比较级与最高级形容词的构成
Forming comparative and superlative adjectives

R20 如何使用形容词比较级与最高级见第二章（2.108 至 2.127 节）。

R21 形容词比较级的构成，要么在形容词词尾加 'er'，要么在形容词之前加 'more'。最高级的构成是在形容词词尾加 'est'，或在形容词之前加 'most'。

加 'er' 与 'est'，还是用 'more' 与 'most'，通常取决于形容词的音节数目。

最高级前一般加 'the'。

R22 单音节形容词一般在词尾加 'er' 与 'est'。

tall ⟶ taller ⟶ the tallest
quick ⟶ quicker ⟶ the quickest

下列为常用单音节形容词，构成比较级与最高级时，通常是在词尾加 'er' 和 'est'：

big	dull	large	proud	strong
bright	fair	late	quick	sweet
broad	fast	light	rare	tall
cheap	fat	long	rich	thick
clean	fine	loose	rough	thin
clear	firm	loud	sad	tight
close	flat	low	safe	tough
cold	fresh	new	sharp	warm
cool	full	nice	short	weak
cross	great	old	sick	wet
dark	hard	pale	slow	wide
deep	high	plain	small	wild
dry	hot	poor	soft	young

注意，某些形容词加 'er' 与 'est' 时，其拼写需要变化。

形容词构成比较级与最高级时的拼写变化在 R27 节说明。

R23 以 'y' 结尾的双音节形容词，如 'angry'、'dirty' 及 'silly' 等，也以 'er' 与 'est' 构成比较级与最高级。

happy ⟶ happier ⟶ the happiest
easy ⟶ easier ⟶ the easiest

注意，以 'y' 结尾的双音节词的拼写变化，详见 R27 节。

下列为常见的以 'y' 结尾的双音节形容词，它们的比较级与最高级按上述说明构成：

angry	easy	happy	lovely	silly
busy	friendly	heavy	lucky	steady
dirty	funny	likely	pretty	tiny

R24 其他双音节形容词通常是在其前面加 'more' 与 'most' 构成比较级与最高级。

careful ⟶ more careful ⟶ the most careful
famous ⟶ more famous ⟶ the most famous

注意，然而 'clever' 与 'quiet' 是例外，它们以 'er' 与 'est' 构成比较级与最高级。

R25 某些双音节形容词可用 'er' 与 'est'，又可用 'more' 与 'most' 构成比较级与最高级。

I can think of many ***pleasanter*** *subjects.*
It was ***more pleasant*** *here than in the lecture room.*
Exposure to sunlight is one of the ***commonest*** *causes of cancer.*
...five hundred of the ***most common*** *words.*

下列常见形容词有两种比较级与最高级形式：

common	handsome	narrow	polite	simple
cruel	likely	obscure	remote	stupid
gentle	mature	pleasant	shallow	subtle

R26 含有三个或三个以上音节的形容词通常用 'more' 与 'most' 构成比较级与最高级。

dangerous ⟶ more dangerous ⟶ the most dangerous
ridiculous ⟶ more ridiculous ⟶ the most ridiculous

但某些三音节形容词是在其他形容词前加 'un' 构成的，如 'unhappy' 出自 'happy'，'unlucky' 出自 'lucky'。这些三音节形容词既可用 'er' 与 'est'，又可用 'more' 与 'most' 构成比较级与最高级。

He felt crosser and ***unhappier*** *than ever.*

R27 形容词加 'er' 与 'est' 时，有时还需要在词尾作其他变动。

如果单音节形容词词尾是一个元音字母加一个辅音字母，加 'er' 与 'est' 时要双写该辅音字母。

big ——→ bigger ——→ the biggest
hot ——→ hotter ——→ the hottest

但是，词尾是以下这种情况的双音节形容词，则不必双写辅音字母。

common ——→ commoner ——→ the commonest
stupid ——→ stupider ——→ the stupidest

如果形容词以 'e' 结尾，则先去掉 'e' 再加 'er' 与 'est'。

wide ——→ wider ——→ the widest
simple ——→ simpler ——→ the simplest

注意，以 'le' 结尾的形容词构成比较级与最高级后，仍旧只有两个而不是三个音节。比如，'simpler'（由 'simple' /simpəl/ 构成）读作 /simplə/。

如形容词以辅音字母加 'y' 结尾，先变 'y' 为 'i'，再加 'er' 或 'est' 构成比较级或最高级。

dry ——→ drier ——→ the driest
angry ——→ angrier ——→ the angriest
unhappy ——→ unhappier ——→ the unhappiest

注意，'shy'、'sly' 和 'spry' 中的 'y' 不作更改，直接加 'er' 与 'est'。

R28 'Good' 与 'bad' 的比较级与最高级不规则，既不是加 'er' 与 'est'，也不是用 'more' 与 'most'。

'Good' 的比较级是 'better'，最高级是 'the best'。

*There might be **better** ways of doing it.*
*This is the **best** museum we've visited yet.*

'Bad' 的比较级是 'worse'，最高级是 'the worst'。

*Things are **worse** than they used to be.*
*The airstrip there was the **worst** place in the world.*

注意，'ill' 没有比较级，由 'worse' 替代。

*Each day Kunta felt a little **worse**.*

R29 形容词 'old' 除有规则的比较级与最高级形式外，还有 'elder' 与 'the eldest' 形式。后两种形式只用来指人，通常指亲属。

*...the death of his two **elder** sons in the First World War.*
*Bill's **eldest** boy is a doctor.*

注意，'elder' 与 'older' 不同，后面不能跟 'than'。

R30 虽然小孩有时会说 'littler' 与 'the littlest'，但在标准英语中却没有 'little' 的比较级与最高级。要进行比较时，需用 'smaller' 与 'the smallest'。

R31 复合形容词的比较级与最高级通常是置 'more' 与 'most' 于这一类形容词之前构成。

self-effacing ⟶ more self-effacing ⟶ the most self-effacing
nerve-racking ⟶ more nerve-racking ⟶ the most nerve-racking

有些复合形容词的第一部分是形容词。用这个形容词的比较级与最高级就构成了复合词的比较级与最高级。

good-looking ⟶ better-looking ⟶ the best-looking

同样，有些复合形容词的第一部分是副词。用这个副词的比较级与最高级就构成了复合词的比较级与最高级。

well-paid ⟶ better-paid ⟶ the best-paid
badly-planned ⟶ worse-planned ⟶ the worst-planned

关于副词的比较级与最高级详见 R150 至 R154 节。

领属格的拼写与读音
The spelling and pronunciation of possessives

R32 名称和其他名词领属格形式的用法详见第二章（2.180 至 2.192 节）。

R33 名称或其他名词的领属格形式通常在词尾加撇号 s ('s) 构成。

***Ginny's** mother didn't answer.*
*Howard came into the **editor's** office.*

R34 以 's' 结尾的复数名词构成领属格时，只加(')。

*I heard the **girls'** steps on the stairs.*
*The Kirks go to **publishers'** parties in Bloomsbury.*

但如果不以 's' 结尾的不规则复数名词构成领属格时，就要加('s)。

*It would cost at least three **policemen's** salaries per year.*
*The Equal Pay Act has failed to bring **women's** earnings up to the same level.*
*...**children's** birthday parties.*

R35 如果某物属于一个以上的人或物，而且这些人或物的名称由 'and' 连接，那么撇号 s ('s)用在后一个名称之后。

*...**Helen and Tim's** apartment.*
*...**Colin and Mary's** relationship.*
*The crowd met outside **father and mother's** house.*

R36 如果两个人或物各拥有某类事物的一部分，则两个名称均带撇号 s('s)。

*The puppy was a superb blend of his **father's and mother's** best qualities.*

R37 以 's' 结尾的名称，可以只加(')，如 'St James' Palace' ，也可以另加撇号 s('s)，如 'St James's Palace' 。两种拼法的读音各不相同。前者读音不变，后者的领属格部分读作 /ɪz/ 。

R38 撇号 s ('s)在不同的词中读音不同。它的发音有以下几种情况：

- 在音素 /f/ 、 /k/ 、 /p/ 、 /t/ 或 /θ/ 之后读作 /s/ 。
- 在音素 /s/ 、 /z/ 、 /ʃ/ 、 /ʒ/ 、 /tʃ/ 、或 /dʒ/ 之后读作 /ɪz/ 。
- 在其他音素后读作 /z/ 。

R39 使用复合名词时，撇号 s ('s)加在该复合词的最后一项后面。

*He went to his **mother-in-law's** house.*
*The parade assembled in the **Detective Constable's** room.*

R40 缩略词、首字母缩略词的撇号 s('s)加法与其他名词一样。

*He will get a majority of **MPs'** votes in both rounds.*
*He found the **BBC's** output, on balance, superior to that of ITV.*
*The majority of **NATO's** members agreed.*

数词
Numbers

R41 **基数词**(cardinal numbers)、**序数词**(ordinal numbers)与**分数词**(fractions)的用法见第二章（2.225 至 2.226 节）。用序数词表示日期在 5.87 节说明。数词表以及数词与分数的说法，写法在下面三个部分进行说明。

基数词
Cardinal numbers

R42 下列为基数词表，说明构成大于 20 的数词的方式。

0	zero, nought, nothing, oh	**26**	twenty-six
1	one	**27**	twenty-seven
2	two	**28**	twenty-eight
3	three	**29**	twenty-nine
4	four	**30**	thirty
5	five	**40**	forty
6	six	**50**	fifty
7	seven	**60**	sixty
8	eight	**70**	seventy
9	nine	**80**	eighty
10	ten	**90**	ninety
11	eleven	**100**	a hundred
12	twelve	**101**	a hundred and one
13	thirteen	**110**	a hundred and ten
14	fourteen	**120**	a hundred and twenty
15	fifteen	**200**	two hundred
16	sixteen	**1,000**	a thousand
17	seventeen	**1,001**	a thousand and one
18	eighteen	**1,010**	a thousand and ten
19	nineteen	**2,000**	two thousand
20	twenty	**10,000**	ten thousand
21	twenty-one	**100,000**	a hundred thousand
22	twenty-two	**1,000,000**	a million
23	twenty-three	**2,000,000**	two million
24	twenty-four	**1,000,000,000**	a billion
25	twenty-five		

R43 口头或书面以词语表示大于 100 的数目时，在后两位数前用 ‘and’。例如 203 这个数目在口头和书面用 ‘two hundred and three’ 表示；2,840 用 ‘two thousand, eight hundred and forty’ 表示。

Four hundred and eighteen *men were killed and* ***a hundred and seventeen*** *wounded.*

美国英语常常省略后两位数前的 'and'。

...***one hundred fifty*** *dollars.*

R44 有几种方式可在口头或书面以词语表示 1,000 至 1,000,000 之间的数目。例如 1,872 这个数目就可以是：

- eighteen hundred and seventy two
- one thousand eight hundred and seventy-two
- one eight seven two
- eighteen seventy-two

注意，在第二种方式中不能用 'a' 代替 'one'。第三种方式常用来确指房号之类的事物。说电话号码时，总是每个数字分开读出。

最后一种方式适用于表示日期。

R45 与某些语言不同，英语中用数字写出大于 9,999 的数目时，在倒数第四位及第七位之后常用逗号，以此类推，将数目分成一个个三位数组成的数字组。如 15,500 或 1,982,000。遇到 1,000 至 9,999 之间的四位数时，有时在第一位数后用逗号，如 1,526。

数字间含有句点时，句点后的数字是分数。例如，2.5 等于 'two and a half'。

序数词
Ordinal numbers

R46 下表序数词展示出大于 20 的序数词构成的方式：

1st	first	**18th**	eighteenth	**51st**	fifty-first
2nd	second	**19th**	nineteenth	**60th**	sixtieth
3rd	third	**20th**	twentieth	**61st**	sixty-first
4th	fourth	**21st**	twenty-first	**70th**	seventieth
5th	fifth	**22nd**	twenty-second	**71st**	seventy-first
6th	sixth	**23rd**	twenty-third	**80th**	eightieth
7th	seventh	**24th**	twenty-fourth	**81st**	eighty-first
8th	eighth	**25th**	twenty-fifth	**90th**	ninetieth
9th	ninth	**26th**	twenty-sixth	**91st**	ninety-first
10th	tenth	**27th**	twenty-seventh	**100th**	hundredth
11th	eleventh	**28th**	twenty-eighth	**101st**	hundred and first
12th	twelfth	**29th**	twenty-ninth	**200th**	two hundredth
13th	thirteenth	**30th**	thirtieth	**1000th**	thousandth
14th	fourteenth	**31st**	thirty-first	**1,000,000**	millionth
15th	fifteenth	**40th**	fortieth	**1,000,000,000**	billionth
16th	sixteenth	**41st**	forty-first		
17th	seventeenth	**50th**	fiftieth		

R47 如上表所示，序数词可写成简略形式，例如，日期、标题或用于很不正式的书面语里。在数字之后再写出序数词的最后两个字母，例如，'first' 可写作 '1st'；'twenty-second' 写作 '22nd'；'hundred and third' 写作 '103rd' 及 'fourteenth' 写作 '14th'。

*...on August **2nd**.*
*...the **1st** Division of the Sovereign's Escort.*

分数与百分数
Fractions and percentages

R48 分数可用阿拉伯数字写，如 ½、¼、¾和 ⅔，分别等于 'a half'、'a quarter'、'three-quarters' 和 'two-thirds'。

R49 分数常用百分之几这一种特殊形式，即百分数表示。例如，'three-hundredths' 用百分数表示就是 'three per cent'，也可写作 'three percent' 或 '3%'。'A half' 可用 'fifty per cent'、'fifty percent' 或 '50%' 表示。

*About **20 per cent** of student accountants are women.*
***90 percent** of most food is water.*
*Before 1960 **45%** of British trade was with the Commonwealth.*

指称关系清楚时，百分数可单独用作名词词组。

***Ninety per cent** were self employed.*
*...interest at **10%** per annum.*

动词形式与动词词组的构成
Verb forms and the formation of verb groups

R50 动词有几种形式，可单独使用，也可与称为**助动词** (auxiliaries) 的特殊动词连用。这些动词形式用在句子里时，就称为**动词词组**(verb groups)。动词词组可以是**限定性的**(finite)，也可以是**非限定性的**(non-finite)。如果是限定性的，就有**时态**(tenses)。

动词词组用来指动作、状态和过程。关于句中用动词词组进行陈述的情况，参见第三章。

R51 动词词组可以是**主动态**(active)，也可以是**被动态**(passive)。如侧重动作的执行者，就用主动态动词词组；如侧重受动作影响的人或事，就用被动态动词词组。被动态动词词组的用法详见第十章（10.8 至 10.24 节）。

R52 规则动词有下列形式：

- 原形如 walk
- 's' 形式如 walks
- 现在分词如 walking
- 过去式如 walked

动词原形是不定式中用的形式，是词典里动词词条列出的形式，也是本书词表列出的形式。动词的 's' 形式由原形加 's' 词尾构成。

现在分词常由原形加 '-ing' 词尾构成，有时称作 '-ing' 形式。

动词过去形式通常由原形加词尾 '-ed' 构成。

规则动词的过去式用于过去时，同时又用作过去分词。

但许多不规则动词有两种过去式（参见 R72 节）：

- 过去时形式，如 stole
- 过去分词形式，如 stolen

拼写动词各种形式的规则，视动词词尾而定。详见 R54 至 R70 节。

某些动词，尤其是常见的动词，具有不规则的形式，见 R72 至 R75 节的词表。

助动词 'be'、'have' 和 'do' 的形式见 R80 节。

R53 每种动词形式都有自己的用法。

原形用于现在时、祈使式和不定式，也用于情态动词后面。

动词的 's' 形式用于现在时第三人称单数。

现在分词用于进行时、'-ing' 形容词、'-ing' 名词及某些非限定小句。

过去式用于简单过去时，也用作规则动词的过去分词。

过去分词用于完成时、被动态、'-ed' 形容词及某些非限定小句。

R54 动词基本形式已在 R52 节作过说明。以下数节将讲述动词各种形式的拼法，并详细说明有不规则形式的动词，助动词 'be'、'have' 和 'do' 的形式将分开讨论，见 R80 至 R88 节。

R55 多数动词的 's' 形式由原形加词尾 's' 构成。

sing ——→ sings
write ——→ writes

's' 在 /f/ 、 /k/ 、 /p/ 、 /t/ 或 /θ/ 音之后读作 /s/ 。

break ——→ breaks
keep ——→ keeps

's' 在 /s/ 、 /z/ 、或 /dʒ/ 音之后读作 /ɪz/ 。

dance ——→ dances
manage ——→ manages

在其余音后的 's' 读作 /z/ 。

leave ——→ leaves
refer ——→ refers

R56 原形以辅音字母加 'y' 结尾的动词，用 'ies' 代替 'y' 构成 's' 形式， 's' 读作 /z/ 。

try ——→ tries
cry ——→ cries

R57 以 'sh' 、 'ch' 、 'ss' 、 'x' 和 'zz' 或 'o' 结尾的动词，原形后加 'es' ，而不是 's' ，读作 /ɪz/ 。

diminish ——→ diminishes
reach ——→ reaches
pass ——→ passes
mix ——→ mixes
buzz ——→ buzzes
echo ——→ echoes

R58 以字母 's' 结尾的单音节词，原形后加 'es' ，读作 /ɪz/ 。

bus ——→ buses（美国英语又可作 'busses'）
gas ——→ gases（美国英语又可作 'gasses'）

R59 多数动词的现在分词由原形加 'ing' 构成，过去式由原形加 'ed' 构成。

paint ——→ painting ——→ painted
rest ——→ resting ——→ rested

所有现在分词的 'ing' ，都构成新的音节，读作 /ɪŋ/ 。

原形以 /f/ 、 /k/ 、 /p/ 、 /s/ 、 /ʃ/ 或 /tʃ/ 音结尾的动词，'ed' 过去式读作 /t/ 。如 'pressed' 读作 /prɛst/ ; 'watched' 读作 /wɒʃt/ 。

原形以 /d/ 或 /t/ 音结尾的动词，'ed' 过去式读作 /ɪd/ 。例如，'patted' 读作 /pætɪd/ 、'faded' 读作 /fɛɪdɪd/ 。

其余动词的 'ed' 过去式读作 /d/ ，如 'joined' 读作 /dʒɔɪnd/ 、 'lived' 读作 /lɪvd/ 。

R60 绝大多数以 'e' 结尾的动词，现在分词由 'ing' 代替词尾的 'e' 构成。同样，构成过去分词时用 'ed' 代替词尾的 'e' 。

dance ⟶ dancing ⟶ danced
smile ⟶ smiling ⟶ smiled
fade ⟶ fading ⟶ faded

R61 少数以 'e' 结尾的动词，在词尾加 'ing' 构成现在分词，但构成过去式时仍用 'ed' 代替 'e' 。

singe ⟶ singeing ⟶ singed
agree ⟶ agreeing ⟶ agreed

同类动词列表如下：

age	dye	referee	agree	free
singe	disagree	knee	tiptoe	

R62 以 'ie' 结尾的动词构成现在分词时，用 'y' 代替 'ie' 加上 'ing' ，即 'ying' 。

tie ⟶ tying

注意，这类动词的过去式是规则的。按 R60 节的方法办，用 'ed' 代替 'e' 。

R63 以辅音字母加 'y' 结尾的动词构成过去式时用 'ied' 代替 'y' 。

cry ⟶ cried

注意，此类动词的现在分词是规则的，按 R59 节的方法办，在词尾加 'ing' 。

R64 如动词原形是单音节词，词尾是一个元音字母加一个辅音字母，在加 'ing' 或 'ed' 前先双写该辅音字母。

dip ⟶ dipping ⟶ dipped
trot ⟶ trotting ⟶ trotted

注意，如词尾的辅音字母是 'w'、'x' 和 'y'，就不需要双写结尾的字母。

row ⟶ rowing ⟶ rowed
box ⟶ boxing ⟶ boxed
play ⟶ playing ⟶ played

R65 某些双音节动词的第二个音节以一个元音字母加一个辅音字母结尾，同时又要重读，这类双音节动词的最后一个辅音字母也要双写。

refer ⟶ referring ⟶ referred
equip ⟶ equipping ⟶ equipped

R66 英国英语中，双音节动词以一个元音字母加一个 'l' 字母结尾时，尽管这个音节不重读，加 'ing' 或 'ed' 前，也要双写 'l'。

travel ⟶ travelling ⟶ travelled
quarrel ⟶ quarrelling ⟶ quarrelled

少数其他动词末尾辅音字母也要双写。

program ⟶ programming ⟶ programmed
worship ⟶ worshipping ⟶ worshipped
hiccup ⟶ hiccupping ⟶ hiccupped
kidnap ⟶ kidnapping ⟶ kidnapped
handicap ⟶ handicapping ⟶ handicapped

R67 美国英语中，除 'handicap' 外，R66 节列出的所有动词的现在分词和过去式的末尾辅音字母可不双写。

travel ⟶ traveling ⟶ traveled
worship ⟶ worshiping ⟶ worshiped

R68 英国英语及美国英语中，加 'ing' 与 'ed' 前，末尾辅音字母都要双写的动词表：

ban	chip	din	flip	gun	knot
bar	chop	dip	flop	gut	lag
bat	clap	dot	fog	hem	lap
beg	clog	drag	fret	hop	log
blot	clot	drop	gas	hug	lop
blur	cram	drug	gel	hum	man
bob	crib	drum	glut	jam	mar
brag	crop	dub	grab	jet	mob
brim	cup	fan	grin	jig	mop
bug	dab	fit	grip	jog	mug
cap	dam	flag	grit	jot	nag
chat	dim	flap	grub	knit	net

nip	sag	slot	swab	abet	occur
nod	scan	slum	swap	abhor	omit
pad	scar	slur	swat	acquit	outwit
pat	scrap	snag	swig	admit	patrol
peg	scrub	snap	swot	allot	propel
pen	ship	snip	tag	commit	rebel
pet	shop	snub	tan	compel	rebut
pin	shred	sob	tap	confer	recap
pit	shrug	spot	thin	control	recur
plan	shun	squat	throb	defer	refer
plod	sin	stab	tip	deter	regret
plug	sip	star	top	distil	remit
pop	skid	stem	trap	embed	repel
prod	skim	step	trek	emit	submit
prop	skin	stir	trim	enrol	transfer
rib	skip	stop	trip	enthral	transmit
rig	slam	strap	trot	equip	~
rip	slap	strip	vet	excel	handicap
rob	slim	strut	wag	expel	
rot	slip	stun	wrap	incur	
rub	slop	sun	~	instil	

注意，像 're-equip' 与 'unclog' 这样的动词，是由上表动词加前缀构成，其末尾辅音字母也要双写。

R69 下表列出的动词，在英国英语中加 'ing' 与 'ed' 前，词尾辅音字母要双写；在美国英语中不一定双写：

cancel	funnel	libel	quarrel	stencil
dial	gambol	marvel	refuel	swivel
duel	grovel	model	revel	total
enamel	hiccup	panel	rival	travel
enrol	initial	pedal	shovel	tunnel
enthral	kidnap	pencil	shrivel	unravel
equal	label	program	snivel	worship
fuel	level	pummel	spiral	

R70 以 'c' 结尾的动词，通常加 'king' 与 'ked' 构成现在分词和过去式。

mimic ⟶ mimicking ⟶ mimicked
panic ⟶ panicking ⟶ panicked

R71 许多动词的过去式与过去分词是不规则的，即不由原形加 'ed' 构成。

规则动词的过去分词与过去式同形，但某些不规则动词的这两种形式不相同。

R72 下表列出的是不规则动词原形及其相应的过去式、过去分词形式：

原形	过去式	过去分词	原形	过去式	过去分词	原形	过去式	过去分词
arise	arose	arisen	freeze	froze	frozen	shut	shut	shut
awake	awoke	awoken	get	got	got	sing	sang	sung
bear	bore	borne	give	gave	given	sink	sank	sunk
beat	beat	beaten	go	went	gone	sit	sat	sat
become	became	become	grind	ground	ground	slay	slew	slain
begin	began	begun	grow	grew	grown	sleep	slept	slept
bend	bent	bent	hear	heard	heard	slide	slid	slid
bet	bet	bet	hide	hid	hidden	sling	slung	slung
bind	bound	bound	hit	hit	hit	slink	slunk	slunk
bite	bit	bitten	hold	held	held	sow	sowed	sown
bleed	bled	bled	hurt	hurt	hurt	speak	spoke	spoken
blow	blew	blown	keep	kept	kept	spend	spent	spent
break	broke	broken	know	knew	known	spin	spun	spun
breed	bred	bred	lay	laid	laid	spread	spread	spread
bring	brought	brought	lead	led	led	spring	sprang	sprung
build	built	built	leave	left	left	stand	stood	stood
burst	burst	burst	lend	lent	lent	steal	stole	stolen
buy	bought	bought	let	let	let	stick	stuck	stuck
cast	cast	cast	lose	lost	lost	sting	stung	stung
catch	caught	caught	make	made	made	stink	stank	stunk
choose	chose	chosen	mean	meant	meant	strew	strewed	strewn
cling	clung	clung	meet	met	met	stride	strode	stridden
come	came	come	pay	paid	paid	strike	struck	struck
cost	cost	cost	put	put	put	string	strung	strung
creep	crept	crept	quit	quit	quit	strive	strove	striven
cut	cut	cut	read	read	read	swear	swore	sworn
deal	dealt	dealt	rend	rent	rent	sweep	swept	swept
dig	dug	dug	ride	rode	ridden	swim	swam	swum
draw	drew	drawn	ring	rang	rung	swing	swung	swung
drink	drank	drunk	rise	rose	risen	take	took	taken
drive	drove	driven	run	ran	run	teach	taught	taught
eat	ate	eaten	saw	sawed	sawn	tear	tore	torn
fall	fell	fallen	say	said	said	tell	told	told
feed	fed	fed	see	saw	seen	think	thought	thought
feel	felt	felt	seek	sought	sought	throw	threw	thrown
fight	fought	fought	sell	sold	sold	thrust	thrust	thrust
find	found	found	send	sent	sent	tread	trod	trodden
flee	fled	fled	set	set	set	understand	understood	understood
fling	flung	flung	sew	sewed	sewn	wear	wore	worn
fly	flew	flown	shake	shook	shaken	weep	wept	wept
forbear	forbore	forborne	shed	shed	shed	win	won	won
forbid	forbade	forbidden	shine	shone	shone	wind	wound	wound
forget	forgot	forgotten	shoe	shod	shod	wring	wrung	wrung
forgive	forgave	forgiven	shoot	shot	shot	write	wrote	written
forsake	forsook	forsaken	show	showed	shown			
forswear	forswore	forsworn	shrink	shrank	shrunk			

注意，'read' 的过去式与过去分词的拼写与原形相同，但读法不同，原形读作 /riːd/，过去式与过去分词读作 /rɛd/。动词不规则形式的读法可查 Cobuild 词典如 *Collins Cobuild English Dictionary* 或 *Collins Cobuild Learner's Dictionary*。

R73 某些动词的过去式或过去分词不止一个，如 'spell' 的过去式与过去分词可以用 'spelled'，又可用 'spelt'；而 'prove' 的过去分词可用 'proved' 或 'proven'。

*He **burned** several letters.*
*He **burnt** all his papers.*
*His bandaged foot had **swelled** to three times normal size.*
*His wrist had **swollen** up and become huge.*

R74 某些动词有两种均可用作过去式或过去分词的形式。下面列出这些动词，规则形式列在不规则形式前面，但不一定更常用。两种形式可能引致词义不同，此点在 R76 节说明。

burn ⟶ burned, burnt
bust ⟶ busted, bust•
dream ⟶ dreamed, dreamt
dwell ⟶ dwelled, dwelt
fit ⟶ fitted, fit
hang ⟶ hanged, hung
kneel ⟶ kneeled, knelt
lean ⟶ leaned, leant
leap ⟶ leaped, leapt
light ⟶ lighted, lit
relay ⟶ relayed, relaid
smell ⟶ smelled, smelt
speed ⟶ speeded, sped
spell ⟶ spelled, spelt
spill ⟶ spilled, spilt
spoil ⟶ spoiled, spoilt
wet ⟶ wetted, wet

R75 有两个过去式的动词表：

bid ⟶ bid, bade
lie ⟶ lied, lay
wake ⟶ waked, woke
weave ⟶ weaved, wove

有两个过去分词的动词表：

bid ⟶ bid, bidden
lie ⟶ lied, lain
mow ⟶ mowed, mown
prove ⟶ proved, proven
swell ⟶ swelled, swollen
wake ⟶ waked, woken
weave ⟶ weaved, woven

美国英语中 'gotten' 常代替 'got'，充当 'get' 的过去分词。注意，有些动词在上述两表中均被列出，因为它们有不同的过去式与过去分词，而且不止一个过去式及过去分词形式。注意，不同的形式可能引致词义的不同，见 R76 节。

R76 有时，不同的过去式或过去分词与同一动词的不同意义或不同用法有关。例如，动词 'hang' 的过去式与过去分词一般是 'hung'，但也可用 'hanged'，只是词意不同而已，动词的不同意义可查阅 Cobuild 词典如 *Collins Cobuild English Dictionary* 或 *Collins Cobuild Learner's Dictionary*。

*An Iron Cross **hung** from a ribbon around the man's neck.*
*He had been found guilty of murdering his child and **hanged**.*
*They had **bid** down the chemical company's stock.*
*He had **bidden** her to buy the best.*
*Everyone gathered as he **relayed** the tragic news.*
*They carefully **relaid** the pavements.*

R77 有些动词由一个以上的词构成，如 'browbeat'、'typeset'。有的由一动词加前缀构成，如 'undo' 及 'disconnect'。

*His teachers **underestimate** his general ability.*
*Physical miracles of our time **outdo** their creators.*
*No-one knows better how you **mismanage** your time than those who live or work with you.*

R78 由不止一个词合成的动词以及由动词加前缀构成的动词的词形变化，通常与合成这些动词的后半部分的词形变化相同。例如，'foresee' 的过去式是 'foresaw'，过去分词是 'foreseen'；'hamstring' 的过去式与过去分词是 'hamstrung'；'misunderstand' 的过去式与过去分词是 'misunderstood'。

*I **underestimated** him.*
*He had **outdone** himself.*
*I had **misunderstood** and **mismanaged** everything.*
*She had **disappeared** into the kitchen and **reappeared** with a flashlight.*

R79 这类动词的词形变化并不受合成影响。它们的拼写仍遵照原来动词的拼写规则。

下列词表的动词的第二个部分为不规则动词：

browbeat	overeat	mislead	beset	undertake
broadcast	befall	remake	reset	foretell
forecast	forego	repay	typeset	retell
miscast	undergo	misread	outshine	rethink
recast	outgrow	override	overshoot	overthrow
typecast	overheat	outrun	oversleep	misunderstand
overcome	mishear	overrun	misspell	rewind
undercut	behold	re-run	withstand	unwind
outdo	uphold	foresee	hamstring	rewrite
overdo	withhold	oversee	mistake	underwrite
undo	mislay	outsell	overtake	

注意以下列出的几个动词的过去式及过去分词形式，构成这几个动词第二个部分分别有两种过去式和过去分词形式。

refit ⟶ refitted ⟶ refitted
overhang ⟶ overhung ⟶ overhung
floodlight ⟶ floodlit ⟶ floodlit

第二个部分是不规则动词的复合动词表：

bottle-feed	spoon-feed	proof-read
breast-feed	baby-sit	sight-read
force-feed	lip-read	ghost-write

R80 助动词 'be'、'have' 和 'do' 的各种形式列表如下：

	be	**have**	**do**
简单现在时： 与 'I' 连用	am = 'm	have = 've	do
与 'you'、'we'、'they' 及复数名词词组连用	are = 're		
与 'he'、'she'、'it' 及单数名词词组连用	is = 's	has = 's	does
简单过去时： 与 'I'、'he'、'she'、'it' 及单数名词词组连用	was	had = 'd	did
与 'you'、'we'、'they' 及复数名词词组连用	were		
分词形式： 现在分词 过去分词	being been	having had	doing done

R81 动词 'be' 的现在时形式通常可缩写并附加在主语上。主语可以是名词，也可以是代词。这样的缩写形式常用在口语或非正式书面语中。

I'm *interested in the role of women all over the world.*
You're *late.*
We're *making some progress.*
It's *a delightful country.*
My ***car's*** *just across the street.*

'Be' 的缩写形式见 R80 节的词表。

R82 肯定陈述句句末不能用动词 'be' 的缩写式，而必须用它的完全式，如 'Richard's not very happy but Andrew is'，不能说成 'Richard's not very happy but Andrew's'。然而，否定陈述句句末是 'not' 时，则可用 'be' 的缩写式，如 'Mary's quite happy, but her mother's not'。

R83 在否定句中，要么缩写 'be'，要么缩写 'not'。否定句中的缩写详见 4.55 和 4.56 节。

R84 动词 'have' 的现在时和过去时形式也可缩写，缩写的一般是作助动词的 'have'。

***I've** changed my mind.*
*This is the first party **we've** been to in months.*
***She's** become a very interesting young woman.*
*I do wish **you'd** met Guy.*
***She's** managed to keep it quiet.*
***We'd** done a good job.*

动词 'have' 的缩写式见 R80 节的词表。

R85 ''s' 可能是 'is' 也可能是 'has' 的缩写式，看看它后面的词便知道，''s' 代表 'is' 时后面跟现在分词，补足语或者附加状语，代表 'has' 时，后面一般跟过去分词。

***She's** going to be all right.*
***She's** a lovely person.*
***She's** gone to see some social work people.*

R86 以 ''s' 结尾的名词也可能是领属格形式，它后面跟的是另一个名词。关于名词的领属格，见 2.180 至 2.192 节。

R87 以 'x'、'ch'、'sh'、's' 或 'z' 结尾的名词后的 'is' 及 'has'，在口语中有时读作 /əz/，但在书写时，不能缩写。

R88 ''d' 可能是 'had' 也可能是 'would' 的缩写式。看看后一个词即能判断，代表 'would' 时，后面跟原形动词，''d' 代表 'had' 时，后面一般跟过去分词。

***We'd have** to try to escape.*
*'**It'd be** cheaper to get married,' Alan said.*
*At least **we'd had** the courage to admit it.*
***She'd bought** new sunglasses with deep-blue tinted lenses.*

限定性动词词组与时态的构成
Finite verb groups and the formation of tenses

R89 **限定性动词词组**是动词词组的一种，在多数句子里，与主语连用。它由传达意义的动词，即**主要动词**(main verb)和一个或一个以上的**助动词**(auxiliaries)构成。

限定性动词词组结构如下：

（情态动词）+ (have) + (be) + (be) + 主要动词。

括号中成分的取舍根据信息所涉及的因素而定。譬如说，谈论的是过去还是现在，侧重的是动作的执行者还是受动作影响的事物。括号中的成分称为助动词。

如果要表示可能性，要表示说话人对受话人的看法或对自己说话内容的看法，就要用称为**情态动词**(modals)的助动词。情态动词后必须用原形动词。关于情态动词的用法，见第四章（4.95 至 4.262 节）。

*She **might see** us.*
*She **could have** seen us.*

用完成时需有 'have' 的某一种形式，再加过去分词。

*She **has seen** us.*
*She **had been** watching us for some time.*

用进行时需有 'be' 的某一种形式，再加现在分词。

*She **was watching** us.*
*We **were being** watched.*

用被动式需有 'be' 的某一种形式，再加过去分词。

*We **were seen**.*
*We **were being watched**.*

主要动词前有助动词时，就得根据以上对完成时、进行时、被动式的说明，用主要动词的适当形式。主要动词前无助动词时，就用适当的简单时态形式。

简单时态的动词 'do' 也用作助动词。不过，这限于疑问句、否定陈述句、否定祈使句、以及加强语气句。在加强语气句里，'do' 后用主要动词的原形。'Do' 的用法详见第四章。

***Do** you want me to do something about it?*
*I **do** not remember her.*
*I **do** enjoy being with you.*

R90 限定式动词词组，要是不以情态动词引出，总要有自身的**时态**(tenses)。时态表示动词形式与该形式所指时间的关系。

这部分讲述主要动词与助动词构成各种时态的方式。关于特定时态如何以说话时间或事件发生时间为参照，来表示特定时间概念的方法，见 5.7 至 5.68 节。

R91 动词的**简单时态**(simple tenses)，指的是动词的**简单现在时**(simple present)和**简单过去时**(simple past)，由一个词，即主要动词的某一种形式表示。

*I **feel** tired.*
*Mary **lived** there for five years.*

其他时态由一个或一个以上的助动词加主要动词表示。

*I **am** feeling reckless tonight.*
*I **have** lived here all my life.*

R92 限定性动词词组的第一个词必须与句子主语保持一致。这一点适用于简单现在时和以 'be' 的现在时、过去时或 'have' 的现在时引导的所有时态。

譬如说，时态是现在完成而主语是 'John' 时，助动词 'have' 的形式就必须是 'has'。

*John **has** seemed worried lately.*
*She **likes** me.*
*Your lunch **is** getting cold.*

R93 这部分以下各节所给例句均为陈述句。疑问句的词序与陈述句不同，详见 4.10 至 4.30 节。

R94 **进行时态**(continuous tenses)由助动词 'be' 的适当时态加现在分词构成。这种时态的构成见以下说明。进行时的用法见 5.7 至 5.68 节。

R95 以下各节说明主动语态的各种时态的构成。R109 至 R118 节说明被动语态的各种时态的构成。

R96 主语是除第三人称单数外的人称或数时，简单现在时的动词与动词原形相同。

*I **want** a breath of air.*
*We **advise** everyone to ring before they **leave**.*
*They **give** you a certificate and then **tell** you to get a job.*

简单现在时的第三人称单数动词形式就是 's' 形式。

*Flora **puts** her head back, and **laughs** again.*
*'Money **decides** everything,' she thought.*
*Mr Painting **plays** Phil Archer in the radio serial.*

R97 **现在进行时**(present continuous)由 'be' 的现在时形式加上主要动词的现在分词构成。

*People who have no faith in art **are running** the art schools.*
*The garden industry **is booming**.*
*Things **are changing**.*

R98 动词的**简单过去时**(simple past)即是动词的过去时形式。

*The moment he **entered** the classroom all eyes **turned** on him.*
*He **walked** out of the kitchen and **climbed** the stairs.*
*It was dark by the time I **reached** East London.*

R99 **过去进行时**(past continuous)由 'be' 的过去时形式加主要动词的现在分词构成。

*The tourists **were beginning** to drive me crazy.*
*We believed we **were fighting** for a good cause.*
*At the time, I **was dreading** transfer.*

R100 **现在完成时**(present perfect)由 'have' 的现在时形式加主要动词的过去分词构成。

*Advances **have continued**, though actual productivity **has fallen**.*
*Football **has become** international.*
*I **have seen** this before.*

现在完成时在别的语法书里有时称为**完成时态**(perfect tenses)。

R101 **现在完成进行时**(present perfect continuous)由 'be' 的现在完成时形式加主要动词的现在分词构成。

*Howard **has been working** hard over the recess.*
*What we **have been describing** is very simple.*
*Their shares **have been going** up.*

R102 **过去完成时**(past perfect)由 'had' 加主要动词的过去分词构成。

*The Indian summer **had returned** for a day.*
*Everyone **had liked** her.*
*Murray **had resented** the changes I had made.*

R103 **过去完成进行时**(past perfect continuous)是由 'had been' 加上主要动词的现在分词构成。

*She did not know how long she **had been lying** there.*
*For ten years of her life, teachers **had been making** up her mind for her.*
*I **had been showing** a woman around with her little boy.*

R104 英语表示将来时间有好几种方式。其中之一通常称作**将来时态**(future tenses)，由情态动词 'will' 或 'shall' 加动词原形构成。

*It is exactly the sort of scheme he **will like**.*
*My receptionist **will help** you choose the frames.*
*Don't go scattering seed about or we **shall have** mice.*

在口语中，除表示强调外，常用缩写式 ''ll' 代替 'will' 或 'shall'。

*Send him into the Army, **he'll** learn a bit of discipline.*
*As soon as we get the tickets **they'll** be sent out to you.*
*Next week **we'll** be taking a look at mathematics.*

R105 主语不是 'I' 和 'we' 时，如果要用 'will' 或 'shall' 的完全形式，通常是 'will'；主语是 'I' 和 'we' 时，如果要用完全形式，往往是 'shall'。

*Inflation is rising and **will** continue to rise.*
*I **shall** be away tomorrow.*

R106 将来进行时(future continuous)由 'will' 或 'shall' 加 'be'，加主要动词的现在分词构成。

*Indeed, we **will be opposing** that policy.*
*Ford manual workers **will be claiming** a ten per cent pay rise.*
*I **shall be leaving** soon.*

R107 将来完成时(future perfect)由 'will' 或 'shall' 加 'have'，加主要动词的过去分词构成。

*Long before you return, they **will have forgotten** you.*
*Before the end of this era, computer games **will have reached** such heights of realism.*
*By that time, I **shall have retired**.*

R108 将来完成进行时(future perfect continuous)由 'will' 或 'shall' 加 'have been'，加主要动词的现在分词构成。

*By March, I **will have been doing** this job for six years.*
*Saturday week, I **will have been going out** with Susan for three months.*

R109 被动语态的各种时态由 'be' 的适当时态加主要动词的过去分词构成。被动时态的构成见以下说明。

R110 简单现在时被动态(simple present passive)由 'be' 的简单现在时形式加主要动词的过去分词构成。

*The earth **is baked** by the sun into a hard, brittle layer.*

*If your course is full time you **are treated** as your parents' dependent.*
*Specific subjects **are discussed**.*

R111 **现在进行时被动态**(present continuous passive)由 'be' 的现在进行时形式加主要动词的过去分词构成。

*The buffet counter **is being arranged** by the attendant.*
*It is something quite irrelevant to what **is being discussed**.*
*Jobs **are** still **being lost**.*

R112 **简单过去时被动态**(simple past passive)由 'be' 的简单过去时形式加主要动词的过去分词构成。

*No date **was announced** for the talks.*
*The walls of his tiny shop **were plastered** with pictures of actors and actresses.*
*A number of cottages **were built**, all with the most modern of conveniences.*

R113 **过去进行时被动态**(past continuous passive)由 'be' 的过去进行时形式加主要动词的过去分词构成。

*The stage **was being set** for future profits.*
*Before long, machines **were being used** to create codes.*
*Strenuous efforts **were being made** last night to end the dispute.*

R114 **现在完成时被动态**(present perfect passive)由 'be' 的现在完成时形式加主要动词的过去分词构成。

*The guest-room window **has been mended**.*
*Once real progress **has been made**, the gains are likely to be immense.*
*The dirty plates **have been stacked** in a pile on the kitchen cabinet.*

R115 **过去完成时被动态**(past perfect passive)由 'had been' 加主要动词的过去分词构成。

*They **had been taught** to be critical.*
*They **had been driven** home in the station wagon.*

R116 **将来时被动态**(future passive)由 'will' 或 'shall' 加 'be'，加主要动词的过去分词构成。

*His own authority **will be undermined**.*
*Congress **will be asked** to approve an increase of 47.5 per cent.*

R117 将来完成时被动态(future perfect passive)由 'will' 或 'shall' 加 'have been'，加主要动词的过去分词构成。

Another phase of the emancipation of man from the need to work for his living ***will have been achieved****.*
The figures ***will have been*** *heavily* ***distorted*** *by the continuing effects of the civil servants' strike.*

R118 将来进行时被动态与将来完成进行时被动态很少使用。

R119 下表是主动态与被动态时态的总表，标有星号(*)的被动式很少使用：

	active 主动态	passive 被动态
simple present	He eats it.	It is eaten.
present continuous	He is eating it.	It is being eaten.
present perfect	He has eaten it.	It has been eaten.
present perfect continuous	He has been eating it.	It has been being eaten.*
simple past	He ate it.	It was eaten.
past continuous	He was eating it.	It was being eaten.
past perfect	He had eaten it.	It had been eaten.
past perfect continuous	He had been eating it.	It had been being eaten.*
future	He will eat it.	It will be eaten.
future continuous	He will be eating it.	It will be being eaten.*
future perfect	He will have eaten it.	It will have been eaten.
future perfect continuous	He will have been eating it.	It will have been being eaten.*

R120 许多动词一般不用于进行时态，某些动词的一个或多个主要义项不用于进行时态。通常不用于进行时态的动词如下：

admire	despise	imagine	owe	seem
adore	detest	impress	own	sound
appear	dislike	include	please	smell
astonish	doubt	involve	possess	stop
be	envy	keep	prefer	suppose
believe	exist	know	reach	surprise
belong	fit	lack	realize	survive
concern	forget	last	recognize	suspect
consist	guess	like	remember	understand
contain	hate	love	resemble	want
deserve	have	matter	satisfy	wish
desire	hear	mean	see	

这种动词有时称为**静态动词**(stative verbs)，用于进行时态的动词有时称为**动态动词**(dynamic verbs)。

R181 当补足语表示永久性特征或表示与行为无关的属性时，一般不用主要动词 'be' 的进行时态，但说明某人在某个特定时刻的行为时，可用进行时态。

*He **is** extremely nice.*
*He **was** an American.*
*You'**re being** very silly.*

'Have' 作主要动词表示“拥有”意义时不用作进行时态，但表示某人正在做某事时，往往用进行时态。

*I **have** two dinghies.*
*We **were** just **having** a philosophical discussion.*

R182 某些动词有不能用进行时态的特殊义项。如 'smell' 作“嗅”解时，常用进行时态，但作“嗅起来”解时，就不用进行时态。比较 'I was just smelling your flowers' 与 'Your flowers smell lovely'。

下列动词表示括号内意义时，不用进行时态：

depend (be related to)	taste (of something)	feel (have an opinion)
think (have an opinion)	measure (have length)	weigh (have weight)
smell (of something)		

R183 可以用作主句动词的**祈使式** (imperative) 动词，被视为动词的限定形式。但是，祈使动词总以动词原形出现，所以就不能像其他限定性动词词组那样表明时态。祈使句的用法见 4.31 至 4.35 节。

***Stop** being silly.*
***Come** here.*

非限定性动词词组：不定式与分词
Non-finite verb groups: infinitives and participles

R184 非限定性动词词组包括不定式、分词或分词引出的动词词组。非限定性动词词组不能与主语连用组成句子。

非限定性动词词组用在**级阶结构** (phase structures) 的动词之后（见 3.183 至 3.213 节）；用在**非限定性从属分句** (non-finite subordinate clauses)（见第八章论述从属的部分）；还用于某些**非人称** 'it' (impersonal 'it')结构中（见 10.39 至 10.41 节）。

'To'- 不定式也用于某些名词与形容词后（见 2.310 至 2.316 节；2.55 至 2.66 节）。现在分词还用作介词宾语。

非限定性动词词组与限定性动词词组一样，可带宾语、补足语和附加状语。以 'to'- 不定式引出的分句称为 **'to' - 不定式小句**('to'-infinitive clauses)，以现在分词引出的分句称为**现在分词分句**(present participle clauses)，以过去分词引出的分句称为**过去分词分句**(past participle clauses)。

R125 非限定性动词词组中助动词的词序与限定性动词词组中的一样（见 R89 节）。注意，非限定性动词词组无情态动词。

R126 主动态的 'to' - 不定式('to'-infinitives)由 'to' 加动词原形构成，有时称为**现在时不定式**(present infinitives)，或简称**不定式**(infinitives)。

*I want to **escape** from here.*
*I asked Don Card **to go** with me.*

R127 主动态**不带 'to' 的不定式**(infinitives without 'to')是由动词原形构成。有时称这种不定式为独词不定式。

*They helped me **get** settled here.*

R128 主动态不定式偶尔也有下列几种形式。**现在进行时不定式**(present continuous infinitives)由 'to be' 或 'be' 加现在分词构成。

*It is much better for young children **to be living** at home.*

完成时或过去时不定式(perfect/past infinitives)由 'to have' 或 'have' 加过去分词构成。

*Only two are known **to have defected**.*

完成进行时或过去进行时不定式(perfect/past continuous infinitives)由 'to have been' 或 'have been' 加现在分词构成。

*I seem **to have been eating** all evening.*

R129 不定式还有被动态形式，简单被动态不定式由 'to be' 或 'be' 加过去分词构成。

*I didn't want **to be caught** off guard.*

完成时或过去时被动态不定式(perfect/past passive infinitives)由 'to have been' 或 'have been' 加过去分词构成。

*He seems **to have been** completely **forgotten**.*

R130 下表是不定式的各种形式，标有星号(*)的被动态不定式用得很少：

	active 主动态	passive 被动态
	(to) eat	(to) be eaten
present continuous	(to) be eating	(to) be being eaten *
perfect	(to) have eaten	(to) have been eaten
perfect continuous	(to) have been eating	(to) have been being eaten *

R131 **现在分词**(present participles)可作非限定性动词词组，通常含主动意义。

'You could play me a tune,' said Simon, ***sitting*** *down.*
He could keep in touch with me by ***writing*** *letters.*

R132 偶尔也用以 'having' 引出的现在分词词组。**完成时或过去时的** '-ing' 形式 (perfect /past '-ing' form)由 'having' 加过去分词构成。

Ash, ***having forgotten*** *his fear, had become bored and restless.*

完成进行时或过去进行时的 '-ing' 形式(perfect/past continuous'-ing' form)由 'having been' 加现在分词构成，但用得很少。

Having been supporting *Tom and Mick on the climb for a week, they needed a rest.*

R133 以 'being' 及 'having' 引出的现在分词词组含被动意义。

简单被动态 '-ing' 形式由 'being' 加过去分词构成。

...fears that patients would resent ***being interviewed*** *by a medical computer.*

完成时或过去时 '-ing' 形式由 'having been' 加过去分词构成。

Having been declared *insane, he was confined for four months in a prison hospital.*
Some were shot full of arrows after ***having been*** *mortally* ***wounded*** *by gunshot.*

R134 下表是 '-ing' 分词的各种形式，标有星号(*)的 '-ing' 形式用得极少：

	active 主动态	passive 被动态
	eating	being eaten
perfect	having eaten	having been eaten
perfect continuous	having been eating	having been being eaten*

R135 过去分词也用作非限定性动词词组，并含被动意义。

Stunned *by the swiftness of the assault, the enemy were overwhelmed.*
When ***challenged****, she started and seemed quite surprised.*

副词的构成
Forming adverbs

R136 副词的用法在第二、五、六和十章说明。

R137 多数副词在形式上与形容词有关，在意义上也常与形容词有关。它们由形容词加 'ly' 构成。可加 'ly' 的形容词参见 6.17 至 6.27 节。

sad ——→ sadly
private ——→ privately
surprising ——→ surprisingly
cheerful ——→ cheerfully
accidental ——→ accidentally

R138 形容词加词尾 'ly' 构成副词时，在拼写上有时有细微区别。

以 'le' 结尾的形容词，用 'ly' 代替 'le' 构成副词。

suitable ——→ suitably
terrible ——→ terribly
gentle ——→ gently

注意，'whole' 相应的副词形式是 'wholly'。

R139 以 'y' 结尾的形容词用 'ily' 代替 'y'。

easy ——→ easily
satisfactory ——→ satisfactorily

注意，以 'y' 结尾的单音节形容词通常是在词尾加 'ly'。

wry ——→ wryly
shy ——→ shyly

注意，'dry' 相应的副词可拼为 'drily' 或 'dryly'。

R140 以 'ic' 结尾的形容词在词尾加 'ally'。

automatic ——→ automatically

tragic ⟶ tragically

注意，'public' 相应的副词是 'publicly'。

R141 少数以 'e'（不以 'le'）结尾的形容词用 'ly' 代替 'e'。

due ⟶ duly
true ⟶ truly
undue ⟶ unduly
eerie ⟶ eerily

R142 在 'full' 和 'dull' 后，只加 'y' 构成副词。

full ⟶ fully
dull ⟶ dully

R143 注意，一般不在以 'ed' 结尾的形容词后加 'ly' 构成副词。但下表列出的却是在 'ed' 后加 'ly' 构成的副词：

absent-mindedly	dejectedly	frenziedly	reportedly
admittedly	delightedly	guardedly	reputedly
allegedly	deservedly	half-heartedly	resignedly
assuredly	determinedly	heatedly	supposedly
belatedly	distractedly	hurriedly	undoubtedly
blessedly	doggedly	light-heartedly	unexpectedly
contentedly	exaggeratedly	markedly	unhurriedly
crookedly	excitedly	pointedly	wholeheartedly
decidedly	fixedly	repeatedly	wickedly

R144 少数以 'ly' 结尾的副词由名词转化而来。部分时间副词就属于这类副词：

day ⟶ daily
fortnight ⟶ fortnightly
hour ⟶ hourly
month ⟶ monthly
quarter ⟶ quarterly
week ⟶ weekly
year ⟶ yearly

注意 'daily' 的拼写。以上副词也能用作形容词。由名词转化而来的副词还有：

name ⟶ namely
part ⟶ partly
purpose ⟶ purposely
body ⟶ bodily

R145 以 'ly' 结尾的少数副词，与形容词、名词均无关系，例如：

accordingly	jokingly	manfully	presumably
exceedingly	longingly	mostly	

R146 下表列出的副词与形容词同形：

alike	fine	just	off-hand	solo
all right	first	kindly	only	still
alone	free	last	outright	straight
clean	freelance	late	overall	tight
deep	full	little	part-time	well
direct	full-time	long	past	wide
even	further	loud	pretty	wrong
extra	hard	low	quick	
far	high	next	right	
fast	jolly	non-stop	slow	

注意，与形容词同形的副词，有时与形容词在意义上没有关系，可查阅 Cobuild 词典如 *Collins Cobuild English Dictionary* 或 *Collins Cobuild Learner's Dictionary* 。

上表列出的单词中，有些还有相应的 'ly' 副词，例如：

cleanly	finely	hardly	lately	slowly
directly	firstly	highly	loudly	tightly
deeply	freely	justly	quickly	widely
evenly	fully	lastly	rightly	wrongly

注意，这些 'ly' 结尾的副词与不带 'ly' 的副词有时同义，有时不同义。在 R144 节提及的以 'ly' 结尾的时间副词也与形容词同形。

R147 注意，序数词既作前置修饰语又作副词用。它们也可转变为 'ly' 副词。

R148 下表列出的副词与形容词没有任何关系：

afresh	besides	indeed	otherwise	though
alas	doubtless	instead	perhaps	thus
alike	either	likewise	quite	together
almost	enough	maybe	rather	too
aloud	forthwith	meanwhile	regardless	very
also	furthermore	more	so	whatsoever
altogether	half	moreover	somehow	
anyhow	hence	much	somewhat	
anyway	hereby	nevertheless	therefore	
apart	however	nonetheless	thereupon	

R149 时间副词、许多地点副词也与形容词没有关系。第五、六章列出这些副词。

比较级与最高级副词的构成
Forming comparative and superlative adverbs

R150 比较级与最高级副词的用法，及有比较级和最高级的副词，见第六章（6.30至6.35节）。

R151 副词的比较级通常在副词前加 'more' 构成。

freely ⟶ more freely
appropriately ⟶ more appropriately

R152 副词的最高级常在副词前加 'most' 构成。

commonly ⟶ most commonly
eagerly ⟶ most eagerly

R153 少数常用副词的比较级与最高级是另外的单词，而不用 'more' 与 'most' 构成。

'Well' 的比较级是 'better'，最高级是 'best'。

*She would ask him later, when she knew him **better**.*
*I have to find out what I can do **best**.*

'Badly' 的比较级是 'worse'，最高级是 'worst'。

*She was treated far **worse** than any animal.*
*The expedition from Mozambique fared **worst**.*

与形容词同形的副词的比较级与最高级形式和形容词的一样。例如，副词 'fast' 的比较级是 'faster'，最高级是 'fastest'；副词 'hard' 的比较级是 'harder'，最高级是 'hardest'。

*Prices have been rising **faster** than incomes.*
*You probably learn **quicker** by having lessons.*
*The old people work **the hardest**.*
*The ones with the shortest legs run **the slowest**.*

R154 少数时间副词、地点副词的比较级与最高级不规则。见第五章（5.69、5.114及5.123节）和第六章（6.89节）。

early ⟶ earlier ⟶ earliest
late ⟶ later (no superlative)

soon ⟶ sooner (no superlative)
long ⟶ longer ⟶ longest
deep ⟶ deeper ⟶ deepest
far ⟶ farther, further ⟶ farthest, furthest
near ⟶ nearer ⟶ nearest
close ⟶ closer ⟶ closest

索引

粗体词条表示语法术语或表示功能的条目；*斜体*词条表示词项；箭头→表示索引中相互参照。R开首的编码表示参考部分的条目。

A

B

D

E

F

G

H

N

P

U

Y

[General Information]
书名=英语语法大全
作者=辛克莱著　任绍曾译
页数=624
出版社=商务印书馆
出版日期=1999年01月第1版
SS号=10306928
DX号=000000669262
url=http://book2.duxiu.com/bookDetail.jsp?dxNumber=000000669262&d=9A329D70A0BCD4E1062E8B80CBD736A0&fenlei=08040107&sw=Collins+Cobuild+%D3%A2%D3%EF%D3%EF%B7%A8%B4%F3%C8%AB